



# A SPANISH GRAMMAR, WITH EXERCISES

MARATHON MONTROSE RAMSEY





# A Spanish Grammar, with Exercises


Marathon Montrose Ramsey

### **Nabu Public Domain Reprints:**

You are holding a reproduction of an original work published before 1923 that is in the public domain in the United States of America, and possibly other countries. You may freely copy and distribute this work as no entity (individual or corporate) has a copyright on the body of the work. This book may contain prior copyright references, and library stamps (as most of these works were scanned from library copies). These have been scanned and retained as part of the historical artifact.

This book may have occasional imperfections such as missing or blurred pages, poor pictures, errant marks, etc. that were either part of the original artifact, or were introduced by the scanning process. We believe this work is culturally important, and despite the imperfections, have elected to bring it back into print as part of our continuing commitment to the preservation of printed works worldwide. We appreciate your understanding of the imperfections in the preservation process, and hope you enjoy this valuable book.





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2023 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

[https://archive.org/details/isbn\\_9781145304109](https://archive.org/details/isbn_9781145304109)







# A SPANISH GRAMMAR

WITH EXERCISES

BY

M. MONTROSE RAMSEY



NEW YORK  
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY  
1902



Edw T 2119.02.730  
✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
FROM THE LIBRARY OF  
JOHN ALLAN CHILD  
AUGUST 14, 1930

Copyright, 1902,

BY

HENRY HOLT & CO.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK

## PREFACE.

---

WHEN the author's "Text-Book of Modern Spanish" was published in 1894, no idea was entertained of adding another to the list of shorter or rudimentary works for the study of Spanish. But since that date the position of Spanish in this country has changed, and the demand for increased attention to it has already been felt in every considerable institution of learning. This demand has encouraged the author to venture, in the present book, a more elementary and practical treatise than his Text-Book, yet one, it is hoped, sufficiently thorough to present a complete survey of Spanish forms and syntactical difficulties. While modeled upon the larger work, it is by no means the product of the blue pencil. The method followed has been to expand and elucidate in the earlier portion, and to reduce the latter half to the most essential matters.

So far as consistent with the purpose in view, both the Spanish and English exercises have been given the form of a connected description, narrative, or conversation. These have intentionally been made copious; but in classes where either time or numbers make the preparation of long exercises impossible, the instructor may, of course, shorten the work assigned by omitting sentences. A better plan, however, is to distribute the entire exercise among the members of the class, each taking a portion. While the diversity of subjects treated adds somewhat to the labor of the student, this hardship is more than compensated by the large vocabulary acquired.



The last division of the work comprises a conspectus of the inflectional forms of the regular and irregular verbs, together with lists of the indeclinable particles. Since this division is intended mainly for reference, no exercises are provided.

M. M. R.

JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY,  
BALTIMORE, *June*, 1901.

# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

	PAGE
The alphabet.....	1
Vowels.....	2
Diphthongs and triphthongs.....	8
Consonants.....	6
Double letters.....	11
The accent .....	12
Division of syllables.....	18
Capitals and punctuation .....	19
Words common to Spanish and English.....	20

## PART II.—PRELIMINARY LESSONS.

### LESSONS :

I. First principles : Article and noun.....	25
II. The plural of nouns.....	27
III. The personal pronoun as subject.....	30
IV. Interrogative and negative sentences.....	33
V. Possessive pronouns ; conjunctions <i>mas</i> , <i>pero</i> , and <i>sino</i> ...	37
VI. Present indicative of the model verbs.....	41
VII. Government and agreement of verbs .....	44
VIII. <i>Venir</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>dar</i> , <i>hacer</i> , <i>decir</i> , <i>ver</i> .....	47
IX. Adjectives .....	51
X. Apocopation of adjectives ; location of two or more adjectives .....	55
XI. <i>Ser</i> and <i>estar</i> .....	58



LESSONS:	PAGE
XII. Impersonal constructions with <i>ser</i> and <i>estar</i> ; agreement of adjectives.....	63
XIII. The past participle and the passive voice.....	68
XIV. <i>Haber</i> and the perfect tense.....	72
XV. Derivative adverbs.....	76
XVI. Compound prepositions.....	79
XVII. Simple objective forms of the personal pronouns.....	85
XVIII. Remarks on some important adverbs and prepositions....	90
XIX. The future and future-perfect tenses; expansion of the stem vowel in verbs.....	96
XX. Some important idiomatic verbs.....	101

### PART III.—COMPLEMENTARY TREATMENT.

XXI. Spanish forms of address.....	106
XXII. Use of the articles.....	112
XXIII. Use of the articles, <i>continued</i> .....	116
XXIV. The neuter gender; the distinctive <i>á</i> as the sign of the accusative.....	122
XXV. The gender of nouns.....	129
XXVI. Substantive combinations; compound nouns; composite adjective expressions.....	135
XXVII. The imperfect and aorist (past definite) tenses.....	142
XXVIII. The prepositions <i>para</i> and <i>por</i> .....	152
XXIX. Numerals and numerical values.....	161
XXX. Measures of time and dimension.....	172
XXXI. Objective personal pronouns: reflexive pronouns; terminal dative and accusative; redundant construction: intensification by <i>mismo</i> ; the accusative of substitution	185
XXXII. Objective personal pronouns, <i>continued</i> : employment of <i>usted</i> and its substitutes; two pronouns as objects; enclitic use; pronoun followed by a noun in apposition..	193
XXXIII. Parts of the body.....	202
XXXIV. The present participle and the gerund.....	209
XXXV. Indefinite pronouns.....	219
XXXVI. Possessive pronouns; interrogative pronouns and adverbs	226
XXXVII. Demonstrative pronouns; absolute use of adjectives and pronouns.....	236
XXXVIII. Relative pronouns.....	246
XXXIX. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs.....	258

# CONTENTS.

vii

LESSONS :	PAGE
XL. Superlatives : the superlative of comparison ; the absolute superlative.....	270
XLI. Miscellaneous adjective pronouns.....	283
XLII. Miscellaneous adjective pronouns, <i>continued</i> .....	294
XLIII. Negatives.....	308
XLIV. Compound tenses ; the imperative mood ; some additional idiomatic verbs.....	321
XLV. Transitive, reflexive, reciprocal and intransitive verbs ...	332
XLVI. More detailed treatment of the passive.....	343
XLVII. Impersonal verbs ; <i>haber</i> and <i>hacer</i> used impersonally ; inceptive verbs.....	355
XLVIII. The subjunctive mood.....	378
XLIX. The subjunctive mood, <i>continued</i> : tenses of the subjunctive formed from the aorist stem ; the subjunctive in independent clauses.....	390
L. The conditional future.....	408
LI. The correspondence of tenses ; tense equivalents of the subjunctive and indicative ; the subjunctive contrasted with the indicative and infinitive.....	416
LII. The modal auxiliaries <i>deber</i> and <i>poder</i> .....	429

## PART IV.—SYNOPSIS OF FORMS.

Conjugation of the regular verbs.....	450
Orthographic changes.....	455
Conjugation of the irregular verbs.....	459
Defective verbs.....	485
Irregular past participles.....	487
Alphabetical index of irregular and defective verbs.....	491
Prepositions.....	500
Adverbs.....	502
Conjunctions.....	506
Interjections.....	507
Augmentatives and diminutives.....	510
Social and epistolary forms.....	519
 Spanish-English Vocabulary.....	 527
English-Spanish Vocabulary.....	566
Index.....	605





# PART I.

## ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

### THE ALPHABET.

1. The alphabet recognized by the Spanish Academy<sup>1</sup> contains 25 simple and 4 compound letters, which are alike regarded as representing distinct sounds.

The forms of the letters are the same as in English:—

CHARAC- TERS.	SPANISH NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.	CHARAC- TERS.	SPANISH NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
a,	a,	ah.	n,	ene,	n.
b,	be,	b.	ñ,	eñe,	n'y.
c,	ce,	th, k.	o,	o,	oh.
ch,	che,	ch.	p,	pe,	p.
d,	de,	d, TH.*	q,	cu,	k.
e,	e,	ay.	r,	ere,	r, rr.
f,	efe,	f.	rr,	erre,	rr.
g,	ge,	'h†, g (hard).	s,	ese,	ss.
h,	hache,	[silent].	t,	te,	t.
i,	i,	ee.	u,	u,	oo.
j,	jota,	'h†.	v,	ve,	v.
k,	ka,	k.	x,	ekis or equis,	x.
l,	ele,	l.	y,	ye or y griega, (i.e., Greek y.)	y.
ll,	elle,	l'y.	z,	zeta,	th.
m,	eme,	m.			

\* Sonant *th*, as in *those*, *either*.

† Guttural *h*, pronounced like the German *ch* in *Buch*. Its sound will be represented in this work by 'h.

<sup>1</sup> The Royal Spanish Academy, founded in 1713 by the Duke d'Escalona, is composed of 80 members. Its object is to improve and preserve the Spanish language. The Grammar and Dictionary published by it are the standards of the language.

2. The sound of each letter (simple or compound) is invariable, except *c* and *g*, which as in English have two sounds each.

### VOWELS.

3. Great importance is attached to the vowels in Spanish; their sounds are full and clear, while those of the consonants are often obscure or even suppressed. They have the following values:—


A	sounds like <i>a</i> in <i>bath</i> . <sup>1</sup>	} These vowels, although somewhat fainter when not accented, always retain the same character of sound.
E	" " <i>a</i> " <i>taka</i> .	
I	" " <i>ee</i> " <i>seek</i> .	
O	" " <i>o</i> " <i>hope</i> .	
U	" " <i>oo</i> " <i>food</i> .	

*Y*, when a vowel, is equivalent to *i*.

**REMARK.**—*Y* is considered a vowel only when standing alone, as in *y*, *and*; or at the end of a word, as in *ley*, *law*. It never occurs between consonants, its place being then taken by *i*; as: *sistema*, *system*; *oxígeno*, *oxygen*.

In Chile *y* is almost universally discarded as a vowel, *i* being used instead—a usage which is quite general in the other Pacific republics of Peru, Ecuador, Colombia and Venezuela.

### VOWEL DRILL.

 The student will pronounce the following words, enunciating each vowel with equal distinctness, but emphasizing slightly the next to the last. The consonants are to be pronounced as in English.

**A.** *la, cama, casa, alta, mala, gana, rata, grana, marca, plana, rana, palabra, ataca, amarga, cantara, anagrama, amalgama, chamarasca, alpargata.*

**O.** *lo, solo, tomo, otro, plomo, roto, torso, moroso, goloso, sonoro, colono, provoco, oloroso, otorgo, soporto, contorno, locomotora.*

**E.** *le, nene, este, mete, leve, esmero, empeltre, sexo, renta, secreto, perpetro, entremete, persevere, reverente, templete, solemnemente.*


**I.** *tino, típle, grita, amigo, asilo, triste, rentista, divisa, librito, tiritó, titila, estimo, sentina, distinto, nicotina, disponible.*

**U.** *uno, chulo, mula, luto, cura, tuno, unto, fuma, fruta, gruta, futuro, undula, susurro, murmura, lucha, tumulto, diminuto, cucurucho.*

---

<sup>1</sup> The sound of the Spanish *a* is midway between the English *a* in *father* and that in *fat*.

## DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

 The student should pay particular attention to this subject, as a thorough knowledge of it is necessary in order to understand the laws of the written accent.

4. Spanish diphthongs and triphthongs are indivisible combinations of vowels pronounced as single syllables, laying the stress on the more sonorous vowel and passing rapidly over the weaker or less sonorous.<sup>1</sup> If both vowels are weak (i and u), the stress is laid on the last of the two; as: *ruido*, *viudo*.

REMARK.—In English there are many combinations that are nearly exact counterparts of Spanish diphthongs, so far as the sound is concerned; e.g.: *ya* in *yard*, *yo* in *yore*, *yu* in *yule*, *ai* in *aisle*, *oy* in *boy*, *wa* in *waft*, *wo* in *woful*, etc.

5. The gradual scale of the sonority or strength of the vowels is the following: a, o, e, i, u.

A, o, e, are called *strong vowels*; i, u, *weak vowels*.

6. Diphthongs cannot be formed from the strong vowels alone, but must be composed of one of the strong vowels uniting with one of the weak, or of the two weak vowels i and u combined. It makes no difference which of the vowels comes first.

Where two strong vowels come together, each is considered as a separate syllable: *real*, *aéreo*, *héroe*, *oasis*, *sarao*, etc.

7. Triphthongs must always be composed of one strong vowel between two weak ones.

8. In brief, a Spanish diphthong consists of a vowel preceded or followed by either i or u, which then have the consonant values of the English *y* and *w*. In a triphthong one of these is on each side of the nuclear vowel.

The following is a list of all the diphthongs and triphthongs in the language:—

## DIPHTHONGS.

With i:	ia	ai	With u:	ua	au
	ie	ei		ue	eu
	io	oi		uo	ou
	iu			ui	

<sup>1</sup> If this stress or accent falls on a weak vowel (or the first of two weak vowels) there result two syllables.

## TRIPHTHONGS.

With i:	iai iei	With u:	uai uei
---------	------------	---------	------------

## DIPHTHONG AND TRIPHTHONG DRILL.

*Diphthongs*.—*ia*: noria, Asia, flambe, Santiago; *ai*: aire, calgo, fraile, polaina; *ie*: mente, piedra, tiempo, sapiente; *ei*: reina, pleito, empeine, treinta; *io*: piocha, violento, patriota, manobra; *oi*: oigo, boina, coime, estoico; *ua*: cuanto, guante, fatua, fragua; *au*: fausto, pausa, cautela, laudable; *ue*: fuego, muela, muestra, puente; *eu*: feudo, Europa, neutro, aneurisma; *uo*: cuota, continuo, acuoso, melifluo; *ou*: bou<sup>1</sup>; *iu*: triunfo, Liuva, enviuda, oriundo; *ui*: buitre, ruido, Luisa, fuiste.

*Triphthongs*.—*iai*: cambiáis, variáis; *iei*: aviéis, apreciéis; *uai*: guapura, amenguáis; *uei*: fragtéis, santigtéis, amortigtéis.

REMARK.—No Spanish words end in any of the diphthongs *au*, *eu*, *ou*, *iu*, except the single instance (*bou*) given above.

9. It has been shown that *y* is equal to *i*. Whenever a diphthong or triphthong ending in *i* comes at the end of a word, the *i* is changed to *y*, as exhibited above:—

hay, there is;	ley, law;	estoy, I am;
muy, very;	Uruguay, Uruguay;	buey, ox.

This, however, is not the general usage in the republics of Chile, Peru, Ecuador, Colombia and Venezuela, where they write *hai*, *lei*, *estoi*, etc.

10. The diphthongs *ue*, *ie*, cannot begin words; *ue* is preceded by *h* (silent)<sup>2</sup>, while the *i* of *ie* is changed to *y*. These changes do not affect the pronunciation, and are merely a requirement of Spanish orthography:—

hueso, bone;	huevo, egg;	huérfano, orphan.
yerro, error;	yendo, going;	yegua, mare.

REMARK.—Words beginning with *hie* do not come under this principle; with them the *h* is, or represents, an original part of the word:—

hiena,	GR. <i>ῥαινα</i> ,	hyena;
hiedra,	LAT. <i>hedera</i> ,	ivy;
hierro,	" <i>ferrum</i> ,	iron;
hiel,	" <i>fel</i> ,	gall;
hielo,	" <i>gelu</i> ,	frost.

<sup>1</sup> This is the only example of this diphthong in the language.

<sup>2</sup> This usage is a relic of an old rule, made necessary long ago when *u* represented both the sound of *v* (consonant) and *u* (vowel), in order to show that in such case *u* had the vowel sound. It is now adhered to merely from custom.



11. Since a diphthong or triphthong is, in pronunciation, treated as a single syllable (§ 4), it requires the written accent under exactly the same circumstances as a single vowel. There are, however, two vowels in a diphthong and three in a triphthong, and the accent-mark can be placed over but one. Its location is as follows:

a. In diphthongs containing a strong vowel, and in triphthongs, the accent-mark belongs over the strong vowel; when placed over the weak one, the diphthong or triphthong is dissolved and becomes two syllables. Thus *au* in *causa*, *Cáucaso*, is a diphthong, but not in *saúco*; *iai* in *variáis* is a triphthong, but not in *temáis*.

b. In diphthongs composed of two weak vowels, the accent-mark belongs over the last vowel; if placed over the first, the diphthong is dissolved. Thus *ui* in *huide*, *fuí*, is a diphthong, but not in *fiúdo*.

REMARK.—The learner is cautioned against allowing the *u* of the diphthong *ui* to be heard as a vowel; it should have the consonant value of the English *w*:—

<i>huir</i> ,	pronounced <i>hweer</i> ,	not <i>loo-ir</i> ,
<i>may</i> ,	" <i>mwoe</i> ,	" <i>moo-eo</i> .
<i>huir</i> ,	" <i>weer</i> ,	" <i>oo-eer</i> ,
<i>constituir</i> ,	" <i>constitweer</i> ,	" <i>constitoo-eer</i> .

12. A terminal vowel of one word, followed by an initial vowel of another word, are pronounced as if both were in the same word. Their coalition, when they form diphthongs (§ 8), is very perplexing to the foreigner on first hearing the spoken language :

<i>y el</i>	pron. <i>yel</i>	<i>mi re usted</i>	pron. <i>mi-reus-ted</i>
<i>mi acción</i>	" <i>míac-ción</i>	<i>oiga usted</i>	" <i>oi-gaus-ted</i>
<i>la unión</i>	" <i>lau-niún</i>	<i>forma usual</i>	" <i>for-mau-sual</i>
<i>su época</i>	" <i>sué-po-ca</i>	<i>una iglesia</i>	" <i>u-nai-gle-sia</i>

REMARK.—The result is the same when the second word commences with a silent *h*:—

<i>su hijo</i>	pron. <i>sui-fo</i>	<i>la husada</i>	pron. <i>lau-sa-da</i>
<i>mi hacha</i>	" <i>mía-cha</i>	<i>una hilera</i>	" <i>u-nai-le-ra</i>

13. Two identical vowels coming together (with or without an intervening *h*) coalesce almost completely:—

sería agradable,	se exprime,	la alarma,	su único,
Caamaño,	que en,	de eso,	mi ida,
mi hija,	azahar,	avahada,	mohoso,
zoología,	dehesa,	Feijoo,	ha hablado.

REMARK.—A punctuation-mark, or a rhetorical pause or *cæsura*, prevents the coalition in the various cases above mentioned.

14. Where several words are formed from the same stem, it will be found that the vowels *e* and *o* are often changed to *ie* and *ue* respectively when they receive the accent in pronunciation; and, conversely, when the diphthong is relieved of the accent, the original vowel resumes its place. This alternation pervades the language, being especially noticeable in the forms taken by Latin words in Spanish, and in the formation of derivatives; but it does not apply in every case. Examples:—

LATIN.	WITH ACCENT.	WITHOUT ACCENT.
<i>Festa.</i>	<i>Fiesta, feast.</i>	<i>Festivo, festive.</i>
<i>Certum.</i>	<i>Cierto, certain.</i>	<i>Certidumbre, certainty.</i>
<i>Refero.</i>	<i>Refiero, I refer.</i>	<i>Referencia, reference.</i>
<i>Arden[t]s.</i>	<i>Ardiente, burning.</i>	<i>Ardentia, phosphorescence.</i>
<i>Cornu.</i>	<i>Cuerno, horn.</i>	<i>Cornudo, horned.</i>
<i>Forum.</i>	<i>Fuero, forum.</i>	<i>Forense, forensic.</i>
<i>Hortus.</i>	<i>Huerto, kitchen-garden.</i>	<i>Hortaliza, garden-truck.</i>
<i>Fon[t]s.</i>	<i>Fuente, spring, fountain.</i>	<i>Fontanoso, containing springs.</i>

15. When an initial *e* or *o* is thus expanded, the resulting diphthongs *ie* and *ue* are respectively changed to *ye* and *hue* (in accordance with the orthographic requirement given at § 10):—

LATIN, <i>equa;</i>	SPANISH, <i>yegua, mare.</i>
“ <i>error;</i>	“ <i>yerro, error.</i>
“ <i>ovum;</i>	“ <i>huevo, egg.</i>
GREEK, <i>ὀρφανός.</i>	“ <i>huérfano, orphan.</i>

### CONSONANTS.

16. *F*, *k'*, *l*, *m*, *n* and *p* have at all times the same value in Spanish as in English:—

fama,	flete,	kilolitro,	kiosko,	colono,
entre,	momo,	narigona,	plata,	pepino.

<sup>1</sup> Although admitted into the Spanish alphabet, *k* is employed only in a few imported words.

17. **B** has nearly the same but not quite so forcible a sound as in English; the lips are not pressed so closely together in pronouncing it, which causes it often to be confounded with **v**:—

balsa,	bebe,	abita,	bobo,	bulto,
abre,	bravo,	blonda,	obsta,	subsiste.

REMARK.—The Spanish Academy Grammar, 1888, (p. 358,) says that “in the greater part of Spain the pronunciation of **b** and **v** is the same, although it ought not to be.”

18. **C** has two sounds. Before **e** and **i** it is pronounced like *th* in *thin*. In all other cases it has the sound of *k*:—

centro,	coco,	acecina,	encima,	ascenso,
coloco,	curo,	crucero,	encanto	esclavo,
acceso,	accidente,	faccioso,	cielo,	reciente.

REMARK.—The pronunciation of **c** and **z** like *th* is comparatively modern, dating from the last half of the XVth century. It is peculiarly Castilian, as distinguished from the common speech of Andalucía, Cataluña and Galicia; it has not found its way into Portuguese, and in Spanish America it is generally regarded as affected and pedantic. In the last-named quarter of the globe the usual pronunciation of **c** before **e** and **i**, and of **z** in all cases, is that of *c* in *city*, *precede*.

**C** is frequently omitted before **c** and **t** in pronunciation, and by the illiterate in writing; as: *acción* for *acción*, *directo* for *directo*. This elision has been the cause of many shortened forms which are now correct; as: *centrato*, *contract*; *objeto*, *object*; *afición*, *affection*.

19. **Ch** is now everywhere pronounced like *ch* in *church*:—

machete,	muchacho,	chinche,	chocha,	chuchoco.
----------	-----------	----------	---------	-----------

REMARK.—**Ch** formerly represented also the *k* sound of the Greek *ch* (*χ*), but this is now written in the manner prescribed for the sound of *k* in the table at the end of this subject.

20. **D** has never the decided English sound of *d*, but has a tinge of the sound of *th* in *then*. Between vowels and at the end of words this sound is more apparent, becoming almost exactly like *th* in *then*:—

dardo,	arde,	doloroso,	adeudo,	duele,
desde,	abridero,	alameda,	marido,	urdidera,
endrino,	adhesivo,	panchudo,	ciudadela,	tendido,
verdad,	usted,	adalid,	talud,	indiano.

REMARK.—Both **d** and **t** before **r** have the forcible sound, obtained by pressing the tongue against the teeth, much heard in the Irish brogue.

D is often elided in familiar speech when occurring between vowels or at the end of words; as: *pegao* for *pegado*, *sentio* for *sentido*, *tomd* for *tomad*, *Madri* for *Madrid*, *usté* (even *ulé*) for *usted*, etc. Two identical vowels coalesce when thus brought together; as: *pue* for *puede*, *to* for *todo*, *na* for *nada*. Of these, the contraction *ado* = *ao* is the most frequent; the remainder are almost wholly restricted to illiterate, or provincial, people.

21. G has two sounds. Before e and i it has the sound of strongly aspirated *h*, nearly like the German *h* in *Buh*. In all other cases it sounds like *g* in *go*:—

regente,	rige,	agiotista,	gengibre,	gigante,
grosero,	pedagogo,	siglo,	galgo,	gusto.

In order to obtain the latter sound of *g* before e and i, u is interpolated between *g* and the vowel. In this case the u is silent; if it is required to be pronounced, a diaresis (¨) is placed over it; as: *agüero*, *vergüenza*:—

guante,	agregue,	guinda,	contiguo,	guisado,
seguida,	agüero,	desagüe,	exigüidad,	lingüista.

22. H has a slight trace of aspiration before the diphthong *ue*. In all other cases it is entirely silent (except in the combined character *ch*):—

buho,	tahur,	tahona,	dehesa,	vehemente,
deshace,	deshecho,	huidero,	huanaca,	ahuehuate.

REMARK.—Vowels separated by *h* are sounded as if no *h* intervened; and the two vowels will be pronounced as a diphthong provided they conform to the requirements of § 10. Hence:—

<i>ahi</i>	is pronounced as a diphthong in	<i>ahilarse</i> ,	but not in	<i>ahineo</i> ;
<i>chu</i>	“ “ “ “ “	<i>rehusaba</i> ,	“ “ “	<i>rehuso</i> ;
<i>ahu</i>	“ “ “ “ “	<i>desahumado</i> ,	“ “ “	<i>desahucio</i> .

23. J has in all cases the same sound which *g* has before e and i:—

enjambre,	jerga,	ajenjo,	jipijapa,	conjunto,
cuaajo,	ajuagas,	juego,	juiclo,	carcaj.

REMARK.—In Chile, Peru, and Ecuador, and indeed throughout most of the Pacific coast of South America, it is common to use *j* in all cases where the guttural sound occurs, hence using it instead of *g* before e and i; as:—

<i>jeneral</i> for <i>general</i> ,	<i>vijía</i> for <i>vigía</i> ,	<i>pájina</i> for <i>página</i> .
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------



**24. Ll** has the sound of the letters *lli* in the English *million* (which is written in Spanish *millón*):—

callando,	gallego,	hallulla,	allí,	polluelo,
llamado,	llenura,	llorona,	lluvioso,	llueca.

*a.* In Andalucía and many parts of Spanish America (as, for instance, Cuba and Mexico) *ll* is pronounced like a double *y* (compare the French *l mouillée*); hence *caballo* = *cabay'yo*, *pollo* = *poy'yo*.

*b.* In words of native Mexican origin, *ll* indicates merely a prolonged sound of *l* (as in Italian or German); hence *pinelli* = *pinolí*, *nopalli* = *nopal* (final *i* after *ll* being frequently silent in such words).

**25. N.** The combination *nc* (hard *c*) and *ng* (hard *g*) are pronounced as in English (*i.e.*, *ng'k* and *ng'g*):—

flanco,	finca,	domingo,	hongo,	tenga.
---------	--------	----------	--------	--------

In Andalucía, Galicia, Cataluña and many parts of Spanish America, notably Cuba, final *n* is given a nasal sound almost identical with the French *an*, *on*, etc.

**26. Ñ'** has the sound of the letters *ni* in the English *pinion* (written in Spanish *piñón*):—

atañe,	ceñudo,	niñito,	almañe,	otoño,
fiame,	fiquesiaque,	señora,	mañana,	Cerdeña.

NOTE.—The mark over *ñ* is called *tilde* in Spanish.

**27. Q** occurs only before *ue* and *ui*, and sounds like *k*, the following *u* being always silent:—

tanque,	arquita,	quillate,	quebranto,	saque,
parroquia,	adquero,	obsequio,	quisquilla,	queche.

**28. R** is rolled more than in English, although but very little more between vowels; as: *ara*, *toro*, *tiren*. It is very forcibly rolled at the beginning and end of words, and after *l*, *n* and *s*:—

lumbre,	cerdo,	bruto,	tomar,	cráter,
rasgar,	honra,	alrededor,	agreste,	corto.

REMARK.—The vowel before *r* is sounded briskly and emphatically, not drawled as in English. Care should be taken to avoid the English tendency of modifying the pure sound of *e* and *o* when they are followed by *r*.

**29. Rr** occurs only between vowels, and has the forcible roll of initial *r*:—

---

<sup>1</sup> The termination *ny* in proper names of Catalán origin should be pronounced like *ñ*; thus *Fortuny* = *Fortiñ*, *Duany* = *Duañ*.

horror,	perro,	corre,	cerrero,	corrutaco,
cachorro,	amarra,	arrogante,	tierra,	barril.

REMARK.—When a word commencing with *r* is compounded with a preceding word ending in a vowel, the *r* is doubled to preserve its value:—  
*pro* + *rata* = *prorrata*;      *contra* + *réplica* = *contrarréplica*.

30. *S* has always the hissing sound of *s* in *say*, *case*:—

lesna,	visita,	solos,	desesperes,	presenta.
--------	---------	--------	-------------	-----------

REMARK.—No word or syllable in Spanish begins with *s* followed by a consonant, and the Spaniards experience great difficulty in uttering such a combination without prefixing a vowel.

*S* at the end of syllables is frequently dropped or pronounced like aspirated *h*, in Andalucía and in districts settled from that province. Thus: *Eh'pañol* for *Español*, *deh'puéh'* for *después*, *do' peseta'* for *dos pesetas*. This is restricted to the uneducated classes, or to familiar language.

31. *T* has the same value as in English, but is pronounced with more vigor:—

trote,	tratante,	tutela,	total,	testarudo.
--------	-----------	---------	--------	------------

The final *tl* of native Mexican words is pronounced *te*; hence *Popocatepetl* = *Popocatepete*, *ocelotl* = *ocelote*.

32. *V* is pronounced as in English, except that the upper teeth do not press the under lip in uttering it:—

válvula,	venga,	vivero,	votivo,	vulgar,
convoca,	avutarda,	vuelvo,	vascuence,	enviste.

REMARK.—*V* is often, although incorrectly, given the sound of *b*.

33. *W* (called *doble u*), although not admitted by the Academy into its alphabet, will be found in foreign proper names; it is then pronounced according to its value in the language from which the word containing it is taken:—

Wágnér = *Vágnér*;

Wáshington = *Udsington*.

34. *X* has the sound of *x* in *wax*, *axle*:—

exacto,	excelente,	exhibe,	axioma,	conexo.
---------	------------	---------	---------	---------

REMARK.—In many words *x* had formerly the guttural sound of the Spanish *j*, but according to modern orthography the *x* in those words is replaced by *j*. Thus what were formerly written *xefe*, *baxo*, *relax*, are now spelled *jefe*, *bajo*, *reloj*<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Relej* (from the Latin *horologium*) is the general term for *time-keeper*, and includes both *watch* and *clock*. The final *j* is now silent—the only instance of a silent letter other than *h* in literary Spanish. The word is therefore sometimes written *reló*; its plural is regular—*relojes*.

The prefix *ex*, when followed by a consonant other than *h*, is often replaced by *es*, as *escolento* for *excelento*. The Spanish Academy strongly condemns this practice; nevertheless it is a very general usage, especially in pronunciation.

**35.** *Y* is a consonant only at the beginning of a word or syllable; it then has the same value as in English, but is more emphatically pronounced:—

yegua,	yesco,	yoduro,	yuyuba,	ayuste,
atalaya,	cayendo,	atribuye,	arroyo,	haya.

In many localities *y* has nearly the sound of *s* in *asure* (the French *j*), and even that of English *j* in *joke*.

**36.** *Z* sounds like *th* in *thin*. With the exception of its own name and a few rare words, it never occurs before *e* or *i*, but only before *a*, *o* and *u*, and the consonants *b*, *c*, *g*, *m* and *n*:—

caza,	zapatazo,	azumbre,	rapazuelo,	Martínez,
voraz,	palidez,	lombriz,	albornoz,	avestruz,
Luzbel,	conozco,	hallazgo,	velozmente,	durazno.

In Andalucía and Spanish America *z* is given the sound of *ss*, as has been explained under *C*.

**37. TABLE SHOWING THE MANNER OF REPRESENTING CERTAIN CONSONANTAL SOUNDS BEFORE THE SEVERAL VOWELS.**

	a	e	i	o	u
Sound of <i>k</i> . . . . .	ca	que	qui	co	cu
Sound of <i>th</i> . . . . .	za	ce	ci	zo	zu
Sound of <i>g</i> . . . . .	ga	gue	gui	go	gu
Sound of <i>'h</i> . . . . .	ja	ge	gi	jo	ju
Sound of <i>kw</i> . . . . .	cua	cue	cui	cuo	
Sound of <i>gw</i> . . . . .	gna	gne	gñi	guo	

**DOUBLE LETTERS.**

**38.** The Spanish Academy has suppressed double letters where one alone is pronounced.

**39.** *C*, *n* and *r* are the only consonants now doubled, and that only when both are sounded; as: *acción*, *ennoblecer*, *perro*.

*a.* *Cc* can occur only before *e* and *i*, and is pronounced *k'ih*; as:—

accesible,	acceder,	occidente,	dirección.
------------	----------	------------	------------

b. Nn occurs only when one of the prepositions *con*, *en*, *in*, or *sin* is prefixed to a word beginning with *n*; as:

connubial,      ennegrecer,      inocuo,      sinnúmero.

c. Rr is restricted to indicating the rolling sound between vowels—a single *r* between vowels being pronounced softly; as:

caro, carro;      pera, perra;      ahora, ahorra;  
vicerector,      carirredondo,      costarricense.

REMARK.—Li is not considered a doubled consonant, but a distinct sign for a particular sound.

40. Latin and English *mm* stand as *nm* in Spanish:—

inmersión, *immersion*;    inmensó, *immense*;    inmortal, *immortal*.

41. Only the strong vowels (*a*, *e*, *o*) occur doubled; as:—

contraalmirante,    lee,    creencia,    coopera.

### THE ACCENT.

42. In Spanish as in English, in words of two or more syllables, some one is pronounced more forcibly than the others. This forcible utterance will be called *accent*; the mark for showing it in writing or print (') will be called the *written accent* or *accent-mark*.

As it would be too laborious in writing to place an accent-mark over every word, and as words of similar terminations are generally accented alike, they have been grouped into classes. Words coming under these classes dispense with the written accent; only the exceptions require it.

43. The various ways of making this classification have caused the changes which have taken place during the last two centuries in the system of written accentuation. The one last adopted (Grammar, Span. Acad., 1888) is the most logical and intelligible. It proceeds upon the following general principles:—

a. The greater part of words ending in a vowel are accented on the penultimate.

b. The greater part of words ending in *n* or *s* are accented on the penultimate. (Because most words ending in *s* are plurals, and the adding of *s* or *es* in the plural does not change the original accent; and most words ending in *n* are parts of verbs, and nearly all parts of verbs are accented on the penultimate.)



c. The greater part of words ending in other consonants than *n* or *s* are accented on the last syllable.

d. Words accented on any syllable before the penultimate are comparatively rare.

44. From which general principles are deduced the following rules governing the written accent:—

1. All words that end in a vowel, or in *n* or *s*, and are accented on the *penultimate* syllable, dispense with the accent-mark:—

toma,	teme,	cursi,	suspiro,	tribu,
imaginan,	margen,	imagen,	volumen,	llegaron,
palomas,	martes,	crisis,	vecinos,	atarlos.

2. All words that end in a consonant other than *n* or *s*, and are accented on the *last* syllable, dispense with the accent-mark:—

alud,	adalid,	carcaj,	peral,	detall,
esperar,	alfiler,	acimut,	altivez,	Tehuantepec,
Echegaray,	convoy,	Abdallah,	Escrích,	Popocatepetl.

REMARK.—Final *y*, although sounded as a vowel, is considered a consonant for the purposes of accentuation.

3. All exceptions to the foregoing rules require an accent-mark over the accented syllable:—

a) contendrá,	café,	baladí,	encontró,	Perú,
alquitrán,	vaivén,	motín,	renglón,	atún,
además,	revés,	pedís,	Berrós,	patatús.
b) césped,	áspid,	ángel,	difícil,	portátil,
mármol,	cónsul,	ítem,	nácar,	cráter,
accésit,	clímax,	alférez,	lápiz,	Cádiz.

REMARK.—Hence *all* words accented on a syllable previous to the penultimate, require an accent-mark:—

ciénaga,	músico,	héroe,	galápagos,	Zúñiga,
crepúsculos,	pirámide,	régimen,	gaznápiros,	lúgubre,
línea,	atmósfera,	paseábamos,	Aréstegui,	dándonoslos.

45. It is to be remembered that a diphthong is formed only by (a) the weak vowels *i* and *u* combined, or (b) one of them combined with one of the strong vowels;

That a triphthong is made only by a strong vowel coming between two weak ones;

That two strong vowels together make two distinct syllables;

That accenting the weak vowel of a diphthong, or the first of the vowels if both are weak, dissolves the diphthong; and

likewise that accenting either weak vowel of a triphthong dissolves it.

**46.** These peculiarities give rise to the following special rules for words containing diphthongs or triphthongs:—

1. The presence of a diphthong or triphthong in a syllable which would naturally be accented, does not affect the accentuation of the word:—

enjuague,	heroico,	envainan,	enviuda,	estatuita,
adeudan,	plocha,	empelne,	arruina,	riachuelos,
aplauden,	cuenca,	Ceuta,	plerden,	temieran.

2. If a syllable requiring the written accent contains a diphthong or triphthong, the accent must be placed over the strong vowel; or, in the case of a diphthong, if both are weak, over the last vowel:—

áurea,	piélago,	éuscaro,	Cáucaso,	diáfano,
huéspedes,	buscapié,	después,	parabién,	semidiós,
estudiáis,	Huáscar,	Benjuí,	órganos,	aguárdame.

**REMARK.**—To this head belong monosyllabic aorist tenses containing diphthongs; as: *fué, fuí, dió, vió.* (For reason, see § 51 *a.*)

3. Whenever the weak vowel of a triphthong or diphthong is accented, or the first vowel when both are weak, the accent-mark must be placed over said vowel to show that there is no diphthong or triphthong, as the case may be:—

ataúd,	país,	raíz,	poesía,	días,
mío,	acentúo,	creído,	tendrían,	continúan,
decíais,	temíais,	roído,	dúo,	leía,
alelías,	aúlla,	saúco,	egoísmo,	período,
increíble,	paraíso,	flúido,	circúito,	baúles.

**47.** The tenses of the verb which bear the accent-mark, retain it when one or more pronouns are added to them (§ 473):—

fuése,	vióse	metíme,	beséla,	atólas,
rogólas,	andaráse,	conmovíla,	pidiómelo,	recibiósele.

**48.** When one or more pronouns are added to any part of a verb so as to shift the accented syllable to the antepenultimate, or still farther from the end, the accent must then be marked:—

caíganse,	comérselo,	aguárdame,	dándomelos,
habiéndoseme,	castíguesemele,	consegúrnoslos,	consiguiéndonoslas.

**49.** When two Spanish words are combined, each retains its original accent, whether written or not; so also an adverb formed from an adjective by adding *-mente*:—

décimoséptimo,	décimotercio,	ferrocarril,	quemacabos.
cortésmente,	naturalmente,	exteriormente,	licitamente.

50. The preposition *á* and the conjunctions *é*, *ó*, *ú*, bear the accent-mark from custom, and not for any orthoepic reason.

51. No words of one syllable bear the written accent, with the exception of the above vowels and the two classes of words following:—

*a.* Monosyllabic aorist forms of verbs. (Because any part of the aorist tense accented on the final syllable must bear the written accent):—

*fuí*, *fué*, *dí*, *ví*, *víó*, *rió*.

*b.* Where there are two monosyllables of identical form, the more emphatic one is distinguished by the written accent. When so used, the accent is termed *diacritic*:—

<i>dé</i> , give, ( <i>subjunctive of dar.</i> )	<i>de</i> , of, from.
<i>él</i> , he, him.	<i>el</i> , the.
<i>há</i> , ago.	<i>ha</i> , has.
<i>há</i> , behold, ( <i>imperative.</i> )	<i>he</i> , I have.
<i>mí</i> , me.	<i>mi</i> , my.
<i>más</i> , more.	<i>mas</i> , but.
<i>sé</i> , I know; be thou.	<i>se</i> , one's self.
<i>sí</i> , yes, one's self.	<i>si</i> , if.
<i>té</i> , tea.	<i>te</i> , thee.
<i>tú</i> , thou.	<i>tu</i> , thy.
<i>vé</i> , go, ( <i>imperative of ir.</i> )	<i>ve</i> , sees, ( <i>present of ver.</i> )

52. The diacritic accent is further used:

*a.* To distinguish demonstrative pronouns used substantively:—

<i>éste</i> , this one.	<i>este</i> , this.
<i>ése</i> , that one.	<i>ese</i> , that.
<i>aqué</i> , that one yonder.	<i>aquel</i> , that [yonder].

*b.* To distinguish the interrogative or exclamatory from the relative use of pronouns and adverbs:—

<i>cómo</i> , how?	<i>como</i> , as.
<i>cuál</i> , which?	<i>cual</i> , which
<i>cuán</i> , how!	<i>cuan</i> , as.
<i>cuándo</i> , when?	<i>cuan</i> do, when.
<i>cuánto</i> , how much?	<i>cuan</i> to, as much.
<i>cuyo</i> , whose?	<i>cuyo</i> , whose.
<i>dónde</i> where?	<i>donde</i> , where.
<i>qué</i> , what?	<i>que</i> , that, which.
<i>quién</i> , who? whom?	<i>quien</i> , who, whom.

c. And finally when any of the pronouns or adverbs in the preceding list are repeated as correlatives:—

Cuándo por una parte, cuándo por otra. Now in one place, now in another.

Quién lloraba, quién rezaba.

One wept, another prayed.

Cuáles leían, cuáles fumaban.

Some were reading, others smoking.

53. There are many pairs of words composed of the same letters, but accented differently both in speaking and writing. In these the accent is not diacritic, but distinguishes the pronunciation. *E.g.*:—

tenía, tenía;

cortes, cortés

anden, andén;

pie, píe;

veras, verás;

pícaron, pícarón.

54. The adverb *aun*, when it follows the verb to which it belongs, is pronounced in two syllables, and the dissolution of the diphthong is shown by the accent-mark: *aún*. When it precedes the verb it is a diphthong and has no accent-mark:—

¿Aun no ha llegado?

No ha llegado aún.

55. *Solo*, an adjective meaning *alone*, *single*, is sometimes used adverbially with the meaning of *only*. Its employment as an adverb is signalized by the written accent: *sólo*.

56. In words of sufficient length to permit it, there is a slight secondary accent on every alternate syllable, counting backwards from the principal accent.—

legislador,

sentimental,

voluntarioso,

imaginativo,

administrativo,

organizaci3n,

modificaciones,

acompañamiento,

desproporcionadísimo.

REMARK.—On the other hand, each component part of a compound word (see § 49) is accented independently:—

omnipotente,

septuagenario,

semidifunto,

monomanía,

ultramarino,

contradictorio,

vicerrector,

especialmente,

espantavillanos.

57. In English one syllable of a word is often accented at the expense of the vowels in the other syllables; thus *reciprocal* is pronounced so that it is impossible to tell what are the precise sounds of the last two vowels. But in Spanish the original quality of a vowel is never changed or lost because it does not receive the principal accent.




Hence, for example, *político*, *naturalmente*, *liberalísima*, *animalito* should not be pronounced *pólitico*, *nattürülmenty*, *lib'rülissymüh*, *animülleeto*; but *poh-les'-lee-coh*, *nah-loo-rah'-main-tey*, *lee-bay-rah'-lee'-see-mah*, *ah-nee-mah'-lee'-loh*.

58. Especial care should be exercised by the English-speaking foreigner in distinguishing the vowel terminations of Spanish words, especially *o* and *a*, pronouncing them clearly, yet without stress when not accented. The change of a final vowel often constitutes the only difference between two inflectional forms of a verb, or two nouns of widely different meaning; while the distinction of gender often depends entirely upon the vowels *o* and *a*. The following pairs of nouns may serve as an example and an exercise:—

<i>abuelo</i> , grandfather.	<i>abuela</i> , grandmother.
<i>barro</i> , mud.	<i>barra</i> , bar, ingot.
<i>copo</i> , snowflake.	<i>copa</i> , wineglass.
<i>cuarto</i> , a room, apartment.	<i>cuarta</i> , a quarter.
<i>dicho</i> , a saying.	<i>dicha</i> , luck.
<i>duelo</i> , a duel.	<i>duela</i> , barrel-stave.
<i>grano</i> , grain.	<i>grana</i> , cochineal.
<i>hilo</i> , thread.	<i>hila</i> , lint.
<i>huelgo</i> , breath, wind.	<i>huelga</i> , strike ( <i>of laboring men</i> ).
<i>músico</i> , musician.	<i>música</i> , music.
<i>naranjo</i> , orange-tree.	<i>naranja</i> , orange ( <i>fruit</i> ).
<i>puerto</i> , port, harbor.	<i>puerta</i> , door, gate.
<i>seno</i> , bosom.	<i>sena</i> , senna.
<i>tino</i> , skill, tact.	<i>tina</i> , vat, bathtub.
<i>velo</i> , veil.	<i>vela</i> , candle.

#### DRILL IN ACCENTUATION.

 The following words will serve both as an exercise and as further examples of the present system of accentuation. The accented vowels are in *italics* when not indicated by the written accent.

Álvarez, Errázuriz, Quezaltenango, Chihuahua, Querétaro, Popocatepetl, Chiquihuitl, Netzahualcoyotl, Cristóbal Colón, Simón Bolívar, Sánchez Barcáiztegui, Amunátegui, Zumalacárregui, Llanquihue, Huan-cavélica, Valparaíso, Montevideo, Pará, Tarapacá, Copiapó, Bogotá, Panamá, Cavité, Haití, Guanahani, Curuguatí, Paisandú, el Perú, el Canadá, el Misisipí.

Saúl, Esaú, Suez, juez, Ruiz, ruín, Luís, Túy, muy, huí, hay, ahí, ají, allí, lei, ley, lee, lea, rey, rei, quíen.

Dios, semidiós, pues, después, bien, también, caen, Caén, gradue, gradúe, acaricie, acaricié, amen, amén, tomas, Tomás, cáscara, cascara, cascará, módulo, modulo, moduló, vario, varío, varió, perpetuo, perpetúo, perpetuó.

Adala, adahala, alamar, alhamar, alharma, árbol, albol, albolol, ahumada, ames, hámez, as, has, haz, huya, ulla, menestar, devolver, revólver, albétar, Gibraltar, suicidio, alguién, ningún, Pirineos, pirinaico, Medite rráneo, averiguaréis, particularizarán, connaturalizaríamos.

### DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

59. A knowledge of this subject is necessary in dividing a word at the end of a line, and also in determining the location of the written accent. The usage differs essentially from the English:—

1. The fundamental principle is to make syllables end in a vowel as far as possible; therefore a single consonant occurring between vowels is joined to the vowel or vowels following:—

ca-ra-co-les, flu-xión, re-ba-ño, fle-xi-bí-li-dad.

2. The characters *ch*, *ll*, *rr* and *ñ*, being considered as simple consonants, follow the above rule:—

mu-cha-cho, ba-ta-lla, bu-lló, ba-rre-ño, ci-ga-rro.

REMARK.—Double *c* and *n* are divided as in English:—

ac-ce-so, ac-clón, en-no-ble-cer, in-ne-ga-ble.

3. Prepositional prefixes form separate syllables, as in

ab-ne-gar, ex-pre-sar, des-a-gra-da-ble, con-ce-bir.

Except when the prefix comes before *s* followed by a consonant, in which case the *s* is joined to the prefix:—

abs-te-ner, cons-tan-te, ins-pi-rar, pers-pi-ca-cia,  
ab-sol-ver, con-sul-tar, in-sis-tir, per-se-guir.

4. Vowels forming a diphthong or triphthong must not be separated:—

jui-cio, a-güe-ro, guar-día, des-pre-ciéis.

Concurrent vowels which cannot form diphthongs or triphthongs, and diphthongs or triphthongs dissolved by the accent-mark, form separate syllables:—

ie-er, re-al, ata-úd, tra-ído, da-rí-aiz.

5. The liquid consonants *l* and *r*, when preceded by any consonant other than *s*, must not be separated from that consonant, except in uniting parts of compound words. Thus:—

ha-blaz,	po-dría,	cé-le-bre,	si-glo,
sub-lu-nar,	sub-ra-yar,	ab-ro-gar,	es-la-bón.

6. Two separable consonants standing between vowels are divided; as:—

ac-ta,	cuer-da,	yer-ba,	chas-co,	pron-to.
--------	----------	---------	----------	----------

7. When a syllable consists of a single vowel, it should not stand alone at the end or beginning of a line, as would be the case in *o-cupar*, *a-rreglar*, *ganzá-a*.

#### CAPITALS AND PUNCTUATION.

60. The use of capitals is the same as in English, with the exceptions that days of the week and months of the year are not ordinarily written with a capital, and that no adjective, whatever be its derivation, begins with a capital, except in titles or at the beginning of a sentence:—

Lunes, martes, miércoles, etc.	Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, etc.
Enero, febrero, marzo, etc.	January, February, March, etc.
El continente sud-americano.	The South American continent.
La bandera chilena.	The Chilean flag.
Las hermosuras sevillanas.	The Seville belles.
Las tablas alfonsíes.	The Alphonsine tables ( <i>astronomical</i> ).

61. But when adjectives of this class are used as nouns, they are generally capitalized:—

Los Sud-Americanos.	The South Americans.
Un Chileno.	A Chilean.
Las Gaditanas.	The women of Cadiz.
Las hermosas Sevillanas.	The beautiful Seville women.

62. The pronoun *yo*, *I*, is written with a small initial except at the beginning of a sentence or quotation:—

Dijo el duque, "Yo, y yo sólo,	Said the duke, "I, and I alone, am
soy el dueño aquí."	master here."

63. The punctuation is the same in both languages, except that in the case of an interrogation or exclamation, an inverted

point (¿) is placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause in addition to the usual sign at the end, as will be seen throughout this work. In this way the reader is apprised in advance as to the nature of a sentence, and can modulate his voice accordingly.

There is a growing tendency to dispense with the inverted mark before words which, by bearing the diacritic accent, show that they are used interrogatively or exclamationally:—

Cuándo será? Quién lo ha dicho? When will it be? Who said it?  
Qué lástima! Qué desdichado soy! What a pity! How unlucky I am!

#### WORDS COMMON TO SPANISH AND ENGLISH.

64. The English language being largely derived from the Latin and Greek through the medium of one or other of the Romance languages, a large number of words have nearly, and in some cases exactly, the same form and meaning in Spanish and English.

The differences, in the words here referred to, have a certain regularity, the understanding of which will greatly assist the learner.

65. The following orthographic peculiarities are to be observed:—

Spanish admits of no doubled consonants except *rr*, *cc*, and, in a few cases, *nn*, (§ 89.)—*ll* not being regarded as a doubled letter, but as the sign for a particular sound; hence *college* = *colegio*. And *cc* occurs only before *e* and *i*; hence *accommodation* = *acomodación*.

The *n* of the prefixes *in* and *con* does not change to *m* before a word beginning with *m*, as is the case in English and Latin; therefore *immersion* = *inmersión*; *immortal* = *inmortal*; *commotion* = *conmoción*.

*Qu* becomes *cu*: *frequent* = *frecuente*; *consequence* = *consecuencia*; *adequate* = *adecuado*.

The diphthongs *æ* and *œ* become *e*: *Cæsar* = *César*; *diæresis* = *diéresis*; *fætus* = *feto*; *œdema* = *edema*.

Initial *s*, followed by a consonant, takes an *e* before *ll*: *sceptic* = *escéptico*; *squadron* = *escuadrón*; *spiral* = *espiral*; *strict* = *estricto*.

66. The following modifications apply only to words of Greek origin:—

*Y* becomes *i*: *typographic* = *tipográfico*; *sympathy* = *simpatía*.

*Ph* becomes *f*: *phonography* = *fonografía*; *philosophic* = *filosófico*.



*Th* and *rh* drop the *h*: *thesis* = *tesis*; *orthographic* = *ortográfico*; *rheumatism* = *reumatismo*; *rhapsody* = *rapsodia*.

Initial *pn*, *ps* and *pt* drop the *p*: *pneumatic* = *neumático*; *psalmist* = *salmista*; *pterocarpus* = *terocarpus*; *Ptolemaic* = *tolemaico*.

*Ch* becomes *c* (except before *e* and *i*, when it is represented by *qu*): *anachronism* = *anacronismo*; *characteristic* = *característico*; *chloroform* = *cloroformo*; *choleric* = *colérico*. But, *chelonian* = *queloniano*; *chimera* = *quimera*; *chiromancy* = *quiromancia*.

67. The following is a list of the principal terminations common to both languages, embracing, with proper attention to the above orthographic changes, over 5,000 Spanish words:—

☞ The accentuation is uniform throughout the entire class of words formed with any given termination. Those indicated by an asterisk (\*) regularly bear the accent-mark on the antepenultimate syllable. The remainder require none, unless one is shown on the termination or in the sample words.

## NOUNS.

### GENDER OF THE CLASS.

<i>f.</i>	ADE,	becomes <i>ada</i> : <i>brigada</i> , <i>parada</i> .
<i>m.</i>	AGE,	" <i>aje</i> : <i>equipaje</i> , <i>personaje</i> .
<i>m.</i>	AL,	no change: <i>canal</i> , <i>metal</i> , <i>coral</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ALT,	adds <i>o</i> : <i>asfalto</i> , <i>basalto</i> , <i>cobalto</i> .
<i>m.</i>	AN,	" <i>o</i> : <i>meridiano</i> , <i>veterano</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ANT,	" <i>e</i> : <i>instante</i> , <i>litigante</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ARIAN,	becomes <i>ario</i> : <i>centenario</i> , <i>unitario</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ATE,	" <i>ato</i> : <i>sulfato</i> , <i>carbonato</i> , <i>clorato</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ATOR,	" <i>ador</i> : <i>orador</i> , <i>regulador</i> .
<i>m.</i>	CE,	" <i>cio</i> : <i>palacio</i> , <i>precipicio</i> , <i>comercio</i> .
<i>m.</i>	*CLE,	" <i>culo</i> : <i>círculo</i> , <i>obstáculo</i> .
<i>m.</i>	CT,	adds <i>o</i> : <i>contacto</i> , <i>efecto</i> , <i>producto</i> .
<i>f.</i>	CY,	becomes <i>cia</i> : <i>aristocracia</i> , <i>potencia</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ENT,	adds <i>e</i> : <i>accidente</i> , <i>agente</i> , <i>regente</i> .
<i>m.</i>	GE,	becomes <i>gio</i> : <i>privilegio</i> , <i>vestigio</i> .
<i>m.</i>	*GEN,	adds <i>o</i> : <i>oxígeno</i> , <i>nitrógeno</i> .
<i>m.</i>	*GRAPH,	becomes <i>grafo</i> : <i>autógrafo</i> , <i>fonógrafo</i> .
<i>f.</i>	*IC,	adds <i>a</i> : <i>música</i> , <i>lógica</i> , <i>retórica</i> .
<i>f.</i>	INE,	becomes <i>ina</i> : <i>doctrina</i> , <i>disciplina</i> .
<i>f.</i>	ION,	(not preceded by <i>t</i> .) no change. <i>confusión</i> , <i>religión</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ISK,	becomes <i>isco</i> : <i>asterisco</i> , <i>basilisco</i> .
<i>m.</i>	ISM,	adds <i>o</i> : <i>despotismo</i> , <i>paganismo</i> .
<i>m.</i>	IST,	" <i>a</i> : <i>artista</i> , <i>dentista</i> , <i>florista</i> .

GENDER OF  
THE CLASS.

m.	ITE,	becomes ito: granito, lignito, nitrito.
m.	MENT,	adds o: fragmento, monumento.
m.	*METER,	becomes metro: anemómetro, gasómetro.
f.	MONY,	" monia: ceremonia, paraimonia.
f.	NCE,	" ncia: abundancia, violencia, provincia.
m.	OID,	adds e: alcaloide, celuloide, esferoide.
m.	OR,	no change: actor, horror, vapor.
f.	OSE,	becomes osa: glucosa, tuberosa.
m.	OT,	adds a: despota, patriota.
m.	*PHONE,	becomes fono: teléfono, xilófono.
m.	RY,	" rio: adversario, misterio, directorio.
m.	SCOPE,	" scopio: microscopio, telescopio.
f.	SIS,	no change: crisis, sinopsis, tesis.
m.	{ TER, } { TRE, }	become tro: centro, ministro, pilastro.
f.	TION,	becomes ción <sup>1</sup> : condición, nación.
f.	TUDE,	" tud: amplitud, multitud, solitud.
f.	TY,	(Latin <i>tas</i> ,) becomes dad: eternidad, sociedad.
m.	*ULE,	becomes ulo: cápsulo, glóbulo.
f.	URE,	" ura: figura, agricultura.
m.	UM,	" o: ateneo, museo, geranio, premio.
m.	US,	" o: aparato, censo, genio.
f.	Y,	(not otherwise provided for above,) becomes ia: ana- tomía, energía, geografía, zoología.

ADJECTIVES.<sup>2</sup>

ACIOUS,	becomes az: fugaz, sagaz, tenaz.
AL,	no change: moral, central, natural.
AN,	adds o: pagano, americano.
ANT,	adds e: abundante, dominante.
AR,	no change: circular, solar.
ARIOUS,	becomes ario: vicario, precario.
ARY,	" ario: ordinario, contrario.
ATE,	" ado: duplicado, ornado.
BLE,	no change: notable, noble, soluble.
CT,	adds o. perfecto, intacto, compacto.

<sup>1</sup> So, also, when another termination is added to *-tion*; e.g., *diccionario*, *proteccionista*, *seccional*.

<sup>2</sup> The student need scarcely be told that it is only the masculine singular of adjectives, and the infinitives of verbs, which are given here.

ENSE,	becomes enso: denso, inmenso.
ENT,	adds e: evidente, prudente.
*EOUS,	becomes eo: alcáreo, erróneo, ígneo.
*FEROUS,	" fero: aurífero, carbonífero.
*IC,	} become ico: público, satírico.
*ICAL,	
*ID,	adds o: rápido, sólido, válido.
ILE,	becomes il: frágil, dócil, fértil.
INE,	" ino: aguilino, felino.
ITE,	" ito: definitivo, erudito.
IVE,	" ivo: activo, decisivo.
LENT,	adds o: violento, turbulento, virulento.
NAL,	becomes no: diurno, eterno.
OCIOUS,	" oz: atroz, feroz, precoz.
ORY,	" orio: preparatorio, satisfactorio.
OSE,	" oso: jocosos, verboso.
OUS,	" oso: luminoso, menstruoso.
TIAL,	" cial: substancial, potencial.
UND,	adds o: moribundo, rubicundo.
URE,	becomes uro: puro, futuro.

## VERBS.

ATE,	becomes ar: calcular, investigar.
FY,	" ficar: fortificar, magnificar.
IZE,	" izar: civilizar, organizar.
E.	A great many verbs of this termination, which come to us through the French, may be turned into Spanish by changing <i>e</i> to <i>ar</i> : determinar, curar, causar, continuar, admirar, combinar, imaginar, observar, etc., etc..

REMARK.—The learner is cautioned against supposing that all English words having the terminations above specified, can be turned into Spanish by the respective changes indicated; or that all words spelled alike in both languages have the same meaning: e.g., Spanish *pan* (Latin *panis*) means *bread*; *red* (Latin *rete*), a *net*; *moroso* (from Latin *mora*), *dilatory*.

68. Hereafter words which have the same form and meaning in both languages, or which can be changed from one language to the other by attention to the preceding directions, will appear in the exercises in *italics*, and are not to be sought in the vocabularies.

REMARK.—In the exercises for translation into Spanish, the following special devices will be employed:—

a. When a Spanish noun is identical with the English, and belongs to none of the classes in the list, its gender will be indicated in parenthesis after the English noun; thus: She has bought a dress of black *merino* (*m.*); that is an excellent *idea* (*f.*).

b. The position of an accent-mark, required by identical words not belonging to any of the classes, will be indicated by a numeral in parenthesis, *viz.* (1) for final syllable, (2) for penultimate, and (3) for antepenultimate; thus: *Panama* (*f.* 1), *condor* (*m.* 2), *peninsula* (*f.* 3).

c. Verbs which do not come under any of the classes in the list, when appearing in *italics* in the exercises, are to be understood as regular and of the first conjugation; thus *exhort* would become *exhortar*; *present*, *presentar*; *form*, *formar*; etc.

 The orthographic peculiarities above enumerated (§§ 65, 66) are to be observed in all cases.



## PART II.

### PRELIMINARY LESSONS.

---

#### LESSON I.

##### FIRST PRINCIPLES: ARTICLE AND NOUN.

69. The articles in Spanish (as in all the languages of the European Continent which have any) vary in form to indicate gender and number. The following is the singular:—

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
DEFINITE ARTICLE:	<b>el</b> , the;	<b>la</b> , the.
INDEFINITE ARTICLE:	<b>un</b> , an <i>or</i> a;	<b>una</b> , an <i>or</i> a.

70. Masculine nouns require a masculine, feminine nouns a feminine, article:—

<b>El</b> hombre, the man.	<b>La</b> niña, the girl.
<b>Un</b> hombre, a man.	<b>Una</b> niña, a girl.

EXCEPTION.—Feminine nouns beginning with accented **a** or **ha** require the form **el** of the article, instead of **la**, when it immediately precedes. (This is merely to avoid the concurrence of two distinctly pronounced **a**'s, and does not by any means change the gender of the noun.):—

<b>El</b> agua, the water.	<b>El</b> arpa, the harp.
<b>El</b> hacha, the axe.	<b>El</b> aya, the governess.

*but*

<b>La</b> ambición, the ambition.	<b>La</b> alhaja, the jewel.
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

REMARK.—This change is not made before adjectives of like form:—  
**la alta estimación**, *the high esteem*.

71. There are in Spanish three genders: the masculine, the feminine and the neuter. The latter applies only to pronouns, adjectives and participles. (See § 296.) Every noun, whether denoting an animate or an inanimate object, or an abstract idea, is either masculine or feminine.

### Vocabulary.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
amigo, friend.	ara, altar.
burro, donkey.	botella, bottle.
faro, lighthouse.	casa, house.
grano, grain.	colina, hill.
jardín, garden.	costa, coast.
mapa, map.	fuelle, fountain.
rey, king.	isla, island.
saco, sack.	mesa, table.
víctima, victim.	reina, queen.
á, to, at.	con, with.
de, of, from.	en, in, on.
	ó, or.
	y, and.

Spanish nouns are without case-endings, and have the same forms whether used as subjects or as objects. (In this respect Spanish differs from Latin, but agrees with all the modern languages of Latin origin.)

72. When the masculine singular form of the definite article, *el*, comes immediately after the prepositions *á* or *de*, the *e* is elided, and *á el*, *de el*, become respectively *al*, *del*. (These are now the only contractions of the kind in the language.):—

al burro; al faro.	to the donkey; at the lighthouse.
del víctima; del jardín.	of the victim; from the garden.

73. There is no separate form for the possessive in Spanish. The preposition *de*, preceding the name of the possessor, is used instead. The name of the thing possessed is put before that of the possessor:—

El violín del artista.	The artist's violin.
La casa del amigo del profesor.	The professor's friend's house.
Un víctima de la ambición del rey.	A victim of the king's ambition.

### EXERCISE I.

- a) 1. El rey en el *palacio*; el *profesor* en el *colegio*; el *actor* en el *teatro*.
2. El *continente* de *África*; la *península* de *Arabia*; el *istmo* de *Suez*; la

isla de Cuba; la república de Colombia; la universidad de Salamanca; la catedral de Toledo. 3. El valor del general; la paciencia y perseverancia del inventor. 4. El comandante del arsenal; el presidente de la comisión; el curador del museo; el director del observatorio. 5. Un hombre con una hacha; una niña con una arpa; un violinista con un violín; un burro con un saco de grano. 6. Un faro en la costa; una casa en la colina; un mapa en la mesa. 7. El jaguar ó tigre de América.

b) 1. The interior of the king's palace. 2. A fountain of water in the artist's garden. 3. A lighthouse on a promontory of the coast. 4. From the aqueduct to the house on the hill. 5. A bottle of medicine on the governess's table. 6. A girl with a chrysanthemum (8). 7. A man with a rifle (m.) and a revolver (m. 2). 8. The queen with the jewel. 9. A donkey with a sack. 10. Grain in the sack. 11. The victim on the altar. 12. At the queen's disposition. 13. At the minister's discretion.

## LESSON II.

### THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

74. In the plural, the definite article has the following forms, agreeing with the nouns which they accompany:—

#### MASCULINE.

Los, the.

Los hombres, the men.

#### FEMININE.

Las, the.

Las niñas, the girls.

75. The plurals of all Spanish nouns, pronouns, adjectives and participles end in s. We shall here consider the nouns under the following subdivisions:—

1. Nouns ending in an unaccented vowel or diphthong, merely add s:—

La casa, the house.

El indio, the Indian.

La tribu, the tribe.

El agua, the water.

Las casas, the houses.

Los indios, the Indians.

Las tribus, the tribes.

Las aguas, the waters.

REMARK.—The monosyllables *pie* and *fe* are treated as belonging to this class:—

El pie, the foot.

La fe, the faith.

Los pies, the feet.

Las fes, the faiths.

2. Those ending in a consonant insert *e* as a connecting vowel before adding *s*:—

El jardín, the garden.	Los jardines, the gardens.
El autor, the author.	Los autores, the authors.
El mártir, the martyr.	Los mártires, the martyrs.
El canal, the canal.	Los canales, the canals.

REMARK.—Final *c* is changed to *qu*, to preserve the hard sound before *e*; and final *z* is changed to *c* (§ 37):—

El frac, the dress-coat (swallow-tail).	Los fraques, the dress-coats.
El elac, the opera-hat (collapseable).	Los claquas, the opera-hats.
La cruz, the cross.	Las cruces, the crosses.

3. Those ending in an accented vowel likewise add *es*:—

El bajá, the pasha.	Los bajases, the pashas.
El rubí, the ruby.	Los rubíes, the rubies.
El bambú, the bamboo.	Los bambúes, the bamboos.

EXCEPTION.—Words adopted from or through the French merely add *s*; e.g.: *bufés, cabrioléas, cafés, corsés, chacós, mamás, menús, sofás*, etc., etc.

4. Final diphthongs ending in *y* require the addition of *es*:—

El rey, the king.	Los reyes, the kings.
El maguay, the century-plant.	Los magueyes, the century-plants.
El convey, the escort.	Los convoyes, the escorts.

5. Unaccented endings in *is* and *es* in words of more than one syllable; pure Latin terms; and family names ending in *s* not accented on the last syllable, admit of no change. (The article suffices to distinguish the plural from the singular.):—

El análisis, the analysis.	Los análisis, the analyses.
El amarilis, the amaryllis.	Los amarilis, the amaryllids.
El lunes, Monday.	Los lunes, Mondays.
El déficit, the deficit.	Los déficits, the deficits.
El ultimátum, the ultimatum.	Los ultimátum, the ultimata.
Martínez (a family name).	Los Martínez, the Martinezes.

6. The addition of *s* or *es* in forming the plural does not change the natural accent of the words. But the addition of *es* does affect the *written* accent of words ending in *n*, *s* or an accented strong vowel; for as it adds another syllable, it throws the accented syllable one place farther from the end:—



El cañón, the cannon.

El joven, the young man.

La margen, the margin, border,  
bank (of stream).

El semidiós, the demigod.

El bajá, the pasha.

El calicó, the calico.

Los cañones, the cannons.

Los jóvenes, the young men.

Las márgenes, the margins, borders,  
banks.

Los semidioses, the demigods.

Los bajaes, the pashas.

Los calicoes, the calicoes.

REMARK.—There are two exceptions: *el carácter*, *character*, which in the plural is *caracteres*; and *el régimen*, *government*, *rule*, which becomes *regímenes*.

### Vocabulary.

El bote, the boat.

El café, the coffee; the café.

El diamante, the diamond.

El disfraz, the disguise.

El hijo, the son.

El lago, the lake.

El puerto, the harbor.

sí, yes;

hay, there is, there are.

entre, among, between.

La biblioteca, the library.

La estatua, the statue.

La hacienda, the farm.

La novela, the novel.

La patata<sup>1</sup>, the potato.

La plaza, the [public] square.

La población, the town.

no, no.

¿hay? is there? are there?

¿qué? what? which?

### EXERCISE II.

a) 1. ¿Qué hay en la mesa? 2. Hay una botella de *laudano*. 3. ¿Qué hay en el jardín? 4. En el jardín hay *rosas*, *crisantemos*, *gladiolos*, *tuberosas*, y *geranios*. 5. ¿Hay *alcohol* ó *glicerina* en la botella? 6. Hay *benzina* en la botella. 7. Hay una plaza en el *centro* de la población, y en la plaza hay una estatua de *Simón Bolívar*. 8. Entre los *Andes* y la costa hay poblaciones y haciendas. 9. ¿Hay en la biblioteca una *biografía* de *Cortés*? 10. Sí; y hay una *autobiografía* del *Inca Garcilaso de la Vega*. 11. Los *continentes* de *Asia* y de *África*; los *territorios* de *Alaska* y *Arizona*; los lagos de *Nicaragua* y de *Managua*; las *universidades* de *Lima* y de *Santiago*. 12. Los *negros* del interior de *África*; los *indios* de la costa de *Venezuela*.

b) 1. At the foot of the *Andes* (m.). 2. In the *mines* of *Siberia*. 3. Among the *Indians* of the *provinces* of *Atacama*, in the *Republic* of *Chile*. 4. There is a *canal* between the lakes. 5. The *opinions* of the *senators*. 6. The *palaces* of the *Incas* (m.). 7. The *fortifications* of the harbor of *Montevideo*. 8. The *dramas* (m.) of *Moratin*; the *novels* of *Pereda*. 9. The young men's dress-coats. 10. The pasha's rubies. 11. The pashas'

<sup>1</sup> In Spanish America, *la papa*.

diamonds. 12. The *professors* of *geology* and of *mineralogy*. 13. The *importance* of the *agent's ideas*. 14. The *variety* of the *actor's disguises*. 15. The demigods of the Romans. 16. There is a boat on the lake and a girl in the boat. 17. Is there grain in the sack? 18. No, there are potatoes in the sack.

### LESSON III.

#### THE PERSONAL PRONOUN AS SUBJECT.

76. The Spanish language originally had only two personal pronouns of the second person: *tú*, *thou*, for the singular, and *vos*, *ye*, for the plural. At present the following are in use:—

Pronouns of the Second Person.	SING.	<i>Tú</i> ,	Thou, you.
		<i>Vos</i> ,	You.
		<i>Usted</i> ,	You.
	PLUR.	<i>Vosotros</i> , ( <i>masc.</i> )	Ye, you.
		<i>Vosotras</i> , ( <i>fem.</i> )	
		<i>Ustedes</i> ,	

77. *Tú*, *thou*, (generally to be translated *you*,) is used only: in sacred or poetical style; when addressing near relations, very intimate friends, small children, and animals; and by a Spaniard in speaking to servants. (The foreigner should not treat servants so familiarly.)

78. *Vos*, *you*, (now used only as a singular, although still joined to the second person plural of verbs,) is employed: in representation of antique style; by children to elderly relatives; in anger or contempt, to inferiors; in translations from English and French, to represent the second personal address of those languages; and interchangeably with *tú* in addressing the Deity.

79. *Vosotros*, *-as*, (formed by adding *otros*, *-as*, to *vos*,) is the plural of *tú* and *vos*, and is used in addressing two or more persons to whom *tú* or *vos* would apply. It is, moreover, sometimes used by public speakers and in the pulpit.

80. *Usted* (*plur. ustedes*) represents the conventional English *you* under all circumstances. It is the universal address of

society, and the only one the foreigner is ever likely to employ in addressing adults or to hear addressed to himself. It is a contraction of the obsolete *vuestra merced*, *your grace*, (*plur. vuestras mercedes*), and therefore requires the verb in the third person, as would be the case in English if we were to use the same way of addressing people.

Compare for example the usage in speaking to a judge or nobleman: *your Honor has said . . . ; does your Lordship believe . . . ?*

It is generally abbreviated to *V.* or *Vd.* for the singular, and *VV.* or *Vds.* for the plural. These signs are always to be read *usted*, *ustedes*, just as *Mr.* in English is read *mister*, and *M.* in French, *monsieur*.

81. The remaining personal pronouns are:—

Yo,	I
Él,	He, } <i>it</i>
Ella,	She, }
Nos,	We.
Nosotros, ( <i>maso.</i> ) }	Wa.
Nosotras, ( <i>fem.</i> ) }	
Ellos, ( <i>maso.</i> ) }	They.
Ellas, ( <i>fem.</i> ) }	

82. *Yo*, like its English equivalent *I*, does not distinguish gender. It is not written with a capital initial except at the beginning of a sentence.

83. *Él*, *he*, has the feminine form *ella*, *she*. Since all Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine, the English *it*, representing a noun, must be rendered by either *él* or *ella*.

84. *Nos* is no longer used except by sovereigns, tribunals, officers of Church and State, etc., when speaking or writing in their official capacity, and by authors and editors, in the same manner as the English royal and editorial *we*.

85. *Nosotros*, *-as*, (formed by adding *otros*, *-as*, to *nos*), is to be used for *we* in its proper sense, the masculine form referring to males, the feminine to females; the masculine *nosotros* is used in speaking as the mouthpiece of a mixed company.

86. *Ellos* applies to men and to mixed companies; *ellas*, to females only.



~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

IN THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

the *Journal of the American Medical Association* (JAMA) in 1961, and the *Journal of the American Psychiatric Association* (JAPA) in 1962. The *Journal of the American Medical Association* (JAMA) in 1961, and the *Journal of the American Psychiatric Association* (JAPA) in 1962.

\_\_\_\_\_

sack

12

THE PERSONAL

Spanish language

of the second  
the plural At

the plural At

100

and Person.

100

How, (general)

poetical  
friends,

speaking to  
so familiar

now, (now

second part  
of article

OF CONF

French, to  
; and it

1998

FOR, 21.

or you  
member

nosotros

11 circ.



ene una colección de *fósiles*. 14. ¿Quién  
Yo tengo la "Historia de la Independencia"

friends. 2. You (*pl.*) have *ambition* and  
bouquets of *roses* and *geraniums*. 4. The  
cup. 5. Who wants *chocolate*? 6. We (*f.*)  
ant coffee. 7. He wants wine and I want water.  
and tobacco. 9. Who has a map of *Costa*  
*Costa Rica* and *Nicaragua*. 11. What is there  
To-day there are *magnolias* in the garden.  
ey now and men too. 14. The *professor* of  
a *mussum*. 15. Who wants flour? 16. The  
flour and yeast also.

# LESSON IV.

## POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

is regularly formed in Spanish by placing the  
object (which in English is done only in the  
*be, have,* and the auxiliaries *will, can, may,*

### INTERROGATIVE ORDER.

	¿tengo yo?	have I?
	¿tienes tú?	hast thou?
	¿tiene él?	has he?
	¿tiene ella?	has she?
	¿tiene Vd.?	have you?
3.	¿tenemos nosotros?	have we?
	¿tenemos nosotras?	
3rs.	¿tenéis vosotros?	have ye?
	¿tenéis vosotras?	
	¿tienen ellos?	have they?
pers.	¿tienen ellas?	
	¿tienen Vds.?	have you?
pers.	¿quiere yo?	do I want?
1 pers.	¿quieres tú?	dost thou want?
	¿quiere él?	does he want?
2d pers.	¿quiere ella?	does she want?
	¿quiere Vd.?	do you want?
	¿queremos nosotros?	do we want?
1st pers.	¿queremos nosotras?	
	¿queréis vosotros?	do ye want?
2d pers.	¿queréis vosotras?	
	¿quieren ellos?	do they want?
3d pers.	¿quieren ellas?	
	¿quieren Vds.?	do you want?

REMARK.—In this regard Spanish agrees with the English usage of a few centuries ago; *e.g.*: "Ride you this afternoon? . . . Goes Fleance with you?" (MACBETH, *Act iii, Sc. 1.*) The use of *do* in interrogations is comparatively modern.

 In Spanish there is no auxiliary corresponding to the English *do*, in any of its parts.

89. When an interrogative word (equivalent to *who*, *why*, *how*, etc.) is used, it begins the sentence, just as in English:—

¿Qué quiere el artista?	What does the artist want?
¿Quién tiene el diccionario?	Who has the dictionary?
¿Por qué quiere la criada levadura?	Why does the servant-girl want yeast?

90. In the absence of such an interrogative word, the verb stands first. Then, if the subject be a personal pronoun, it comes next in order:—

¿Quiere ella un ramillete de gladiolos?	Does she want a bouquet of gladioli?
¿Tienen Vds. un bote?	Have you a boat?

91. But, when the subject is not a pronoun, the object is more elegantly placed before it, provided the clause containing the object is not longer than that containing the subject:—

¿Tiene vino el hombre?	Has the man any wine?
¿Tiene el hombre una botella de vino?	Has the man a bottle of wine?
¿Tiene una botella de vino la criada del profesor de arqueología?	Has the servant of the professor of archeology a bottle of wine?
¿Tiene la criada del profesor de arqueología un ejemplar del catálogo de la Biblioteca Nacional?	Has the servant of the professor of archeology a copy of the catalogue of the National Library?

92. As the terminations of Spanish verbs vary for each person, the subject pronouns are usually dispensed with, except when required for emphasis or to prevent vagueness:—

Tengo una hacienda.	I have a farm.
Yo tengo una hacienda.	I have a farm.
¿Quién quiere café y quién chocolate? Yo quiero café y ella quiere chocolate.	Who wants coffee and who chocolate? I want coffee and she wants chocolate.

¿Tiene el general un revólver? Sí, tiene.	Has the general a revolver? Yes, he has.
¿Qué quiere?	What does he want?
¿Qué quiere él?	What does <i>he</i> want?

REMARK.—Vd. is not omitted unless it has previously appeared in the sentence, and no ambiguity would result from its omission.

93. To render a verb negative, *no* is placed immediately before it:—

¿No tiene ella una novela?	Has she not } a novel? Hasn't she }
Yo no tengo diamantes.	I have no } diamonds. I haven't any }
El burro no quiere agua.	The donkey does not want water.
¿No tiene V. un revólver?	Have you not } a revolver? Haven't you }
No tenemos dinero.	We have no } money. We haven't any }

94. In the absence of a verb, *no* follows a pronoun, or an adverb expressing time or place:—

Yo no. Él no. Ellas no.	Not I. Not he. Not they.
Ahora no. Hoy no. Aquí no.	Not now. Not to-day. Not here.

95. It is not usual to employ a word corresponding to the English *any* or *some* in such connections as the following:—

¿Tiene V. azúcar?	Have you <i>any</i> sugar?
¿Hay geranios en el jardín?	Are there <i>any</i> geraniums in the garden?
No tenemos dinero.	We haven't <i>any</i> money.
¿Quieren Vds. chocolate?	Do you want <i>some</i> chocolate?
No, queremos café.	No, we want <i>some</i> coffee.

NOTE.—It will be seen, therefore, that the French “partitive construction” has no counterpart in Spanish.

96. The superfluous *got*, often heard in colloquial English, is not represented in Spanish:—

¿Tiene Vd. un fósforo?	Have you got a match?
¿Quién tiene el diccionario?	Who's got the dictionary?
Yo también tengo una hacienda.	I've got a farm too.

97. For the sake of avoiding the concurrence of two like sounds, *y*, and, is changed to *e* when the following word begins

with *i* or *hi*, and similarly *ó*, *or*, becomes *ú* before initial *o* or *ho*:—

Español é inglés.	Spanish and English.
Padre é hijo.	Father and son.
Plata ú oro.	Silver or gold.
Vida ú honor.	Life or honor.

REMARK.—*Y*, however, does not change before words beginning with *hie* or with *y*; as:—

Madera y hierro.	Wood and iron.
Él y yo.	He and I.

### Vocabulary.

El azúcar, the sugar.	La ciudad, the city.
El coronel, the colonel.	La clase, the kind, class.
El ejemplar, the copy (of a book).	La gota, the gout.
El fósforo, the match.	La hija, the daughter.
El libro, the book.	La leche, the milk.
El soldado, the soldier.	La pipa, the pipe.
El té, the tea.	La poesía, the poetry, poem.
El príncipe, the prince.	La princesa, the princess.
¿Por qué? why?	Porque, because.
¿Sí señor, yes sir.	No señor, no sir.

### EXERCISE IV.

a) 1. ¿No tenemos vino? 2. No tenemos vino. 3. ¿Qué quiere el coronel? 4. Quiere un fósforo. 5. ¿Quiere soldados el Presidente? 6. Sí, quiere soldados y dinero también. 7. ¿Quiere Vd. café ó chocolate? 8. Quiero café; la niña quiere chocolate. 9. Y ¿qué quiere el aya de la niña? 10. Ella quiere té y azúcar. 11. ¿Quiere el burro también té y azúcar? 12. No, el burro quiere grano y agua. 13. ¿Tiene un mapa el coronel? 14. Sí señor, tiene un mapa de la isla de la Trinidad. 15. ¿Tiene faros el puerto de Valparaíso? 16. Sí, tiene faros y fortificaciones. 17. La ciudad de Lima tiene plazas con estatuas y fuentes. 18. ¿Qué clase de libros quiere la hija del coronel? 19. Quiere novelas, dramas, y poesías. 20. ¿Qué quieren los indios? 21. Quieren dinero ó tabaco. 22. ¿Quiere vino el príncipe? 23. Hoy no. 24. ¿Qué libro tiene Vd.? 25. Tengo un ejemplar de la "Historia de la Revolución de Colombia," por (by) Rostrepo.

b) 1. What rose does the general's daughter want? 2. She wants a rose from the artist's garden. 3. Why does the violinist's friend want medicine? 4. Because he has the gout. 5. What kind of medicine does he want? 6. He wants a bottle of liniment. 7. Has the minister's house got balconies? 8. Yes sir, it has balconies and towers. 9. Hasn't the professor



of history got a library? 10. Yes sir, he has a library and a *museum*. 11. What has the princess? 12. She has palaces and jewels. 13. Do you want the princess? 14. No sir, not I. 15. What kind of coffee do you want? 16. I do not want any coffee; I want some *chocolate*. 17. What has the soldier? 18. He has a pipe and tobacco and wants a match.

## LESSON V.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. CONJUNCTIONS **MAS**, **PERO**, AND **SINO**.

98. The possessive pronouns in Spanish agree with the nouns which they accompany, just as do the articles. Their forms are as follows:—

SING.	Mi.	}	My.
PLUR.	Mia.		
SING.	Tu.	}	Thy.
PLUR.	Tua.		
SING.	Su.	}	His, her, your, their, its.
PLUR.	Sua.		
SING.	Nuestro, -a.	}	Our.
PLUR.	Nuestros, -as.		
SING.	Vuestro, -a.	}	Your.
PLUR.	Vuestros, -as.		

NOTE.—*Mi*, *tu*, and *su* distinguish number but not gender; *nuestro* and *vuestro* distinguish both gender and number.

99. These pronouns are designated as follows:—

Possessive pronoun of the 1st person, singular....*mi*.

"	"	"	"	2d	"	"	.... <i>tu</i> .
"	"	"	"	3d	"	"	.... <i>su</i> .
"	"	"	"	1st	"	plural	.... <i>nuestro</i> .
"	"	"	"	2d	"	"	.... <i>vuestro</i> .
"	"	"	"	3d	"	"	.... <i>su</i> .

REMARK.—The possessive pronouns of the second person, *tu* and *vuestro*, corresponding respectively to the personal pronouns *tú* and *vosotros* (or *vos*), will not be used in the Exercises. (See § 80.)

100. In common with the other languages of Latin origin, the Spanish possessive pronouns agree with the thing possessed:—

Mi casa; mis casas.

Nuestro agente; nuestra criada.

Su hacienda.

Sus haciendas.

My house; my houses.

Our agent; our servant-girl.

His farm, her farm, their farm.

His farms, her farms, their farms.

101. As will be seen, there is but one possessive pronoun for both the singular and plural of the third person; and (since *usted* replaces *tú*, *vos*, and *vosotros*) it must also do duty for the second person:—

<i>Su, plur. sus.</i>	{	His.
		Her.
		Its.
		Their.
		Your.

102. As *su* corresponds to so many different nominatives, it is often equivocal; and whenever there is danger of ambiguity the possessor requires to be more clearly specified. This is done by replacing *su* by the definite article before the noun, and placing the appropriate personal pronoun, preceded by *de*, after the noun:—

SINGULAR.	{	La casa de él.	His..... house.
		La casa de ella.	Her..... house.
		La casa de ellos.	Their ( <i>masc.</i> ) house.
		La casa de ellas.	Their ( <i>fem.</i> ) house.
		La casa de usted.	Your ( <i>sing.</i> ) house.
		La casa de ustedes.	Your ( <i>plur.</i> ) house.
PLURAL.	{	Las casas de él.	His..... houses.
		Las casas de ella.	Her..... houses.
		Las casas de ellos.	Their ( <i>masc.</i> ) houses.
		Las casas de ellas.	Their ( <i>fem.</i> ) houses.
		Las casas de usted.	Your ( <i>sing.</i> ) houses.
		Las casas de ustedes.	Your ( <i>plur.</i> ) houses.

REMARK.—As in Spanish all existing things are either masculine or feminine, *its*, in the above connection, must be *de él* or *de ella*.

103. The learner can easily judge when the ambiguity would be such as to require *de él*, *de ella*, etc., which is really very seldom.<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, *de V.*, or *de VV.*, is always employed, both for clearness and courtesy, unless *usted* has previously

<sup>1</sup> The principle is as follows: If the subject of the sentence be of the third person, *su* (without further specification) will naturally apply to that person; if the subject be not of the third person, and any noun or pronoun of the third person appear in the sentence, *su* will refer to this latter.

appeared in the sentence,—in which case it is generally not repeated:—

¿Tiene Vd. un catálogo de su biblioteca?      Have you a catalogue of your library?

REMARK.—A redundant construction, *su casa de él, su casa de V.*, is also met with. *Su casa de él, de ella*, etc., however, is considered an inelegant repetition; while *su casa de V., de VV.*, is permissible, *usted* being considered as added in such cases by way of compliment. Yet *la casa de V.* is preferable.

104. There are three words in Spanish to represent the conjunction *but*, namely *mas*, *pero*, and *sino*. The two former are interchangeable, except that *mas* belongs rather to the literary style. *Sino* is of limited application, being used only to introduce a positive in direct contrast to a preceding negative, and is equivalent to the English *but on the contrary*. The same verb that preceded is understood but *not repeated* after it:—

Tengo una bicicleta, pero no tengo un caballo.	I have a bicycle, but I have not a horse.
No tengo un caballo, sino una bicicleta.	I have not a horse, but a bicycle.
El burro no quiere vino, sino agua.	The donkey does not want wine, but water.
Tengo café mas no tengo leche.	I have coffee, but have no milk.

105. In the following expressions, *tener*, *to have*, is used with nouns where in English *to be* is employed with adjectives. (The Spanish usage agrees with that of all the languages of Latin origin.):—

Tener hambre, to be hungry.	Tener miedo, to be afraid.
Tener sed, to be thirsty.	Tener razón, to be right.
Tener calor, to be hot, warm.	Tener calma, to be calm.
Tener frío, to be cold.	Tener sueño, to be sleepy.
Tener celos, to be jealous.	Tener ceño, to be gloomy.

REMARK.—These expressions are conjugated as follows:—

yo tengo	hambre, sed, etc.	I am	hungry, thirsty, etc.
él tiene	" " "	he is	" " "
Vd. tiene	" " "	you are	" " "
nosotros tenemos	" " "	we are	" " "
etc.,	etc.	etc.,	etc.

## Vocabulary.

El caballo, the horse.	La aldea, the village.
El cochero, the coachman.	La cantera, the quarry.
El chal, the shawl.	La capa, the cloak,
El guante, the glove.	La carta, the letter.
El hielo, the ice.	La flor, the flower.
El lápiz, the pencil.	La gramática, the grammar.
El pedazo, the piece.	La madre, the mother.
El perro, the dog.	La pluma, the pen.
El sombrero, the hat.	La tinta, the ink.
El vaso, the glass; the vase.	La ventana, the window.

## EXERCISE V.

a) 1. ¿Tiene Vd. un *teléfono* en su casa? 2. No señor, pero hay un *teléfono* en la casa de mi padre. 3. ¿Tiene un perro el hijo del *actor*? 4. Sí señor, tiene un perro y quiere un caballo. 5. El *autor* tiene hambre y frío, y quiere un pedazo de pan. 6. El coronel no quiere agua sino *whiskey*. 7. ¿Quién tiene mi gramática? 8. El hijo de Vd. tiene la gramática, y también el diccionario, de Vd. 9. ¿Tiene Vd. sueño? 10. No tengo sueño, sino sed, y quiero un vaso de agua. 11. No hay *alcohol* en la botella, sino *cloroformo*. 12. Hay *cloroformo* en la botella, y no *alcohol*. 13. ¿Qué hay en el vaso del coronel? 14. Hay vino y un pedazo de hielo. 15. ¿Qué hay en la ventana? 16. Hay un vaso de flores. 17. ¿Qué clase de flores? 18. *Peonías*. 19. ¿No hay una cantera en la hacienda de Vd.? 20. Sí señor, hay una cantera de *granito* en mi hacienda, y en la hacienda de mi padre hay una *mina* de *platino*.

b) 1. Do you want a pen? 2. No sir; I have a pen, but I have no *ink*. 3. Have you (*pl.*) any tobacco? 4. We haven't any tobacco; but we have some money. 5. Are the soldiers warm or cold? 6. They are cold, and hungry, too. 7. What books do your sons want? 8. They want your books. 9. And I want their books. 10. Has not your coachman his hat? 11. Yes, he has his hat; but he has my gloves. 12. My mother is cold and wants her shawl. 13. Have you her shawl? 14. No sir; your servant-girl has her shawl. 15. Isn't there a town on the island? 16. There is not a town but a village. 17. Do you want your cloak? 18. Not now; I am not cold now. 19. The girl wants a letter from her father. 20. The *artist* is gloomy because he is jealous. 21. Our *invention* has an *infinity* of *applications*.



## LESSON VI.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

106. All Spanish verbs in the infinitive end in *ar*, *er* or *ir*. They are divided into three classes or conjugations according to these terminations:—

1ST CONJUGATION:	Compr- <i>ar</i> ,	to buy.
2D	Vend- <i>er</i> ,	to sell.
3D	Viv- <i>ir</i> ,	to live.

a. The vowels *a*, *e* and *i* are characteristic of the respective conjugations.

b. The first conjugation includes nine-tenths of all the verbs in the language.

107. By cutting off the terminations *ar*, *er*, *ir*, from the infinitive, we obtain the stem of the verb, to which the terminations of the various moods and tenses (except those of the future and conditional future) are to be added.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	1st person.	Yo	compr-o,	vend-o,	viv-o.
	2d person.	Tú	compr-as,	vend-es,	viv-es.
	3d person.	{ El	compr-a,	vend-e,	viv-e.
		{ Ella Vd. }			
PLUR.	1st person.	Nosotros	compr-amos,	vend-emos,	viv-imos.
	2d person.	Vosotros	compr-áis,	vend-éis,	viv-ís.
	3d person.	{ Ellos	compr-an,	vend-en,	viv-en.
		{ Ellas Vds. }			

NOTE.—These verbs will be called the three *model verbs*. Like them are conjugated all the verbs of the language, except about 300 which deviate in some particulars and are hence called irregular.

108. With the exception of four forms,—the infinitive, the first person and second person plural of the indicative present, and the second person plural of the imperative (the first three being shown above),—the terminations of the second and third conjugations are identical throughout; and hereafter but one column of forms will be given for both.

109. The present indicative, as given above, corresponds to three English forms; thus:—

Hablo, { I speak.  
          { I do speak.  
          { I am speaking.

110. Conjugate the present indicative of the following verbs according to the models given above:—

Buscar, to seek, look for.	Aprender, to learn.
Enseñar, to teach.	Beber, to drink.
Estudiar, to study.	Comer, to eat.
Fumar, to smoke.	Leer, to read.
Hablar, to speak, talk.	Temer, to fear, be afraid of.
Llamar, to call.	Abrir, to open.
Necesitar, to need.	Dividir, to divide.
Tocar, to touch; (speaking of a musical instrument) to play.	Escribir, to write.
Tomar, to take.	Recibir, to receive.
	Residir, to reside, live.

111. By placing the reflexive pronoun *se* before an active verb (in the third person), an expression of passive value is obtained. If the meaning of the verb is unmodified by other words, the verb precedes the subject:—

Se teme una revolución.	A revolution is feared.
Se necesitan soldados.	Soldiers are needed.
Se exportan pieles y sebo.	Hides and tallow are exported.

but

La capital se llama Tegucigalpa.	The capital is called Tegucigalpa.
Su nombre se escribe con h.	His name is written with an h.

REMARK.—This construction is not employed when the subject of the verb is a personal pronoun.

## 112. *Synonyms*:—

a. País, campo, tierra, patria.—País is a *country* in its political or natural aspect; campo in its primitive sense is a *field*, and means also the *country* in its agricultural aspect as distinguished from the town or village. Patria is one's native land as distinguished from other countries (*países*). Tierra means earth, soil, land, the earth, or a large tract of country.

b. Tabaco, cigarro, puro, cigarrillo, pitillo.—Tabaco means both *tobacco* and *cigar*. Cigarro usually means a *cigarette*—the ordinary smokable among Spanish peoples,—but is also applied to a *cigar*. To distinguish

the latter from its paper-rolled congener, it is called *puro* (on account of being made of *pura* tobacco. The all-tobacco cigarette is properly *cigarillo*, but this term is also used to designate the cigarette with a paper wrapper, which is called familiarly *pitillo*. A Havana cigar is an *habano*.

### Vocabulary.

¿Cuándo? when?	<i>Siempre</i> , always.
Cuando, when.	<i>Tarde</i> , late.
<i>Sin</i> , without.	<i>Temprano</i> , early.
<i>Sin</i> duda, no doubt.	<i>Aprisa</i> , fast, quickly.
Quizás, perhaps.	<i>Despacio</i> , slowly.
<i>Mañana</i> , to-morrow.	<i>Además</i> , moreover, besides.

### EXERCISE VI.

a) 1. ¿Qué leen las niñas? 2. Leen una novela. 3. ¿Aprende aprisa el hijo de Vd.? 4. No, siempre aprende despacio. 5. ¿Hablan los hombres aprisa ó despacio? 6. Hablan aprisa. 7. ¿Cuándo quiere Vd. mi caballo? 8. Quizás mañana. 9. ¿Qué instrumento de música toca Vd.? 10. Toco el *violín* y el *piano*. 11. ¿No toca Vd. también el arpa? 12. No señor; pero la hija de mi amigo, el *artista*, toca el arpa? 13. ¿En qué ciudad reside el *Presidente*? 14. El *Presidente* siempre tiene su *residencia* en la *capital* del país. 15. Los burros no comen cuando no tienen hambre. 16. ¿Se *confirman* los rumores de una *reconciliación* entre el rey y el príncipe? 17. No señor, no se *confirman*. 18. Se abre y lee el *testamento*. 19. ¿Qué clase de tabacos fuman los amigos de Vd.? 20. Fuman habanos. 21. ¿Qué se necesita ahora? 22. Se necesitan dinero y *paciencia*. 23. La *república* de *Chile* se divide en (*into*) *provincias*.

b) 1. The girls are writing letters. 2. The soldiers are *fortifying* the town. 3. The coachman is smoking his pipe. 4. We always take coffee without milk. 5. The boys do not learn because they do not study. 6. What are you looking for? 7. I am looking for my cloak. 8. Does your friend, the *novelist*, live in the city? 9. No, sir, he lives in the country, with his father. 10. In what country does your son reside? 11. He resides now in the *republic* of *Honduras*. 12. Why does the donkey drink water? 13. No doubt because he is thirsty. 14. Does the colonel smoke cigars or cigarettes? 15. He always smokes cigarettes. 16. The *capital* of *Bolivia* is called *Sucre*. 17. The fields are *fertilized* with *guano*. 18. What do you teach in the *university*? 19. I teach *philosophy*, *rhetoric*, and history.

## LESSON VII.

## GOVERNMENT AND AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

113. The greater number of verbs which govern an infinitive, do so directly without any connecting preposition:—

Deseo leer el periódico.	I want <i>to</i> read the newspaper.
La criada teme abrir la puerta.	The servant-girl is afraid <i>to</i> open the door.
El poeta necesita tomar quinina.	The poet needs <i>to</i> take quinine.
Ella quiere tocar el piano.	She wants <i>to</i> play the piano.

114. Of the verbs already introduced in these lessons, **aprender** and **enseñar** require **á** when followed by an infinitive:—

Ellos quieren aprender á leer y escribir.	They want to learn to read and write.
Enseño á su hija á tocar la mandolina.	I am teaching her daughter to play the mandolin.

115. A number of verbal phrases, consisting of **tener** followed by a noun, require the preposition **de** in order to govern an infinitive. The following are among the most usual:—

Tener ganas de . . .	To have a mind, <i>or</i> an inclination, to . . .
Tener medios de . . .	To have the means to . . .
Tener precisión de . . .	To be obliged, <i>or</i> compelled, to . . .
Tener tiempo de . . .	To have time to . . .
Tener valor de . . .	To have the courage to . . .

Also the following, in which the definite article is used before the noun:—

Tener el anhelo de . . .	To be anxious to . . .
Tener la bondad de . . .	To have the kindness to . . .
Tener la costumbre de . . .	To have a habit of . . .
Tener la desgracia de . . .	To have the misfortune to . . .
Tener la dicha (la desdicha) de . . .	To have the good luck (the bad luck) to . . .



Tener el gusto de . . .	To have the pleasure of . . .
Tener la honra (el honor) de . .	To have the honor of, <i>or</i> to . . .
Tener el inconveniente de . . .	To have the objection of . . .
Tener la intención de . . .	To intend to . . .
Tener la ocasión de . . .	To have an opportunity to . . .
Tener el privilegio de . . .	To have the privilege of . . .
Tener la ventaja (la desventaja) de . . .	To have the advantage (the disadvantage) of . . .
Tener la ventura (la desventura) de . . .	To have the fortune (the ill fortune) to . . .

NOTE.—Where in English the preposition required is *of*, the verb assumes the form ending in *-ing*. In Spanish, the verb governed by a preposition is invariably in the infinitive.

116. *Querer*, used with an infinitive in asking a favor or extending an invitation, corresponds to the English *will*, which must not be confounded with the true future:—

¿Quiere V. abrir la ventana? Will you open the window?

¿Quiere V. tomar una taza de té? Will you take a cup of tea?

REMARK.—Such an expression as *will you be at home to-morrow?* requires the future tense, which will be presented in due time.

117. It is a peculiarity of Spanish that the direct object of an active verb is preceded by the preposition *á* when denoting a person, an intelligent animal, or anything personified. *Á* is then merely a grammatical expedient and is not to be translated:—

Mando á la criada.	I send the servant-girl.
Mando una carta.	I send a letter.
Llama al muchacho y al perro.	He calls the boy and the dog.
El muchacho teme á su padre.	The boy fears his father.
La niña teme el frío.	The girl fears the cold.
Busco á mi caballo.	I am looking for my horse.
Busco mi sombrero.	I am looking for my hat.

REMARK.—*Tener* and *querer* are exceptions, since they take *á* after them only when they have the special meanings of *to hold* and *to love* respectively. Hence the following contrasts:—

Tengo un caballo, I have a horse.	Tengo á un caballo, I am holding a horse.
Quiero una criada, I want a servant-girl.	Quiero á una criada, I love a servant-girl.

NOTE.—There are also cases where *á* is omitted to avoid either cacophony or ambiguity. These are exhibited in Lesson XXIV.

118. The preposition *á* serves also to indicate the indirect object of verbs; it has then a true prepositional value and is to be translated accordingly:—

El padre habla á su hijo.

The father speaks to his son.

Mandan las cartas al rey.

They send the letters to the king.

119. When the verb has two or more joint subjects of either number, it is regularly put in the plural; if the subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in that person which is said to take precedence. The second person takes precedence of the third, while the first person outranks both. Thus:—

V. y yo estudiamos.

You and I study.

V. y su hijo tienen razón.

You and your son are right.

Mi padre y yo vivimos en el campo.

My father and I live in the country.

Tú y el aya compráis flores.

Thou and the governess buy flowers.

La niña y su madre leen un libro.

The girl and her mother are reading a book.

REMARK.—Courtesy requires the pronoun of the person addressed to be always placed first, as is the case in English.

120. The subject is frequently placed after the verb in Spanish without affecting the meaning, but merely giving animation and variety to the sentence:—

Llama la madre á la niña.

The mother calls the girl.

Aprendemos nosotros el castellano.

We are learning Spanish.

Necesita V. consultar al médico de su familia.

You need to consult your family physician.

No quiero yo el caballo.

I do not want the horse.

REMARK.—The general effect of removing any word from its natural place is to impart emphasis by attracting attention.

### Vocabulary.

El alumno, the student.

La dosis, the dose.

El bifee<sup>1</sup>, the beefsteak.

La guitarra, the guitar.

El muchacho, the boy.

La obra, the work (*literary*).

El periódico, the newspaper.

La quinta, the villa, country-house.

Desear, to desire.

Patinar, to skate.

Mandar, to send.

Pintar, to paint.

Nadar, to swim.

Trabajar, to work.

Gracias, thanks, or thank you.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Spanish America, *el bisté*.

## EXERCISE VII.

a) 1. ¿Qué *instrumento* de *música* quiere Vd. aprender á tocar? 2. Quiero aprender á tocar la guitarra. 3. ¿Quiere Vd. tomar [un vaso de vino? 4. No, gracias; no tomo vino. 5. ¿Qué tienen Vds. ganas de comprar? 6. Tenemos ganas de comprar la quinta de Vd., pero no tenemos medios ahora. 7. ¿Qué hacienda quiere comprar el hijo del *senador*? 8. Quiere comprar la hacienda de mi padre. 9. El *Presidente* quiere *terminar* la *discusión*. 10. Los hombres necesitan pintar su bote. 11. Mi hija tiene tiempo de leer las poesías del amigo de Vd., pero no tiene ganas. 12. No necesita Vd. tomar *medicina*; necesita comer un bifeec con patatas y beber una taza de café. 13. Mi padre tiene ganas de comprar una hacienda en *Nicaragua*. 14. La *base* de una estatua se llama el *pedestal*. 15. Mi cochero y su hijo buscan á mi perro. 16. El joven quiere tener el gusto de patinar con la hija del coronel. 17. Su obra tiene el inconveniente de no *presentar* las *opiniones* de los *adversarios* de su *doctrina*.

b) 1. The students are swimming in the lake. 2. Our daughters want to learn to skate. 3. What kind of *medicine* do I need to take? 4. You need to take a dose of *elixir* of *calisaya*. 5. Do you want to read my newspaper? 6. Thank you, no; I have not time to read the newspapers. 7. Who is holding my horse? 8. I have the privilege, sir. 9. I need some money, and am obliged to sell my country-house. 10. We intend to *examine* the *documents* to-morrow; to-day we haven't time. 11. I am anxious to learn to play the violin, but I haven't means to buy an *instrument*. 12. The princess has an inclination to write a novel. 13. Do you love the princess? 14. I have not the honor. 15. We have no opportunity to study; we are obliged to work on the farm. 16. Our coachman's son is holding the colonel's horse. 17. My father and I are obliged to send some money to-morrow to our *agent* in *Guayaquil*. 18. My students have the advantage of consulting the books of *reference* in (*de*) my library. 19. Will you have the kindness to open the window?

## LESSON VIII.

## VENIR, IR, DAR, HACER, DECIR, VER.

121. The learner will observe, upon comparison, that *tener* and *querer* are not inflected like the model verb of their conjugation. They belong to the class of *irregular verbs*, or verbs which deviate in some way from the conjugation of the models *comprar*, *vender*, and *vivir*.

122. Although comparatively not very numerous, the irregular verbs comprise some of the most useful and common verbs of the language. The following are among the most necessary, and their inflection must be learned separately in each case:—

123. *Venir, to come*, has the same irregularities as *tener* in the indicative present:—

SING.	{	1. <i>Vengo</i> , I come.	SING.	{	1. <i>Tengo</i> , I have.
		2. <i>Vienes</i> , thou comest.			2. <i>Tienes</i> , thou hast.
		3. <i>Viene</i> , he comes.			3. <i>Tiene</i> , he has.
PLUR.	{	1. <i>Venimos</i> , we come.	PLUR.	{	1. <i>Tenemos</i> , we have.
		2. <i>Venís</i> , ye come.			2. <i>Tenéis</i> , ye have.
		3. <i>Vienen</i> , they come.			3. <i>Tienen</i> , they have.

124. *Ir, to go*, forms its present indicative upon a primitive stem *va*; both it and *dar, to give*, add a *y* in the first person singular:—

<i>Ir, to go.</i>			<i>Dar, to give.</i>		
SING.	{	1. <i>Voy</i> , I go.	SING.	{	1. <i>Doy</i> , I give.
		2. <i>Vas</i> , thou goest.			2. <i>Das</i> , thou givest.
		3. <i>Va</i> , he goes.			3. <i>Da</i> , he gives.
PLUR.	{	1. <i>Vamos</i> , we go.	PLUR.	{	1. <i>Damos</i> , we give.
		2. <i>Vais</i> , ye go.			2. <i>Daís</i> , ye give.
		3. <i>Van</i> , they go.			3. <i>Dan</i> , they give.

125. *Hacer, to make, to do*, and *decir, to say, to tell*, change *c* to *g* in the first person singular indicative present; *decir* moreover changes the *e* of the stem to *i* in all but the first and second persons plural:—

<i>Hacer, to make.</i>			<i>Decir, to say.</i>		
SING.	{	1. <i>Hago</i> , I make.	SING.	{	1. <i>Digo</i> , I say.
		2. <i>Haces</i> , thou makest.			2. <i>Dices</i> , thou sayest.
		3. <i>Hace</i> , he makes.			3. <i>Dice</i> , he says.
PLUR.	{	1. <i>Hacemos</i> , we make.	PLUR.	{	1. <i>Decimos</i> , we say.
		2. <i>Hacéis</i> , ye make.			2. <i>Decís</i> , ye say.
		3. <i>Hacen</i> , they make.			3. <i>Dicen</i> , they say.

126. *Ver, to see*, was formerly *veer*, and still retains the *e* in the first person indicative present. Its derivative *proveer, to foresee, provide*, is regular throughout:—

SING.	{	1. <i>Veo</i> , ( <i>not vo</i> .) I see.	SING.	{	1. <i>Proveo</i> , I provide.
		2. <i>Ves</i> , thou seest.			2. <i>Provees</i> , thou providest.
		3. <i>Ve</i> , he sees.			3. <i>Provee</i> , he provides.
PLUR.	{	1. <i>Vemos</i> , we see.	PLUR.	{	1. <i>Proveemos</i> , we provide.
		2. <i>Véis</i> , ye see.			2. <i>Proveáis</i> , ye provide.
		3. <i>Ven</i> , they see.			3. <i>Proveen</i> , they provide.



127. *Ir*, *venir*, and *aprender* require *á* when followed by an infinitive:—

Voy á abrir la ventana.	I am going <i>to</i> open the window.
Viene á ver á mi padre.	He comes <i>to</i> see my father.

128. Both *ir* and *venir* are used in the present tense with a reference to the near future, thus corresponding to the English mode of expression:—

Voy á la ciudad mañana.	<i>I am going to</i> the city to-morrow.
Mi padre no viene hoy.	My father <i>is not coming to-day</i> .

129. *Ir*, with an infinitive, has the same meaning of intention or purpose which is expressed by *going to* in English:—

¿Qué va V. á hacer?	What are you going to do?
Voy á escribir una carta ahora.	I am going to write a letter now.

130. *Dar* requires the preposition *á* to be invariably placed before the person *to whom* anything is given (indirect object), if the same be represented by a noun:—

Doy el dinero al hombre.	I give the man the money.
Voy á dar grano á la mula.	I am going to give the mule grain.
Mi madre da una flor á la niña.	My mother gives a flower to the girl.

131. *Decir*, *to tell*, requires the preposition *á* to be placed before a noun representing the person to whom anything is told; moreover the conjunction *que*, *that*, must introduce the thing said. These two connective particles are never omitted in Spanish as they often are in English:—

¿Qué va V. á decir á su hijo?	What are you going to tell your son?
El muchacho dice á su padre que no quiere estudiar su lección.	The boy tells his father [that] he doesn't want to study his lesson.
Se dice que hay un tesoro en el fondo del lago.	It is said [that] there is a treasure at the bottom of the lake.

132. *Mandar* (with the meaning of *to order*) is immediately followed by an infinitive, in cases where a person causes something to be done. It is then equivalent to the English *have* or *order* followed by a past participle:—

Mando hacer una capa.	I am <i>having</i> a cloak <i>made</i> .
Queremos mandar pintar nuestra casa.	We want to <i>have</i> our house <i>painted</i> .
Tengo intención de mandar hacer aquí una ventana.	I intend to <i>have</i> a window <i>made</i> here.
Mandan preparar la comida.	They <i>order</i> dinner to be <i>prepared</i> .
El coronel manda fusilar á los desertores.	The colonel <i>orders</i> the deserters to be <i>shot</i> (i.e., gives orders to shoot the deserters).

REMARKS.—*a.* The construction would be the same in English if we were to use the verb *order*, and express the subject of the dependent verb; e.g.: the captain orders [his striker] to bring his sword-belt; the gentleman orders [his valet] to brush his hat.

*b.* Mandar may be replaced by *hacer*, provided the dependent infinitive be not likewise *hacer*.

### Vocabulary.

El alcalde, the mayor.	La acera, the sidewalk.
El cesto, the basket.	La bala, the ball, bullet.
El fusil (mil.), the musket.	La escopeta, the gun, shotgun.
El joven, the young man.	La escuela, the school.
El preso (civil), the prisoner.	La hermana, the sister.
El prisionero (mil.), the prisoner.	La lección, the lesson.
El resfriado, the cold (ailment).	La vaca, the cow.
El retrato, the portrait.	La viña, the vineyard.
Cantar, to sing.	Ensillar, to saddle.
Cargar, to load.	Fusilar, to shoot.
Disparar, to fire.	Vigilar, to watch; to guard.

### EXERCISE VIII.

*a)* 1. Los muchachos van temprano á la escuela. 2. El *general* manda fortificar el puerto. 3. El alcalde quiere mandar pintar un retrato de su hija. 4. Voy á buscar mi chal porque tengo frío. 5. ¿Qué ve Vd. en la plaza? 6. Veo una *batería* de *artillería*. 7. ¿Qué quiere hacer la criada? 8. Quiere hacer pan, pero no tiene levadura. 9. ¿Tiene Vd. costumbre de comer aprisa ó despacio? 10. Siempre cómo despacio; temo comer aprisa. 11. ¿Va Vd. á la *catedral* ahora? 12. No señor; ahora voy al *museo*; tengo la intención de *visitar* la *catedral* mañana. 13. ¿Qué va Vd. á hacer ahora? 14. Voy á mandar ensillar los caballos. 15. Mi padre viene del jardín con su amigo el *arquitecto*; ellos van ahora á tomar vino en el balcón. 16. El coronel manda cargar con bala los fusiles. 17. ¿Qué quieren Vds. hacer ahora? 18. Queremos ver la biblioteca de Vd. 19. El coronel enseña á su hija á cargar y disparar una escopeta.

b) 1. My father and I are going to the village. 2. Who is coming to-day? 3. The *senator* and his daughter are coming. 4. Why are you going to call the servant-girl? 5. Because I want a cup of coffee. 6. What does the *professor* say? 7. He says the students do not learn because they do not study their lessons. 8. The soldiers are coming from the *arsenal* and are going to guard the *aqueduct*. 9. What do you see on the sidewalk? 10. I see a *negro* with a basket. 11. The mayor orders the prisoners to be watched. 12. The cows do not give milk now. 13. I am afraid to have the windows opened, because I have a cold. 14. My father says he is going to buy a vineyard in *California*. 15. What do we need to provide? 16. You need to provide a basket of wine, and some glasses. 17. The boy is afraid to fire the soldier's musket. 18. When the young men come to our house, they play the guitar, I play the *piano*, and my sister sings.

---

## LESSON IX.

### ADJECTIVES.

133. Adjectives in Spanish, like articles, vary in form to indicate gender and number, taking those of the nouns to which they relate. This is called *agreeing* with a noun.

134. They form their plurals in both genders in the same manner as nouns. (See Lesson II.) The distinction of gender depends upon the following two principles:—

1. The greater number of adjectives end in *o* in the masculine, and *a* in the feminine singular, adding *s* in the plural:—

Fresco, fresca; frescos, frescas.	Fresh, cool.
Negro, negra; negros, negras.	Black, negro.

2. Those which do not end in *o* in the masculine singular, have the same ending for both genders:—

Cortés, corteses.	Courteous, polite.
Dulce, dulces.	Sweet, mild.
Útil, útiles.	Useful.
Belga, belgas.	Belgian.

135. The last principle has the following exceptions:—

a. Adjectives which end in a consonant and signify nationality, add *a* in the feminine:—

Inglés, inglesa.	English.
Español, española.	Spanish.
Andaluz, andaluza.	Andalusian.

b. Those ending in *án* or *ón*, add *a* in the feminine:—

Holgazán, holgazana.	Idle, lazy.
Preguntón, preguntona.	Inquisitive.

c. Those ending in *or* which do not have a *comparative* value, add *a* in the feminine:—

Emprendedor, emprendedora.	Enterprising.
Hablador, habladora.	Talkative.

REMARK.—Such words as *exterior*, *inferior*, *mejor* (*better*), *peor* (*worse*), *anterior*, *superior*, having a comparative value, are the same in both genders.

d. The augmentative and diminutive terminations <sup>1</sup> *ote* and *ete*, become *ota* and *eta* in the feminine.

REMARK.—The three last classes (*b*, *c* and *d*) comprise very few words.

136. Adjectives of nationality are used to represent the language or a native of the country indicated. In the latter case they are considered as nouns and may be written with a capital; as has been shown (§ 60), no adjective begins with a capital,—except of course in headings, titles, etc.:—

Mi padre habla francés y alemán.	My father speaks French and German.
El Inglés habla español, y el Español inglés.	The Englishman speaks Spanish and the Spaniard English.

137. There are no adjectives, except in poetical language, to express the material of which an object consists. The name of the material must follow the name of the object in question, the two being connected by the preposition *de*, *of*:—

Una estatua de bronce del presidente. A bronze statue of the president.

Mi chal de merino.	My merino shawl.
Monumentos de granito.	Granite monuments.
La corona de oro de la reina.	The queen's golden crown.

<sup>1</sup> Augmentative and diminutive terminations constitute one of the most marked peculiarities of Spanish. They assume many forms and embrace a variety of shades of meaning which cannot be mastered by a beginner. For their treatment, see pp. 510-19.



REMARK.—In such cases no article is used before the noun denoting the material.

#### LOCATION OF AN ADJECTIVE.

138. The adjective in Spanish is placed after the noun, when of primary importance: thus when denoting a physical quality (color, size, shape, strength, etc.), or nationality, when much longer than the noun, or when qualified by a long adverb, it follows the noun:—

Café negro y té verde.	Black coffee and green tea.
Bebemos vinos franceses.	We drink French wines.
Las mujeres habladoras y los hombres holgazanes.	The talkative women and the lazy men.

139. On the other hand, when the adjective is used as a mere general epithet, is of shortened form, of weak sound, or is employed oratorically, or in a secondary, figurative or poetic sense, it preferably precedes the noun:—

El pobre indio.	The poor Indian.
Un dulce zéfiro.	A mild zephyr.
Los soberbios reyes.	The proud kings.

REMARK.—There are many adjectives of an intermediate character which may be used either way, the Spaniard being guided in their location by his own ideas of style and euphony, and the amount of emphasis to be imparted.

140. The tendency of an adjective placed before its noun is to express its quality as belonging to the noun as a matter of course, and not distinguishing one individual from another, which it does when placed after the noun:—

Las olorosas flores.	The fragrant flowers. ( <i>Fragrancy being considered an inherent quality.</i> )
Las flores olorosas.	The fragrant flowers. ( <i>Those varieties which are fragrant.</i> )
Los salvajes indios.	The savage Indians. ( <i>Indians in general, considered as uncivilized.</i> )
Los indios salvajes	The savage Indians. ( <i>Those Indians who are in a savage state.</i> )
Mi nuevo sombrero.	My new hat. !
Mi sombrero nuevo.	My now hat.

**137** The student should write all the forms of the adjectives in the following

### Vocabulary.

Bonito, pretty.	Pequeño, little, small.	Alemán, German.
Carifoso, affectionate.	Pobre, poor.	Europeo, European.
Interesante, interesting.	Rico, rich.	Francés, French.
Large, long.	Soberbio, proud.	Griego, Greek.
Nuevo, new.	Verde, green.	Persa, Persian.
Oloroso, fragrant.	Viejo, old.	Ruso, Russian.

### EXERCISE IX.

a) 1. Un observatorio meteorológico; un laboratorio físico; un anunciador neumático; un ventilador automático; un cable telegráfico; un motor eléctrico. 2. Libros instructivos; novelas populares; infusiones medicinales; instrumentos anatómicos; manufacturas importantes; metales preciosos; animales domésticos; campos fértiles; cascadas innumerables. 3. El museo médico; el hospital civil; el palacio ducal; el jardín zoológico; la biblioteca mercantil; la universidad nacional; el arsenal naval; la escuela normal; la plaza principal; el seminario teológico; el instituto politécnico. 4. Hay en la mesa un bonito ramillete de olorosas flores. 5. Los emprendedores ingleses tienen ricas posesiones en América, Asia, y África. 6. El general quiere examinar el nuevo rifle. 7. ¿En qué clase de casa vive el indio? 8. Vive en una casa de adobe. 9. En el centro del lago hay una isla pequeña. 10. El aya y la criada temen vivir en la casa vieja. 11. Los muchachos holgazanes no tienen ganas de estudiar la lección larga. 12. En el palacio imperial hay una interesante colección de retratos.

b) 1. A singular coincidence; an interminable discussion; an irresistible tendency; a favorable opinion; an inadmissible interpretation; an impartial decision of an eminent jurist. 2. My political obligations; your prodigious energy; her insatiable curiosity; our esthetic ideas (*f.*); the extraordinary importance of their evidence; the incontestable superiority of his literary productions. 3. We read useful books. 4. The little boy wants a drink of cool water. 5. The pretty girls are studying their lessons on the balcony. 6. The statue has an alabaster pedestal. 7. The rich Englishman always drinks French wines. 8. I am going to give my old cloak to the poor Italian. 9. The German prince wants the money of the rich American [lady]. 10. It is said that the French do not love the Germans. 11. The Persians are reading Greek newspapers in the Russian café. 12. What kind of glasses do you want to buy? 13. I want to buy Belgian glasses.

## LESSON X.

## APOCOPATION OF ADJECTIVES; LOCATION OF TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.

141. Four adjectives assume a shortened form when standing immediately before certain nouns:—

Buena, good.

Grande, great, large, big.

Mala, bad.

Santo, holy, blessed.

REMARK.—This shortening is called *apocopation*, and will be found to occur in several other words of the language.

142. Bueno and malo drop the final o when immediately preceding any noun in the masculine singular:—

Buen azúcar; buen café.

Good sugar; good coffee.

Mal humor; mal vino.

Bad humor; bad wine.

but

Buena tinta; buenos tabacos.

Good ink; good cigars.

Mala memoria; malas costumbres.

Bad memory; bad habits.

143. Grande, when used to indicate eminence and not size, drops the final -de when placed immediately before a singular noun of either gender beginning with any consonant but h:—

Un gran general; una gran ciudad. A great general; a great city.

Un gran día; una gran victoria. A great day; a great victory.

but

Un grande amigo; un grande hombre. A great friend; a great man.

Un secreto de grande importancia. A secret of great importance.

REMARK.—In popular usage -de is often dropped before all singular nouns.

144. When used to express size, grande regularly stands after the noun to which it belongs (§ 138):—

Un hombre grande; un perro grande. A large man; a big dog.

Una casa grande; una población grande. A large house; a large town.

145. The masculine singular Santo, as the title of a holy man, is abbreviated to San, unless the name of the saint begins with

**To- or Do-** In all other forms and uses of the word, it is left unabbreviated:

San Pedro, St. Peter.

San Pablo, St. Paul.

Santo Tomás, St. Thomas.

Santo Domingo, St. Dominic.

*but*

El santo padre, the Holy Father.

Santa Ana, St. Anne.

146. These four adjectives do not assume the shortened forms if any word comes between them and their nouns:—

Un bueno y cariñoso padre.

A good and loving father.

Un grande y estimable amigo.

A great and estimable friend.

REMARK.—No adjective is ever curtailed when it follows the noun, or when the noun to which it refers is not expressed.

#### LOCATION OF TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.

147. When two adjectives relate to one noun, each is located independently, according to its own value (§ 140); so that both may come before, one before and one after, or both may follow the noun:—

¡Pobre y pequeña niña!

Poor little girl!

Un célebre violinista alemán.

A celebrated German violinist.

El pobre caballo ciego.

The poor blind horse.

Un artista pobre y desgraciado.

A poor and unfortunate artist.

148. When both adjectives come after the noun, the following distinction is to be observed:—

a. If the two adjectives are equally independent of the noun—are merely separate attributes—they are connected by the conjunction **y** (6):—

Una capa negra y larga.

A long, black cloak.

Una nación libre é independiente.

A free and independent nation.

Tiene una casa pequeña y bonita.

He has a pretty little house.

b. But if a noun and an adjective are considered as forming one aggregate, an additional adjective qualifies that aggregate without the interposition of the conjunction:—

Influencia política poderosa.

Powerful political influence.

Ácido carbónico líquido.

Liquid carbonic acid.

Motores eléctricos fijos.

Stationary electric motors.



**REMARK.**—If there be more than two adjectives, they follow the same principles, with the restriction that not more than one of them should precede the noun.

149. In both Spanish and English, the adjective most permanently connected with the noun, stands nearest to it; but as in Spanish both adjectives usually follow, the order is apparently reversed:—

Un soldado viejo y borracho.	A drunken old soldier.
Las niñas bonitas y felices.	The happy, pretty girls.
El Banco Nacional Central.	The Central National Bank.

150. When we express the material of which an object is composed, the result is a pair of nouns connected by *de* (§ 137). Any adjective then used should accompany, and agree with, the noun which it is intended to qualify:—

Una caja ovalada de celuloide.	An oval celluloid box.
Obra arquitectural de terracota.	Architectural terra-cotta work.
Cestos de alambre galvanizado.	Galvanized wire baskets.
Un chal nuevo de seda japonesa.	A new Japanese silk shawl.

### Vocabulary.

El adorno, the ornament.	La bata, the dressing-gown, wrapper.
El alambre, the wire.	La caja, the box.
El banco, the bank.	La lana, the wool.
El corpiño, the waist (clothing).	La mampara, the screen.
El hierro, the iron.	La moneda, the coin.
El latón, the brass.	La plata, the silver.
El peine, the comb.	La seda, the silk.
Borracho, drunk[en].	Desgraciado, unfortunate.
Célebre, celebrated.	Feliz, happy.
Ciego, blind.	Libre, free.

### EXERCISE X.

a) 1. ¿Qué busca Vd.? 2. Busco mi diccionario español-inglés. 3. ¿Qué hay en el cesto? 4. Hay un *melón* verde y grande. 5. ¿Qué quiere Vd. comer? 6. Quiero un buen biftec con patatas nuevas. 7. ¿Qué clase de balcones tiene la nueva casa de Vd.? 8. Tiene balcones grandes de hierro con adornos de latón. 9. ¿Qué hace la criada? 10. Busca mi peine de *celuloide*. 11. Mi hijo dice que Vd. tiene un buen retrato de la Reina *Regente*. 12. Sí señor, y tengo también una *excelente miniatura* de la princesa *Eulalia*. 13. ¿Tienen Vds. ahora un cochero? 14. Tenemos un cochero negro y una aya francesa. 15. ¿Qué tiene Vd. en la caja negra de hierro? 16. Tengo dinero y alhajas; también tengo dinero en el Banco

*Nacional Mercantil.* 17. ¿Quiere Vd. ver mis retratos de San Pedro y San Pablo? 18. Gracias no, no tengo tiempo ahora; tengo precisión de ir á la biblioteca pública. 19. Mi padre quiere su bata, su pipa larga y negra, y una botella de vino blanco. 20. Voy á dar una moneda de plata al pobre soldado ciego. 21. Hay mamparas de alambre en las ventanas de mi casa nueva. 22. Entre los *Andes* y la costa del Océano *Pacífico* hay campos verdes y fértiles, haciendas grandes, y poblaciones ricas.

b) 1. Our *dentist's* brother lives now on the island of *San Domingo*; it is said that he has a large farm and an *elegant* house. 2. Your friend sells bad coffee. 3. The little girl is afraid of the big dog. 4. My sister is having a new green silk waist made. 5. Who wants to read an old newspaper? 6. Not I. 7. Does your friend, the *famous* German *naturalist*, live in a large city? 8. No sir, he lives in an *insignificant* little village. 9. The lazy students smoke and sing, but they have no inclination to study their lessons. 10. In the *Museum of Natural History* there is a large and interesting *collection of fossil insects*. 11. My mother is cold, and wants her new woolen wrapper. 12. The French *artist* wants to buy a small, new house. 13. My father wants to go to the *Philippine* Islands, but he has no money now. 14. What kind of books have you in your library? 15. I have books of poetry, *philosophy, sociology, and political economy, dramas, classic and modern Spanish novels, biographies of celebrated men, histories of the literature of the principal European nations, and a great variety of American and English books.*

## LESSON XI.

### SER AND ESTAR.

151. There are in Spanish two verbs, *ser* and *estar*, corresponding to the English verb *to be*. They are not employed interchangeably, but each has its distinct province. In form they are quite irregular:—

SING.	1 p.	Yo	soy,	estoy,	I am,
	2 p.	Tú	eres,	estás,	thou art,
	3 p.	{ El Ella Vd. }	es,	está,	{ he she } is, you are.
PLUR.	1 p.	{ Nosotros Nosotras }	somos,	estamos,	we
	2 p.	{ Vosotros Vosotras }	sois,	estáis,	ye
	3 p.	{ Ellos Ellas Vda. }	son,	están,	{ they you } are.

152. The fundamental distinction is that **ser** expresses an inherent or essential quality; **estar**, an external or accidental quality or condition. The following contrasted examples will serve as illustrations:—

La caja <b>es</b> ovalada.	The box is oval.
La caja <b>está</b> vacía.	The box is empty.
La sopa <b>es</b> excelente.	The soup is excellent.
La sopa <b>está</b> fría.	The soup is cold.
Ellas <b>son</b> inteligentes.	They are intelligent.
Ellas <b>están</b> bien educadas.	They are well educated.
El alumno <b>es</b> diligente y estudioso.	The student is diligent and studious.
El alumno <b>está</b> turbulento é insubordinado.	The student is unruly and insubordinate.
Vd. <b>es</b> muy inconstante.	You are very fickle.
<b>Estamos</b> indecisos.	We are undecided.
Un <b>ser</b> humano.	A human being.
El bienestar público.	The public welfare ( <i>lit.</i> well-being).

153. Hence it happens that occasionally the same adjective may be used with either **ser** or **estar**, according to the idea in the mind of the speaker or writer:—

Ella <b>es</b> pálida.	She is pale. ( <i>Her complexion is naturally pale.</i> )
Ella <b>está</b> pálida.	She is pale, ( <i>temporarily, as through sickness or fear.</i> )
Las manzanas <b>son</b> agrias.	The apples are sour, ( <i>i.e., they are of a sour kind.</i> )
Las manzanas <b>están</b> agrias.	The apples are sour, ( <i>i.e., unripe.</i> )
La mujer <b>es</b> amable.	The woman is amiable.
La mujer <b>está</b> amable.	The woman is in an amiable humor.
El hombre <b>es</b> loco.	The man is mad, ( <i>insane.</i> )
El hombre <b>está</b> loco.	The man is mad, ( <i>furious.</i> )
El alumno <b>es</b> atento.	The student is ( <i>naturally</i> ) attentive.
El alumno <b>está</b> atento.	The student is ( <i>incidentally</i> ) attentive.
El organista <b>es</b> ciego.	The organist is blind.
El general <b>está</b> ciego de pasión.	The general is blind with passion.

154. The quality expressed may be momentary, yet if it holds good throughout the existence of the thing qualified, it is viewed as inherent, and the connecting verb is **ser**:—

La explosión es violenta.  
La idea de V. es excelente.

The explosion is violent.  
Your idea is excellent.

155. In some cases the Spanish mind construes this principle differently from the English mode of thought:—

La luna *está* llena.

The moon is full.

*(The appearance changes, but it is the same planet.)*

El tiempo *es* bueno.

The weather is good.

*(If it were otherwise, it would be construed as an entirely different phase of nature.)*

Las calles *están* sucias.

The streets are dirty.

*(The same streets, but a different aspect.)*

La condición de las calles *es* muy mala.

The condition of the streets is very bad.

*(Cleanliness or dryness would involve an entirely distinct condition.)*

Sus ojos *están* tristes.

His eyes are sad.

*(The eyes are the same orbs as ever, but have an accidental quality of sadness.)*

Su conducta *es* muy sospechosa.

His conduct is very suspicious.

*(If it ceased to arouse suspicion, it would have to be a new and different conduct.)*

REMARK.—The appropriate Spanish verb, given in parenthesis after the English one in the following sentences, may serve to throw further light upon this rather metaphysical question:—

The eggs are (*ser*) small.

The eggs are (*estar*) addled.

The combat was (*ser*) short and decisive.

This turkey is (*estar*) not so plump as it was (*estar*) last week.

This turkey is (*ser*) not so tender as the one we had last week.

He is (*ser*) tall and handsome, and his clothes are (*ser*) new and fashionable.

His face was (*estar*) dirty and his clothes were (*ser*) old and ragged.

His health is (*ser*) robust and his appetite is (*ser*) excellent.

The patient's condition is (*ser*) really dangerous; his cough is (*estar*) worse and his lungs are (*estar*) very weak.

156. Finally it must be borne in mind that a limited view may be taken of the existence of an object,—sufficient indeed for the immediate purpose of the speaker or writer, but shutting out past or future possibilities:—



Su hermana es linda y joven. His sister is young and pretty.  
 El gobernador es extremadamente rico. The governor is extremely rich.

Sus poesías son muy populares. His poems are very popular.

*(Yet youth, beauty, riches, and popularity are but transitory things. For that matter, all things with which we are familiar are really temporary, but may at times be treated as if permanent so far as we are interested.)*

157. **Ser** is to be used to express the origin of a person or thing, and the ownership of a thing or the material of which it is composed:—

Mi criada es de Valencia.	My servant-girl is from Valencia.
Mi cuñado es Español.	My brother-in-law is a Spaniard.
El vino es de Málaga.	The wine is from Malaga.
El violín es de mi padre.	The violin is my father's.
La taza es de plata.	The cup is of silver.

158. When the predicate is a noun, **ser** is the verb to be used. **Estar** can never have a noun as predicate:—

Mi hermano es cónsul en Panamá.	My brother is consul at Panama.
Colombia es una república.	Colombia is a republic.
La Paz y Potosí son departamentos de Bolivia.	La Paz and Potosi are departments of Bolivia.
El perro es un animal dócil é inteligente.	The dog is a docile and intelligent animal.
¿Cuál es la distancia de Cárdenas á Júcaro?	What is the distance from Cardenas to Jucaro?

159. **Estar**, being derived from the Latin *stare*, to stand, is used to denote the location of a person or thing, even though it be a permanent one:—

Mi cuñado está en Venezuela.	My brother-in-law is in Venezuela.
Su casa está alta.	His house is high up ( <i>located high</i> ).
Mi casa está en el campo.	My house is in the country.

160. **Bueno** and **malo**, when construed with **ser**, apply to the quality of persons or things; with **estar** they refer to the state of one's health:—

Su hermano de V. es bueno.	Your brother is good.
Su hermano de V. está bueno.	Your brother is well (in good health).
Mi hijo es malo.	My son is bad.
Mi hijo está malo.	My son is ill.

REMARK.—The only parts of speech to which both **ser** and **estar** can be applied are adjectives and past participles.

## Vocabulary.

El aire, the air.	La casaca, the pan.
El compañero, the companion.	La cuchara, the spoon.
El cuñado, the brother-in-law.	La lata, the tin.
El estado, the state; the condition or order.	La llanura, the plain.
El puente, the bridge.	La madera, the wood.
El resultado, the result.	La manzana, the apple.
El tiempo, the weather.	La porcelana, the porcelain.
Casi, almost, nearly.	La suerte, the lot, fate.
Cansado, tired.	Muy, very.
Contento, contented.	Lleno, full.
Difícil, difficult.	Ocupado, busy.
Frío, cold.	Resbaladizo, slippery.
Húmedo, damp.	Turbio, turbid.
	Vacío, empty.

## EXERCISE XI.

a) 1. Entre los *aspectos físicos* de la *República Argentina* son *notables* sus *pampas* ó *llanuras*. 2. ¿Quién es Vd.? 3. Soy el *comandante* del *arsenal*. 4. ¿Está vacía la botella negra? 5. No señor, está llena de *whiskey*. 6. *Bolivia* es una *república*; su *capital* es *Sucre*. 7. *Caracas* está en *Venezuela*; es una ciudad grande y rica. 8. Se dice que el cuñado de Vd. es muy rico. 9. Sí; tiene viñas grandes y *fértiles* en el Estado de *California*. 10. ¿Está bueno el *artista*? 11. No, está muy malo; tiene un *reumatismo inflamatorio*. 12. La carta de mi *agente* es casi *ilegible*. 13. La lección de hoy es larga, pero no es muy difícil. 14. El aire es un *fluido invisible*. 15. El *elefante* es un *animal* grande é *inteligente*; el *tigre* es un *animal feroz* y *cruel*. 16. El puente de madera es vieja, y está en muy mal estado. 17. Hoy el aire es fresco y el tiempo bueno. 18. Las flores de la *magnolia* son grandes, blancas y olorosas. 19. No queremos ir hoy á la *exposición*; el tiempo es frío y húmedo, y las aceras están muy resbaladizas. 20. Los *negros* son felices porque son libres. 21. No soy rico, pero estoy contento con mi suerte. 22. La *frase* es muy *incorrecta*; es un *anglicismo inadmisible*.

b) 1. The *Cubans* wish to be free. 2. The water of the lake is very turbid. 3. Your brother-in-law is always amiable; his good *humor* is irresistible. 4. My son is now *secretary* of the *Society of American Naturalists*. 5. *St. Domingo* is a large island, and is now a *republic*. 6. Your coachman is *insolent*. 7. Your friends are *fatalists* and *pessimists*. 8. We are not hungry, but we are very tired. 9. The *typical* Frenchman is talkative, the Englishman *taciturn*, the American inquisitive and enterprising. 10. *Chile* is a large and *fertile* *republic*, and has *important manufactures*.

11. Your novel is interesting, but it is not new. 12. My son's villa is between the lake and the new *viaduct*. 13. My companion and I are hot and thirsty. 14. The cup is porcelain and the spoon is silver. 15. We have no time to *examine* the books now; we are very busy. 16. The tin pan is on the table, and is full of green apples. 17. The results of our *experiment* are not very *satisfactory*. 18. The horse and the cow are useful *domestic animals*. 19. My sister is not going to the school to-day; her cold is very bad, the weather is *inclement*, and the *condition* of the streets is *abominable*.

## LESSON XII.

### IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTIONS WITH **SER** AND **ESTAR**; . AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

161. It is seldom that any word is used in Spanish corresponding to the English *it* as the subject of an impersonal sentence:—

**Es tarde**, *it* is late.

**Es evidente**, *it* is evident.

**Es singular**, *it* is singular, strange.

**Es preciso**, *it* is necessary.

**Es imposible**, *it* is impossible.

**No es lícito**, *it* is not permissible.

**No es probable**, *it* is not likely.

**Está bien**, *it* is well, all right.

**Está clara**, *it* is clear.

**¿Quién es?** *who is it?*

162. In designating a particular person, in Spanish the appropriate noun or personal pronoun is placed as the subject of the verb **ser**; while in English it is made the predicate after the impersonal expression *it is*, *it was*, etc. The Spanish construction is the more logical and consistent:—

**¿Quién es?**—Soy yo; somos nosotros.

**¿Quién mete tanto ruido?**—Son los muchachos.—No señor, no son ellos.

**Who is it?**—It is I; it is we.

**Who is making such a noise?**—It is the boys.—No sir, it is not they.

163. A noun after **ser** in an impersonal sentence is not usually preceded by an article:—

**Es lástima**; es error.

**Es verdad**; es mentira.

**Es costumbre** del país.

**It is a pity**; it is *a* mistake.

**It is true** [*lit.* truth]; it is *a* lie.

**It is the custom** of the country.

**REMARK.**—But if the noun so used is qualified by an adjective, the article is required, as in English:—

**Es una costumbre** popular.

**Es un error** fatal.

**It is a popular custom.**

**It is a fatal error.**

**164.** The infinitive follows such impersonal expressions without being connected by any preposition :—

Es agradable vivir en el campo.	It is pleasant to live in the country.
No es costumbre beber cerveza.	It is not the custom to drink beer.
No es posible abrir las ventanas.	It is not possible to open the windows.
Es útil leer buenos libros, pero es preciso leer con reflexión.	It is useful to read good books, but it is necessary to read with reflection.
Es siempre deseable tener amigos.	It is always desirable to have friends.
Es injusticia insistir.	It is an injustice to insist.

**165.** When it is required to connect these impersonal phrases with a further statement, the conjunction *que*, *that*, is used. (This should not be omitted as the English conjunction frequently is.) :—

Es evidente que el hombre está borracho.	It is evident [that] the man is drunk.
¿Es verdad que su cuñado de V. va á Europa?	Is it true [that] your brother-in-law is going to Europe?

¿No es verdad?	} Is it not so?
¿Verdad?	
¿No?	

**166.** The expression *¿no es verdad?* (frequently shortened to *¿verdad?* or merely *¿no?*) is used inquiringly with an expectation of assent, where in English we repeat the verb; thus:—

V. quiere comprar mi caballo ¿no es verdad?	You want to buy my horse, <i>don't you?</i>
V. tiene el dinero ¿verdad?	You have the money, <i>haven't you?</i>
No necesitamos ir hoy á la población ¿verdad?	We don't need to go to town to-day, <i>do we?</i>
Las cortinas son de lana ¿no?	The curtains are woolen, <i>aren't they?</i>
V. habla inglés ¿no?	You speak English, <i>don't you?</i>

REMARK.—The English usage of repeating the verb is not followed in Spanish.

**167.** In the predicate of questions, the usual place of the adjective is immediately after the noun in Spanish, as it is before it in English. When prominence is to be given to the adjective, it is removed from its usual place. In either case the Spanish construction is the opposite of the English:—



¿Es viejo el capitán?	Is the captain old?
¿Es el capitán viejo?	Is it the old captain?
¿Es alto su hermano de V.?	Is your brother tall?
¿Es su hermano alto de V.?	Is it your tall brother?

168. *Casa*, unaccompanied by any article, and preceded by a preposition, takes the place of the English elliptical manner of referring to a person's residence or place of business by placing his name in the possessive; when no possessor is indicated, *casa* is equivalent to the English *home*, also unspecified as to ownership:—

Vengo de casa de mi cuñado.	I am coming from my brother-in-law's.
Compro pan en casa de A.	I buy bread at A.'s.
Voy á casa ahora.	I am going home now.
Manda los muchachos á casa.	He sends the boys home.
¿Está en casa su hermano de V.?	Is your brother at home?
Mi mujer está en casa de su madre.	My wife is at her mother's.

#### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

169. When an adjective relates to several nouns of the same gender, it stands in the plural and agrees in gender with the nouns:—

El cochero y el mozo están borrachos.	The coachman and the waiter are drunk.
La reina y las princesas son soberbias.	The queen and the princesses are proud.
La botella y la taza están llenas de sidra.	The bottle and the cup are full of cider.

170. When the nouns are not all of the same gender, the agreement of the adjective is determined as follows:—

a. If the nouns denote persons or animals, the adjective is put in the plural masculine:—

El hombre y la mujer son ricos.	The man and the woman are rich.
El caballo y la mula son viejos.	The horse and the mule are old.

b. If the nouns express things and are in the plural, the adjective is plural and agrees in gender with the nearest noun:—

Los escritorios y las mesas son caras.	The desks and tables are dear.
--	--------------------------------

c. If they express things and are in the singular, the adjective is put in the plural masculine:—

El cesto y la caja están llenos.

The basket and box are full.

REMARK.—But it is always preferable to put the masculine noun last when the adjective has a separate termination for each gender, and so avoid the incongruity of a feminine noun followed immediately by a masculine adjective:—

La mula y el caballo son viejos.

The mule and the horse are old.

Las sillas y los escritorios son caros.

The chairs and desks are dear.

La caja y el cesto están vacíos.

The box and basket are empty.

171. The principles exhibited above are of equal force when the adjective is immediately associated with the nouns as when it is separated from them by the verb *to be*:—

Ella compra un traje y un chal She buys a new dress and shawl.  
nuevos.

Quiero vender mis botas y mi sombrero. I want to sell my old boots and hat.  
viejos.

172. An adjective agrees in number and gender with whatever it refers to, whether that be expressed in the sentence or not. In the case of personal pronouns, which often do not show a distinction of gender, the sex of the person represented must be borne in mind:—

¿Por qué está V. callada?

Why are you silent?

Vds. son injustas.

You are unjust.

Yo estoy cansada.

I am tired.

Parecen pequeñas.

They seem small.

### Vocabulary.

El frac, the dress coat.

El idioma, the language.

El mármol, the marble.

El mozo, the lad; the waiter.

El nombramiento, the appointment.

El tintero, the inkstand.

El vecino, the neighbor.

Acado, neat, tidy.

Dos, two.

En todas partes, everywhere.

Evitar, to avoid.

Honrado, honest.

La calidad, the quality.

La cantidad, the quantity.

La cerveza, the beer.

La noticia, the notice; the news.

La montaña, the mountain.

La planta, the plant.

La selva, the forest.

Interno, interior, inland.

Pesado, heavy.

Sacar, to draw, take out.

Servicial, willing.

Valioso, valuable.

## EXERCISE XII.

a) 1. Mi cuñado vive en casa de su padre. 2. ¿Qué libro va Vd. á sacar hoy de la Biblioteca Pública? 3. La Historia de la *Revolución* Francesa, por (by) Tomás *Carlisle*; es un libro muy interesante. 4. Nuestro amigo *Parodes* es ahora *cónsul general*. 5. ¿Es posible? 6. Sí señor, la noticia de su nombramiento está en el periódico de hoy. 7. Está Vd. contento con su nueva quinta? 8. Estoy muy contento con la quinta; es muy bonita; pero los vecinos no son muy agradables. 9. ¿De qué país son los mozos de nuestro *hotel*? 10. Son ingleses. 11. ¿Es la isla de *Antigua* una *posesión* española? 12. No señor, es una *posesión* inglesa. 13. ¿Qué idioma se habla en la isla de Santo Domingo? 14. La isla de Santo Domingo se divide en dos *repúblicas*: la *República Dominicana* y la *República de Haití*; en la *República Dominicana* se habla español, y en *Haití* francés. 15. No es posible siempre evitar la *sociedad* de hombres *ignorantes*. 16. La nueva criada negra de Vds. es muy *estúpida*, ¿no es verdad? 17. Sí, pero es muy aseada y servicial, y es *evidente* que es honrada. 18. En las montañas de *Nicaragua* hay grandes cantidades de *metales preciosos*; en las selvas internas hay una gran *variedad* de maderas valiosas y de plantas *medicinales*.

b) 1. Who is calling? Is it you, *Anselmo*? 2. Yes, sir, it is I; I am calling the coachman. 3. Are the sacks and the boxes full? 4. Yes, sir, but the baskets and the bottles are empty. 5. It is *evident* that I need to buy a new cloak and dress coat, but I have no money. 6. You have some money in the bank, haven't you? 7. Not now. 8. It is *impossible* to see the *Minister* now; he is very busy. 9. Who is coming? 10. It is the waiters from the *hotel* (m.); it is *probable* that they are drunk. 11. Your inkstand is very heavy; is it silver? 12. Yes, sir; it is *solid* silver. 13. Is to-day's lesson long? 14. Yes, it is very long, but it is not very difficult. 15. Is it true that there is a quarry of black marble on your farm? 16. Yes, it is true, and the marble is of *superior* quality. 17. What book is your daughter going to draw to-day from the *National Library*? 18. A novel of *Juan Valera*. 19. His novels are very *popular*, aren't they? 20. Yes, they have an *immense popularity*; they are read everywhere. 21. You read French, don't you? 22. No, sir, I don't read French, but I read and speak English and *Italian*. 23. Are you going home now? 24. No, I am going to my brother-in-law's, and he and I are going to the *theater*.

## LESSON XIII.

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE AND THE PASSIVE VOICE.

173. The past participle, in all the regular verbs, and indeed most of the irregular, is formed in Spanish by adding *ado* to the stem of verbs of the first conjugation, and *ido* to those of the second and third conjugations:—

Comprar; comprado.	To buy; bought.
Vender; vendido.	To sell; sold.
Vivir; vivido.	To live; lived.

174. Since the accent falls in all cases on the penultimate vowel of the termination, when *ido* is preceded by a strong vowel (a, o, e) the *i* must have the accent marked, to show there is no diphthong:—

Caer <sup>1</sup> ; caído.	To fall; fallen.
Roer; roído.	To gnaw; gnawed.
Leer; leído.	To read; read.
Creer; creído.	To believe; believed.

175. A few verbs which are regular in all other respects have an irregularly-formed past participle:—

Abrir; abierto.	To open; opened.
Cubrir; cubierto.	To cover; covered.
Descubrir; descubierto.	To discover; discovered.
Escribir; escrito.	To write; written.
Imprimir; impreso.	To print; printed.
Romper; roto.	To break; broken.

176. The following are the past participles of all the irregular verbs thus far used in the exercises; those in ordinary type are regularly formed:—

Tener; tenido.	Ser; sido.	Hacer; hecho.
Querer; querido.	Estar; estado.	Decir; dicho.
Venir; venido.	Ir; ido.	Ver; visto.

177. The past participle of active verbs may be used in all respects as an adjective, and is then subject to the same conditions of gender and number:—

<sup>1</sup> Irregular in some of its tenses; introduced here merely as an example.



Libros impresos; una taza rota.	Printed books; a broken cup.
Cartas recibidas; cuentas pagadas.	Letters received; bills paid.
Tabacos importados.	Imported cigars.
Un revólver cargado.	A loaded revolver.
Dos caballos ensillados.	Two saddled horses.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE.

§ The passive voice is a variation in the manner of expressing an action, whereby the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and the subject of the active verb (when expressed) is connected with the passive by a preposition. The usage is therefore the same in both Spanish and English.

178. The true passive is formed by associating a past participle (always of an active verb) with the verb *ser*, in which case the participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the latter verb:—

Soy insultado; Soy insultada.	I am insulted.
Somos vigilados; Somos vigiladas.	We are watched.
La población es evacuada.	The town is evacuated.
Los niños no son admitidos.	The children are not admitted.

179. When the active agent is introduced, it is connected with the passive verb by *por* when the action is a physical or material one, and by *de* when it is one of thought or feeling:—

El caballo es ensillado por el soldado.	The horse is saddled by the soldier.
La evidencia es examinada por el juez.	The evidence is examined by the judge.
El coronel es temido de los oficiales subalternos.	The colonel is feared by the subaltern officers.
El profesor es estimado de sus alumnos.	The professor is esteemed by his students.

REMARK.—Whenever no ambiguity would arise, the construction explained in § 111 is preferred to the ordinary passive, as being shorter and neater:—

No se cree la noticia ( <i>instead of</i> : la noticia no es creída).	The news is not believed.
Se examina el contenido de las cajas ( <i>instead of</i> : el contenido de las cajas es examinado).	The contents of the boxes are examined.

180. A past participle associated with the verb *estar* has purely an adjective value, expressing the condition in which

the subject is, after the action has been performed; and does not express the performance of the action:—

La puerta está abierta.	The door is open ( <i>condition</i> ).
La puerta es abierta.	The door is opened ( <i>action</i> ).
Ellas están bien educadas.	They are well educated ( <i>condition</i> ).
Ellas son educadas á costa del Estado.	They are educated at the State's expense ( <i>action</i> ).

REMARK.—The distinction may be further exemplified by the following sentences, in which the infinitive of the appropriate Spanish verb is given in parenthesis after the English one:—

Mary's dress *was* (*ser*) torn by the goat.  
 I did not notice that it *was* (*estar*) torn.  
 It *was* (*ser*) mended by Anna.  
 Oh yes, now I see that it *is* (*estar*) patched.  
 The picture *is* (*estar*) faded, but it *will be* (*ser*) retouched and varnished.  
 The field *is* (*estar*) plowed, but it *is* (*estar*) not yet sown.  
 The fields *are* (*ser*) plowed in the fall, and again after the crops *are* (*ser*) gathered.

181. When a past participle has a substantive value, it may be construed with *ser* (*cf.* § 158):—

Estos tabacos son importados.	These cigars are imported ( <i>i.e.</i> , are imported ones).
Mi hermano es empleado del gobierno.	My brother is a government employé.
¿Es Vd. casado?	Are you married ( <i>i.e.</i> , are you a married man)?

### Vocabulary.

El camarada, the comrade.	La cena, the supper.
El imperio, the empire.	Europa ( <i>f.</i> ), Europe.
El modo, the way, manner.	La nieve, the snow.
El tiempo, the time; weather.	La subasta, the auction.
Castigar, to punish.	Herir, to wound.
Corrar, to close, to shut.	Partir, to start, to set out.
Aplazar, to postpone.	Rodear, to surround.

### EXERCISE XIII.

a) 1. El soldado herido es abandonado por sus camaradas. 2. Sus amigos están alarmados. 3. Ellos están armados. 4. La expedición está organizada. 5. Se dice que los prisioneros van á ser fusilados mañana. 6. Estamos resignados á nuestra suerte. 7. Vds. están excusados. 8. La

quinta del coronel está vendida. 9. Mi vaso de porcelana de *Sèvres* está rota. 10. El puente es *guardado* por dos *baterías* de *artillería*. 11. Las cartas *oficiales* del *presidente* son escritas por su *secretario*. 12. Tengo en mi biblioteca un retrato *original* de *Simón Bolívar*, pintado por *Wolf*. 13. Mi cuñado tiene la intención de comprar una hacienda y una casa grandes situadas entre el lago y el nuevo *viaducto*. 14. ¿De qué está hecho el peine de Vd.? 15. Está hecho de *gutapercha*; el peine de mi hermana es de *celuloide*. 16. Mi padre tiene un viejo libro muy *curioso*; es una gramática española impresa en *latín*. 17. *Singular* modo de estudiar un idioma *moderno*, ¿no es verdad? 18. Las *opiniones manifestadas* por el *eminente profesor* alemán son *incompatibles* con el resultado de las *investigaciones* y *experimentos* de los *principales naturalistas* de nuestro país. 19. Las *atrocidades perpetradas* por las *autoridades* del Imperio *Otomano* son *ezeocradas* de las *naciones civilizadas* de Europa.

b) 1. I am sent. 2. You are wounded. 3. He is *accused*. 4. She is *adored*. 5. We are *amused*. 6. You (*pl.*) are *exonerated*. 7. They are *detested*. 8. The fields are *cultivated*. 9. His *opinion* is *confirmed*. 10. The boys do not want to be punished. 11. The fields and the mountains are now covered with (*de*) snow. 12. A *peninsula* (*f.* 3) is a *portion* of land<sup>1</sup> almost surrounded by (*de*) water. 13. I am hungry; is the supper *prepared*? 14. No, sir, the tea is not made. 15. The horses are saddled, and it is time to (*de*) start. 16. Are the *revolver* (*m.* 2) and the shotgun loaded? 17. Yes, sir, and the *rifle* (*m.*) also. 18. Is the library open to-day? 19. No, sir, it is closed. 20. We are very busy to-day, and have not time to go to the *circus*. 21. What are your spoons made of? 22. They are made of *solid* silver. 23. Why does not the *general* read the prisoner's letters? 24. Because they are written in Spanish. 25. The colonel's house is going to be sold at (*en*) *public* auction, isn't it? 26. Yes, sir, but it is said that they are going to postpone the auction because the weather is so (*tan*) bad. 27. Great quantities of valuable woods and *medicinal* plants are *exported* from the *equatorial regions* of *America* (*f.* 3) to the *principal* European countries<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 112.

## LESSON XIV.

## HABER AND THE PERFECT TENSE.

182. There are two equivalents of the English verb *have* in Spanish: *tener* and *haber*; they are not used interchangeably. The present indicative of *tener* has been already given; that of *haber* is as follows:—

SING.	{ 1st person.	He.	I have.
	{ 2d person.	Has.	Thou hast.
	{ 3d person.	Ha.	He, she, it has, you have.
PLUR.	{ 1st person.	Hemos.	We have.
	{ 2d person.	Habéis.	Ye have.
	{ 3d person.	Han.	They, you have.

Although *haber* was originally an independent active verb meaning *to possess*, it is no longer used as such except in a few phrases which are relics of its former usage, and occasionally in poetic or archaic style. Its present usage is as an auxiliary before a past participle, to form the compound tenses of all verbs.

183. The present indicative of *haber*, with a past participle, forms the *perfect tense*, or *past indefinite*, used in speaking of a past event without reference to any particular time; it then sometimes corresponds to the English *preterit*. It more generally conveys an allusion to the present time, and denotes an action or occurrence of the present day, month, year or age; in this respect it corresponds to the English *perfect tense*. Examples:—

He aprendido el español en España.	I learned Spanish in Spain.
He pasado un mes en Egipto.	I spent a month in Egypt.
¿Ha copiado V. el informe?	Did you copy { the report?
	Have you copied {
He leído la carta de V.	I have read your letter.
Mi hermano ha llegado hoy.	My brother has arrived to-day.

184. In like manner is formed the perfect tense of the passive, in its two forms (see §§ 178 and 111):—

a)

La subasta ha sido aplazada.	The auction has been postponed.
Los caballos han sido ensillados.	The horses have been saddled.



b)

Se han explorado muchas millas de estas galerías subterráneas.	Many miles of these subterranean galleries have been explored.
¿Cómo se han formado estos depósitos calcáreos?	How have these calcareous deposits been formed?

REMARK.—The student will observe: *a*, that there are two past participles; that *sido* is invariable in form, while the other participle agrees in gender and number with the noun; and, *b*, that the participle does not agree. (For the explanation of this, see § 188 of the present lesson.)

185. The auxiliary *haber* must never be separated from the participle by another word; in a question, the subject, if it does not precede the auxiliary, follows the participle:—

No he vendido mi casa.	I have not sold my house.
He evitado siempre las discusiones inútiles.	I have always avoided useless discussions.
¿Ha estudiado V. la lección?	Have you studied the lesson?
¿Han llegado los amigos de V.?	Have your friends arrived?
¿Quién ha abierto la ventana?—No he sido yo. (See § 162.)	Who has opened the window?—It was not I.

186. When a past participle is used with any other verb than *haber*, it should in the same manner follow immediately. If placed after the object of the verb, its value is that of an adjective:—

Deja abierta la ventana.	He leaves the window open.
Deja la ventana abierta.	He leaves the open window.
He encontrado cerrada la caja.	I have found the box locked.
He encontrado la caja cerrada.	I have found the locked box.
Halla escondido al muchacho.	He finds the boy hidden.
Halla al muchacho escondido.	He finds the hidden boy.
El vaso cae roto al suelo.	The vase falls to the floor broken.
El vaso cae al suelo roto.	The vase falls to the broken floor.

187. As has been said, *haber* does not take a direct object. When possession or ownership is to be indicated, *tener* is the verb used:—

Tengo ( <i>not he</i> ) un sombrero de seda.	I have a silk hat.
No tenemos ( <i>not hemos</i> ) tiempo.	We haven't time.
¿Ha tenido ( <i>not habido</i> ) Vd. ocasión de considerar mi proyecto?	Have you had a chance to consider my project?

REMARK.—Although *haber* cannot take the place of *tener*, *tener* may occasionally be used as an auxiliary instead of *haber*,—but only before the past participles of verbs that take a direct object:—

Tenemos contado el dinero.

We have the money counted.

El traje que tengo comprado.

The dress that I have bought.

188. The past participle when conjugated with *haber* never agrees with its object (as it does, for instance, in French). With any other verb, or when no verb is expressed, the participle agrees with its object in gender and number, in the same manner as an adjective:—

He abierto las ventanas.

I have opened the windows.

Ella ha escrito la carta.

She has written the letter.

Ella tiene escrita la carta.

She has the letter written.

Tenemos pagados á los soldados.

We have got the soldiers paid off.

Ella ha dejado abierta la ventana.

She has left the window open.

Las cartas están mal escritas.

The letters are badly written.

Documentos recibidos; visitas hechas.

Documents received; visits made.

La población ha sido evacuada.

The town has been evacuated.

Se han introducido importantes mejoras.

Important improvements have been introduced.

REMARK.—Neither *ser* nor *estar* is used as an auxiliary to an intransitive verb,—as is common in French, Italian, and German, and is of occasional occurrence in English: *je me suis coupé, elle est arrivée, siamo venuti, sie sind heimgkehr, she is gone*, etc.

### Vocabulary.

El discurso, the address, speech.

La bota, the boot.

El hielo, the ice.

La carne, the meat.

El informe, the report (document).

La margen, the bank (of stream or lake).

El oro, the gold.

Abajo, downstairs.

Llegar, to arrive.

Abierto, open.

Quedar, to remain, to stay.

Arriba, upstairs.

Publicar, to publish.

Copiar, to copy.

Quizás, quizá, perhaps.

Demasiado, too much, too.

Si, if, whether.

Dejar, to leave.

Terminar, to finish, to complete.

Hallar, to find.

Todavía, yet.

## EXERCISE XIV.


a) 1. ¿Cuándo ha llegado Vd.? 2. He llegado muy temprano. 3. Los alumnos han ido á nadar en el lago. 4. Mi padre ha estado malo; ha tenido la gota. 5. Ha sido *imposible procurar* buenos caballos en la aldea. 6. ¿Qué libro ha sacado Vd. hoy de la biblioteca pública? 7. Una colección de las poesías de *Campoamor*. 8. Han terminado Vds. sus *experimentos* con el nuevo *motor eléctrico*? 9. Sí; los resultados han sido muy *satisfactorios*. 10. Mi hermana ha mandado hacer un nuevo corpiño de seda negra. 11. El *general* ha mandado *fortificar* el puerto. 12. ¿Ha tenido Vd. tiempo de leer mi *artículo*? 13. Todavía no; he estado demasiado ocupado. 14. ¿Qué clase de *medicina* ha tomado Vd.? 15. He tomado una dosis de *calerianato de amonio*. 16. Mi cuñado ha mandado sacar su dinero del Banco *Comercial*. 17. ¿Se han *confirmado* los rumores de una *reconciliación* entre el rey y el príncipe? 18. No, señor, no se han *confirmado* todavía. 19. ¿Quién ha dejado abiertas las ventanas? 20. Ha sido la criada. 21. Mi cuñado no está en casa ahora; ha ido á casa de su padre. 22. No hemos tenido ocasión de aprender á patinar, porque en nuestro país no hay hielo. 23. Han encontrado Vds. difícil la lección de hoy?

b) 1. I have been *accused*. 2. He has been sent to *Cuba*. 3. We have been *exonerated*. 4. They have been wounded. 5. The boys have been punished. 6. A *revised edition* of his poems has been published. 7. Did you arrive early? 8. No, sir, we did not arrive early, but very late. 9. The dog has not eaten the meat because he is not hungry. 10. I have given my old hat and boots to the poor *Italian*. 11. The *artist* has painted a portrait of the Queen *Regent*. 12. Is your son at home? 13. No, he has gone to draw some money from the bank. 14. Have the books arrived? 15. I am going to see now if they have arrived. 16. What does your brother-in-law say in his letter? 17. He says he has discovered a *mine* of gold on his farm. 18. What have you done to-day? 19. I have written two letters and have copied the *secretary's* report. 20. Have you read the *president's* address? 21. No, I have been too busy; I haven't seen the newspaper. 22. I have left my hat up-stairs. 23. The boy is sick. 24. Perhaps he has eaten too much. 25. It is very *possible*. 26. Has the *notary* arrived? 27. Yes, he is down-stairs now. 28. The waiter is drunk and has broken the glasses. 29. The *professor* of English has finished a new and *revised edition* of his grammar. 30. My son has bought a beautiful villa *situated* on the bank of the lake between the *convent* and the new *viaduct*.

## LESSON XV.

## DERIVATIVE ADVERBS.

189. Derivative adverbs are formed from adjectives and past participles in Spanish by the addition of *-mente*, which is equivalent to the English termination *-ly*.

 This *-mente* was originally the ablative singular of the Latin *mens*, meaning (in post-classic Latin) *mode* or *manner*. As it was feminine in Latin it is joined to the feminine form of adjectives, with an analogy like this:—

*claramente* = *clará mente*, in a clear manner = *clearly*.

190. Adjectives ending in *o*, and past participles (all of which end in *o*), add *-mente* to the feminine singular form:—

*Nuevamente*, newly.

*Calladamente*, silently.

*Perfectamente*, perfectly.

*Públicamente*, publicly.

*Abiertamente*, openly.

*Decididamente*, decidedly.

191. Other adjectives which have a different form for the feminine cannot take the affix *-mente*; the result is obtained by a circumlocution with *de una manera*, in a manner:—

*De una manera preguntona* (*not pre-* *Inquisitively*.  
*guntonamente*).

*De una manera holgazana*.

*Idly*, in an idle manner.

192. Adjectives having no distinct form for the feminine, add *-mente* to the common form:—

*Felizmente*, happily.

*Constantemente*, constantly.

*Útilmente*, usefully.

*Amablemente*, amiably.

193. Adverbs thus formed by the addition of *-mente* are pronounced as two words, each part retaining its original accent, both written and spoken:—

*Sólidamente*, solidly.

*Cortésmente*, courteously.

*Poéticamente*, poetically.

*Originalmente*, originally.

194. When two or more of these adverbs occur in immediate succession, only the last receives the termination *-mente*, the others assuming the form they would have if *-mente* were to be added. This takes place only when the several adverbs modify the same word:—



Escribe clara, concisa y elegante-mente.	He writes clearly, concisely and elegantly.
Gradual pero imperceptiblemente.	Gradually but imperceptibly.
Individual ó colectivamente.	Individually or collectively.

195. When the adverbs do not modify the same word, the repetition of **-mente** may be avoided by replacing one of the adverbs by an appropriate noun preceded by **con**, *with* :—

Lee constantemente y estudia con diligencia ( <i>instead of estudia diligentemente</i> ).	He reads constantly and studies diligently.
---	---

196. This substitution of **con** and a noun is often made to avoid very long adverbs in **-mente**; and, for the sake of euphony, to avoid adding **-mente** to adjectives ending in **-ente**; also where the termination **-mente** would conflict with other words of similar sound; and generally where variety of style is desired. The substitution is not always practicable, and applies only to adverbs qualifying verbs. Examples:—

Industriosamente,	or	con industria.	Industriously.
Orgullosamente,	or	con orgullo.	Proudly.
Correctamente,	or	con corrección.	Correctly.
Fácilmente,	or	con facilidad.	Easily.
Perfectamente,	or	con perfección.	Perfectly.
Cómodamente,	or	con comodidad.	Comfortably.
Prudentemente,	or	con prudencia.	Prudently.

Ella escucha con paciencia (*pacientemente*) á su padre. She listens patiently to her father.

Toca con frecuencia y corrección (*for toca frecuente y correctamente*). She plays frequently and correctly.

197. Further variety may be obtained by employing a phrase composed of **de una manera**, **de un modo**, followed by the appropriate adjective:—

De una manera uniforme. }	Uniformly, in a uniform manner.
De un modo uniforme. }	
De una manera completa y satisfactoria.	Completely and satisfactorily.

198. Derivative adverbs in **-mente** may qualify adjectives, verbs or other adverbs:—

Ella es extremadamente bonita.

Canta divinamente.

Dibuja admirablemente bien.

She is extremely pretty.

She sings divinely.

She draws admirably well.

**199.** The place of adverbs is before adjectives and after verbs. When the verb has an object, the adverb is usually placed immediately after the verb; when the adverb is short, this is the only position admissible:—

El sastre es horriblemente feo.

Habla perfectamente el francés.

Estudia con diligencia sus temas.

Hablan mal el idioma.

V. habla bien el castellano.

The tailor is horribly ugly.

He speaks French perfectly.

He studies his lessons diligently.

They speak the language badly.

You speak Spanish well.

**200.** The adverb *recientemente* is shortened to *recién* before past participles used adjectively:—

Ha llegado recientemente.

El recién llegado.

Los recién venidos.

Una casa recién pintada.

He has arrived recently.

The new arrival.

The newcomers.

A house recently painted.

### Vocabulary.

El estudio, the study.

El ingeniero, the engineer.

El sistema, the system.

El templo, the temple.

El viento, the wind

Los víveres, the provisions.

Acrecentar, to increase.

Adelantar, to advance.

Agradecer, to thank.

Construir, to construct.

Contribuir, to contribute.

Emplear, to employ.

Entero, entire.

Interesante, interesting.

La aduana, the custom-house.

La gramática, the grammar.

La letra, the handwriting.

La muralla, the wall.

La roca, the rock.

La vía férrea, the railway.

Ladrar, to bark.

Oportuno, opportune.

Pagar, to pay.

Soplar, to blow,

Trabajar, to work.

Último, late, last.

Ventajoso, advantageous.

Vestir, to dress.

### EXERCISE XV.

a) 1. La nieve cae *rápidamente*, y el viento sopla con *violencia*. 2. La hija de V. canta *divinamente*. 3. Los víveres han llegado muy *oportuno-mente*. 4. La *celebración* ha sido aplazada *indefinidamente*. 5. El resultado de nuestro *experimento* ha sido enteramente *satisfactorio*. 6. Ha sido

*imposible* ver hoy al *Ministro*, porque ha estado *excesivamente* ocupado. 7. El rey ha mandado pagar *liberalmente* á los soldados. 8. Nuestras *negociaciones diplomáticas* con *Chile* se han terminado de un modo muy *satisfactorio*. 9. La *República Argentina* está *abundantemente* provista de (*with*) bibliotecas y escuelas *públicas*. 10. El *general* ha agradecido *públicamente* á los soldados. 11. Nuestros amigos no han partido todavía, porque desgraciadamente no ha sido *posible* obtener (*obtain*) caballos. 12. Es *evidente* que el informe del *secretario* ha sido copiado *incorrectamente*. 13. Las murallas del templo están *curiosas* y *elaboradamente* adornadas de (*with*) *inscripciones* y de *figuras arabescas*. 14. En la isla de *Jamaica* se *cultivan* principalmente azúcar y café. 15. Las vías férreas que se han construido últimamente en *Venezuela* han contribuido á acrecentar muy *considerablemente* el *comercio* del país. 16. En esta (*this*) *región* hay en todas partes rocas grandes, *especialmente* en las márgenes del río.

b) 1. Your dog barks *constantly*. 2. The artist works *diligently*. 3. The students do not study *systematically*. 4. Your professor speaks very *categorically*. 5. The king is *constantly* surrounded with (*de*) soldiers. 6. Our colonel has been *mortally* wounded. 7. The senator's daughters are always richly and *elegantly* dressed. 8. The Bolivian Minister has recently gone to *Paris* (1). 9. The boys have not learned to read *correctly*. 10. Do you want some sugar? 11. Thank you, no; I *ordinarily* take tea without sugar. 12. Does your sister play German or *Italian music*? 13. She *generally* plays German music. 14. Your son advances *rapidly* in his studies; I see that he has nearly finished his English grammar. 15. My agent's handwriting is *absolutely illegible*. 16. An island is a *portion* of land entirely surrounded by (*de*) water. 17. It is *impossible* to *estimate correctly* the importance of our system of education. 18. The general's daughter plays the *violin* (m., 1) sweetly and *artistically*. 19. It is *evident* that your son has employed his *capital* advantageously, because my brother-in-law says in his last letter that he is very rich. 20. In a newspaper recently received from *Manila* I see that gold has been discovered in the island of *Panay*.

## LESSON XVI.

### COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

Además, besides.

Antes, before (*time, order*).

Cerca, near.

Debajo, under, beneath.

Delante, before, in front (*place*).

Dentro, in, within.

Después, after (*time, order*).

Detrás, after, behind (*place*).

Encima, on, over, on top.

Enfrente, opposite.

Fuera, outside, out, beyond.

Lejos, far, distant.

**201.** The above prepositions require *de* as a connecting link when followed by an object. When used absolutely or adverbially, the *de* is unnecessary:—

Además de la cerveza, quiere beber la ginebra.	Besides the beer he wants to drink the gin.
Ella es bonita y además rica.	She is pretty and rich besides.
Quiere beber antes de comer.	He wants to drink before eating.
El muchacho come antes.	The boy eats first.
Vive cerca de la catedral.	He lives near the cathedral.
La catedral está cerca.	The cathedral is near.
La carta está dentro del escritorio.	The letter is inside of the desk.
El dinero está dentro.	The money is inside.
Yo hablo después de mi padre.	I speak after my father.
Mi hermano viene después.	My brother is coming afterwards.
Después de un año.	After a year.
Un año después.	A year after.
El perro corre detrás del hombre.	The dog runs behind the man.
La niña viene detrás.	The girl comes behind.
Vive enfrente de nuestra casa.	He lives opposite to our house.
Su casa está enfrente.	His house is opposite.
Mi padre está fuera de la ciudad.	My father is out of town.
Mi padre está fuera.	My father is out, outside.
Su casa está lejos de la ciudad.	His house is far from the city.
La catedral no está lejos.	The cathedral is not far off.
Tengo un jardín delante de mi casa.	I have a garden in front of my house.
Mi cuñado tiene una hermosa casa con un jardín delante.	My brother-in-law has a fine house with a garden in front.
El perro está debajo de la mesa.	The dog is under the table.
El libro y la carta están en el cajón de mi escritorio; la carta está debajo.	The book and the letter are in the drawer of my desk; the letter is underneath.
Mi tío viaja encima del coche.	My uncle travels on top of the coach.
El libro está encima.	The book is on top.

**202.** Antes and después mean before and after in point of time or order. Delante and detrás refer only to situation:—

Quiero escribir la carta antes de mañana.	I want to write the letter before to-morrow.
Después de comprar pólvora, carga la escopeta.	After buying powder he loads the gun.
El caballo está delante del coche.	The horse is before the carriage.
El muchacho está detrás de la puerta.	The boy is behind the door.



203. The following simple prepositions are closely connected in meaning with the corresponding compound prepositions (already exhibited) which are placed opposite them:—

Ante, before,	with	delante de, in front of.
Tras, after,	with	detrás de, after.
Bajo, under, beneath,	with	debajo de, under, below.
Sobre, on, upon, over,	with	encima de, on top of, on, over.

204. The most general distinction between them is that the latter are used only in a literal sense expressive of location; the former have also a tropical or figurative acceptation. Used literally, there is but slight difference between the values of any pair.

205. *Ante* means *in the presence of*,—i.e., of some person or tribunal,—as if for criticism or judgment. *Delante de* signifies mere location *in front of*, without the idea of criticism implied by *ante*; any person or tangible thing may be its object:—

El capitán comparece ante el consejo de guerra.	The captain appears before the court martial.
Ante una comisión de peritos.	Before a committee of experts.
Pasar ante el foro crítico de la prensa.	To pass before the critical forum of the press.
Firma el testamento delante de testigos.	He signs the testament before witnesses.
El puesto de los trompetas es delante de la tropa.	The post of the trumpeters is in front of the troop.

REMARK.—Figuratively, *ante* denotes preference:—

La muerte ante la deshonra.	Death before dishonor.
Mi patria ante mi familia.	My country in preference to my family.

206. There is but little distinction between *tras* and *detrás de*, except that the former implies rather immediate proximity *behind*, and the latter is of more common occurrence. *Tras* is the word used in speaking of the succession of events or objects, as in a procession:—

Detrás de la mula; tras la mula.	Behind the mule; just behind the mule.
El perro corre tras la zorra.	The dog runs after the fox.
Tras la primavera viene el verano.	After the spring comes the summer.

207. In its primary use, *bajo* is interchangeable with *debajo de*, although the latter is of more frequent occurrence. *Bajo* also expresses the secondary sense of the English *under* in a variety of figures of speech in which actual location is not intended:—

Debajo de un árbol, de la mesa.	Under a tree, the table.
Debajo del agua, de la tierra.	Under water, underground.
Bajo el pretexto de enfermedad.	Under the pretext of sickness.
Bajo mis órdenes.	Under my orders ( <i>fig.</i> ).
Debajo de mi ventana.	Under my window ( <i>lit.</i> ).
Los documentos están bajo llave.	The documents are under lock and key.
La tarjeta está debajo de la llave.	The card is under the key.
Bajo un nombre supuesto.	Under a fictitious name.
Bajo pena de muerte.	Under penalty of death.

REMARK.—The antiquated preposition *so* is still used with the figurative meaning of *bajo* in a few phrases such as

So capa de.	Under pretext ( <i>lit.</i> cloak) of.
So pena de.	Under penalty of.

208. *Sobre*, when it denotes actual location, is distinguished from *encima de* in this, that *encima*<sup>1</sup> implies elevation above the general level contemplated, while *sobre* may mean *over* or *upon* something low:—

Sobre la mesa; sobre el suelo.	On the table; on the floor.
Encima del campanario está una cruz.	On top of the steeple is a cross.
Encima de nuestras cabezas.	Over our heads.
La lluvia cae sobre la tierra.	The rain falls on the earth.
El atlas está encima del armario.	The atlas is on top of the bookcase.

209. *Sobre*, when employed in a secondary sense, has the meaning of *on* or *over* without reference to actual location; it is also equivalent to *on* with the value of *about* or *concerning*:—

Estar sobre aviso.	To be on the alert.
Desgracia sobre desgracia.	Misfortune upon misfortune.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Encima* is composed of *en*, *on*, and *cima*, *top* or *summit*. *Encima de* is, therefore, literally equivalent to the English *on top of*.

Tiene una gran ventaja sobre sus rivales.	He has a great advantage over his rivals.
Conferencias sobre química.	Lectures on chemistry.
Pronuncia un discurso sobre el nuevo arancel.	He delivers a speech on the new tariff.

210. The infinitive in Spanish is used as a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. Hence the infinitive is the form of the verb after all prepositions:—

No habla sin decir una mentira.	He does not speak without telling a lie.
Con enseñar también aprendo.	By teaching I learn also.
Además de ser rica, es amable y bonita.	Besides being rich, she is pleasant and pretty.
Necesito buscar mis botas antes de ir á la ciudad.	I need to look for my boots before going to the city.

211. Prepositions in Spanish regularly precede the word they govern, and may not be placed at the end of a phrase, as is sometimes admissible in English:—

¿De qué está compuesta la mezcla?	What is the mixture composed of?
¿En qué libro ha hallado Vd. esa citación?	What book did you find that quotation in?

212. The preposition *en* is sometimes equivalent to *on* and at others to *in*. It is used for *on* where there would be no likelihood of its being mistaken for *in*; otherwise *sobre* is employed. These English prepositions are not exactly equivalent to the Spanish, but occupy an intermediate position, somewhat as follows:—

encima de	} over
sobre	
en	} on
dentro de	
	} in

☞ The student will now be so far advanced as not to require a separate vocabulary with each lesson. He should learn whatever new words and uses of words are introduced in the examples, and for unknown words required in the exercises he can refer to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

## EXERCISE XVI.

a) 1. ¿Hay en esta biblioteca un ejemplar de la Historia de Cuba, por (by) Guíteras? 2. Si señor, tenemos un ejemplar, pero está fuera. 3. El ordenanza ha llegado delante del *general*. 4. El ordenanza ha llegado antes del *general*. 5. El ordenanza teme llegar ante el *general*. 6. Después de comer tomo *ordinariamente* una taza de café y fumo un tabaco. 7. El alumno ha escrito un *excelente* ensayo sobre el desarrollo del *drama romántico* en Francia. 8. La imponente estatua de la Libertad levanta su antorcha como un faro encima del puerto de Nueva York. 9. La Cueva del Mamut, de Kentucky, es una de las maravillas del mundo. 10. Dentro de la cueva hay un extenso lago, en que (*which*) viven una especie de peces sin ojos. 11. La mostacera está sobre el estante detrás de la puerta, pero no hay mostaza dentro. 12. Encima de la casa de ayuntamiento de Filadelfia hay una estatua *colosal* de Benjamin Franklin. 13. Un célebre viajero francés va á pronunciar en la Academia de Música una conferencia sobre las riquezas *naturales* de las islas Filipinas. 14. Además de sus obras científicas, el catedrático ha escrito varias novelas interesantes. 15. Dentro de una semana de la *publicación* de su novela, la *edición* está agotada. 16. El *termómetro* marca hoy cuatro grados bajo cero, y hay un viento recio; no vamos á estar largo tiempo fuera.

b) 1. My brothers live in the city; their house is opposite St. Paul's church. 2. They say that the *infinite variety* of the city is preferable to the *intolerable monotony* of the country. 3. Our house is in the country, far from the noise and *confusion* of the city. 4. We have a lawn in front of our house, and there are fine shade trees on the lawn. 5. Behind the house there is an orchard. 6. Between the orchard and the house there is a large barn. 7. To the right of the house there is a flower-garden (*garden of flowers*), and to the left a vegetable garden. 8. There is a beautiful pond near our house. 9. The road passes near the pond. 10. Not very far from the pond there is a cave in the side of a hill, and within this cave the children have their playhouse. 11. Is your house near the railway? 12. No, sir, it is not in sight of the railway; but my brother-in-law's house is on the hill, opposite the *station*. 13. His house is beautifully *situated*, but it has no shade-trees in front. 14. Besides we have an *artesian* well near the side door, while my brother-in-law's family carry their (*el*) water from the spring that is at the foot of the hill. 15. This spring is a very picturesque spot, *situated* in a little ravine. 16. Its water is always cold, even in the summer. 17. The sides of the ravine are covered with beautiful ferns. 18. The supper is on the table and I am hungry after our long walk.



## LESSON XVII.

## SIMPLE OBJECTIVE FORMS OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**[37]** A noun in Spanish never varies in form as in Latin, except to make the plural. Adjectives, articles, and participles never have more than four forms; namely, the masculine and feminine respectively of the singular and plural. There is therefore no trace left of the case-endings of Latin so far as these parts of speech are concerned.

213. The personal pronouns are the only words in Spanish which retain distinctions of case. In their full inflection they have four cases :—

The nominative, or subject.

The dative<sup>1</sup>, or indirect object.

The accusative<sup>1</sup>, or direct object.

The prepositional, i.e. when governed by any preposition.

However, there is not always a separate form for each case; but the student must strive to keep them distinct in his mind even though they be identical on paper.


## 214. TABLE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND THEIR INFLECTION.

		FORNOMINATIVE.	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	PREPOSITIONAL.
SING.	1st p.	yo	me	me	mí
	2d p.	tú	te	te	tí
	3d p.	él	le	le, lo	él
		ella	le	la	ella
PLUR.	1st p.	ellos	[none]	lo	ello
	2d p.	nosotros	nos	nos	nosotros
		nosotras	nos	nos	nosotras
	3d p.	vosotros	os	os	vosotros
		vosotras	os	os	vosotras
Reflexive substitute for 3d person, common to both numbers.	3d p.	ellos	les	los	ellos
	3d p.	ellas	les	las	ellas
		[none]	se	se	sí

Used, like nouns, is invariable, except for number.

<sup>1</sup> The terms *accusatives* and *datives* will also, for the sake of brevity, be employed as synonyms of *direct* and *indirect object* in speaking of nouns;

## USE OF THE CASES.

 The student is already familiar with the nominatives of the personal pronouns, and with the circumstance of their usual omission except when required for emphasis, contrast or perspicuity. We have, therefore, to deal only with the objective forms.

215. The dative and accusative pronouns ordinarily *precede* all forms of the verb except the infinitive, gerund, and imperative positive (which will be explained hereafter).

REMARK.—It is to be observed that the dative and accusative forms of these pronouns are identical except in the case of the third person; it is therefore in this person only that the distinction between the usages of the dative and accusative can be shown.

*Dative.*

216. The leading use of the dative is to denote the person *to* whom anything is given, told, shown, or in any way conveyed or imparted:—

Ella me habla.	She speaks <del>to</del> me.
Yo te he escrito.	I have written to thee.
Les digo; les doy.	I say to them; I give [to] them.
He visto á mi hermana y le he hablado del asunto.	I have seen my sister and have spoken to her of the matter.
Nos parece probable.	It seems to us probable.
¿Qué le ha sucedido?	What has happened to him?

217. A verb which takes a dative pronoun (indirect object) may also govern a direct object at the same time:—

Ella me enseña sus dibujos.	She shows me her drawings.
Te he escrito una carta.	I have written thee a letter.
Les digo la verdad.	I tell them the truth.
Le he dado algunas rosas.	I have given her some roses.
Le prestan el dinero que necesita.	They lend him the money he needs.

218. As the Spanish dative combines in a measure the functions of both the Latin dative and ablative (literally, *give-to-ive*

---

but when so employed they will not denote any special forms, as in the case of the personal pronouns, but merely the nature of their grammatical dependence upon a verb.

and *take-from-ive*), it is further employed in cases where something is taken away from anyone:—

Me han comprado mis géneros.	They have bought my goods from me.
Me ha robado mi bolsa.	He has stolen my purse from me.
Le he ganado la apuesta.	I have won the bet from him.
¿Qué me quiere Vd.?	What do you want of me?

**219.** The dative is further used to represent the person for whose benefit or advantage anything is done:—

Les ha procurado colocaciones.	He has procured them situations.
Te he comprado un reloj.	I have bought thee a watch.
Dice que me ha buscado un criado.	He says he has looked for a servant for me.

**220.** After *ser* used impersonally, a dative personal pronoun may be employed to denote the person *to* whom the impersonal expression is applicable:—

Le ha sido fácil probar la coartada.	It has been easy <i>for</i> him to prove an alibi.
Caballeros, me es imposible escribir mientras Vds. hablan.	Gentlemen, it is impossible <i>for</i> me to write while you talk.

**221.** The dative case is confined to the personal pronouns; no other words have any distinction of case. Therefore when the indirect object is any other pronoun, or a noun, the relation is expressed by a preposition—generally *á*:—

He hablado á mi hermana.	I have spoken to my sister.
Le he hablado.	I have spoken to her.
¡Escribe Vd. á su yerno?	Are you writing to your son-in-law?
Le escribo.	I am writing to him.
Han robado la capa á mi amigo.	They stole the cloak from my friend.
He procurado á mi hijo un empleo en el Ministerio de Guerra.	I have procured my son a position in the War Department.

#### *Accusative.*

**222.** The accusative form is used when the pronoun is the direct object of any action:—

Yo la llamo.	I call her.
No nos ven.	They do not see us.

Los he vendido.

Ella le ha acogido cordialmente.

No los tememos.

I have sold them.

She received him cordially.

We do not fear them.

### *Prepositional.*

223. When the pronoun is governed by a preposition, the prepositional form is required. This, it is to be noted, is the same as the nominative, in all but the first and second persons singular (and, we may add, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, which has no nominative):—

Es evidente que hablan de mí.

Mira hacia tí.

Quiere venir con nosotros.

¿Por qué ha venido Vd. sin él?

Hemos llegado después de ellas.

¿Han traído una carta dirigida á mí?

It is evident they are speaking of me.

He looks toward thee.

He wants to come with us.

Why did you come without him?

We arrived after them.

Have they brought a letter addressed to me?

### GENDER.

224. The personal pronouns of the third person always assume the gender of the nouns which they represent, although it is not apparent in the dative, where no distinction of gender is made. Consequently, as in Spanish all existing things are either masculine or feminine, *it*, as applied to either of them, must be represented by the appropriate case of *él* or *ella*:—

Quiero vender mi casa. *Ella* es bonita y cómoda; recientemente *la* he mandado pintar, y *le* he agregado una ala.

¿Dónde está la vinagrera?—*La* he roto.

¿Tiene V. mis plumas?—*Las* tengo.

¿Ha leído V. los libros?—*Los* he leído.

¿Ve V. á los soldados?—*Los* veo, y veo á un oficial con *ellos*.

I want to sell my house. *It* is pretty and comfortable; I have recently had *it* painted, and have added an ell to *it*.

Where is the vinegar-cruet?—I broke *it*.

Have you my pens?—I have *them*.

Have you read the books?—I have read *them*.

Do you see the soldiers?—I see *them*, and see an officer with *them*.

225. It will be observed that *él* has two forms for the accusative singular: *le* and *lo*. According to the prevailing



usage of the language, *le* relates to a male person or a masculine thing personified, *lo* to any other masculine noun <sup>1</sup>:—

Busco á mi criado pero no <i>le</i> hallo.	I look for my servant, but do not find him.
Busco mi sombrero pero no <i>lo</i> hallo.	I look for my hat, but do not find it.
¿Quiere V. mi abanico?—No <i>lo</i> quiero.	Do you want my fan?—I do not want it.
¿Dónde está el muchacho? <i>le</i> necesito.	Where is the boy? I want him.
Pega al perro y <i>le</i> mata.	He beats the dog and kills him.

**226.** *Ello* has the value of *it* only as representing a subject referred to, or the substance of something said, and never a visible, tangible thing. It therefore refers to adjectives or statements, but not to nouns. It is seldom expressed as subject. (§ 161.) Its accusative *lo* must not be confounded with the accusative of the masculine pronoun *él*, of similar form:

¿Qué es <i>ello</i> ?	What is it?
No <i>lo</i> he hecho.	I did not do it ( <i>thing proposed</i> ).
Sí, <i>lo</i> creo.	Yes, I believe it ( <i>what you say</i> ).
Convengo en <i>ello</i> .	I agree to it ( <i>condition named</i> ).
No creo en <i>ello</i> .	I do not believe in it.
No hemos recibido noticia de <i>ello</i> .	We have received no news of it.

#### EXERCISE XVII.

a) 1. Aquellos cuervos no parecen tener miedo de nosotros. 2. ¡Claro! es porque no tenemos escopeta. 3. ¿Ve Vd. á aquellas damas que están sentadas enfrente de nosotros? Bueno, son las hijas del almirante *Montejo*. 4. Y ¿quién es el oficial que está parado delante de ellas? 5. Es el teniente *Sanfuentes*. 6. El aguinaldo que me ha dado el cuñado de Vd. me ha sido muy útil. 7. ¿De qué va Vd. á mandar rellenar el pavo? 8. Lo voy á mandar rellenar de castañas. 9. ¿Ha visto Vd. á Roberto después de su riña con él? 10. Sí señor, me ha venido á pedir perdón. 11. He olvidado cerrar la puerta tras mí. 12. Se dice que los jardines del duque son muy hermosos, pero no he estado dentro de ellos. 13. Mis gafas me son *indie-*

<sup>1</sup> The usage of the accusative masculine forms *le* and *lo* is very irregular. Many reputable modern writers use *lo* of persons as well as of things, and others employ *le* in reference to inanimate objects. The dominant practice is that given above. The use of *les* for *los* is sometimes met with, and dative feminine forms *la* and *las* are in use.

*pensables*; me es *imposible* leer sin ellas. 14. Hay un tapete de Esmirna delante de la lumbre, y el gato está dormido sobre él. 15. Veo que Vd. ha matado un buho; ¿qué va Vd. á hacer con él? 16. Lo voy á hacer em-pajar. 17. ¿Es rico el *cliente* de Vd.? 18. Sí señor, estoy seguro de ello, porque es socio del Círculo *Metropolitano*. 19. Mi vecino dice que ha comprado una viña en la *California*, pero yo no lo creo. 20. Los *bandoleros* me han quitado la capa, y me han robado el reloj y el portamonedas. 21. Me es *evidente* que el cochero ha bebido demasiado vino.

b) 1. I open my tobacco box and take some tobacco out of it. 2. Then I take a piece of thin paper, put the tobacco into it, and roll it up. 3. The waiter brings the coffee and sets it on the table before me. 4. I put sugar into it and stir it with a spoon. 5. My dog is always clean because I have him washed frequently. 6. *Ordinarily* the groom washes him in a tub, and sometimes he takes him to the lake. 7. When I go to the *station* the dog always runs after me. 8. Do you give him meat? 9. No, I give him corn bread or dog biscuit. 10. I have bought him a new collar. 11. Has the janitor found my fountain pen? 12. No, he has looked for it thoroughly (*bien*) but has not found it. 13. My plants grow well because I water (*riego*) them daily. 14. The bookcase is between the windows, and the typewriter is in front of it. 15. My *agent* says he has sent me the money, but I have not received it. 16. I see that our guests have arrived before us. 17. I have a copy of her novel, but I have not read it. 18. If the *accused* is guilty, we have no *evidence* of it. 19. Your daughter is in love. Am I not right? 20. There is no doubt of it. 21. In a corner of her room is a Turkish couch, and on it are scattered a lot of *gay* cushions, and in among them is a mandolin and a novel.

## LESSON XVIII.

### REMARKS ON SOME IMPORTANT ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

227. The interrogative *dónde*, *where*, requires to be preceded by the preposition *á* when it denotes *motion to* a place, and by *de* when *origin* or *egress* is intended. (These two forms correspond exactly to the old English *whither* and *whence*.) When it expresses *stationary position* it should strictly be preceded by *en*, but this is not generally observed when the idea of *being in* is not contained in the sentence:—

¿Á dónde va Vd.?	Where are you going? (whither go you?)
¿De dónde viene Vd.?	Where do you come from? (whence come you?)
¿En dónde vive V. ? <i>or</i> ¿dónde vive V. ?	Where do you live?

228. *Donde* is also used relatively, as in answering a question, in which case it does not bear the written accent. (§ 52*b*.) The application of prepositions is the same as for its interrogative use:—

La casa á donde voy.	The house where I am going.
La ciudad de donde vengo.	The city from which I come.
El arrabal en donde resido.	The suburb where I live.
Vengo de donde Vd. viene.	I come from where you come from.
Vivo donde ( <i>or</i> en donde) V. vive.	I live where you live.

229. The adverbs of place *aquí*, *ahí*, *allí*, are properly applicable only to *rest in a place*; *motion to a place* is expressed by the forms *acá*, *ahí*, *allá*, there being no other form of *ahí*. The distinction, however, is not strictly maintained, even by careful writers. Their meanings are as follows:—

REST.	MOTION.	
Aquí.	Acá.	Here.
Ahí.	Ahí.	There ( <i>near you</i> ).
Allí.	Allá.	There ( <i>yonder, at a distance</i> )

---

El capitán está aquí.	The captain is here.
El capitán viene aquí ( <i>or</i> acá).	The captain is coming here (hither).
Está ahí.	He is there,
Va ahí.	He is going there, } ( <i>where you are.</i> )
Reside allí.	He lives there, } distant from
Va allá.	He is going there, } both.
Espero ver á mi padre allí.	I expect to see my father there.
¿Qué tiene V. ahí?	What have you got there?
¿Tiene V. amigos aquí?	Have you friends here?

REMARK.—The distinction above shown between *ahí* and *allí* (*or* *allá*) is rigidly maintained. For instance, a merchant in Chicago writing to a correspondent in Lima would speak of his own city as *aquí*, of Lima as *ahí*, and of any other place not closely connected with these as *allí*. *Cus-*

tom does not, however, sanction the use of the form *allí* when followed by *en* and the name of a place; therefore we must say: *allí en Cuba*, *allí en Europa*.

230. These adverbs are by extension sometimes employed as adverbs of time, as *here* is in English. They are then to be rendered as follows :—

<i>Aquí</i> ;	Here, at this moment, at this point in the story.
<i>Allí</i> ;	Then, at that moment relatively near.
<i>Allá</i> ;	Then, at a remote period.

231. Preceded by *de*, they express a deduction, with the following meanings :—

<i>De aquí</i> ;	Hence, from what I have said.
<i>De ahí</i> ;	Thence, from what you have said.
<i>De allí</i> ;	Thence, from what somebody else said.

232. The adverb *ya*, when used positively, means *already*, *now*; with a negative it is equivalent to *no longer*, *not any more*, *no more*. It usually stands at the beginning of the sentence :—

<i>Ya es tarde.</i>	It is already late, or it is late now.
<i>¿Ya ha vendido V. su caballo?</i>	Have you sold your horse already?
<i>Está claro que ella ya no quiere venir.</i>	Now it is clear that she no longer wants to come.
<i>Ya comprendo; or merely Ya.</i>	Now I understand.
<i>Ya no toco el piano.</i>	I do not play the piano any more.
<i>¿Ya habla el castellano su hijo de V.?</i>	Does your son already speak Spanish?
<i>¿Ya no desea V. ir á casa de su hermano?</i>	Don't you want to go to your brother's any more?
<i>¿No desea V. ya ir á casa de su hermano?</i>	Don't you want to go to your brother's now?

233. *Aun* and *todavía* both mean *still* or *yet* when used positively; with a negative they mean *not yet*. When *aun* follows the verb it is pronounced as two syllables and is so accented. Secondly, *aun* has the meaning of *even* :—

<i>¿Tiene V. aún (or todavía) su yegua baya?</i>	Have you still got your bay mare?
--	-----------------------------------



¿No ha llegado el coronel todavía?	Has not the colonel come yet?
Todavía no.	Not yet.
Su libro es excelente, aun con las faltas de que está lleno.	His book is excellent, even with the faults of which it is full.

**234.** Como is an adverb or conjunction relating to manner. Used in direct or indirect interrogations (*cómo*) it is an adverb meaning *how*; used relatively (*como*) it is a conjunction with the meaning of *as, like*:—

¿Cómo está V.?	How are you? How do you do?
Ignoro cómo explicar el fenómeno.	I do not know how to explain the phenomenon.
V. no es como su hermano.	You are not like your brother.
Habla como una persona de autoridad.	He speaks like a person of authority.
Consideramos su adopción como necesaria al triunfo de nuestro partido.	We consider its adoption as necessary to the success of our party.

**235.** The two prepositions of motion, *hacia* and *hasta*, merit a word of remark. *Hacia, towards*, denotes direction. *Hasta*, with verbs of motion, means *up to, as far as*; on speaking of time, *until*. In connection with adverbs they form many adverbial phrases:—

Hacia aquí ( <i>or</i> acá); hacia allí.	This way; in that direction.
Hasta aquí; hasta allí.	Thus far; as far as there.
Hacia arriba, hacia abajo.	Upwards, downwards.
Hacia adelante, hacia atrás.	Forwards, backwards.
¿Hacia dónde quieren VV. ir?	Which way do you want to go?
¿Hasta dónde quieren VV. ir?	How far do you want to go?
¿Hasta cuándo?	How long? until when?
Hasta ahora, hasta entonces.	Until now, until then.
Hasta mañana.	Until to-morrow.
Hasta la vista. { ( <i>Familiar leave-</i> )	Until we see each other. <i>Au revoir.</i>
Hasta luego. { ( <i>takings.</i> ) }	Until next time. "See you later."
¿Hasta qué hora?	Until what hour? How late?
Iré hasta la casa de V.	I will go as far as your house.
Marchan hacia la colina.	They march towards the hill.
Mira hacia el río.	He looks towards the river.
¿Hasta qué punto llegará su insolencia?	To what extreme will his insolence extend?

**236.** By extension of this meaning *hasta* means *even*:—

Es preciso amar hasta á los enemigos.	It is necessary to love even one's enemies.
Hasta las mujeres pelearán en defensa de la ciudad.	Even the women will fight in defense of the city.

REMARK.—After a negative, *antes de* is preferred to *hasta* with regard to time:—

No voy antes de mañana.	I am not going until to-morrow.
No pagaré la cuenta antes de recibir los géneros.	I shall not pay the bill until I receive the goods.

**237.** A noun after the preposition *sin* is not generally preceded by the indefinite article. *Sin* followed thus by a noun is often equivalent to the English adjective formed by adding *-less* to the noun:—

Da el dinero al hombre sin decir palabra.	He gives the man the money without saying a word.
No quiero ir á la ciudad sin sombrero.	I do not want to go to the city without a hat.
Un rey sin reino.	A king without a kingdom.
Un príncipe sin dinero.	A moneyless prince.
Un muchacho sin amigos.	A friendless boy.
Esta carta está sin faltas.	This letter is faultless.

ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

Así como.	Just as.
Á veces.	At times, sometimes.
Casi nunca.	Hardly ever ( <i>lit.</i> almost never).
Casi siempre.	Almost always.
Como de costumbre.	As usual.
De ningún modo.	By no means, not at all.
De veras.	Indeed, really, ( <i>emphatic</i> ).
¿De veras?	Indeed? really?
En efecto.	In fact, indeed.
Hoy día.	Nowadays.
Raras veces.	Rarely, seldom.
Sin duda.	No doubt, doubtless.
Sin embargo.	Nevertheless.
Tal vez.	Perhaps.
¡Ya lo creo!	Yes indeed!

## PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

Á causa de.	On account of, because of.
Acerca de.	About ( <i>fig.</i> ), regarding.
Á consecuencia de.	In consequence of.
Al lado de.	Beside, by the side of.
Á lo largo de.	Along.
Al otro lado de.	On the other side of.
Al rededor de (alrededor de).	Around.
Á través de.	Across.
En lugar de.	In place of.
En vez de.	Instead of.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

a) 1. La luna gira alrededor de la tierra, así como la tierra gira alrededor del sol. 2. Nos es preciso hacer provisión de leña antes de la llegada del invierno. 3. Á lo largo de las márgenes del arroyo crecen en *profusión* helechos y flores silvestres. 4. ¿Qué ha *plantado* el jardinero en el huerto detrás de la casa? 5. Ha *plantado* coles y remolachas en él. 6. ¿Cómo han llegado Vds. aquí? 7. Hemos seguido la senda á través de la pradera, y luego hemos venido á lo largo de la margen del lago. 8. ¿Hasta cuándo tiene V. intención de estar fuera? 9. Espero estar fuera hasta la puesta del sol. 10. ¿Hasta dónde han viajado los primos de Vd.? 11. Han ido hasta *San Francisco*. 12. Se dice que un huracán *tropical* reina á lo largo de la costa y que viene hacia acá. 13. Ya el sol ha desaparecido detrás de las lejanas montañas. 14. ¿De dónde viene Vd.? 15. Vengo del jardín, donde el jardinero me ha enseñado cómo se hacen los ingertos. 16. El médico no vive aquí; vive allí al otro lado de la plaza. 17. ¿Hasta qué hora ha estudiado Vd.? 18. He estudiado con *diligencia* hasta la medianoche; sin embargo no he terminado aún mi tema. 19. Hoy día es de veras difícil encontrar un empleo. 20. ¡Ya lo creo! sin embargo un hombre listo casi nunca está sin trabajo.

b) 1. Are you satisfied with your new house? 2. Yes indeed, besides being roomy, it is comfortable and well furnished. 3. Has your sister seen it? 4. No, but I have sent her a photograph of it. 5. How far are we going to-day? 6. We are going as far as my uncle's farm. 7. Where is Robert? 8. He is sitting beside his *preceptor* on a bench in front of the door. 9. The country around *Lima* is very picturesque. 10. After carefully *examining* the details of the process I have *prepared* the following report regarding it. 11. We no longer expect to finish the *drama* (*m.*) before the end of the month. 12. There goes a rabbit, and as usual I have no gun. 13. In fact I almost always see game when I am without a gun. 14. We are not going to the town to-day on account of the bad state of the

roads. 15. In consequence of the drought there is no longer any water in the brook. 16. Indeed there is rarely any water in it during the summer. 17. Indeed! then (*pués*) where do the cattle drink? 18. Why (*vaya*), we have an *artesian* well, and from it we fill a large trough, and the cattle come there to drink. 19. Is the water from the well muddy? 20. By no means, it is always *perfectly* clear. 21. His grave is at the foot of a majestic oak, beside a limpid spring, where the wild-flowers shed their fragrance and the birds sing sad requiems.

## LESSON XIX.

### THE FUTURE AND FUTURE-PERFECT TENSES; EXPANSION OF THE STEM-VOWEL IN VERBS.

238. The future tense, which in English is made up by the use of the auxiliaries *will* and *shall*, is formed in Spanish by adding the following terminations to the full infinitive form of the verb:—

SING.	1st p.	-é.	<i>E.g.:</i>	compraré,	venderé,	viviré.
	2d p.	-ás.		comprarás,	venderás,	vivirás.
	3d p.	-á.		comparará,	venderá,	vivirá.
PLUR.	1st p.	-emos.		compraremos,	venderemos,	viviremos.
	2d p.	-éis.		compraréis,	venderéis,	viviréis.
	3d p.	-án.		compararán,	venderán,	vivirán.

239. In this manner are formed the futures of all regular and nearly all irregular verbs. Of the irregular verbs already introduced, *querer* and *haber* in forming the future elide the vowel of the infinitive termination; *tener* and *venir* elide this vowel and interpolate a *d*; while *hacer* and *decir* form the future from primitive infinitives now obsolete<sup>1</sup>:—

QUERER ( <i>querr</i> ):	querré	querrás	querrá	querremos	querréis	querrán.
HABER ( <i>habr</i> ):	habré	habrás	habrá	habremos	habréis	habrán.
TENER ( <i>tendr</i> ):	tendré	tendrás	tendrá	tendremos	tendréis	tendrán.
VENIR ( <i>vendr</i> ):	vendré	vendrás	vendrá	vendremos	vendréis	vendrán.
HACER ( <i>har</i> ):	haré	harás	hará	haremos	haréis	harán.
DECIR ( <i>dir</i> ):	diré	dirás	dirá	diremos	diréis	dirán.

<sup>1</sup> These older infinitives will be understood by comparison with the Latin and Italian forms:—

LAT.	{ <i>facere</i> ; <i>dicere</i> ;	ITAL.	{ <i>fare</i> ; <i>dire</i> ;	FRENCH	{ <i>faire</i> ; <i>dire</i> ;	MODERN SPANISH	{ <i>haré</i> . <i>diré</i> .
------	--------------------------------------	-------	----------------------------------	--------	-----------------------------------	----------------	----------------------------------

The modern Spanish replaces the older *f* by *h*.



REMARK.—There are but six other verbs which are irregular in the future; these will be introduced later on.

240. The use of the future is practically the same in Spanish as in English:—

Yo no diré nada.	I shall not say anything.
¿No tomará V. un vaso de vino?	Won't you take a glass of wine?
Será preciso obrar con prudencia.	It will be necessary to act prudently.
Pasaremos un mes en el campo.	We will spend a month in the country.
Partiremos mañana.	We will set out to-morrow.
¿Á qué teatro iremos?	What theater shall we go to?

241. In short emphatic declarations and in brief requests for instructions, the present indicative replaces the future tense in familiar language:—

Voy á su casa luego.	I shall go to his house soon.
Salen mañana.	They set out to-morrow.
No pago la cuenta.	I sha'n't pay the bill.
No emprendo ningún proyecto semejante.	I won't undertake any such project.
Si abres la boca te pego un tiro.	If you open your mouth, I'll shoot you.
¿Dónde pongo el quinqué?	Where shall I put the lamp?
¿Quito el mantel ó no?	Shall I take off the table-cloth or not?
¿Qué digo? ¿Qué hago?	What shall I say? What shall I do?
¿Me hace V. el favor de abrir la ventana?	Will you do me the favor of opening the window?

242. The future-perfect is formed as in English by the association of the future of *haber* and a past participle. Its usage does not differ materially in the two languages:—

Habremos terminado la obra mañana.	We shall have finished the work to-morrow.
¿Habrá copiado V. el informe antes de mi vuelta?	Will you have copied the report before my return?

REMARK.—The use of *tener* with a past participle contrasts well with that of *haber* in the above examples:—

Tendremos terminada la obra mañana.	We shall have the work finished to-morrow.
¿Tendrá copiado V. el informe antes de mi vuelta?	Will you have the report copied before my return?

**243.** The future is frequently used in place of the present tense to convey an idea of conjecture, or of probability in which we do not place implicit confidence :—

El cliente de Vd. será rico.

Your client is probably rich.

Los niños estarán dormidos.

The children are most likely asleep.

Vds. conocerán este cuento.

You may possibly know this story.

**244.** The same degree of conjecture or possibility is implied by the future-perfect, about an action regarded as completed at the time of speaking :—

Vds. lo habrán oído antes.

You have possibly heard it before.

Las habré perdido en la calle.

I probably lost them in the street.

**245.** The Spanish future cannot be used after *si* (meaning *if*). If the idea of willingness is important, it is expressed by *querer* :—

Si esta caja sirve para sus fines, es

If this box *will serve* your purpose,

Vd. muy dueño de ella.

you are very welcome to it.

Yo llevaré las dos maletas si Vd.

I will carry the two valises if you

lleva el estuche de escopeta.

*will carry* the gun-case.

*but*

Si el cliente de Vd. quiere pasar

If your client *will call* at my office,

á mi despacho, le enseñare la

I will show him the invoice.

factura.

REMARK.—When *si* has the meaning of *whether*, expressing or implying an alternative, the future is admissible :—

No sabemos si recibirá el nom-  
bramiento ó no.

We do not know whether he will  
receive the appointment or not.

**246.** The future may be employed in English to indicate a habit; this is not admissible in Spanish, the present indicative being used instead :—

Permanece sin hablar durante horas  
enteras.

He *will sit* for whole hours without  
speaking.

Los lobos huyen ordinariamente  
del hombre; pero cuando están  
acosados por el hambre, le atacan,  
y aun entran en las aldeas para  
buscar alimento.

Wolves *will* ordinarily flee from  
man; but when they are pressed  
by hunger they *will* attack him,  
and *will* even go into the villages  
to seek food.

## EXPANSION OF THE STEM-VOWEL IN VERBS.

247. By far the largest class of irregular verbs is composed of those whose only irregularity consists in the expansion of the stem-vowel *e* or *o* to *ie* and *ue* respectively when accented. (§ 14.) When the accent falls on the termination, the form is regular in every respect:—

*Empezar*, to begin: *empiezo*,    *empezamos*,    *empezado*,    *empezaré*.  
*Costar*, to cost:    *cuéstan*,    *costáis*,    *costado*,    *costarán*.

248. While this irregularity is found in all three conjugations, those of the third possess additional irregularities which cause them to form a distinct class, which will be presented elsewhere. (See Part IV, § 1070.) The following paradigms will exemplify the verbs of the first and second conjugations:—

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>E</i> Stem. <i>Cerrar</i> , to shut.		<i>O</i> Stem. <i>Probar</i> , to try or test.	
SING.	{ 1. <i>cierro</i> ,	SING.	{ 1. <i>pruebo</i> ,
	2. <i>cierras</i> ,		2. <i>pruebas</i> ,
	3. <i>cierra</i> ,		3. <i>prueba</i> ,
PLUR.	{ 1. <i>cerramos</i> ,	PLUR.	{ 1. <i>probamos</i> ,
	2. <i>cerráis</i> ,		2. <i>probáis</i> ,
	3. <i>cierran</i> .		3. <i>prueban</i> .

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>E</i> Stem <i>Perder</i> , to lose.		<i>O</i> Stem. <i>Morder</i> , to bite.	
SING.	{ 1. <i>piérd</i> ,	SING.	{ 1. <i>muerdo</i> ,
	2. <i>pierdes</i> ,		2. <i>muerdes</i> ,
	3. <i>pierde</i> ,		3. <i>muerde</i> ,
PLUR.	{ 1. <i>perdemos</i> ,	PLUR.	{ 1. <i>mordemos</i> ,
	2. <i>perdéis</i> ,		2. <i>mordéis</i> ,
	3. <i>piérd</i> en.		3. <i>muerden</i> .

NOTE.—In the English-Spanish vocabulary of this work, verbs belonging to this class will be designated by the Roman numeral in parenthesis (I), denoting the class. Verbs met with in reading that contain the stem diphthong *ie* or *ue* should be suspected, and looked for accordingly in the vocabulary or dictionary.

## EXERCISE XIX.

a) 1. Ahora daré á los niños una lección de (*in*) *orientación*. 2. Alberto, si al mediodía miras en *dirección* de tu sombra, ¿qué tendrás detrás de tí? 3. Tendré el sol detrás de mí. 4. Bueno; y al mediodía el sol está al Sur. 5. Si miras en *dirección* de tu sombra, mirarás hacia el Norte. 6. Bajo este concepto tendrás delante de tí el Norte y detrás de tí el sur. 7. Á tu izquierda estará el occidente, ó el Oeste; y si miras en la *dirección* contraria, mirarás hacia el oriente, ó el Este. 8. Estos cuatro puntos se llaman los puntos *cardinales*. 9. Pues bien, si andas derecho en *dirección* de tu sombra, ¿á qué lugar de la aldea llegarás? 10. Llegaré á la iglesia. 11. Así pues, la iglesia está *situada* al Norte de nuestra casa. 12. Si miras encima del campanario de la iglesia, ¿qué verás? 13. Veré cuatro barras de hierro con las letras N., E., S., O. 14. Pues bien, esas cuatro barras nos señalan los cuatro puntos *cardinales*. 15. Encima de ellas está una flecha que gira según la *dirección* del viento. 16. Esta flecha se llama una veleta, y nos enseña de dónde viene el viento. 17. *Nicolás*, si vuelves la espalda á tu sombra y marchas en derechura adelante, ¿á dónde llegarás? 18. Á la selva. 19. ¿Dónde, pues, está *situada* la selva? 20. Estará *situada* al Sur de nosotros. 21. Eso es; pues el reconocimiento *correcto* de los puntos *cardinales* se llama la *orientación*.

b) 1. When shall we go to the *Zoological Gardens*? 2. To-morrow, if it does not rain. 3. I will split the wood if you will carry it to the house. 4. To-morrow we will gather the apples that have fallen from the trees, and take them to the barn. 5. We will grind them in the cider-mill that is under the hay-loft, and then squeeze them in a press. 6. We will pour the juice into a keg, and at the end of a week we shall have good cider. 7. The river must be swollen after the heavy rain. 8. Yes indeed, and the roads are probably quite impassable. 9. The ostrich does not fly, but he runs with the swiftness of the wind. 10. Where shall I find *Professor Cuesta*? 11. I have not seen him to-day, but he is probably in the *laboratory*. 12. If you will bring your children I will show them my new *magic* lantern. 13. It is *evident* that the young duke will soon have squandered his *immense* fortune. 14. If you will rent the house I will have it repainted. 15. Halt! One step more (*más*) and I shall fire. 16. The Committee on (*de*) *Credentials* (*f.*) will *examine* the *credentials* (*f.*) of the newly-elected delegates and will report to-morrow concerning them. 17. If there are any eggs in the house I will make some muffins. 18. Shall I light the lamps now, Madam? 19. Yes, *Julia*, if you have trimmed the wicks. 20. The ass is not particular in his food, and will eat fodder that a horse will refuse with *disdain*.



## LESSON XX.

## SOME IMPORTANT IDIOMATIC VERBS.

249. The English usage of specifying particular meanings of verbs by the addition of adverbs is not common in Spanish, where the idea is usually conveyed in a single word. This is well exhibited in the following verbs of motion:—

Bajar.	} To go or come	down.	(To descend.)
Subir.		up.	(To rise, ascend.)
Partir.		away.	(To depart, set out, start.)
Entrar.		in	(To enter.)
Salir (irr.).		out.	(To appear, turn out.)

REMARK.—Although *salir* is an irregular verb, its present indicative exhibits no irregularity except the interpolation of a *g* in the first person singular: *salgo*, *I go or come out*. Its inflection in that tense and in the future is as follows:—

PRÆS. IND.	salgo,	sales,	sale,	salimos,	salís,	salen.
FUT. IND.	saldré,	saldrás,	saldrá,	saldremos,	saldréis,	saldrán.

250. These verbs merely express the nature of a motion, *up down, out, etc.*, and do not make any distinction between direction *toward* and *away from* the speaker, as is the case with their English equivalents:—

Los soldados han bajado al agua con sus caballos.	The soldiers have gone down to the water with their horses.
¿Cuándo va V. á bajar?	When are you coming down?
Salen inmediatamente después de entrar.	They go out immediately after coming in.
Salgo ahora.	I am going out now.
Cuando entra, sube á su habitación.	When he comes in, he goes up to his room.
Parto mañana en la diligencia.	I set out to-morrow in the diligence.
Nuestros negocios han salido mal.	Our affairs have turned out badly.
Los precios han subido.	The prices have gone up.

251. *Entrar* requires to be supplemented by *en* when followed by an object:—

Entra en el edificio.

He enters the building.

Entrar en una sociedad, en un colegio, en el ejército.

To enter a society, a college, the army.

**252.** Bajar and subir, like their English equivalents, may take a direct object:—

Bajar el río, la cuesta, la escalera.

To go down the river, the hill, the stairs.

Subir el río, la cuesta, la escalera.

To go up the river, the hill, the stairs.

**253.** Bajar and subir are also used as transitive verbs meaning *to bring or take down* and *up* respectively:—

Los criados van á bajar los baúles.

The servants are going to take the trunks down.

La lavandera no ha subido la ropa.

The laundress has not brought up the clothes.

**254.** The following are regular verbs of common occurrence which are usually rendered in English by a different construction:—

Aguantar, to put up with.

Esperar, to hope for, wait for.

Aguardar, to wait for.

Faltar, to be wanting or missing.

Aprovechar, to profit by.

Ignorar, to be unaware of, not to know.

Apuntar, to note down, make a note of.

Incendiar, to set fire to.

Averiguar, to find out.

Mirar, to look at.

Bastar, to be enough or sufficient.

Presenciar, to be present at.

Callar, to be silent.

Quitar, to take away, take off.

Cuidar, to take care of.

Repasar, to look over, go over.

Distar, to be distant.

Sacar, to take out, pull out, get out.

Escuchar, to listen to.

Sobrar, to be over, remain over.

REMARK.—There is really nothing unusual about these Spanish verbs; they are simple and direct. Whatever peculiarity there may be is in their present English renderings, and direct equivalents for many of them may be found in English words of Latin origin:—

Aguantar, to tolerate.

Presenciar, to attend.

Averiguar, to ascertain.

Quitar, to remove.

Bastar, to suffice.

Repasar, to review.

Esperar, to expect.

Sacar, to extract.

## EXAMPLES.

No es posible aguantar su insolencia.	It is not possible to put up with his insolence.
Aguardamos al cartero.	We are waiting for the postman.
Hemos aprovechado su ausencia.	We have profited by his absence.
Apuntar un discurso.	To take notes of a speech.
Averiguar la verdad de un asunto.	To find out the truth of a matter.
Quiero averiguar si es verdad.	I want to find out if it is true.
Esta cantidad me basta y sobra.	This quantity is enough and more than enough for me.
Los niños no quieren callar.	The children will not be still.
La historia calla sobre este punto.	History is silent on this point.
¿Quién cuida la casa de Vd. ahora?	Who takes care of your house now?
El arsenal dista tres millas.	The arsenal is three miles distant.
No escucha mis consejos.	He does not listen to my advice.
Escuchar la música, un discurso.	To listen to the music, to a speech.
Esperamos un buen resultado de nuestros esfuerzos.	We hope for a good result from our efforts.
Falta un tomo de mi enciclopedia.	A volume of my encyclopædia is missing.
No nos faltarán parroquianos.	We shall not lack customers.
Ignore el origen de la costumbre.	I do not know the origin of the custom.
Los conspiradores han incendiado el palacio.	The conspirators have set fire to the palace.
Mira atentamente el retrato.	He looks attentively at the portrait.
¿Quieren Vds. presenciar la ejecución del asesino?	Do you wish to be present at the execution of the murderer?
Quita la silla y mete al caballo en la cuadra.	He takes off the saddle and puts the horse in the stable.
La criada ha quitado el mantel.	The servant has taken off the table-cloth.
Necesito repasar mis lecciones antes de salir.	I need to look over my lessons before going out.
Sacar un diente, una tachuela.	To pull out a tooth, a tack.
Sacar una copia, una fotografía.	To take a copy, a photograph.

255. The various tenses and persons of *acabar*, *to finish*, followed by *de* and an infinitive, are equivalent to corresponding forms of the English expression *have just*, followed by a past participle:—

Mi hermano acaba de salir.	My brother has just gone out.
La sirvienta acaba de encender el gas.	The maid has just lit the gas.
Ya acabo de empezar.	I have just now begun.
Acabamos de presenciar un espectáculo curioso.	We have just witnessed a curious spectacle.

REMARK.—*Acabar con* has the value of *to use up, make an end of*.

**256.** *Volver* is an intransitive verb meaning *to go or come back (to return)*. It is irregular, of the class exhibited in the preceding lesson; and as an additional irregularity, its past participle is *vuelto*:—

¿Vuelve Vd. pronto?—Vuelvo mañana.	Are you coming back soon?—I am coming back to-morrow.
Todavía no han vuelto.	They have not yet returned.
Entonces volveremos á casa.	Then we shall go back home.

REMARK.—*Devolver* (past participle *devuelto*) means *to return* in the sense of *to give or send back*.

**257.** *Volver á*, governing an infinitive, means *to perform again* the act expressed by the infinitive. It often corresponds to the Latin and English prefix *re-*, which is of limited use in Spanish:—

No volveré á hablar de ello.	I shall not speak of it again.
No ha vuelto á hablar de ello.	He has not spoken of it again.
No volveremos á tener semejante ocasión.	We shall not have such an opportunity again.
Acabamos de volver á ver á la condesa.	We have just seen the countess again.
Volver á visitar; volver á llenar.	To revisit; to refill.
Volver á cargar; volver á copiar.	To reload; to recopy.

### EXERCISE XX.

a) 1. ¿Va Vd. á salir ahora? 2. No señor, casi nunca salgo después de la comida. 3. ¿No quiere Vd. subir á mi estudio y fumar un tabaco? 4. Muchísimas gracias, tengo una cita con mi cuñado, quien me espera en (at) el Casino. 5. ¿Cuándo espera Vd. mandar á la imprenta la novela que acaba de escribir? 6. Todavía no la tengo terminada á mi gusto; pero la tendré hecha muy pronto. 7. He venido á ver al *superintendente*, pero el



portero dice que ha salido; ¿quién me dice cuándo volverá? 8. No volverá antes de mañana; ha salido de la ciudad. 9. Pues entonces no le aguardo; hasta mañana. 10. El taquígrafo de Vd. me ha dicho que Vd. irá pronto á *Paris*. 11. En efecto, parto mañana; espero presenciar las ceremonias de la apertura de la *exposición*. 12. Y la señora de Vd., ¿permanecerá aquí? 13. De ningún modo, me acompañaré á *Paris*, porque quiere aprovechar la ocasión de volver á ver esta "Meca de las damas." 14. Y ¿quién cuidará á sus dos niños? 15. Mi cuñada los cuidará durante la ausencia de mi mujer. 16. Es Vd. muy afortunado. 17. Yo voy á mandar abrir las ventanas; me es *imposible* aguantar el calor; yo no comprendo por qué los norte-americanos persisten en convertir en hornos sus domicilios. 18. ¡Eso (*that*) basta! mañana saldrá Vd. de mi casa y no volverá á entrar en ella; sus repetidas quejas han acabado con mi paciencia.

b) 1. What are you looking at? 2. I am looking at the smoke that is coming out of the chimney of the house on (*de*) the other side of the street; the chimney must be on fire. 3. The sailors are going to lower the sails, because there are signs of a storm. 4. Have you seen the reporter of the "Sun" again? 5. Not yet; but I shall see him again to-morrow. 6. What does to-day's paper say about *Aguinaldo*? 7. It says that the *American* officers are still ignorant of his present whereabouts. 8. It says also that a detachment of *American* cavalry has entered *Bayombong*. 9. We shall not lack fuel; there is a supply of wood here that will last a year. 10. We shall start immediately if it is possible to obtain horses. 11. If our provisions are not sufficient, it will be necessary to return to *Tuxpán*. 12. I shall not employ the compositor that you sent me, because I have just found out that he drinks to (*con*) excess, and I will not put up with a drunken employé. 13. If the children will be silent I will tell them a story. 14. The stenographer has taken down the speech, and now he is going over his notes. 15. There is no hurry, we have more than enough time; the house is distant only a mile from the *station*. 16. Robbers and murderers! if you do not come out at once we will set fire to the cabin.

## PART III.

### COMPLEMENTARY TREATMENT.

---

#### LESSON XXI.

##### SPANISH FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Señor (abbrev. Sr.), Lord, Sir, Mr.

Señorito, Mr., "Master."

Caballero, gentleman, Sir.

Don (abbrev. Dn. or D.), Mr.

Señora (abbrev. Sra.), lady, Madam,  
Mrs.

Señorita (abbrev. Srta. or Sta.), Miss,  
young lady.

Dofia (abbrev. Dna. or Da.), Miss or  
Mrs.

**257.** In their original significations, *señor* meant *senior* or *elder*; *caballero*, a *horseman* or *knight*; while *Don* was the title of nobility. Their modern usage is quite different, and depends in some degree on whether they are employed *directly* in speaking to a person, or *indirectly*, in speaking *about* one.

**258.** *Señor*, in the pulpit, means *Lord*, is written with a capital, and may or may not have the article, as in English: *el Señor*, *the Lord*. As a noun it indicates the master or owner of a thing: *servir á dos señores*, *to serve two masters*. *El señor* is used familiarly by servants in speaking of the master of the house (who is also called *el amo*, "*the boss*").

**259.** *Señor*, followed by a family name, is equivalent to the English *Mr.*; when so used indirectly, it must be accompanied by the definite article:—

DIRECT ADDRESS:	Señor Varas.	} Mr. Varas.
INDIRECT REFERENCE:	El señor Varas.	

260. *Caballero*, as a noun, corresponds to the English *gentleman*:—

Este caballero es mi hijo.  
Es usted un caballero.

This gentleman is my son.  
You are a gentleman.

261. When employed by themselves in direct address, *señor* and *caballero* correspond to the English *Sir*,—in the plural, *Gentlemen*. There is but little difference in their usage among equals, except that *caballero* is slightly more formal. *Señor*, moreover, has an inherent meaning of respect; it is therefore the word used by servants and inferiors, and by children to their elders. An indignant young lady would say to a presumptuous admirer: ¡*Caballero!* *Sir!* and not ¡*Señor!* which would imply respect.

262. *Señora* is the feminine equivalent of both *señor* and *caballero* in all their meanings:—

Nuestra Señora.

Our Lady (the Virgin Mary).

La señora.

The mistress, lady of the house.

Buenos días, señora.

Good day, ma'am.

La Señora Fortuna.

Dame Fortune.

Ella es una verdadera señora.

She is a true lady.

263. A gentleman, in speaking politely of his wife, may say *mi señora*, although *mi esposa* is more usual; but in referring to the wife of another he will invariably use *señora*:—

¿Cómo está la señora de V.?

How is Mrs. So-and-so?

El Sr. Sánchez no viene hoy; su  
señora está mala.

Mr. Sánchez is not coming to-day,  
his wife is ill.

REMARK.—The wife may refer jocularly to her lord and master as *mi señor*, but the usual expression is *mi marido*, or, more formally, *mi esposo*. *La marida* means *the bride*.

264. *Señorito* is merely a diminutive form of *señor*. It is seldom used, except familiarly and by servants, and corresponds to the English *Master*, (as *Master Tommy*,) or *young gentleman*.

265. *Señorita*, diminutive of *señora*, in direct address corresponds to the English *Miss*: *buenos días, señorita, good day*,

*Miss.* *Si señorita, yes, Miss.* Indirectly it is equivalent to *young lady*:—

Á la puerta está una señorita.

There is a young lady at the door.

**266.** Don and Doña are peculiarly Spanish, and are only used in conjunction with baptismal or given names. It is more usual in Spain to speak of persons by their Christian name preceded by Don or Doña, than by their family name preceded by Señor, Señora.

*a.* Doña is applied to any lady, whether married or single.

*b.* Don may be preceded by Señor, and Doña by Señora or Señorita, thus conveying more respect, and in the last case showing whether the lady is married or not.

**267.** There are but four proper ways of addressing a given gentleman or lady, as follows (supposing the lady to be single):—

Señor Don Ricardo Villafranca.

Señorita Doña Laura Tascón.

Señor Villafranca.

Señorita Tascón.

Don Ricardo.

Doña Laura.

Señor Don Ricardo.

Señorita Doña Laura.

**268.** In referring to the near relatives of a person with whom one is speaking, politeness demands that their names be preceded by Señor, Señora or Señorita, as the case may require:—

He recibido una carta del Sr. padre de Vd. (or de su Sr. padre) I have received a letter from your father.

¿Han llegado las señoritas hermanas de Vd. (or sus señoritas hermanas)? Have your sisters arrived?

He visto hoy á la Sra. madre de Vd. (or á su Sra. madre). I have seen your mother to-day.

**269.** It is desirable to give some explanation of the complex Spanish family names. Let the following example suffice:—

A gentleman, el Sr. D. Juan Francisco Velarde y Núñez (Velarde being the family name of his father, and Núñez that of his mother<sup>1</sup>) marries la

<sup>1</sup>The mother's name is sometimes represented by an initial; thus, supposing two brothers bearing the name López y Valdés, the one marrying la Srita. de Pacheco y Díaz, and the other la Srita. de Mutis y Ochoa, and each having a son named Juan, these two cousins would be perfectly distinguishable if they signed themselves respectively Juan López P. and Juan López M.



señorita Doña Luisa Gutiérrez y Romero. On entering the state of matrimony the lady's name is changed to Señora Doña Luisa Gutiérrez de Velarde. The children of this union, assuming the family names of both parents, are called as follows:—

Señor Don José Velarde y Gutiérrez,  
Señor Don Manuel Velarde y Gutiérrez, *and*  
Señorita Doña Elena Velarde y Gutiérrez.

**REMARK.**—The *y* connecting the last two names is sometimes omitted, producing names like the following:—

Sr. D. Carlos Martínez Silva;      Sr. D. Joaquín Arrieta Rossi.

Ordinarily a man is known by merely his father's name, as in English; still in all formal cases the mother's family name is necessary.

In Spain gentlemen of landed estate frequently, and noblemen generally, assume the name of their estate preceded by *de*<sup>1</sup>:—

Sr. D. Diego Hurtado de Mendoza;    Sr. D. Tomás García de Villanueva.

The family name, unaccompanied by title or baptismal name, is used familiarly among men just as in English. But it is always the paternal name which is so used; thus *el Sr. D. Joaquín Arrieta Rossi* and *el Sr. D. Juan Francisco Durán y Gómez* would call each other *Arrieta* and *Durán*. It is a peculiarity worthy of notice that ladies make use of the same mode of expression in speaking of or to their intimate gentlemen friends, implying no discourtesy thereby, but merely friendly confidence.

**270.** In indirect reference the Spanish use the definite article before all titles when followed by the names of persons. The article is omitted in direct address:—

El rey don Alfonso trece.	King Alphonso Thirteenth.
El general Weyler.	General Weyler.
El presidente Núñez.	President Núñez.
El padre Nicolás.	Father Nicholas.

**REMARK.**—No article, however, is used before *Don* and *Doña*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The use of *de* in Spanish family names is now purely optional, and is no longer an indication of nobility, as it is in French. It is, moreover, customarily, though not invariably, placed before the family names of women,—the father's name if the lady be unmarried, the husband's if married; thus: *la Srta. Da. Anita de Quiroga y Ortiz*, *la Sra. Da. María de Torres y Adán*.

271. In direct address, *señor* precedes the title, which it sometimes does in indirect reference:—

Buenos días, señor Doctor.	Good day, Doctor.
¿Cómo está V., señor General?	How are you, General?
Señorita, tengo el honor de presentar á V. el señor Coronel Quevedo de nuestro regimiento.	I have the honor, Miss, to present to you Colonel Quevedo of ours.

272. There are three peculiar words in Spanish, *fulano*, *mengano* and *zutano*, employed to indicate persons whose names we either do not know or recollect, or do not care to mention, as in the *dramatis personæ* of anecdotes. They are used only in the singular, and if relating to a female, change the final *o* to *a*. The last two enumerated designate additional personages only, and therefore never appear without *fulano*.

REMARK.—When used without the others, *fulano* generally assumes the form of *fulano de tal*, or, in mock politeness, *Don Fulano de tal*, *fulano* representing the Christian name, and *tal* (*so-and-so*) the family name of the individual.

They are somewhat analogous characters to the litigious *John Doe* and *Richard Roe*, with whom law students are familiar, or to the factitious *Smith*, *Brown* and *Robinson* of the humorous column.

#### THE MOST USUAL SPANISH BAPTISMAL NAMES.

Andrés, Andrew.	Pedro, Peter.
Benito, Benedict.	Ramón, Raymond.
Carlos, Charles.	Vicente, Vincent.
Diego, James.	Ana, Anne, Anna.
Enrique, Henry.	Catalina, Catharine.
Felipe, Philip.	Elena, Helen.
Fernando, Ferdinand.	Enriqueta, Harriet.
Francisco, Francis.	Francisca, Frances.
Paco, Frank. ( <i>Familiar.</i> )	Paca, Fanny. ( <i>Familiar.</i> )
Gerónimo, Jerome.	Inés, Agnes.
Joaquín, Joachim.	Isabel, Isabella, Elisabeth.
José, Joseph.	Josefa, Josephine.
Pope, Joe. ( <i>Familiar.</i> )	Pepa, Josie. ( <i>Familiar.</i> )
Juan, John.	Juana, Jane.
Manuel, Emmanuel.	Manuela, Emma.
Miguel, Michael.	María, Mary.

The following are very common, but have no equivalents in English:—

*Concha*, for *María de la Concepción*.

*Mercedes*, for *María de las Mercedes*.

*Dolores*, for *María de los Dolores*.

*Rosario*, for *María del Rosario*.

### EXERCISE XXI.

a) 1. Buenos días, Doña Manuela; ¿cómo está Vd.? 2. Muy bien, gracias; ¿y Vd.? 3. Sin novedad, gracias á Dios. 4. ¿Irá Vd. al baile de máscaras que se celebrará el día de los Inocentes en casa de la Señora de López? 5. No voy, porque ella no me ha convidado. 6. ¿De veras! y ¿por qué no? 7. Porque he refido con su hija, Doña Enriqueta. 8. Es lástima. 9. Vd. irá, por supuesto. 10. Ya lo creo. 11. ¿Qué papel hará Vd.? 12. Yo haré de girasol. Mi traje estará hecho de un paño que parece seda, pero cuesta solamente una peseta la vara. 13. Es de color verde, y está salpicado de girasoles amarillos. 14. ¿Qué gracioso! Quizás Vd. me dirá algo más sobre el baile. 15. Con mucho gusto. Varias personas me han participado qué papeles van á hacer; y puesto que Vd. no irá, le (*you*) indicaré algunos de ellos. 16. Don Eduardo Valdés será *Mefistófeles*, y llevará un traje colorado. 17. ¿De veras? Es un papel que le sienta perfectamente. 18. Es Vd. muy *sarcástica*. Mi hermano será *Lucifer*: vestirá traje de terciopelo azul, con alas transparentes, y llevará escudo y yelmo plateados. 19. ¿Estarán allí los Señores *Herrera*? 20. Ya lo creo, y también sus hijas Doña Concha y Doña Mercedes. 21. Irá, por supuesto, la señora madre de Vd. 22. Sí, y también mi huéspeda, la Señorita de *Aguirre*. Es muy linda y graciosa, y recibirá muchas *atenciones*. 23. ¿Qué papel hará ella? 24. Será una pastora; y usará las *convencionales* faldas cortas, y llevará un cayado. 25. El cual (*which*) le servirá para (*to*) enganchar á los hombres. 26. ¡Quita allá! Vd. estará de mal humor á causa de no haber sido convidada al baile.

b) 1. Are not you and Mr. *Sudras* enemies? 2. I do not say that we are enemies, but our *relations* are far from being *cordial*. 3. Mrs. *González de Urribe* says that her brother, Captain *González Cuervo*, is seriously ill with (*de la*) typhoid fever. 4. What physician is attending him? 5. Dr. *Fuertes*, the regimental surgeon. 6. Is he any (*un*) relation to (*de*) your ward, Miss *Rosario Fuertes*? 7. Yes (*efectivamente*), he is her first cousin. 8. Your partner, Mr. *Barnes*, is a very agreeable gentleman. 9. Yes indeed, and he is equally a good business man. 10. He speaks Spanish like an out-and-out Spaniard; he must have spent many years in Spain. 11. No, sir, he has not been outside of the United States; but his wife is from *Puerto Rico*, and, besides, he has studied the language thoroughly. 12. I have just learned the cause of Vincent's despondency; his son has suffered a *disastrous* loss through (*con*) the failure of Messrs. *Calvo & Sons*.

13. Good day, Raymond, has your wife returned from the seashore?  
 14. She will not return until to-morrow; and then, unfortunately, she will not remain here; she is going to spend a month in *Philadelphia* with (*en casa de*) her old class-mate Frances,—now Mrs. *Warren*. 15. Jane, is your mistress at home? 16. No, Colonel, she has just gone out; she and Miss Josephine have gone shopping. 17. Then I will leave my card.

## LESSON XXII.

### USE OF THE ARTICLES.

**273.** In a large number of cases the use of the definite article is the same in both Spanish and English. In the majority of these cases it is employed to designate some definite individual or individuals that have been spoken of or are well understood, or are specified by some qualifying word or phrase.

**274.** The definite article is applied alike in both languages, as follows:—

*a.* To some particular person, thing, or idea which is known to, or understood by, the person addressed:—

¿Va Vd. hoy á la recepción?	Are you going to the reception to-day?
El Presidente ha ido á Chicago.	The President has gone to Chicago.
Aquí viene el cartero.	Here comes the postman.
Juan, ¿has almohazado los caballos?	John, have you curried the horses?

*b.* To any of the elements or features of nature, of which only one can be supposed to be under consideration:—

El cielo; la tierra; el horizonte.	The sky; the earth; the horizon.
El sol; el alba; la vía láctea.	The sun; the dawn; the milky way.
El arco iris; el fuego fatuo.	The rainbow; the Will-o'-the-wisp.

*c.* To single animals,<sup>1</sup> plants and gems, as representatives of their respective species:—

---

<sup>1</sup> One animal only is an exception to this in English,—*man*.



La zorra es celebrada por su astucia.	The fox is celebrated for his cunning.
La cigüeña es un ave pasajera.	The stork is a bird of passage.
El nenúfar es una graciosa planta acuática.	The water-lily is a graceful aquatic plant.
El topacio es una piedra trasparente de un hermoso color amarillo.	The topaz is a transparent stone of a beautiful yellow color.

REMARK.—This is equally true when the noun is plural,—which is contrary to the English usage:—

Las zorras son celebradas por su astucia.	Foxes are celebrated for their cunning.
Las cigüeñas son aves pasajeras.	Storks are birds of passage.

d. To an individual taken as a representative of any of the divisions of the human race or of society:—

El indio; el negro; los chinos.	The Indian; the negro; the Chinese.
El fabricante; el capitalista.	The manufacturer; the capitalist.
Los intereses del obrero.	The interests of the working-man.

e. To any of the members or faculties of man, taken in a general sense:—

El corazón; el hígado; la bilis.	The heart; the liver; the bile.
Las orejas; los pulmones.	The ears; the lungs.
La memoria; el alma.	The memory; the soul.
Un tratado de las enfermedades del cerebro.	A treatise on the diseases of the brain.

f. To nouns restricted in the extent of their application by any defining words:—

Las naciones situadas en la costa occidental del continente sud-americano.	The nations situated on the west coast of the South American continent.
La flor del cacto; los huevos del colibrí.	The flower of the cactus; the eggs of the humming-bird.
Los locales donde se encuentra dicha formación mineral.	The localities where this mineral formation is found.

g. To epithets or nicknames immediately following a proper name of a person:—

Pedro el Cruel.	Peter the Cruel.
Isabel la Católica.	Isabella the Catholic.
Alejandro el Grande.	Alexander the Great.

*h.* To names of oceans, seas, rivers, and mountain ranges:—

El Pacífico; el Adriático; el Mediterráneo.	The Pacific; the Adriatic; the Mediterranean.
El Plata; el Río Bravo del Norte.	The La Plata; the Rio Grande.
El Tajo; el San Lorenzo; el Misuri.	The Tagus; the St. Lawrence; the Missouri.
Los Alpes; los Andes; los Pirineos.	The Alps; the Andes; the Pyrenees.

REMARK.—The Spanish is more consistent than English, in that this usage is extended to single mountains:—

El Vesuvio; el Hélicon; el Chimborazo; el Aconcagua.	Vesuvius; Mt. Helicon; Chimborazo; Aconcagua.
--	---

275. The leading difference between the Spanish and the English use of the definite article is that it is employed in Spanish before any noun, of either number, used in a general sense as the representative of the entire class or species to which it belongs:—

El hombre es mortal.	Man is mortal.
El pan es nutritivo.	Bread is nutritious.
Las flores son el adorno de la tierra.	Flowers are the ornament of the earth.
El precio de los huevos ha subido.	The price of eggs has gone up.

276. The same is true when the nouns represent, not visible objects, but abstract qualities or ideas:—

Los estragos del tiempo.	The ravages of time.
Las riquezas y el lujo fomentan la mollicie y la pereza.	Riches and luxury nourish effeminacy and idleness.
El dedo del destino nos señala una carrera larga, próspera y brillante.	The finger of destiny points out to us a long, prosperous and brilliant career.

277. So since a verbal noun, formed of the infinitive of a verb, expresses an act in an abstract manner, it is preceded by the masculine article *el*:—

El hablar demasiado es su falta principal.	Talking too much is his principal fault.
--	--

El comer y el beber son necesarios á la vida.	Eating and drinking are necessary to life.
El leer alto es buena práctica.	Reading aloud is good practice.
Su enfermedad proviene del excesivo fumar.	His illness proceeds from excessive smoking.

278. An abstract noun qualified by an adjective requires the indefinite article in Spanish when it is the object of a verb. None is employed in English:—

Hemos empleado una precaución extraordinaria.	We have used extra caution.
Ha demostrado un afán laudable.	He has displayed praiseworthy energy.
He prestado á su descripción una atención minuciosa.	I paid minute attention to his description.

279. The Spanish indefinite article has what is lacking to the English,—a plural form, *unos, unas*. In English this is either to be rendered by *some*, or left untranslated:—

Una chinela; unas chinelas.	A slipper; slippers.
Una manzana; unas manzanas.	An apple; some apples.

#### EXERCISE XXII.

a) 1. El pimentero es un arbusto de las islas de *Java* y de *Sumatra*, que echa unos racimitos de fruto del tamaño de las grosellas. 2. Molidos estos granos con su corteza, dan la pimienta negra; pero si se muele el grano solo, se obtiene una calidad *superior*, que es la pimienta blanca. 3. El moscado y el clavero son árboles grandes que crecen en las islas *Molucas*. 4. El fruto del moscado es grueso como un melocotón, y contiene una nuecesita, que es la nuez moscada. 5. Esta nuez se rae en una ralla, y el polvo se emplea para (*to*) sazonar las salsas, los flanes, los pasteles, etc. 6. Los clavos son las flores secas del clavero. 7. El cafeto es un árbol casi del tamaño de un manzano; y da un fruto como la cereza. 8. El color de su fruto ó baya se cambia de verde en (*to*) colorado, y luego de colorado en (*to*) negro. 9. En el interior, en vez de hueso, hay dos granos de café. 10. Los granos son de un *color* verde claro. 11. Se tuestan, y entonces toman el *color* castaño oscuro. 12. El cafeto no prospera sino (*except*) en los países cálidos. 13. Los plantíos de café se llaman “cafetales.” 14. El caballo vive en la cuadra, la vaca en el establo, el perro en la perrera, el cerdo en la pocilga, la abeja en la colmena,

la gallina en el gallinero, la paloma en el palomar, el carnero en el redil.  
 15. La liebre habita en su escondite, el conejo en su gazapera, el zorro en su cubil, el oso en su caverna, el lobo en su guarida, la hormiga en su hormiguero, la rata en su agujero, el pájaro en su nido, la araña en su tela.

b) 1. I believe that the price of wheat will go up *rapidly*. 2. Money is an *important factor* in politics. 3. *Iridium* and *platinum* are very rare *metals*. 4. Malt and hops are the *principal ingredients* of beer. 5. Fear and *ignorance* are the *principal sources* of *superstition*. 6. *Parnassus*, *Pindus*, and *Helicon* (*m.* 8) are the *favorite mountains* of the *classic poets*. 7. The judge has exhibited marked *partiality* in his decision. 8. Palms will not thrive here except (*sino*) in hothouses. 9. Monkeys are the harlequins of the *animal kingdom*, and yet they have not the power of smiling. 10. Their features seem to be incapable of expressing mirth. 11. None the less, their *gestures* and *grimaces* always provoke laughter among (*de*) their spectators. 12. Parrots are *singularly* apt in the use of their *limited vocabulary*. 13. It is *evident* that, like children, they *associate* sounds with occurrences and things. 14. *Pure*, or distilled, water is tasteless, odorless, and, in small masses, colorless. 15. Sulphur is a *solid* body at *ordinary temperatures*. 16. Hydrofluoric acid possesses the remarkable property of attacking glass, and so it is kept in leaden bottles. 17. Chloroform is a colorless liquid, extremely *volatile*, and with (*de*) a penetrating odor. 18. It is employed in surgery in painful *operations* because its use *causes* temporarily complete unconsciousness.

## LESSON XXIII.

### USE OF THE ARTICLES (*Continued*).

280. Usually names of countries require the definite article, except when governed by a preposition:—

La Francia tiene posesiones en África. France has possessions in Africa.

La Rusia tiene un territorio vasto. Russia has a vast territory.

La Inglaterra es una gran potencia marítima. England is a great maritime power.

Vengo de Alemania y voy á España. I come from Germany and am going to Spain.

El rey de Inglaterra está ahora en Irlanda. The king of England is at present in Ireland.



281. However, a few geographical names are invariably preceded by the definite article. Of these the following are the most frequently met with:—

<i>La Asunción (capital of Paraguay).</i>	<i>La Guaira, La Guayra.</i>
<i>El Brasil, Brazil.</i>	<i>La Habana, Habana.</i>
<i>El Cairo, Cairo.</i>	<i>El Havre, Havre.</i>
<i>El Callao, Callao (seaport of Peru).</i>	<i>El Japón, Japan.</i>
<i>El Canadá, Canada.</i>	<i>La Mancha (a Spanish province).</i>
<i>La Coruña, Corunna.</i>	<i>El Paraguay, Paraguay.</i>
<i>El Cuzco, Cuzco (in Peru).</i>	<i>El Perú, Peru.</i>
<i>El Ecuador, Ecuador.</i>	<i>La Rioja (a Spanish province).</i>
<i>El Ferrol, Ferrol.</i>	<i>El Uruguay, Uruguay.</i>
<i>La Florida, Florida.</i>	

282. The definite article is required if the name of the country is qualified by an adjective:—

<i>La España meridional.</i>	<i>Southern Spain.</i>
<i>El Asia rusa; el Asia Menor.</i>	<i>Russian Asia; Asia Minor</i>
<i>La Guayana holandesa.</i>	<i>Dutch Guiana.</i>
<i>La fecunda Italia.</i>	<i>Fertile Italy.</i>
<i>La Gran Bretaña; la Nueva Zelandia.</i>	<i>Great Britain; New Zealand.</i>

REMARK.—The article is required when the name of the country is not a proper name, but a descriptive title:—

<i>Los Países Bajos.</i>	<i>The Netherlands.</i>
<i>Los Estados Unidos.</i>	<i>The United States.</i>
<i>La República Argentina.</i>	<i>The Argentine Republic.</i>

283. The article should generally be repeated before each noun. When the nouns are of different genders or numbers and stand as separate entities of primary importance in the sentence, each should have the article. When, however, the nouns are of secondary importance, and are closely connected with one another in meaning, the article may be more elegantly omitted before all but the first noun:—

<i>Tengo una casa y un jardín.</i>	<i>I have a house and garden.</i>
<i>El padre y la madre tienen un coche y un caballo.</i>	<i>The father and mother have a horse and carriage.</i>

La energía y celo que exhibe.	The energy and zeal which he exhibits.
El descuido y negligencia del coronel han sido fatales al regimiento.	The carelessness and negligence of the colonel have been fatal to the regiment.
La erudición y estudio que caracterizan sus producciones literarias.	The learning and research which characterize his literary productions.

**284.** So when several nouns refer to the mental properties of a person, the article may be omitted before all but the first; but if the nouns denote the actual possessions of the person, each requires the appropriate article:—

El celo ( <i>m.</i> ), inteligencia ( <i>f.</i> ) y honradez ( <i>f.</i> ) del empleado.	The zeal, intelligence and probity of the clerk.
El sombrero, las botas y la petaca del empleado.	The hat, boots and cigar-case of the clerk.

**285.** The article should not be repeated after *ó*, *or*, before a noun which is merely a synonym or explanation of the preceding noun:—

El vestíbulo ó entrada de la casa.	The vestibule or entry of the house.
Nueva Gerona es la capital ó ciudad principal de la Isla de Pinos.	New Gerona is the capital or the principal town of the Isle of Pines.

**286.** Proper names of persons and animals, not preceded by an adjective, do not take the definite article; when qualified by an adjective the article is employed:—

Juan, Pedro y José han salido á la pesca.	John, Peter and Joseph have gone out fishing.
Don Quijote ensilló á Rocinante.	Don Quixote saddled Rozinante
La pequeña Lolita.	Little Dolores.
El viejo Tomás.	Old Thomas.

REMARK.—The adjective *santo* is an exception in the names of saints, in which it is considered part of the name:—

El día de San Juan.	St. John's day (midsummer).
---------------------	-----------------------------

**287.** When a proper name is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is sometimes interpolated:—

La tonta de Juana.

That silly Jane.

El pobre de Benito no sabe qué parte tomar.

Poor Benedict does not know what course to adopt.

288. It is usual to omit both definite and indefinite article before a noun in apposition (i.e., when it is explanatory of a preceding noun):—

Valparaíso, puerto principal de Chile, es uno de los más grandes emporios del comercio de Sud América.

Valparaíso, *the* principal port of Chile, is one of the greatest commercial emporiums of South America.

Del curuguatí, planta parásita, se hacen sogas y cables.

From the curuguaty, *a* parasitic plant, are made ropes and cables.

Quito, capital del Ecuador, posee un clima delicioso.

Quito, *the* capital of Ecuador, has a delightful climate.

REMARK.—The definite article, however, is used before the noun in apposition when it merely serves to identify a person who is well known both to speaker and hearers:—

Mi hermano el ingeniero.

My brother the engineer.

Stanley el explorador africano.

Stanley the African explorer.

El señor Edison, el célebre inventor Norte-Americano.

Mr. Edison, the celebrated American inventor.

289. When the noun is used partitively, that is, when only a portion of a substance or class is under consideration, the article is omitted in both languages:—

En la sierra costanera hay extensas canteras de mármol y alabastro.

In the coast chain there are extensive quarries of marble and alabaster.

Los densos bosques rinden cinchona, zarzaparrilla, copaiba, caucho, resina, cedro, caoba y palos de tinte.

The dense forests produce cinchona, sarsaparilla, copaiba, rubber, resin, cedar, mahogany and dye-woods.

Valparaíso es notable por su riqueza, dando cebada, frijoles, trébol, frutas, trigo y cáñamo.

Valparaíso is notable for its fertility, producing barley, beans, clover, fruits, wheat and hemp.

290. The indefinite article is not employed in Spanish before a noun in the predicate, used like an adjective to express some quality or character of the subject:—

Soy español y soldado.	I am <i>a</i> Spaniard and <i>a</i> soldier.
¿Es sastre su hermano de V.?	Is your brother <i>a</i> tailor?
No señor, es comerciante.	No, Sir, he is <i>a</i> merchant.
Don Joaquín es francmasón.	Joachim is <i>a</i> mason (freemason).
Es ama de llaves en casa del Sr. B.	She is housekeeper at Mr. B.'s.
Su padre es miembro de la Sociedad Real Geográfica.	His father is <i>a</i> member of the Royal Geographical Society.

**291.** When any limiting expression is added to the noun in the predicate it ceases to have the nature of an adjective, and takes the indefinite article as in English:—

Es un gran embustero.	He is <i>a</i> great liar.
Ella es una pobre costurera.	She is <i>a</i> poor seamstress.
Soy un sastre desgraciado.	I am <i>a</i> unfortunate tailor.
Soy un español de familia noble.	I am <i>a</i> Spaniard of noble family.

REMARK.—But if an adjective and noun occur together so frequently as to become a kind of stereotyped expression, the article is omitted:—

Es buen católico.	He is <i>a</i> good Catholic.
Es gran orador.	He is <i>a</i> great orator.

**292.** The article is elegantly omitted in enumerations:—

Viejos y jóvenes escuchan con atención sus palabras.	Old and young listen attentively to his words.
Padre é hijo son á cual más temerosos de Dios.	Father and son are equally pious.

**293.** The definite article is frequently omitted in proverbs, —of which a terse style is a leading characteristic:—

Dádivas quebrantan peñas.	Gifts move mountains.
Á menudo pagan justos por pecadores.	The innocent often pay for the guilty.
Pobreza no es vileza.	Poverty is no crime.
Huéspedeta hermosa, mal para la bolsa.	A handsome landlady is bad for the purse.

**294.** Neither definite nor indefinite article is employed at the head of printed titles of books and articles:—

Nuevo Método Práctico para Aprender el Alemán.	A New Practical Method for Learning German.
--	---



Tratado Elemental de Mecánica.	An elementary Treatise on Mechanica.
Historia de la Conquista de Méjico.	The History of the Conquest of Mexico.

295. The definite article is required in Spanish before many nouns, when they are governed by a preposition, which discard it in English:—

Á la ciudad; á la iglesia.	To town; to church.
Á, ó en, la escuela; al despacho.	To, or at, school; to office.
Al mercado; al, ó en el, Congreso.	To market; to, or in, Congress.
En la ciudad; en la iglesia.	In town; at church.
Antes del almuerzo; después de la comida.	Before breakfast; after dinner.

#### EXERCISE XXIII.

a) 1. La Europa es *excepcionalmente* afortunada con respecto á su clima. 2. La línea de las heladas permanentes, que comprende gran parte del norte de *Asia*, sólo toca á la Laponia y el extremo noroeste de *Rusia*; mientras que la línea de los setenta grados de *temperatura* media *anual* la toca ligeramente en sus *penínsulas* meridionales. 3. Así se ve que la Europa está exenta de los dos extremos rigurosos y *persistentes* de frío y de calor que tanto perjudican al *Asia* y al *África*. 4. El océano la aparta de las *regiones polares*, y suaviza y uniforma la *temperatura* de sus costas; la corriente del Golfo calienta y humedece los países occidentales, mientras que la ardiente *África* está bastante próxima para (to) enviar su calor á través del Mediterráneo á las playas opuestas. 5. La onza ó *jaguar*, llamado también tigre *americano*, es un *animal* feroz y traicionero. 6. La *experiencia* es una buena preceptora, pero vende muy caro sus lecciones. 7. Los perros ladran cuando husmean el peligro, aullan cuando están tristes, arrullan cuando están enojados, y gañen cuando son castigados. 8. Los gatos adultos maullan, y los gatos jóvenes mayan; cuando están contentos, susurrán. 9. Las palomas arrullan, los cuervos crascitan, las urracas chacharean, los patos gaznan, los jilgueros gorgean, las grullas grúen, los pollos pían, los buhos ululan. 10. La gallina cacarea cuando ha puesto un huevo, y clueca cuando quiere llamar á sus polluelos.

b) 1. Ease of conscience is the prime requisite of happiness. 2. Prejudices are opinions which are *formed* without *adequate* knowledge of facts. 3. Individuals and peoples are swayed by (de) a host of wretched prejudices that avert them continually from happiness. 4. Prejudices have ever been the deadly enemies (f.) of *human* progress. 5. The muster-roll of martyrs is but (no es sino) a list of victims to (de) prejudices. 6. Dr. Wolff, the

celebrated German explorer, is now in *Asunción*, the *capital* (*f.*) of *Paraguay*; he intends to ascend the river *Paraguay* to its source, and then continue his *explorations* along the crest of the *Andes* as far as Lake *Titicaca* in *Peru* (*m.* 1). 7. Old John is no longer here; he has just gone to town with a load of wood. 8. Why did you refuse your daughter's hand to Mr. *Audrey*, the attaché of the British *Legation*? 9. Because he is a *protestant* and a *freemason*. 10. Your married brother is a commercial traveler, isn't he? 11. No, he is a *civil* engineer; he is at present in charge of the *construction* of a *section* of railway in *Canada* (*m.* 1). 12. The *principal* volcanoes of Europe are: *Vesuvius* in Italy, *Etna* (*m.*) in Sicily, *Stromboli* (*m.* 3) in the *Lipari* Islands, and *Hecla* (*m.*) in Iceland. 13. Southern Spain still preserves valuable *monuments* of *Oriental* art, the remains of the formerly *absolute* dominion of the Moors. 14. Boys, it is time to go to school now.

## LESSON XXIV.

### THE NEUTER GENDER; THE DISTINCTIVE *lo* AS THE SIGN OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

**296.** The neuter form of the article, *lo*, is not applicable to nouns (since all nouns are either masculine or feminine). It is used before adjectives, participles, adjective pronouns, and occasionally adverbs; and is, moreover, limited to the singular number.<sup>1</sup>

The effect of placing *lo* before such words is to form a substantive phrase expressing the quality in question considered abstractly:—

*Lo agradable.*

*Lo americano.*

*Lo hecho; lo dicho.*

*En lo pasado; en lo futuro.*

*Han hecho lo posible.*

*Según lo determinado.*

*Hemos proveído lo necesario.*

*Preferimos lo útil á lo puramente  
ornamental.*

What is agreeable, agreeableness.

Whatever is American.

What is done; what has been said.

In the past; in the future.

They have done what was possible.

According to what has been determined.

We have provided what is necessary.

We prefer the useful to the purely  
ornamental.

---

<sup>1</sup> The indefinite article, *uno*, is not used as a neuter.

297. The substantive nature of the adjective or participle preceded by *lo* is especially manifest when followed by *de* and a noun. Such constructions generally require the employment of a noun in rendering them into English:—

Lo claro de la frase.	The clearness of the phrase.
Lo curioso del asunto.	The curious part of the matter.
Lo firme de nuestra resolución.	The firmness of our resolve.
Lo necio y lo inútil del proyecto.	The folly and uselessness of the project.
Sin considerar lo avanzado de la hora.	Without considering the lateness of the hour.

298. A curious modification of the neuter applied to adjectives is met with when they are followed by the relative *que* and the verb *to be*, or one of its substitutes. In that case the adjective does not agree with the neuter *lo*, but with the noun subject of the relative clause; or more strictly, *lo* does not agree with the adjective. The construction can be better exemplified than defined. It cannot be translated literally:—

Lo melancólica que está la ciudad.	The sadness that pervades the city.
Lo quiméricos que nos parecen sus proyectos.	The visionary character which seems to us inherent in his plans.
Lo convenientes que han sido hasta ahora, y lo útiles que son todavía.	Their suitableness until now, and their usefulness still.
Lo desprovista que se halle de municiones la fortaleza.	The limited supply of ammunition in the fortress.

REMARK.—The same construction is likewise applicable to adverbs:—

Lo bien que habla.	The able manner in which he speaks
Lo aprisa que corren.	The rapidity with which they run.
Lo diestramente que para las estocadas.	The degree of dexterity with which he parries the thrusts.

299. The construction in question has sometimes a trace of the exclamatory value of *cuán*, *how*:—

¿Ha notado Vd. lo indiferentes que se han mostrado los del jurado?	Did you notice how indifferent the jurors appeared?
Ya comprendo lo inverosímil que les habrá parecido mi relato.	I now understand how improbable my account must have (§ 244) seemed to them.

## DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

**300.** In English the distinction between a noun as subject and as object is shown by its location; in Latin the distinction was made by means of case-endings, irrespective of location. In Spanish, however, case-endings are wanting as in English, while location has about as little effect upon the meaning as in Latin. The Spaniards, therefore, are put to considerable inconvenience to distinguish between subject and object, and do not always succeed as clearly as might be desired.

*a.* The only device in Spanish for distinguishing a noun as direct object (accusative) is by placing the preposition *á* before it. But as this preposition is the regular sign of the indirect object (dative), its application to a direct object vacillates between an endeavor, on the one hand, to prevent the noun from being mistaken for subject, if the preposition were omitted, and, on the other, to prevent its being mistaken for indirect object, if the preposition were employed. The effects of these restricting influences will be presented in detail.

*b.* The preposition *á* as the sign of the direct object, has no force as a preposition and conveys no meaning, but is a mere grammatical device for the sake of distinctness; in its other uses—namely, to designate the recipient of an action (indirect object), and to denote time, place or direction—it has a true prepositional value and is to be translated by *on*, *at* or *to*. For the purposes of the present lesson the former use will be termed “*the distinctive á*,” and the latter “*the prepositional á*.”

---

**301.** The distinctive *á* applies primarily to nouns representing determinate, known persons:—

Derriba y amordaza al carcelero,	He knocks down and gags the jailer,
agarrota al portero, apuñala al	throttles the gate-keeper, stabs the
centinela.	sentinel.
El papa ha excomulgado al autor de	The pope has excommunicated the
este libro.	author of this book.
Quiero ver por última vez á mi	I wish to see my wife and children
mujer y á mis hijos.	for the last time.

**302.** When the accusative noun represents an animal, regarded as intelligent or rational, it requires the distinctive *á* :—



Llama al perro.

He calls the dog.

Espelea á su caballo y le estimula á voces.

He spurs his horse and encourages him with his voice.

Hemos seguido las huellas, mas no hemos visto al oso.

We have followed the tracks, but we have not seen the bear.

**303.** The distinctive **á** is therefore required before proper names of persons and animals when they are direct objects :—

Enviaré á Diego en su lugar.

I will send James in his place.

El capataz ha despedido á Pepe Blanco.

The foreman has discharged Joe White.

De las dos caballerías prefiero á Azabache; pero admiro mucho á Muza también.

Of the two horses I prefer Jet; but I admire Muza very much also.

**304.** When the animal is dead, inert, or regarded as submitting passively, the distinctive **á** is omitted (except before proper names):—

La cocinera ha pelado el ganso.

The cook has picked the goose.

He comprado un caballo.

I have bought a horse.

Hemos matado un ciervo y tres faisanes

We have killed a deer and three pheasants.

**305.** An accusative noun denoting an insignificant animal, or an inanimate object, does not take the distinctive **á** :—

El gato ha cogido un ratón.

The cat has caught a mouse.

El niño persigue la mariposa.

The child chases the butterfly.

El perro husmea la carne.

The dog scents the meat.

**306.** When the direct object of a verb is a geographical proper name, it takes the distinctive **á**—unless it be one which is regularly preceded by the definite article (§ 281), in which case **á** is not used :—

He visitado á Cádiz, á Málaga.

I have visited Cadiz, Malaga.

Descamos ver á París, á Berlín.

We wish to see Paris, Berlin.

He visto el Vesuvio, el Congo.

I have seen Vesuvius, the Congo.

La amistad que une á Chile y la República Argentina.

The friendship which unites Chile and the Argentine Republic.

**307.** **Á**, as the mere sign of the accusative, is omitted when

it would conflict with another *á* having a true prepositional value:—

El general ha llamado los oficiales <i>á</i> una conferencia.	The general has called the officers to a conference.
Mandaremos atrás <i>al</i> muchacho.	We will send the boy back.
Mandaremos <i>el</i> muchacho <i>á</i> casa.	We will send the boy home.
Abandonaremos <i>á</i> ese hombre.	We shall abandon this man.
Abandonaremos <i>ese</i> hombre <i>á</i> sus remordimientos.	We shall abandon this man to his remorse.

REMARK.—A proper name *not preceded by an article* cannot, when direct object, dispense with the distinctive *á* under any circumstances.

308. When the verb has a direct and an indirect object, the direct object does not take the distinctive *á*, thus avoiding ambiguity. (The indirect object has the greater right to the preposition, and therefore retains it.):—

Ha recomendado <i>al</i> gobernador <i>su</i> hijo, Don José.	He has recommended his son Joseph to the governor.
Presentaré <i>mi</i> hermana <i>á</i> la señora de Vargas.	I shall present my sister to Mrs. Vargas.
El soldado ha entregado <i>su</i> prisionero <i>al</i> teniente.	The soldier has turned over his prisoner to the lieutenant.

309. When both subject and direct object denote things, the object takes the distinctive *á* when ambiguity would otherwise result on account of the freedom allowed in Spanish in the order of words:—

El silencio sigue <i>al</i> bullicio. }	Silence succeeds the tumult.
<i>Al</i> bullicio sigue el silencio. }	
El bullicio sigue <i>al</i> silencio. }	Tumult succeeds the silence.
<i>Al</i> silencio sigue el bullicio. }	
Alcanzará <i>al</i> vapor el yate.	The yacht will overtake the steamer.
Alcanzará el vapor <i>al</i> yate.	The steamer will overtake the yacht.

But if one of the terms be a person, which is usually the case, there is no danger of ambiguity, because when the person is object it is necessarily distinguished by *á*:—

Por fin ha vencido el joven <i>su</i> pasión <i>al</i> juego.	The young man has finally overcome his passion for gambling.
Por fin ha vencido <i>al</i> joven <i>su</i> pasión <i>al</i> juego.	The passion for gambling has finally overcome the young man.

**REMARK.**—It may not be amiss to repeat that, in such cases, if the sense of the words be such as not to admit of double meaning, there is no need of the distinctive *á*:—

El río en este sitio ha minado la ribera.	At this place the river has undermined the bank.
Magníficas pinturas adornan las paredes.	Magnificent paintings adorn the walls.

**310.** Verbs of naming, calling, considering, etc., may take two direct objects—the true object and the predicate or thing asserted. The true object takes the distinctive *á*:—

Llama música <i>á</i> los rebuznos que emite.	He calls the brays which he utters, music.
Consideramos pura pérdida de tiempo <i>á</i> la lectura de semejantes obras.	We consider the reading of such works pure waste of time.

**311.** When the direct object of a verb is personified, it takes the distinctive *á*:—

Es un soldado que honra <i>á</i> su nación.	He is a soldier who honors his nation.
Las aves saludan <i>á</i> la Aurora.	The birds salute the dawn.
Llama en vano <i>á</i> la muerte.	He invokes death in vain.

Conversely, when a noun denoting a person is considered impersonally or indeterminately, the distinctive *á* is omitted:—

El presidente aguardará la vuelta del ministro de guerra antes de nombrar los nuevos generales de división.	The President will await the return of the Secretary of War before nominating the new major-generals.
Toca al pueblo elegir sus diputados.	It devolves upon the people to elect their representatives.

**312.** In all cases the employment of the distinctive *á* before a direct object denoting a person, depends largely upon the individuality attached to the object by the speaker:—

Aguardo un criado.	I am waiting for a servant ( <i>unknown</i> ).
Aguardo <i>á</i> un criado.	I am waiting for a servant ( <i>known</i> ).
La anciana ama los niños.	The old lady loves children.
La anciana ama <i>á</i> sus nietecitos.	The old lady loves her grandchildren.

## EXERCISE XXIV.

a) 1. *Laura* ha dejado abierta la jaula, y el gato ha devorado el canario. 2. Los gorrones ingleses han ahuyentado de las ciudades á nuestros pájaros canores indígenas. 3. Los hombres buscan la felicidad, pero olvidan que lo *esencial* es el dinero. 4. No hemos vuelto á ver á nuestros perseguidores. 5. *Pérez Galdós* es un observador que tiene la *facultad* de percibir lo risible y lo lastimero en todas las *circunstancias* de la vida. 6. Ya no es lícito cazar liebres; ha empezado la veda. 7. En la última guerra los Estados Unidos han adquirido á *Puerto Rico* y las *Filipinas*, y han expulsado de *Cuba* á los españoles. 8. Lo *flexible* de la trompa, que el *elefante* mueve en todos sentidos y repliega á su antojo, remedia la inmovilidad de su *maciza* cabeza. 9. Anoche una zorra ha penetrado en el gallinero y ha degollado nueve pollos. 10. El rugido del león, sonoro y profundo á la vez, esparce el *terror* entre los *animales* y hace temblar al hombre más (*most*) valiente. 11. Lo contrario de duradero es perecedero; de ventajoso, desventajoso; de pasajero, perdurable. 12. El amor materno existe sin *excepción* entre las mamíferas. 13. La perra ama á sus cachorros, la gata á sus gatitos, la yegua á su potro, la vaca á su ternera, la burra á su borriquillo, la oveja á su cordero, la cabra á sus cabritillos, la marrana á sus lechoncillos. 14. La leona ama á sus cachorros, la loba á sus lobeznos, la cierva á su cervatillo, la jabalina á sus jabatos, la liebre á sus lebratos.

b) 1. The patient is still unaware of the *criticalness*\* of his condition. 2. The *desolateness*\* of the landscape fills the heart of the traveler with sadness. 3. The English have unbounded confidence in *General Lord Roberts*. 4. They believe he will conduct his soldiers to victory; that he will overcome the Boers and return in triumph to England. 5. When the hen sees a hawk, she warns her chickens with a peculiar cry which they understand *perfectly*. 6. The impassability\* of the roads has decided me to postpone my departure. 7. If you will remain here and (*para*) take care of the wounded man, I will saddle my horse and go and (*d*) look for a doctor. 8. It is *impossible* to give the reader an *adequate idea* of how terrifying\* the lion's roar sounds when it is heard at (*de*) night in the desert. 9. What is the meaning of the crowd yonder on the corner? 10. An automobile has just run over a child. 11. On account of the roughness\* and steepness\* of the roads in (*de*) South Africa (*f*. 3) the farmers sometimes yoke twenty oxen to a single wagon. 12. The *compositions* of *Juan Valle*, the blind Mexican poet, are *notable* for (*por*) the

---

\* Words designated in this exercise by an asterisk are to be rendered by *to* and an adjective. The appropriate adjectives, therefore, should be sought in the Vocabulary.



purity \* of their style and for the sweetness \* and melancholiness \* of their tone. 13. The wildness \* of the night shall not prevent us from going out in search of our unfortunate comrades.

NOTE.—8. it is heard, *se oye*. (The verb *oir* is irregular.)

## LESSON XXV.

### THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

**313.** There are no available rules for determining the gender of Spanish nouns. The gender of a great part must be learned separately for each noun, in the same manner as the spelling of many words in English. It is true there is usually a reason for the gender assigned to a word, but it must often be sought in the language from which the word is derived, and may be obscure or untraceable.

But few of the languages of the world maintain a grammatical distinction of masculine and feminine genders—at the outset a distinction of male and female beings. Still fewer divide the masculine into two, thus making a masculine, a feminine and a neuter. These three genders were recognized in the Latin; but the languages derived from it have allowed the neuter generally to sink back into the masculine, and so masculine nouns are greatly in the majority. Spanish and Portuguese are the only Romance tongues which retain any trace of the neuter.

English alone bases grammatical gender on the nature of things—males are masculine, females feminine, and everything else neuter. In other languages fancy has been as potent as fact. The broad natural distinction is pretty well maintained as regards human beings and large and well-known animals; but beyond these a gender is assigned to each object with little regard to its nature.

Nevertheless there are some general considerations which are of great aid to the learner:—

1st. AS REGARDS SIGNIFICATION:—

**314.** Names and designations of men, and the males of large and well-known animals, are masculine, irrespective of termination:—

*El monarca*, the monarch.  
*El cardenal*, the cardinal.  
*El cura*, the priest.

*El centinela*, the sentinel.  
*El caballo*, the horse.  
*El león*, the lion.

Similarly, designations of females are feminine:—

*La reina*, the queen.

*La lavandera*, the laundress.

*La ninfa*, the nymph.

*La vaca*, the cow.

*La huri*, the houri.

*La gallina*, the hen.

These rules outweigh all others.

315. The proper names of countries, districts or divisions of territory are masculine, except when they terminate in unaccented *a*:—

*El Perú* ha sido desgraciado.

Peru has been unfortunate.

*Aragón* está limitado al norte por los Pirineos.

Aragon is bounded on the north by the Pyrenees.

*El Canadá* es una posesión inglesa.

Canada is an English possession.

*España* está situada en el extremo sudoeste de Europa.

Spain is situated in the extreme southwest of Europe.

*La Australia* no ha sido enteramente explorada.

Australia has not been entirely explored.

316. The proper names of oceans, rivers, mountains and mountain chains are masculine, irrespective of termination, except in those cases where the name is a mere epithet, properly feminine, and not originally a proper name:—

*El Atlántico*, the Atlantic.

*El Magdalena*, the Magdalena (*in Colombia*).

*El Amazonas*, the Amazon.

*El Etna*, Mt. Etna.

*El Tajo*, the Tagus.

*Los Andes*, the Andes.

*El Sena*, the Seine.

*El Imalaya*, the Himalaya mountains.

*but*

*La Sierra Nevada*, the Snowy Range. *La Silla*, the Saddle (*in Venezuela*).

It is to be noted that the fuller forms *el Río de la Plata*, *el Río de la Magdalena*, *el Río de las Amazonas*, when shortened are *el Plata*, *el Magdalena*, *el Amazonas*. This second form has sometimes caused the first to be forgotten; thus no one says to-day *el Río de los Manzanares*, as it no doubt was at first, but *el Manzanares*<sup>1</sup>.

317. With respect to the proper names of cities, towns, and villages, no absolute rules can be laid down. The greater number are feminine, irrespective of termination; others follow

<sup>1</sup> Small stream on which Madrid is situated.

the gender of their terminations, i.e. are masculine except when ending in *a*. But even those in *a* are considered as masculine when they stand for the inhabitants of the city; while the same name is sometimes treated as masculine and at others as feminine:—

Toledo está casi circundada por el Tajo.	Toledo is almost surrounded by the Tagus.
Jerez es famoso por sus vinos.	Sherry is famous for its wines.
Lugo y Orense están colocadas sobre el Miño.	Lugo and Orense are placed on the [river] Miño.
Nueva York; Nueva Orleans.	New York; New Orleans.
Madrid está situada (or situado) en una extensa planicie.	Madrid is situated on an extensive plain.
Sevilla es hermosa.	Seville is beautiful.
Todo Sevilla está interesado.	All Seville is interested.

318. Infinitives, phrases, and indeclinable parts of speech, used for the nonce as nouns,—like the English expressions *the ups and downs*, *the why* and *the wherefore*, *ifs* and *ands*,—belong to the class of neuters which revert to the masculine:—

El comer y beber.	Eating and drinking.
! El sí. El pero.	The affirmative. The but.
El pro y el contra.	The pro and con.

319. The names of the letters of any alphabet are feminine, as connected with *la letra*, *the letter*. Thus: *la y*, *una B grande*, *las cees*; *la guímel*, *la delta*, *la ómega*. Nevertheless some authors treat the letters of the Greek and Hebrew alphabets as masculine; and *delta* when applied to the triangular island at the mouth of a river, is masculine, according to the Academy:—

El delta del Nilo.	The Nile delta.
--------------------	-----------------

2D. AS REGARDS TERMINATION:—

320. Nouns ending in *o* are masculine, except *la mano*, *the hand*, (and a few rare words that the learner is not likely ever to meet with outside of a comprehensive grammar or dictionary.) *Reo*, *culprit*, and *testigo*, *witness*, take either *el* or *la* as the case may require.

321. Those ending in **a** are principally feminine. Except : *el día, the day*; *el cometa, the comet*; *el planeta, the planet*; *el mapa, the map*; and a number of words of Greek origin ending in *ma*<sup>1</sup>, as :—

*El programa*, the program.

*El fantasma*, the phantom.

*El dilema*, the dilemma.

*El sistema*, the system.

322. Those ending in **dad, tad, tud, ion, umbre, ie**, are feminine. In addition, the genders of a large number of nouns will be found in the list of terminations given on pp. 21-22.

These are all the rules of any value which can be given. The learner will sometimes be helped by the etymology of the word in question; but the simplest and easiest way is to learn the appropriate article in connection with each noun, and associate them together. The only resource in all cases of doubt is the dictionary.

323. Nouns designating rank or relationship are used in the masculine plural to denote individuals of both sexes:—

*Los reyes.*

*Los presidentes.*

*Los esposos.*

*Mis padres.*

*Mis parientes.*

*Señores . . .*

*Los señores Vargas.*

*Los niños.*

*Los hijos de V.*

*Los novios.*

The king and queen.

The president and lady.

The husband and wife.

My parents, my father and mother.

My relations (*of both sexes*).

Ladies and Gentlemen . .

Mr. and Mrs. Vargas.

The children.

Your children (*sons and daughters*)

The engaged couple.

324. In nouns denoting persons or well-known animals, the distinction of gender is usually a natural one. The feminine form is obtained in various ways, corresponding for the most part to the formation of the feminine of adjectives.

a. Nouns in **a** remain unchanged, and take the article **el** or **la** as the case may require:—

<sup>1</sup> This *ma* was in Greek *ματ*, *mat*, the *t* being a sign of the neuter gender, corresponding to the Latin *id*, *illud*, *istud*, and the English *it*, *that* and *what*.



El artista, the artist.  
 El cebra, the zebra.  
 El compatriota, the compatriot.  
 El hacanea, the hack.  
 El indígena, the native.  
 El jaca, the pony.

La artista, the artist.  
 La cebra, the zebra.  
 La compatriota, the compatriot.  
 La hacanea, the hack.  
 La indígena, the native.  
 La jaca, the pony.

b. A few nouns of other endings than a have a common form for both genders :—

El cómplice, the accomplice.  
 El hereje, the heretic.  
 El joven, the youth, young man.  
 El mártir, the martyr.  
 El reo, the culprit, criminal.  
 El testigo, the witness.  
 El tigre, the tiger.

La cómplice, the accomplice.  
 La hereje, the heretic.  
 La joven, the young girl.  
 La mártir, the martyr.  
 La reo, the culprit, criminal.  
 La testigo, the witness.  
 La tigre, the tigress.

c. The majority of nouns in o change it to a to form the feminine :—

El viudo, the widower.  
 El soltero, the bachelor.  
 El muchacho, the boy.  
 El niño, the boy child.  
 El huérfano, the orphan (*male*).  
 El amigo, the friend (*male*).  
 El conocido, the acquaintance.  
 El cocinero, the [male] cook.  
 El criado, the man servant.  
 El vecino, the neighbor.  
 El parroquiano, the customer.

La viuda, the widow.  
 La soltera, the maiden lady.  
 La muchacha, the girl.  
 La niña, the girl child, the girl.  
 La huérfana, the orphan (*female*).  
 La amiga, the friend (*female*).  
 La conocida, the acquaintance.  
 La cocinera, the [female] cook.  
 La criada, the servant-girl.  
 La vecina, the neighbor.  
 La parroquiana, the customer.

NOTE.—There are many other masculine nouns that have corresponding feminine forms obtained in various ways; but the members of such pairs are given individual space in the dictionaries, and need not be enumerated in detail in an elementary treatise like the present.

325. There are certain nouns which, without change of termination or of gender, may apply equally to males or females. Such nouns are called *epicene* :—

Su Majestad el Rey. Su Majestad  
 la Reina.  
 Su hermano es una persona discreta.  
 La hija de V. es un ángel.

His Majesty the King. Her Majesty  
 the Queen.  
 His brother is a discreet person.  
 Your daughter is an angel.

**326.** Where a noun that has both a masculine and a feminine form is placed in the predicate after another noun, or is in opposition to it, it should agree with the first noun in gender:—

El alba es la precursora del día.	The dawn is the harbinger of day.
Mi primo será nuestro guía.	My cousin will be our guide.
La naturaleza ha sido nuestra guía.	Nature has been our guide.
El sueño, hermano menor de la muerte.	Sleep, the half-sister of death.

### EXERCISE XXV.

a) 1. Ha visto Vd. últimamente al señor *profesor Otero*. 2. No señor, se dice que ha ido á Egipto. 3. ¿De veras? Ha estado siempre interesado en las cosas egipcias. 4. ¿Le ha acompañado su señora. 5. Sí; ella siempre ha tenido ansia de ver las pirámides. 6. Se dice que ella ayuda mucho á su marido en sus estudios é *investigaciones*. 7. Sí, en efecto; le ha ayudado á corregir las pruebas del libro que él acaba de dar á luz sobre las costumbres de los antiguos toltecas. 8. Ella será una arqueóloga hecha. 9. *Probablemente* encontrarán en Egipto al *senador Gomera*, que acaba de ir al *Cairo* en su yate. 10. El yate del *senador* será casi un *palacio* flotante. 11. Yo nunca he estado á bordo de él; pero mi colega y antiguo compañero de clase, el *Doctor López*, ha hecho dos viajes en él como *facultativo* del señor *senador*, y él dice que es un verdadero paraíso marítimo. 12. Durante su permanencia en el *Cairo* los señores *Otero* serán hospedados en casa del célebre egiptólogo alemán, el señor *Doctor Wiedemann*, que está actualmente en Egipto. 13. Bajo su conducción subirán el Nilo y *visitarán* á Tebas, donde *explorarán* las ruinas de los templos del *Uksor* y del *Karnak*, y luego regresarán á Bulak, puerto del *Cairo*, donde se halla el famoso *Museo Nacional* de Bulak, fundado por el egiptólogo francés, el señor *Marietta*. 14. Pasarán allí dos meses para (*in order to*) estudiar la valiosa *colección* de antigüedades egipcias que contiene el *museo*.


b) 1. The *primary colors* are blue, red, and yellow. 2. Secondary colors are produced by (*por*) a mixture of two *primary colors*. 3. A mixture of blue and yellow produces green; of blue and red, purple; of red and yellow, orange. 4. Of what *color* is water? 5. *Pure* water has no *color*; it is a *transparent* liquid; but in large masses it assumes a bluish or greenish hue. 6. If a ray of light is made to pass through a *triangular* prism, it is decomposed and *forms* a band of *colors*, which is called the *solar spectrum*. 7. The *spectral* image is composed of an *infinity* of tones, from violet to red. 8. There are also, outside of the limits of these (*éstos*), tones that are *invisible* to (*para*, the *human* eye, and are called *respectively* ultra-violet tones, and infra-red. 9. The beautiful phenomenon

of the rainbow is produced by the decomposition which the light of the sun undergoes when it is reflected by (*en*) the drops of water of a cloud that has been *condensed* into rain. 10. The spray of waterfalls also produces rainbows when the sun's rays illumine it. 11. The colored haloes that at times are seen around the moon are produced by an analogous cause. 12. The *color* of bodies is due to the phenomenon of absorption of rays of light. 13. A body that reflects the blue rays and absorbs the rest, will appear blue when it is lighted with (*por*) a (*la*) white light. 14. If it reflects both (*y*) the blue rays and the yellow, it will appear green, since blue and yellow give green. 15. A body that absorbs all the light that it receives, will appear black.

---

## LESSON XXVI.

### SUBSTANTIVE COMBINATIONS. COMPOUND NOUNS. COMPOSITE ADJECTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

 By *substantive combinations* are here intended two or more nouns, generally connected by prepositions, used together to denote a particular object.

327. The English language has a remarkable facility in using almost any noun as an adjective before other nouns; as: *clover honey, snipe shooting, school system*. When the words become habitually associated it is usual to link them together with hyphens: *arm-chair, law-maker, water-hemp-agrimony*. When a combination has been long in use, the hyphen is dropped, and the parts become a single word: *penknife, horseman, hedgehog*.

This use of nouns is very limited in Spanish. In the few existing examples the secondary or qualifying noun, since it is used as an adjective, follows the principal noun, as an adjective would. The gender of the combination is that of the principal noun:—

El cura párroco.

La escuela-modelo.

La lengua madre.

La tierra virgen.

La pluma tintero.

La aguagoma.

The parish priest.

The model school.

The mother tongue.

The virgin soil.

The fountain pen.

The gum-arabic water.

REMARK.—Exceptions exist in a few neologisms which are imitations of English and contrary to the genius of Spanish; as: *la madre patria*, *the mother country*, (better *el país natal*;) *el papel moneda*, *the paper money*.

328. The principal method of combining nouns in Spanish is by placing the secondary noun last, and connecting the two by *de*:—

El puerto de mar.	The seaport.
El traje de baile.	The ball-dress.
La sortija de matrimonio.	The wedding-ring.
El caballo de silla.	The saddle-horse.
La granada de mano.	The hand-grenade.
La cuchara de mesa.	The tablespoon.
El jugo de limón.	The lemon-juice.

REMARK.—When the qualifying noun is a proper name, the connecting preposition is usually omitted:—

Encaje Honitón; seda Surah.	Honiton lace; Surah silk.
El Café Valdés.	The Valdés Café.

329. If, however, the secondary noun should express the purpose or use for which the first is intended, the preposition *para*, *for*, is used instead of *de*:—

El vaso para cerveza.	The beer-glass.
El molde para ladrillos.	The brick-mould.
La prensa para sidra.	The cider-press.
La percha para sombreros.	The hat-rack.
El estante para libros.	The book-case.
El canal para buques.	The ship-canal.

330. It has been explained that the Spanish infinitive is used as a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. Consequently, in the secondary term of combinations of this character, Spanish employs the infinitive of the verb where English uses the present participle:—

La prensa de copiar.	The copying-press.
La máquina de coser.	The sewing-machine.
La pluma de dibujar.	The drawing-pen.
El papel de filtrar.	The filtering-paper.
La mesa para escribir.	The writing-table.



**331.** More complex ideas have to be expressed in Spanish word by word, the order being exactly the reverse of the English:—

El aceite de semillas de algodón.	The cotton-seed oil.
La aguja para máquina de coser.	The sewing-machine needle.
El sistema de abastecimiento de agua.	The water-supply system.
La máquina de torcer cuerdas.	The rope-twisting machine.
La prensa de embalar heno.	The hay-packing press.
La prensa de imprimir en colores.	The color-printing press.
El agua de blanquear tejidos.	The cloth-bleaching liquid.
El molino de pulverizar vidrio.	The glass-pulverizing mill.
El horno de fundir mineral.	The ore-smelting furnace.
La máquina de hacer tipos de madera.	The block-letter-cutting machine.
La prensa de cilindro de tinta-miento automático.	The self-inking cylinder-press.

There are three other methods of expressing composite ideas such as we have been considering, but the learner with his present knowledge is not prepared to apply them correctly. They are:—

a. The qualifying noun is replaced by a true adjective:—

El agua llovediza ( <i>or</i> pluvial).	The rain-water.
Un viento marero.	A sea-breeze.

Still, in such cases two nouns connected by *de* can generally be used instead; thus, *el agua de lluvia* and *un viento de mar* would be equally correct with the above.

b. A derivative is formed of the primitive word by adding a termination:—

El azucarero.	The sugar-bowl.
La librería.	The bookstore.
El rosal.	The rosebush.

c. The idea is expressed by an entirely different word:—

La crin.	The horsehair.
La petaca.	The cigar-case.

#### COMPOUND NOUNS.

**332.** By *compound nouns* are meant nouns formed by the combination of words which are also used separately. Nouns containing particles no longer in use alone, and those composed of parts that are distinct and separable only in some other language, cannot be considered as compounds in Spanish.

**332.** The class of compound nouns is not numerous. Very few are composed only of nouns; far the greater number are

made by prefixing the stem of a verb to a noun, a few by the combination of a noun and an adjective, while a rabble of scattering nouns are formed by the combination of almost any parts of speech:—

- El correveidile (corre-vé-y-dí-le, *run-go-and-tell-him*), the tattler.  
 La enhorabuena (en-hora-buena, *in-good-hour*), the congratulation.  
 El espantapájaros (espanta-pájaros, *scare-birds*), the scarecrow.  
 El guardapolvo (guarda-polvo, *guard-dust*), the dust-protector.  
 El hazmerreír<sup>1</sup> (haz-me-reír, *makes-me-laugh*), the guy, laughing-stock.  
 El limpiechimeneas (limpia-chimeneas, *clean-chimneys*), the chimney-sweep.  
 El matasiete (mata-siete, *kill-seven*), the bully, blusterer, fire-eater.  
 El mondadientes (monda-dientes, *clean-teeth*), the toothpick.  
 El pararrayos<sup>1</sup> (para-rayos, *stop-lightnings*), the lightning-rod.  
 El pasatiempo (pasa-tiempo, *pass-time*), the pastime.  
 El portafusil (porta-fusil, *carry-musket*), the sling (*of musket*).  
 El quedirán (qué-dirán, *what-will-they-say*), the public opinion.  
 Los quehaceres (que-haceres, *what-to-do's*), the chores.  
 La sinrazón (sin-razón, *without-reason*), the injustice.

333. No rules can be laid down for determining the gender of a given compound noun. Those denoting males are masculine; females, feminine; otherwise the gender of each must be learned separately. However, where there are no determining circumstances, presumption is largely in favor of the masculine. Their irregularities of gender are apparent from the following list:—

La aguamiel.	The metheglin.
El aguardiente.	The brandy.
La bocacalle.	The mouth of a street.
El cortaplumas.	The penknife.
El guardacartas.	The letter-file.
El lavamanos.	The wash-stand.
La madreelva.	The honeysuckle.
La maniobra.	The handiwork, manœuvre.
La matacandelas.	The candle-snuffer, extinguisher.
El mondaorejas.	The ear-spoon.
El or los paracaídas.	The parachute.

---

<sup>1</sup> The initial r of the second word is doubled to preserve the rolling sound between vowels. (§ 29, REM.)

El paraguas.	The umbrella.
El pasamano.	The handrail.
El picaflor.	The humming-bird.
El picamaderos.	The woodpecker.
El portamonedas.	The coin-purse, portemonnaie.
La sacabala.	The ball-forceps.
La sacabalas.	The ball-extractor, worm.
El sacabotas.	The bootjack.
El sacacorchos, el tirabuzón.	The corkscrew.
El salvavidas.	The life-boat.
El tirabotaa.	The boot-hook ( <i>for drawing on boots</i> ).
El tiralínea.	The ruling-pen.

## COMPOSITE ADJECTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

334. In English many adjective expressions are composed of an adjective connected by a hyphen with a noun which assumes the termination of a past participle,—the combination meaning *provided with* whatever is expressed by the noun. The value is expressed in Spanish by the use of the preposition *de*:—

Una niña de ojos azules.	A blue-eyed girl.
Un hombre de buen corazón.	A kind-hearted man.
Un muchacho de pelo rojo.	A red-haired boy.
Una casa de tejado empinado.	A steep-roofed house.
Un bote de fondo llano.	A flat-bottomed boat.
Un vestido de mangas largas.	A long-sleeved dress.
Un sombrero de alas anchas.	A broad-brimmed hat.

REMARK.—In some of the above instances the adjective in Spanish may be made to agree with the first noun instead of the second:—

Un vestido largo de mangas.	A long-sleeved dress.
Un sombrero ancho de alas.	A broad-brimmed hat.

335. Similar expressions are formed with a numeral instead of an adjective:—

Una espada de dos filos.	A two-edged sword.
Una escopeta de dos cañones.	A double-barreled shotgun.
Un buque de tres palos.	A three-masted vessel.
Una lancha de cuatro remos.	A four-oared boat.

**336.** When the second part of the compound is a noun denoting material and preceded by *de*, *con* is employed instead of *de* to connect it with the noun which it qualifies:—

Una espada con puño de oro.	A gold-hilted sword.
Un abanico con varillas de marfil.	An ivory-handled fan.
Quevedos con aros de acero.	Steel-bowed eyeglasses.

**337.** When the English expression is composed of an actual past participle preceded by a noun, the Spanish employs a participle followed by *de* and the noun:—

Sembrado de estrellas.	Star-spangled.
Coronado de nieve.	Snow-capped.
Cubierto de musgo.	Moss-covered.

**REMARK.**—In naming colors, Spanish uses the noun *color* where English employs the past participle *colored*:—

Una cinta color de ratón.	A mouse-colored ribbon.
Nubes de color de fuego.	Flame-colored clouds.
Un par de guantes color de casca.	A pair of tan-colored gloves.

**338.** There is, however, a class of compound adjectives (limited in number), composed of a noun followed by an adjective, of which the following will serve as examples:—

Barbioso, heavily bearded.	(From <i>barba</i> and <i>espeso</i> .)
Barbirrufo, grizzly-bearded.	( " " " rucio.)
Cariacotecido, crestfallen.	( " cara " acontecido.)
Carilargo, long-faced.	( " " " largo.)
Cuellierguído, stiff-necked, proud.	( " cuello " erguido.)
Cuellituerto, wry-necked.	( " " " tuerto.)
Patihendido, cloven-hoofed.	( " pata " hendido.)
Patimacizo ( <i>the opposite of the above</i> ), solid-hoofed.	( " " " macizo.)
Patizambo, bandy-legged.	( " " " zambo.)
Pelilargo, long-haired.	( " pelo " largo.)
Pelirrubio, light-haired.	( " " " rubio.)
Pernituerto, crook-shanked	( " pierna " tuerto.)
Puntiagudo, sharp-pointed.	( " punta " agudo.)

**REMARK.**—Note the modification of the connecting vowel. Also the doubling of the initial *r*. (See § 29.)



## EXERCISE XXVI.

a) 1. Mi tío D. José piensa establecer una fábrica de llantas *pneumáticas* para bicicleta. 2. Las canoas de corteza de abedul son muy ligeras, pero son también muy *frágiles*. 3. Los guardias civiles han encontrado en los bolsillos del prisionero unos billetes de banco, una bolsa de señora, dos relojes de doble caja, un rompecabezas, y un largo cuchillo de vaina. 4. En nuestra casa de huéspedes la comida es *excelente*. 5. Por ejemplo, hoy hemos tenido sopa de tomate, rombo cocido con salsa de anchoas, pastelillos de pollo y setas, lomo de vaca asado con papas doradas, guisantes y puntas de espárragos, ensalada de lechuga, pastel de ruibarbo, y café negro. 6. La *invención* de los fulminantes de *fricción* ha hecho *posible* el empleo *universal* de la dinamita. 7. En la navegación *interoceánica* los vapores de hélice han sustituido por completo á los vapores de rueda. 8. Don Pedro, el tenedor de libros de (*in*) la Lonja de Viveres, anda muy cariacontecido, puesto que ha cometido un *error* grave en el saldo anual de cuentas, y teme una reconvención de parte de la junta directiva. 9. Si el nieto de Vd. acepta nuestra proposición, á demás del sueldo *mencionado*, le costaremos los gastos de viaje y manutención. 10. En las últimas *elecciones* los librecambistas han sufrido una abrumadora derrota. 11. Los jugadores de bolsa que han jugado á la baja están ahora muy carilargos, pues hay un alza formidable, que promete *continuar* en aumento.

b) 1. The woodwork of my bedroom is quartered oak, and the design of the wall-paper is pink rosebuds on a pale olive-green background. 2. There is a carved oak mantelpiece with a beveled plate-glass mirror. 3. The bedstead is white enameled iron with brass trimmings. 4. It has woven wire springs and a hair mattress. 5. The floor is covered with (*de*) straw matting. 6. There is a Smyrna rug by (*á*) the bedside, and a white goatskin rug in front of the fireplace. 7. I have a wood fire when the air in (*de*) the room is chilly. 8. I have a large wicker rocking-chair, an easy-chair upholstered in (*de*) velours, and two side chairs. 9. My dressing-case is between the two windows, and my writing-table is set against (*junto á*) the side wall to the right of the windows. 10. The toilet-set is white, decorated with (*de*) an arabesque pattern in (*de*) pink and green. 11. I have a silver-backed tortoise-shell comb, and cut-glass scent-bottles; the rest of the toilet articles are silver. 12. The windows have Venetian blinds with *Honiton* lace curtains and pink brocaded silk draperies. 13. The curtain poles are oak with brass rings. 14. Above the mantelpiece there is a *Hoffmann* landscape in oil. 15. It is a Swiss scene, with sheep in the foreground, and the snow-capped mountains in the distance. 16. Over my writing-table I have a lovely water-color portrait of a blue-

eyed girl, by *Anna Lee*. 17. I intend to buy a plate-glass fire-screen, and then my room will be completely furnished.

- NOTES.—1. the wall-paper, *el papel con que está entapizado*.  
is pink rosebuds: render “is of pink rosebuds.”  
5. straw matting: supply the indefinite article.  
8. wicker: plural in Spanish.  
14. in oil, *pintado al óleo*.

## LESSON XXVII.

### THE IMPERFECT AND AORIST<sup>1</sup> (PAST DEFINITE) TENSES.

339. In addition to the perfect tense (described in Lesson XIV), which is a compound tense, the Spanish verb has two past tenses of simple form: the *imperfect* and the *aorist*<sup>1</sup> (or *past definite*). In regular verbs these are obtained by adding the following terminations to the stem:—

IMPERFECT.			AORIST.	
	1st CONJ.	2d AND 3d CONJ.	1st CONJ.	2d AND 3d CONJ.
1.	-aba,	-ía,	1. -é,	-í,
2.	-abas,	-ías,	2. -aste,	-iste,
3.	-aba,	-ía,	3. -ó,	-ió,
1.	-ábamos,	-íamos,	1. -amos,	-imos,
2.	-abais,	-íais,	2. -asteis,	-isteis,
3.	-aban.	-ían.	3. -aron.	-ieron.

#### IMPERFECT TENSE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

SING.	{ 1 p.	compraba,	vendía,	vivía,
	{ 2 p.	comprabas,	vendías,	vivías,
	{ 3 p.	compraba,	vendía,	vivía,
PLUR.	{ 1 p.	comprábamos,	vendíamos,	vivíamos,
	{ 2 p.	comprabais,	vendíais,	vivíais,
	{ 3 p.	compraban.	vendían.	vivían.

<sup>1</sup> There were in Greek three past tenses—imperfect, aorist and perfect—corresponding generally to those in Spanish. The distinction between aorist and perfect was lost in Latin, where one tense, called *perfect*, served both purposes; and as grammar has been modeled from Latin, the term *aorist* has disappeared. Yet the same distinction which existed in Greek has reappeared in the languages descended from Latin. Therefore the original and appropriate Greek term *aorist* has been adopted in this work instead of the more complex expressions *past definite* or *preterit definite*.

## AORIST TENSE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

SING.	{ 1 p.	compré,	vendí,	viví,
	{ 2 p.	compraste,	vendiste,	viviste,
	{ 3 p.	compró,	vendió,	vivió,
PLUR.	{ 1 p.	compramos,	vendimos,	vivimos,
	{ 2 p.	comprastéis,	vendisteis,	vivisteis,
	{ 3 p.	compraron.	vendieron.	vivieron.

NOTE.—It will be seen that the first person plural of the aorist and that of the present indicative are identical in verbs of the first and third conjugations.

340. The imperfect tense is formed irregularly in three verbs only: *ser*, *to be*, forms its imperfect from a different root; the imperfect of *ir*, *to go*, resembles those of the first conjugation; and *ver*, *to see*, restores the original *e* of the stem in forming the imperfect:—

SER:	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran.
IR:	iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban.
VER:	veía	veías	veía	veíamos	veíais	veían.

341. *Tener*, *estar*, *haber*, *querer*, *hacer*, *venir* and *decir* form the aorist tense upon stems entirely different from those of their infinitives; they all have this point in common, that the first and third persons singular are accented on the penultimate, instead of the last syllable as in the regular verbs. *Ser* forms the aorist from a different root (as does the Latin *esse*, *to be*). *Ir* has no aorist of its own, and borrows that of *ser*. *Dar* forms the aorist like verbs of the second or third conjugations:—

TENER (tuv):	tuve	tuviste	tuvo	tuvimos	tuvisteis	tuvieron.
ESTAR (estuv):	estuve	estuviste	estuvo	estuvimos	estuvisteis	estuvieron.
HABER (hub):	hube	hubiste	hubo	hubimos	hubisteis	hubieron.
QUERER (quis):	quise	quisiste	quiso	quisimos	quisisteis	quisieron.
HACER (hic):	hice	hiciste	hizo <sup>1</sup>	hicimos	hicisteis	hicieron.
VENIR (vin):	vine	viniste	vino	vinimos	vinisteis	vinieron.
DECIR (dij):	dije	dijiste	dijo	dijimos	dijisteis	dijeron. <sup>2</sup>
SER } (fu):	fui	fuiste	fué	fuimos	fuisteis	fueron. <sup>2</sup>
IR }						
DAR (d):	dí	diste	dió	dimos	disteis	dieron.

<sup>1</sup> The *c* is changed to *z* to preserve the sound.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that the *i* of the diphthong *ie* is absorbed.

**342.** The fundamental value of the imperfect is to express continuance, as of an action or condition prolonged either in itself or by successive repetition. It is the tense used to express what was habitual or customary, and to describe the qualities of persons or things, and the place or condition in which they were, in the past:—

Creíamos que estaba V. en Chicago.	We thought you were in Chicago.
Anteriormente esta isla era una posesión inglesa.	Formerly this island was an English possession.
El señor Garcés era un caballero muy agradable, pero tenía un defecto,—el de hablar demasiado.	Mr. Garces was a very agreeable gentleman, but he had one fault,—that of talking too much.
El tiempo era tempestuoso y sobre todo lluvioso, pero los caminos todavía no estaban malos y resistían bien á las ruedas de las carretas, aunque éstas eran bastante pesadas.	The weather was stormy and above all rainy, but the roads were not yet bad and resisted the wheels of the wagons well, although they were pretty heavy.

**343.** The first and third persons singular of the imperfect being identical in form, it is necessary to express the pronoun subject when ambiguity would result from its omission:—

Aquella señora es la que me mandaba frutas cuando yo estaba enfermo.	That lady is the one who used to send me fruit when I was sick.
Encontraba con frecuencia á la Srta. hermana de V. cuando ella vivía en la ciudad.	I met your sister frequently when she lived in town.

**344.** The aorist expresses a past action not regarded as continuous, occurring at some particular time, understood or designated, of which no part is continued to the present. It is the historical tense of Spanish, corresponding to the Greek aorist in all cases not implying custom, repetition or duration, which are the distinctive characteristics of the imperfect:—

El pueblo de Chile, en Julio de 1810, proclamó su independencía, derrocó al presidente español, y el 18 de setiembre puso la autori-	The people of Chile in July, 1810, proclaimed their independence, deposed the Spanish president, and on the 18th of September
--	---



dad suprema á cargo de una comisión de siete individuos.

placed the supreme authority in the hands of a commission of seven persons.

Nuestras tropas atacaron con denuevo, alentadas por el general y protegidas por el fuego de nuestra artillería. Aunque los carlistas defendieron la posición con tenacidad, fueron arrojados de ella é inutilizados sus cañones.

Our troops attacked daringly, encouraged by the general and protected by the fire of our artillery. Although the Carlists defended the position stubbornly, they were driven from it and their guns disabled.

#### DISTINCTION BETWEEN AORIST AND PERFECT.

**345.** If the occurrence in question took place within a space of time not yet expired, as this day, month, year, etc., or an indefinite time in any way connected with the present, the perfect tense is employed. Still, the aorist is used in speaking even of to-day, if the hour is given, for in that case the time specified is wholly past:—

No he ido á los baños de mar este año.

I did not go to the sea-shore this year.

He leído hoy en el periódico que el monumento naval ha sido derribado por el viento.

I read in the paper to-day that the naval monument has been blown down by the wind.

He visto amenudo á aquel hombre, pero no recuerdo dónde.

I have often seen that man, but do not recollect where.

He escrito seis cartas esta mañana.

I have written six letters this morning.

¿Ha escrito Vd. hoy á su señor tío?

Have you written to your uncle to-day?

Sí; le escribí á las diez, y le mandé la esquila á las diez y media.

Yes, I wrote to him at ten o'clock and sent him the note at half past.

**346.** The following may serve further to distinguish the aorist and perfect tenses:—

- a. A specified time wholly past requires the aorist tense.
- b. A specified time connected with the present requires the perfect.
- c. An unspecified time is, necessarily, not connected with either past or present, except in the mind of the speaker. If he has only the past in

view, he uses the aorist tense; if the present be in his mind, he makes use of the perfect tense.<sup>1</sup>

§347 The boundary line here, as in all questions of rhetoric and style, is not clearly defined, and is subject to joint-occupancy and the exercise of individual taste. In ordinary conversational style the perfect tense, when admissible, is preferred to the aorist, which latter is the more usual in literary language.

#### COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES OF THE PERFECT AND AORIST TENSES.

He escrito hoy á mi padre. (Includes present time.)	I wrote to my father to-day.
Escribí á mi padre el sábado. (Excludes present time.)	I wrote to my father Saturday.
Grecia produjo grandes oradores y poetas. (Here we speak of ancient Greece, now past and gone.)	Greece produced great orators and poets.
Francia ha producido muchos autores eminentes. (Her ability to produce them extends to the present.)	France has produced many eminent authors.
Francia produjo muchos autores eminentes en el reinado de Luis Catorce. (Here the time is restricted to a period entirely past.)	France produced many eminent authors in the reign of Louis XIV.
Ha dejado á su familia sin sustento.	He has left his family without support.
Ha dejado un ejemplo insigne á la posteridad. (In the last two the influence of the deceased extends to the present.)	He has left a notable example to posterity.

#### DISTINCTION BETWEEN AORIST AND IMPERFECT.

§347. The Spanish imperfect can generally be represented in English by either *used to* followed by an infinitive, or by the preterit of the verb *to be* and a present participle; the aorist can never be so represented. The English rendering does

<sup>1</sup> If we say *mi padre perdió \$1.000 en esa especulación*, we consider the occurrence as entirely past and gone; but if we say *mi padre ha perdido \$1.000 en esta especulación*, we speak of a comparatively recent occurrence, the effects of which are still felt, thus connecting it with the present time. Note, also, the change in the demonstrative pronoun.

not necessarily assume one of these forms, but they are exact equivalents of the Spanish in meaning:—

Fumaba mucho en el colegio, pero más tarde abandoné la costumbre.	I <i>used to smoke</i> a great deal in college, but later gave up the habit.
Iba á la pesca todas las mañanas cuando vivía en el campo.	I <i>used to go</i> a-fishing every morning when I <i>was living</i> in the country.
Tenía una casa de huéspedes en Lima cuando estalló la revolución.	He <i>was keeping</i> a boarding-house in Lima when the revolution broke out.
El herido dormía profundamente y no le despertaron sus camaradas.	The wounded man <i>was sleeping</i> soundly and his comrades did not wake him.
El pescador remendaba sus redes mientras su mujer aderezaba la cena.	The fisherman <i>was mending</i> his nets while his wife <i>was getting</i> supper.
El viento soplabá con violencia, pero por fortuna ya no llovía.	The wind <i>was blowing</i> with violence, but fortunately it <i>was</i> no longer raining.

**348.** When we express two past actions, occurring at the same time but of unequal duration, the shorter action is put in the aorist and the longer in the imperfect. This can be aptly illustrated by gradually reducing the length of the longer or "including" action:—

Mientras escribía la carta dieron las once.	While I was writing the letter the clock struck eleven.
Mientras daban las once se abrió la puerta.	While the clock was striking eleven the door opened.
Mientras se abría la puerta dejé caer la pluma.	While the door was opening I dropped the pen.

(And, if any still shorter action occurred while the pen was falling, the latter verb would become imperfect.)

**349.** In historical narration, where the events are wholly past and separated from the present by a considerable interval, the aorist applies to actions of some duration, provided no actions of shorter duration be expressed as occurring within their limits.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A tolerable illustration may be derived from the self-recording thermometer. The column of mercury supports a self-feeding pen, which, as it rises and falls with the varying temperature, traces a line upon the

It is as if the area over which the action extends were by the perspective of time reduced to a mere point:—

César escribió la historia de sus propias conquistas.

Cæsar wrote the history of his own conquests.

Napoleón III subió al trono en el año de 1851, y reinó hasta el de 1870.

Napoleon III. ascended the throne in the year 1851 and reigned until 1870.

Continuaron en esta administración las reformas judiciales comenzadas en la anterior.

They continued in this administration the judicial reforms commenced in the one preceding.

Los fenicios llegaron á España como amigos, negociaron como comerciantes, hicieron del Guadalquivir la vía de su tráfico, y sus primeras fundaciones no fueron plazas muradas ni atrincheramientos militares sino pacíficas colonias mercantiles.

The Phœnicians came to Spain as friends, traded as merchants, made the Guadalquivir the highway of their commerce, and their first settlements were not walled towns nor military intrenchments, but peaceable mercantile colonies.

**350.** The imperfect is required, however, whenever the fact of duration is essential, or the action is oft repeated. It thus applies to conditions, habits or peculiarities which were common to a person through life, or through so much thereof as we care to take cognizance of; while the aorist applies to those which were accidental or temporary:—

Cicerón era un orador elocuente.

Cicero was an eloquent orator.

Cicerón fué cónsul.

Cicero was consul.

La influencia que la cultura de Roma ejerció en España fué grande y duradera.

The influence which the culture of Rome exercised in Spain was great and lasting.

Demóstenes temía y odiaba á Felipe.

Demosthenes feared and hated Philip.

Fernando III, rey de Castilla, fué un monarca egregio.

Ferdinand III., king of Castile, was a remarkable sovereign.

scroll of paper which passes before it at the rate of, perhaps, half an inch per hour. Now if we regard actions as producing records upon the scroll of time, a single instantaneous action would record merely a *dot* (aorist); a succession of such actions, a *dotted line* (imperfect of custom); a prolonged act, a *solid line* (imperfect of continuance). But, geometry defines a point as "location without dimension"; our dot here should be theoretically "action without duration." The shortest action we can conceive of has some duration. The question to decide then, is: when is your line short enough to be considered a dot?



Fernando III brillaba como hombre político por su sabiduría, su tolerancia y su prudencia, como militar por su valor y su pericia, y como religioso por sus eximias virtudes.

Ferdinand III. shone as a statesman by his wisdom, his lenity and his prudence, as a soldier by his bravery and skill, as a Christian by his distinguished virtues.

REMARK.—Otherwise the imperfect is not employed unless the action be contemporary to a particular time, expressed or implied. Thus, to say *César escribía la historia de sus conquistas*, *Cæsar was writing the history of his conquests*, would be inadmissible without some complementary clause, as for instance *cuando fué nombrado dictador*, *when he was appointed dictator*; nor could we say *Cicerón era cónsul* unless we added *á aquel tiempo*, *at that time*, or *cuando Catilina conjuraba contra el Estado*, *when Catiline was conspiring against the State*, or some equivalent expression.

351. In narrations the aorist tells the occurrences which furnish the thread of the story; the imperfect describes the scene in which they occurred:—

El firmamento estaba poblado de estrellas; la luna aun no parecía. Los remos chapoteaban dulcemente sobre el agua, y la falúa se deslizaba sin ruido por entre las márgenes sumergidas en una oscuridad luminosa. Los mimbrés y álamos esparcían por la superficie del río sombras flotantes que temblaban y desaparecían á nuestro paso. Impresionados todos por el silencio de la noche, el blando vaivén de la barca, y el suave rumor de los insectos que cantaban en las praderas de las márgenes, comenzamos, sin darnos cuenta, á bajar la voz; al poco rato no se oía más que cuchicheos y rumor de risas comprimidas. Sumergí los dedos en el agua, y la hallé tibia; Gloria se inclinó para hacer lo mismo, y nuestras manos moja-

The sky was studded with stars; the moon was not yet shining. The oars splashed gently over the water, and the boat glided silently between the banks submerged in semi-darkness. The osiers and poplars cast upon the surface of the stream floating shadows that trembled and disappeared as we passed. Impressed by the silence of the night, the gentle rocking of the boat, and the subdued sound of the insects that were singing in the meadows along the banks, we all began unconsciously to lower our voices; in a little while nothing was heard but whispers and the sound of suppressed laughter. I dipped my fingers in the water, and found it warm; Gloria leaned over to do the same, and our wet hands exchanged a brief and loving pressure which nobody saw. Soon

das cambiaron un dulce y corto  
apretón que nadie vió. Luego  
apareció la luna por encima de  
las lejanas colinas, etc.

the moon appeared above the dis-  
tant hills, etc.

#### COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES OF THE IMPERFECT AND AORIST TENSES.

¿Qué le decía á V. su señor padre?

What was your father saying to you?

¿Qué le dijo á V. su señor padre?

What did your father say to you?

La gata tuvo cinco gatitos.

The cat had (gave birth to) five  
kittens.

Mi padre tenía dos hermosos caballos.

My father had two fine horses.

Grande fué mi susto.

Great was my fright.

Su caudal era grande.

His fortune was large.

¿Visitó V. la Biblioteca Nacional en  
Quito?

Did you visit the National Library  
in Quito?

Sí, en efecto, leía y estudiaba allí  
con frecuencia.

Yes indeed, I read and studied there  
frequently.

¿Á dónde iba V. cuando yo le en-  
contré?—Venía del teatro.

Where were you going when I met  
you?—I was coming from the  
theater.

¿Ha venido alguien?—Vino su señor  
padre, pero como estaba de prisa  
y V. estaba fuera, no le aguardó.

Did any one come?—Your father  
came, but as he was in a hurry  
and you were out, he did not wait  
for you.

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

a) 1. En los tiempos antiguos se creía que unos supuestos sabios llamados "astrólogos" podían leer en el cielo los acontecimientos de (on) la tierra. 2. Siempre que nacía un príncipe, el astrólogo de *palacio* examinaba qué planeta se hallaba *visible* al punto del nacimiento, y pronosticaba la vida *futura* del recién nacido. 3. Se creía entonces que el universo se había creado para nosotros, y que nuestro pequeño globo era el *centro* en cuyo derredor<sup>1</sup> *circulaban* para (*for*) su gloria y felicidad todos aquellos astros. 4. Colón en su primer viaje hizo escala en la *Gomera*, isla *principal* de las Canarias, con el objeto de *reparar* un timón roto. 5. Este *accidente* en los principios del viaje causó mal *efecto* en las tripulaciones, pues los marineros eran muy *supersticiosos*. 6. *Consideraron* la rotura del timón como presagio funesto. 7. Pero Colón, que nunca perdía la serenidad, les dijo que era una aberración creer en los malos

<sup>1</sup> En cuyo derredor, *around which*.

agüeros, y que el *accidente* sólo indicaba una cosa: la *necesidad* de componer el timón. 8. Por fin la flotilla zarpó de la *Gomera* y *continuó* su viaje hacia el occidente. 9. Los últimos días del mes de setiembre ofrecieron de (*as*) notable la *presencia* de gran número de *petreles* y fragatas, que pasaban á la vista de las caravelas con *dirección* al oeste. 10. También se vieron *frecuentemente* yerbas que flotaban en la superficie del mar; y en uno de estos paquetes herbáceos se halló un cangrejo vivo. 11. Estos sucesos alentaron á los marineros, porque parecían indicios seguros de que la tierra no estaba *distante*.

b) 1. After the *election* of *President Lincoln*, the slave states established a separate confederacy. 2. The southerners did not wish to lose their slaves, which constituted an *important* part of their wealth. 3. The northern states wished to abolish slavery, and gave resolute support to the *federal* government. 4. Armies and fleets were *improvised* with a rapidity that astonished the world. 5. The southern armies did not lack brave officers, for, aside from the great number of foreign adventurers who offered them their *services*, they had many graduates from the famous school at (*de*) *West Point*. 6. It was a *formidable* war; but if it *caused* waste and havoc, it produced some happy results. 7. It taught old Europe what (*lo que*) a free *democracy* was capable of doing, and converted into free men the thousands of negroes who still dragged the chains of the slave. 8. President Lincoln *declared* the southern ports in a state of blockade, and the secessionists found themselves cut off from obtaining supplies from abroad. 9. From time to time a daring trader succeeded in running the blockade, but the supplies that were obtained in (*de*) this manner were far from being *sufficient*. 10. The southerners fought four years with incredible bravery and persistency, but they were obliged to succumb at last to a (*la*) *superiority* of numbers and equipment. 11. Entire weeks before *capitulating*, the soldiers of *Lee* lived on (*de*) roots and berries. 12. When they arrived at *Appomattox* and confronted the enemy, they experienced no discouragement; but *human* strength has its limits, and the defeat of the South was *inevitable*.

NOTES. 1. established, *constituyeron*. (*Constituir* is irregular in the aorist.)

3. gave: use *prestar* in this construction, not *dar*.

5. had: *disponer de* is here preferable to *tener*.

6. havoc: plural in Spanish.

produced, *produjo*. (The aorist of *producir* is irregular.)

7. converted, *convirtió*. (*Convertir* is irregular.)

8. in a state: omit the article.

10. with . . . persistency: see § 278.  
numbers: singular in Spanish.



## LESSON XXVIII.

## THE PREPOSITIONS PARA AND POR.

**352.** The prepositions *para* and *por*, from the variety of their meanings and usage, deserve a chapter to themselves. They are employed in senses that have so great an apparent resemblance, that no small care is required to distinguish them. Stated roughly, *por* refers to source and *para* to destination. They involve the questions *whence* and *whither*:—

*Esta carta fué escrita por el general para el rey.* This letter was written *by* the general [intended] *for* the king.

**REMARK.**—Of the two, *por* presents the most difficulty. It may be regarded as taking the places of the Latin *per* and *pro*.

*Per* was used in expressing the time or place *through* which anything passed; the person *through* or *by* whom, or that *on account of* which, anything was done.

The primary meaning of *pro* was *before, in front of*. But one might stand before another as a defender, advocate, friend or representative, and thus act or speak *for* or *on behalf of* him, or *for* his benefit; it also signified the taking, exchanging or substituting one person or thing *for* another.

These various senses are combined in the Spanish *por*.

*Para* is a combination of *pro* in the sense of *before, forward, and ad, to*, so that its primary signification is *forward unto*. In all its uses its characteristics are purpose, object, end or intention.

**POR.**

**353.** In passive expressions *por* indicates the agent *by* whom an action is performed; but if the action be a mental one, the preposition used is preferably *de*:—

*El muchacho será castigado por su padre.* The boy will be punished by his father.

*Este niño es amado de sus padres.* This child is loved by its parents.

*El fuerte fué tomado por el enemigo.* The fort was taken by the enemy.

*El universo fué creado por Dios.* The universe was created by God.

*Ese actor ha sido bien recibido por el público.* That actor has been well received by the public.

*Esta obra está escrita por un autor francés.* This work is by a French author.



**354. Indicates manner or means:—**

El dentista me sacó el diente por la fuerza.	The dentist pulled my tooth out by force.
Como V. los ha visto por sus propios ojos, puede afirmar que existen.	As you have seen them with your own eyes, you can declare that they exist.
Por fulano conseguí el empleo.	I obtained the employment through So-and-so.

**355. Indicates the reason or motive for an action:—**

Por eso no quiero verle.	For that reason I do not want to see him.
Pelear por la vida, por la honra.	To fight for one's life, for one's honor.
No fuí al baile por falta de ropa.	I did not go to the ball for want of clothes.
Por miedo de las consecuencias.	For fear of consequences.
Le han despedido por una falta leve.	They have discharged him for a slight fault.
Lo hace por vanidad.	He does it out of vanity.
No fué admitido por ser católico.	He was not admitted, on account of being a Catholic.

**356. After the verbs *to go*, *to send*, and the like, it shows the immediate object of the errand:—**

El muchacho va por leña, por pan.	The boy goes for firewood, for bread
Me mandó por el médico.	He sent me for the doctor.
Vino por su salario.	He came for his wages.

**357. Indicates opinion, estimation or acceptance:—**

Le tengo por hombre de talento.	I take him for a man of talent
Le dejaron por muerto.	They left him for dead.
Le fusilaron por espía.	They shot him for a spy.
Fué ahorcado por ladrón.	He was hanged for a thief.
Lo dan por cosa extraordinaria.	They represent it as a strange thing.
Cuando yo estaba en España, pasaba á menudo por natural del país.	When I was in Spain I often passed as a native of the country.
Le ajusté por mozo de cuadra.	I engaged him as stable-boy.
La adoptó por hija.	He adopted her as daughter.
Lo toma por concedido.	He takes it for granted.

**358. Denotes the space of time during which an action takes place or continues:—**

Me alejo de la ciudad por un mes.	I leave the city for a month.
Me ha prestado el libro por ocho días.	He lent me the book for a week.
Hemos pleiteado por mucho tiempo.	We have litigated for a long time.
Eso basta por ahora.	That is sufficient for now.
Le condenaron á las galeras por el resto de su vida.	They condemned him to the galleys for the rest of his life.

**359.** Denotes the place through or along which motion takes place:

Entró por la puerta, pero yo le hice salir por la ventana.	He came in through the door, but I made him go out through the window.
Vagaba por los campos.	He was wandering about the fields.
Mientras andaba yo por la margen del río.	As I was walking along the bank of the river.
¿Por qué calle vino V.?	Through what street did you come?
Pasé por Filadelfia.	I passed through Philadelphia.
He viajado por Méjico.	I have travelled through Mexico.

**360.** Takes the place of *en*, in expressing time or place, but is more indefinite:—

Temíamos encontrar por aquel paraje algún buque de guerra.	We were afraid of meeting some war-vessel in that quarter.
Por diciembre del año pasado despachó á su secretario con instrucciones . . .	About December of last year he dispatched his secretary with instructions . . .
V. lo encontrará por aquí, sin duda.	You will find it around here somewhere, no doubt.

**361.** Indicates exchange of one thing for another:—

Le he dado mi perro por su escopeta.	I have given him my dog for his shotgun.
He cambiado mi pluma por una nueva.	I have exchanged my pen for a new one.
Quiere vender su casa por \$8.000.	He wants to sell his house for \$8,000.
Pide \$8.000 por su casa.	He asks \$8,000 for his house.
He pagado \$9 por este diccionario.	I paid \$9 for this dictionary.
Le daré á V. \$10 por los dos.	I will give you \$10 for the two.

**362.** Offsets one thing against another:—

He traducido la frase palabra por palabra.	I have translated the phrase word for word.
Me ha pagado peso por peso.	He paid me dollar for dollar.
"Ojo por ojo y diente por diente."	"An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth."

### 363. Indicates unit of measure or number:—

Por docenas.	By the dozen.
Á diez por ciento.	At ten per cent.
Por mayor y por menor.	By wholesale and retail.
Este vapor marcha quince nudos por hora.	This steamer runs fifteen knots an hour
Gano \$2,500 por año.	I earn \$2,500 per annum.

### 364. Has the signification of *in behalf of, in favor of, for the sake of*:—

Habló elocuentemente por su amigo.	He spoke eloquently in his friend's behalf.
Lo haré por V. con gusto.	I will do it for you with pleasure.
Votaron por Bryan.	They voted for Bryan.
Yo estoy por el arance { proteccionista; mi tío está por el libre cambio.	I am for protective tariff, my uncle is for free trade.
Trabajo por el señor A.	I work for Mr. A.
Yo haré la guardia por V. esta noche.	I will mount guard for you to-night
Escribo esta carta por mi hermano.	I am writing this letter for my brother ( <i>as a favor to him</i> ).
¡Una limosna, por Dios! <sup>1</sup> señor.	An alms for God's sake, Sir!

### 365. Appeals to something in the manner of an oath, to strengthen an assertion:—

¡Por el cielo que está encima de nosotros!	By the heaven above us!
Por mi conciencia no lo comprendo.	On my conscience I don't understand it.
¡Por Dios! señor, es verdad lo que le digo.	By God! Sir, it is true what I am telling you.

---

<sup>1</sup>This supplication is so much used by beggars that they have been nicknamed *pordioseros*. The term used when speaking courteously of them is *pobres, poor persons*. *Mendigo, beggar*, is used only in poetical or rhetorical style. *Pordiosar* is to go begging.

**366.** Followed by an infinitive, *por* indicates what remains to be done,—without implying, however, that it will be done:—

Quedan seis páginas por copiar.	There remain six pages to copy.
El tratado está por ratificar.	The treaty is yet to be ratified.
Está por ver.	That is to be seen.
La contestación está por recibir.	The reply is yet to be received.
Cartas por escribir.	Letters to be written.
La mitad de la novela quedaba por leer, cuando . . .	Half of the novel remained to be read, when . . .
Sin dejar nada por decir.	Without leaving anything unsaid.
Un cuarto por alquilar.	A room for rent.

#### PARA

**367.** Expresses the use, purpose or destination for which anything is adapted or intended:—

Esta carta es para el correo de la tarde.	This letter is for the evening mail.
Estos paquetes son para Méjico.	These packages are for Mexico.
Mañana parto para Boston.	I start for Boston to-morrow.
Aquel buque navega para Nueva Zelandia.	That vessel is bound for New Zealand.
Estudiar para médico, para abogado.	To study to be a doctor, a lawyer.
He comprado un estante para mis libros.	I have bought a book-case for my books.
Ésta es buena tela para sábanas.	This is good cloth for sheets.
Un excelente coche para caminos rurales.	An excellent carriage for country roads.
Aquellos hombres son demasiado chicos para granaderos, pero servirán para la artillería.	Those men are too small for grenadiers, but they will do for the artillery.
¿Para dónde parte V.?	For what destination do you set out?
Este regalo es para mi hermana.	This present is for my sister.
He comprado un traje para el baile del viernes próximo.	I have bought a suit for next Friday evening's ball.
Le di treinta pesos para ropa y diez para alfileres.	I gave her \$30 for clothes and \$10 for pin-money.

**368.** In this manner *para*, by indicating the special use of something, helps to form a multitude of compound expressions which in English are made by placing two words together without any intervening particle:—



Jaulas para pájaros.  
 Un estante para libros.  
 Aceite para el pelo.  
 Pinzas para agujas.  
 Alambre de púas para cercas.

Bird-cages.  
 A book-case.  
 Hair-oil.  
 Needle-forceps.  
 Barbed fence-wire.

**369.** With the same value of purpose or destination, *para* followed by an infinitive may be rendered by *to* or *in order to*:—

Yo estudio para instruir á otros.  
 Será preciso tener paciencia para  
 alcanzar nuestro objeto.  
 Quiero algo para leer.  
 Necesito mi pluma ahora para escri-  
 bir una carta.  
 Busco mi sombrero para ir al mer-  
 cado.

I study in order to teach others.  
 It will be necessary to have patience  
 in order to obtain our object.  
 I want something to read.  
 I need my pen now to write a letter.  
 I am looking for my hat so as to go  
 to market.

**370.** Followed by an infinitive governed by the verb *estar*, *para* indicates the proximity of an action or occurrence:—

El viento está para cambiar.  
 Está para llover.  
 Estamos para ir al teatro.  
 Estuve para ir á su casa, cuando  
 entró.

The wind is about to change.  
 It is going to rain.  
 We are just going to the theatre.  
 I was on the point of going to his  
 house, when in he came.

**371.** Designates a point or a farthest limit of future time:—

Dejaremos lo difícil para mañana.  
 Tengo una cita para el jueves por  
 la tarde.  
 La sesión fué aplazada para la se-  
 mana próxima.  
 Para el sábado estarán hechos.

We will leave the difficult part for  
 to-morrow.  
 I have an engagement for Thursday  
 evening.  
 The session was postponed until the  
 next week.  
 They will be done by Saturday.

**372.** Expresses a comparison of inequality—one member of the comparison being different from what the other would lead us to expect:—

Para la latitud elevada de Óregon,  
 es muy suave el clima.  
 Este tiempo es extremadamente  
 caluroso para octubre.

Considering the high latitude of  
 Oregon, the climate is very mild.  
 This weather is extremely hot for  
 October.

Para un joven escribe muy bien.	For a young man he writes very well.
Para ser principiante no lo ha hecho V. mal.	You did not do it badly for a beginner.
Habla muy corrientemente para ser extranjero.	He speaks very fluently for a foreigner.
Esto no es nada para lo que viene.	This is nothing to what is coming.

**373.** Implies that something not generally or not universally true, is true of, or applicable to, the particular person or thing named:—

El estudio de la naturaleza es para el hombre fuente de muchos placeres.	The study of nature is a source of many pleasures to man.
Las mujeres, llevadas del nuevo, y para ellas nunca visto traje, rodearon á la mora.	The women, attracted by the new and to <i>them</i> strange (never seen) costume, surrounded the Moorish girl.

**374.** Both *para* and *por* may be followed by an infinitive and used to denote the end for which an action is intended, but with the following distinction:—

*a. Para* is used when the result of the action is certain, or we express our conviction of success. It means *in order to, with the intention of*.

*b. Por* expresses an effort in the direction indicated, and means *for the sake of*. It leaves the result undecided, or conveys the idea that we cannot or will not express a conviction of success:—

Voy á Nueva York para ver el puente de Brooklyn.	I am going to New York to see the Brooklyn Bridge.
Ando por ver si puedo dormir.	I walk to see if I can sleep.
Iré á España para aprender el idioma.	I will go to Spain to learn the language.
Iré á Washington por hablar al presidente.	I will go to Washington and try to talk with the president.
Ofrecen dinero por entrar.	They offer money to get in.
Dan dinero para entrar.	They give money to get in (they pay an entrance-fee).
Estudio por aprender.	I study [hard] to learn.
Es preciso estudiar para aprender.	It is necessary to study in order to learn.
Trabajo por ganar la vida.	I endeavor to earn my living.
Necesito trabajar para ganar la vida.	I need to work to earn my living.

375. After *estar*, if a person is subject, *por* indicates inclination, and *para* immediate futurity; *por* moreover leaves the carrying-out of the inclination uncertain, *para* implies that it is going to occur:—

Estoy *por* salir.

I am inclined to go out.

Estoy *para* salir.

I am on the point of going out.

Estoy *por* creer que es guaso.

I am inclined to think it is a hoax.

Estaba *para* entrar cuando le llamé. He was about to go in when I called him.

376. But if a thing be the subject, *por* denotes that the action is yet to be performed, and *para* that it is to be immediately performed:—

La discusión está *por* concluir.

The discussion is as yet unfinished.

La discusión está *para* concluir.

The discussion is about to come to a close.

Está *para* llover.

It is going to rain.

*para* = to be And as to

#### IDIOMS WITH PARA AND POR.

¿*para* qué?

why (with what object)?

¿*por* qué?

why (through what cause)?

*para* entre los dos.

between us two.

*para* siempre.

forever.

leer *para* sí.

to read to one's self.

dije *para* mí.

I said to myself.

sin qué ni *para* qué.

without rhyme or reason.

de aquí *para* allá.

to and fro, up and down.

me espera *para* la comida.

he expects me to dinner.

*por* ahora; *por* entonces.

for the present; for the time being (past).

*por* casualidad.

by chance.

*por* ce ó *por* be.

by hook or crook.

*por* cierto.

certainly, to be sure.

*por* completo.

entirely, completely.

*por* consiguiente.

consequently.

*por* demás.

superfluous.

*por* dentro; *por* fuera.

on the inside; on the outside.

*por* desgracia.

unfortunately.

*por* entre.

through, among.

*por* eso.

that is why.

*por* fin.

at last.

por medio de.	by means of.
por supuesto.	of course.
por término medio.	on an average.
por último.	finally.
por lo tocante á.	with regard to, as for.
por lo menos.	at least.
por lo pronto.	for the time being.
por lo visto.	apparently.
al por mayor; al por menor.	at wholesale; at retail.
de por sí.	automatically, of its own accord.
por propio impulso.	of his (my, etc.) own accord.
pasar por delante de.	to pass by (in front of).
pasar por encima.	to pass over (literal and figurative).
pasar por encima de una cosa.	to pass over a thing (literal).
pasar por encima una cosa.	to pass over (figurative).
saltar por encima de.	to jump over.
por cuenta de Don Fulano.	at So-and-So's expense.
por culpa mía.	through my fault.
por interés mío.	to my interest.
¿por dónde?	which way?
por aquí; por allí.	this way; that way.
ni por sueños, or ni por pienso.	not for the world.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

a) 1. Para la carretería y en especial para la *construcción* de coches *finos*, no tiene *rival* el fresno. 2. Es *excelente* para la fabricación de instrumentos de agricultura, mangos de herramientas, grandes cercos, etcétera. 3. Del cerezo silvestre se hacen buenos muebles, aunque es quebradizo; los ebanistas lo emplean para *imitar* la caoba. 4. El Amazonas, rey de los ríos, descubierto por *Pineón*, *guardó* muchos años el secreto de su nacimiento y de sus *numerosos tributarios*. 5. Uno de sus exploradores fué el español *Orellana*, que descendió por él hasta el *Atlántico* desde las cordilleras del *Perú*. 6. El *barómetro* es un *instrumento* de que se hace uso para apreciar la pesantez del aire. 7. Creo que hay por aquí un *ratón*, porque el gato está muy inquieto. 8. Es *necesario* viajar para conocer el mundo. 9. La escuadra ha recibido orden de zarpar inmediatamente para *Puerto Rico*. 10. Aquí el valle se trasforma en cañada, por donde corre bulliciosa una rauda corriente de espumosas aguas. 11. Don Fulano habla muy bien el castellano para ser extranjero. 12. He mandado á Juan por mantequilla, porque no teníamos bastante para la comida. 13. Es *evidente* que no llegaremos á la *estación* á (in) tiempo para cojer el expreso. 14. Los abusos de los gobernantes dieron por



resultado una protesta armada contra los españoles. 15. Para evitar las pendientes muy pronunciadas, las líneas de ferrocarril pasan las ligeras *elevaciones* por hondas zanjas, las montañas por *túneles*, y las cañadas por largas hileras de arcos muy altos que se llaman *viaductos*, ó por puentes de caballete.

b) 1. It is *evident* that you have an *extraordinary facility* for learning languages. 2. The sofa cushion is for my wife, and the ivory rattle is for the baby. 3. I have almost finished my novel; only two chapters remain to be written. 4. I am inclined to think that he will *vote* for my opponent. 5. He receives small wages considering the number of hours that he works. 6. I leave to-morrow for *California*, and shall be absent for a month. 7. Rainbows are *formed* by the *refraction* of the sun's rays in the raindrops. 8. Which way are you (*pl.*) going? 9. We are going through the meadow. 10. For my part, I prefer to go by the road. 11. You have fried too much ham for two people; there is enough here for three. 12. I ordered an empty wine-cask, and you sent me a kerosene-barrel. 13. It will not be through my fault if he does not *rectify* the *error*. 14. If you go to Spain, shall you go through *France*? 15. No, I shall go by steamer direct to *Gibraltar*. 16. I already have all my preparations made for my departure. 17. I am going to my room to write letters, and I do not wish to be interrupted by visitors. 18. My mahogany glove box is inlaid with silver on the outside, and lined with satin on the inside. 19. The fox jumped over the wall and disappeared among the bushes. 20. The rent of this house is too expensive for me; besides, I do not wish to lease a house by the year. 21. My partner is for annulling the contract, but I am for granting the man a month to complete the work. 22. Have you obtained permission to hunt in these woods? 23. I do not need to obtain permission, my good man; I am the owner of these woods.

NOTES. 7. the sun's rays, *los rayos solares*.

22. woods: singular in Spanish.

## LESSON XXIX.


### NUMERALS AND NUMERICAL VALUES.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.	ORDINAL NUMERALS.	
Uno, -a	1. Primero,	1st.
Dos,	2. Segundo,	2d.
Tres,	3. Tercero,	3d.
Cuatro,	4. Cuarto,	4th.

Cinco,	5. Quinto,	5th.
Seis,	6. Sexto, <i>or</i> sexto,	6th.
Siete,	7. Séptimo, <i>or</i> sétimo,	7th.
Ocho,	8. Octavo,	8th.
Nueve,	9. Noveno, <i>or</i> nono,	9th.
Diez,	10. Décimo,	10th.
Once,	11. Undécimo,	11th.
Doce,	12. Duodécimo,	12th.
Trece,	13. Décimo tercio,	13th.
Catorce,	14. Décimo cuarto,	14th.
Quince,	15. Décimo quinto,	15th.
Diez y seis,	16. Décimo sexto,	16th.
Diez y siete,	17. Décimo séptimo,	17th.
Diez y ocho,	18. Décimo octavo,	18th.
Diez y nueve,	19. Décimo nono,	19th.
Veinte,	20. Vigésimo,	20th.
Veinte y uno,	21. Vigésimo primo,	21st.
Veinte y dos,	22. Vigésimo segundo,	22d.
Veinte y tres, <i>etc.</i> ,	23. Vigésimo tercero,	23d.
Treinta,	30. Trigésimo,	30th.
Treinta y uno, <i>etc.</i>	31. Trigésimo primo,	31st.
Cuarenta,	40. Cuadragésimo,	40th.
Cincuenta,	50. Quincuagésimo,	50th.
Sesenta,	60. Sexagésimo,	60th.
Setenta,	70. Septuagésimo,	70th.
Ochenta,	80. Octogésimo,	80th.
Noventa,	90. Nonagésimo,	90th.
Ciento,	100. Centésimo,	100th.
Ciento y uno,	101. Centésimo primo,	101st.
Ciento y dos, <i>etc.</i>	102. Centésimo segundo,	102d.
Doscientos, -as,	200. Ducentésimo,	200th.
Trescientos, -as,	300. Trecentésimo,	300th.
Cuatrocientos, -as,	400. Cuadragentésimo,	400th.
Quinientos, -as,	500. Quingentésimo,	500th.
Seiscientos, -as,	600. Sexcentésimo,	600th.
Setecientos, -as,	700. Septengentésimo,	700th.
Ochocientos, -as,	800. Octogentésimo,	800th.
Novecientos, -as,	900. Nonagentésimo,	900th.
Mil,	1,000. Milésimo,	1,000th.
Dos mil,	2,000. Dos milésimo,	2,000th.
Doscientos, -as mil,	200,000. Doscientos milésimo,	200,000th.
Quinientos, -as mil,	500,000. Quinientos milésimo,	500,000th.

Un millón,	1,000,000.	Millonésimo,	1,000,000th.
Diez millones,	10,000,000.	Diez millonésimo,	10,000,000th.

## CARDINAL NUMERALS.

 The compounds *diez y seis*, *diez y siete*, *veinte y uno*, *veinte y dos*, *treinta y uno*, etc., are sometimes written as one word: *dieciséis*, *diecisiete*, *veintiuno*, *veintidós*, *treintayuno*, etc.

**377.** The cardinal numbers are all invariable except *uno* and the compounds of *ciento*:—

Cuarenta caballos y cuatro mulas.	Forty horses and four mules.
Mil soldados.	A thousand soldiers.
Veinte y cinco casas.	Twenty-five houses.

**378.** *Uno* (which is the same word as the indefinite article) agrees in gender with the noun to which it refers, but drops the *o* when immediately preceding a masculine noun:—

Un caballero; una señora.	A gentleman; a lady.
Treinta y una (treintayuno) vacas.	Thirty-one cows.
Ciento y un días.	A hundred and one days.
Las Mil y una noches.	The "Thousand-and-one Nights."

**REMARK.**—Still when such compounds follow the noun, as when used for ordinal numbers, *uno* is not curtailed:—

Capítulo veinte y uno, página ciento y una.	Chapter twenty-one, page one hundred and one.
---	---

**379.** *Ciento* drops the final syllable when it comes immediately before a noun, or before *mil*, *thousand*. An adjective clause may then intervene, but the full form *ciento* is required when followed by smaller numerals. Its multiples agree in number and gender with the nouns to which they belong:—

Cien bocoyes de melote.	One hundred hogsheads of molasses.
Cien valerosos hombres.	A hundred brave men.
Cien mil almas.	A hundred thousand souls.
Ciento cincuenta cigarros.	One hundred and fifty cigars.
Quinientos libros; quinientas botellas de vino.	Five hundred books; five hundred bottles of wine.
Doscientas mil libras de tabaco.	Two hundred thousand pounds of tobacco.

Tomaré ciento de esas acciones.	I will take a hundred of those shares.
A una distancia de ciento ó doscientos pasos.	At a distance of one or two hundred paces.

380. In the formation of compound numbers, the same order is observed in Spanish as in English, except that the conjunction comes between the last two members of the series, provided the last one be less than ten; otherwise there is no conjunction:—

Diez mil cuatrocientos setenta y cinco.	Ten thousand four hundred <i>and</i> seventy-five.
Ciento diez.	A hundred <i>and</i> ten.
Quinientos veinte.	Five hundred <i>and</i> twenty.

381. Counting by hundreds is not carried above nine hundred in Spanish; beyond that it is by thousands, with any odd number of hundreds added:—

Dos mil quinientos.	Twenty-five hundred.
Mil ochocientos noventa y dos.	Eighteen hundred and ninety-two.

382. *Millón* is considered as a noun and therefore takes the indefinite article and is followed by the preposition *de*:—

Un millón de millas.	A million miles.
El costo de construcción de las doscientas millas de ferrocarril ha sido de nueve millones de pesos.	The cost of the two hundred miles of railroad has been nine million dollars.

383. *Uno* is not used before *ciento* and *mil* unless its absence would cause ambiguity:—

Mil ciento noventa y nueve, 1,199;

*but*

Doscientos un mil ciento noventa y nueve, 201,199,

*because*

Doscientos mil ciento noventa y nueve *would be* 200,199.

384. *Uno*, *una*, when expressing *unity*, has no plural; it may have a plural under the following circumstances:—

1. When it is employed as the indefinite article to denote an undetermined number:—

Unos bollos; unas frambuesas.	Some cakes; some raspberries.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------



2. When used as a noun denoting the numeral "1":—

El once se escribe con dos unos.      Eleven is written with two 1's.

3. When used in the predicate to denote identity or similarity, it agrees in number (and gender) with its noun:—

El mundo siempre es uno.      The world is ever one.

Los corazones de mis partidarios      The hearts of my followers are one.  
son unos.

385. The remaining numerals are necessarily plurals; however, when employed as nouns they are considered as singular, and as such may be made plural in the same manner as nouns:—

El 255 se escribe con un dos y dos      255 is written with one 2 and two  
cincos.      5's.

El siete de infantería ligera.      The 7th Light Infantry.

Tiré un par de setes.      I drew a pair of sevens.

REMARK.—However, in mentioning the denominations of coins, bills, postage-stamps, etc., the compound preposition *de á* is used before the singular form of the numeral:—

Me dió en cambio dos de á cinco,      He gave me in change two fives,  
tres de á dos, y cuatro de á uno.      three twos, and four ones.

Como no tenía sello de á cinco,      As I had no five-cent stamps, I pre-  
franquéé la carta con cinco de á      paid the letter with five ones.  
uno.

386. Ciento and mil, when used as collective nouns, may be made plural:—

Tenemos muchos cientos, muchos      We have many hundreds, many  
miles de documentos.      thousands of documents.

Una brisa fresca que viene de la      A cool breeze which comes from the  
cordillera á algunos cientos de      mountains some hundreds of  
leguas de aquí.      leagues from here.

#### ORDINAL NUMERALS.

387. The ordinal numbers are to all intents adjectives, and, whether single or compound, agree with their nouns in gender and number:—

Los cinco primeros capítulos.

The first five chapters.

La página vigésima séptima.

The twenty-seventh page.

**387.** The compound forms of the ordinals are written by some grammarians as one word; as: *cuadragésimoséptimo* (*fem. cuadragésimaséptima*). But it is preferable to write them separately, both for æsthetic reasons, and because both words vary separately.

**388.** *Primero* and *tercero* drop the final *o* when they immediately precede a noun masculine singular, or are separated from it only by an adjective:—

El primer día; el tercer tomo.

The first day; the third volume.

El primer buen ejemplo.

The first good example.

*but*

El primero de mis hijos.

The first of my children.

**389.** On account of their greater length, the ordinals are not so frequently used in Spanish as in English; indeed, with the exception of *primero*, they are generally replaced by the cardinal numbers, except in grave, religious, or antique style:—

Libro dieciséis, página ciento veinte. Book sixteen, page a hundred and twenty.

El siglo diez y nueve.

The nineteenth century.

El décimo aniversario.

The tenth anniversary.

El salmo centésimo séptimo.

The hundred and seventh psalm.

Al estilo del siglo décimo sexto.

In sixteenth-century style.

**REMARK.**—When the cardinal numbers are used as ordinals, they regularly follow the noun if it be expressed. The simple ordinals usually precede the noun, the compound ones regularly follow it.

**390.** In naming a succession of sovereigns, the ordinal numbers are regularly employed up to *décimo*; above that the cardinals are substituted. The name and number of the potentate are not connected by the definite article as in English:—

Pedro segundo; Carlos quinto.

Pedro the Second; Charles the Fifth.

Pío nono; León trece.

Pius the Ninth; Leo the Thirteenth.

Alfonso doce; Luis catorce.

Alphonso the Twelfth; Louis the Fourteenth.

## COLLECTIVE NUMERALS.

391. Collective numerals are nouns representing a number as a unity:—

Par, pair, couple.	Cuarentena, two score; quarantine.
Decena, ten, half a score.	Centena or centenar, hundred.
Docena, dozen.	Gruesa, gross.
Quinceña, fifteen.	Millar, thousand.
Vaintena, twenty, score.	Millón, million.
Treintena, thirty.	Cuenta, ( <i>cont.</i> ), million.

REMARK.—Ciento and mil may be used as collectives.

392. Centenar is preferred to ciento as a collective noun except when employed to express rate:—

Centenares de aves marinas.	Hundreds of sea fowl.
A cuatro pesetas el ciento.	At four pesetas per hundred.

393. Millar is generally interchangeable with mil as a collective noun; but in expressing rate millar alone is admissible:—

Millares ( <i>or</i> miles) de animalculas.	Thousands of animalcula.
A diez pesos el millar.	At \$10 per thousand.

REMARK.—In mercantile language the article is usually omitted:—

35,000 ladrillos, á \$12 millar.	85,000 bricks, at \$12 per 1,000.
Estos tabacos se venden á \$6 ciento.	These cigars sell at \$6 a hundred.
Buñuelos á real uno.	Fritters 5 cents apiece.
¡Á perro chico! ¡á perro chico!¹	Only one cent apiece!

## PARTITIVE OR FRACTIONAL NUMERALS.

394. Fractional numerals from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{1}{10}$  inclusive correspond more or less to the ordinal numerals:—

Un medio, $\frac{1}{2}$	Un cuarto, $\frac{1}{4}$	Un octavo, <i>or</i> $\frac{1}{8}$
Uno y medio, $\frac{3}{2}$	Un quinto, $\frac{1}{5}$	Un ochavo, $\frac{1}{8}$
Una y media, $\frac{3}{2}$	Un sexto, $\frac{1}{6}$	Un noveno, $\frac{1}{9}$
Un tercio, $\frac{1}{3}$	Un séptimo, $\frac{1}{7}$	Un décimo, $\frac{1}{10}$

¹ In Spain the copper coin of 5 céntimos is called familiarly *perro chico* (*or* *perro chico*) (*little dog*), and the 10-céntimo piece, *perro* (*or* *perro*) *grande* (*big dog*), on account of the lion on the reverse.

395. From  $\frac{1}{11}$  onwards they are regularly formed from the cardinals by adding the termination *-avo*. If the denominator be a numeral of simple form, this termination is usually appended to it so as to form one word. If the denominator be a compound numeral, the various component parts should be connected by hyphens:—

Un onzavo (once-avo),	✠	Un veintavo (veinte-avo),	✠
Un dozavo (doce-avo),	✠	Un veintiunavo (veinte-y-un	
Un trezavo (trece-avo),	✠	avo), <i>etc.</i>	✠
Un catorzavo (catorce-avo),	✠	Un treintavo,	✠
Un quinzavo (quince-avo),	✠	Un cuarentavo,	✠
Un dieciséisavo (diez - y - seis-		Un cincuentavo,	✠
avo),	✠	Un sesentavo,	✠
Un diecisiete-avo (diez-y-siete-		Un setentavo,	✠
avo),	✠	<i>etc., etc.</i>	
<i>etc., etc.</i>		Un centavo (centésimo),	✠
Un quingentésimo,	✠	Un milésimo,	✠

REMARK.—The denominators of course assume the plural form when the numerator is greater than unity:—

Dos tercios,	✠	Cincuenta y cinco doscientos-	
Tres cuartos,	✠	cuarenta-y-cuatro-avos,	✠
Cuatro quintos,	✠	Novecientos ochenta y tres mil-	
Cinco octavos,	✠	cuatrocientos - cincuenta - y -	
Once dieciséisavos,	✠	cinco-avos,	✠

396. Fractions above  $\frac{1}{2}$  are more commonly expressed by the appropriate ordinal numeral preceding and agreeing with the feminine noun *parte*, *part*, especially when the thing divided follows or is understood. The same is applicable to fractions between  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{10}$  inclusive, when the thing divided follows or is understood:—

La duodécima parte, }	✠	Las dos terceras partes,	✠
Una duodécima parte, }		Las tres cuartas partes,	✠
Las treinta y tres centésimas		La diez milésima parte,	✠
partes,	✠		

397. The noun *un medio*, *a half*, applies to calculations only, except when it means *midst* or *middle*; in other cases the noun *la mitad* is used. *Medio*, *-a*, is the adjective meaning *half*:—



La mitad de su caudal.  
 Le daré la mitad.  
 En medio de la estancia.  
 Medio luto.  
 Media docena.  
 Media hora; una hora y media.  
 Un mes y medio.  
 Por término medio.

Half of his property.  
 I will give him half.  
 In the middle of the room.  
 Half mourning.  
 Half a dozen.  
 Half an hour; an hour and a half.  
 A month and a half.  
 On an average.

**398.** *Medio* may be employed indeclinably as an adverb:

El cura bajó medio dormido medio despierto.	The priest came down-stairs half asleep, half awake.
Quedamos medio muertos de espanto.	We were half dead with fright.
Los malteses hablan una lengua me- dio árabe medio italiana.	The Maltese speak a language half Arabic, half Italian.

REMARK.—The noun *mitad* is similarly used:—

* La sirena es una ninfa marina fabu- losa, mitad mujer, mitad pez.	The mermaid is a fabulous sea- nymph, half woman, half fish.
--	---

#### MULTIPLE NUMERALS.

**399.** Multiple numerals answer the question *how many fold?*

They comprise adjectives and nouns as follows:—

Simple, <i>single</i> .	Quintuple or quintuplicado, <i>fivefold</i> .
Doble or duplicado, <i>double</i> .	Séxtuple, <i>sixfold</i> .
Triple or triplicado, <i>triple</i> .	Décuple or decuplicado, <i>tenfold</i> .
Cuádruple or cuadruplicado, <i>quadru- ple</i> .	Céntuple or centuplicado, <i>a hundred- fold</i> .

These are used in the same manner as their English equivalents:—

Movimiento simple. Partida doble.	Single motion. Double entry.
Una máquina de simple efecto, de doble acción.	A single-acting, a double-acting en- gine.
Triple expansión, or expansión triplicada.	Triple expansion.
Doble fuerza, or fuerza duplicada.	Double power.
Ritmo cuádruple, or cuadruplicado.	Quadruple rhythm.

**400.** The multiple forms not ending in *ado* may be employed as masculine nouns:—

Yo apuesto el doble.	I bet twice as much.
Le devolveré el décuple.	I will return him tenfold.

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

**401.** Numeral adverbs expressing the number of times of an occurrence are formed by a cardinal numeral and the feminine noun *vez*, *a time*:—

*Una vez*, once.

*Dos veces*, twice.

*Tres veces*, three times.

*Diez veces*, ten times.

*Cien veces*, a hundred times.

*Mil veces*, a thousand times.

Le he escrito dos veces, si no tres.

I have written him twice, if not three times.

**402.** Numeral adverbs expressing order of procedure are made by the addition of *-mente* to the feminine form of the ordinal numerals:—

*Primeramente*, firstly.

*Segundamente*, secondly.

*Terceramente*, thirdly.

*Décimamente*, tenthly.

*Décima sexta y últimamente*, sixteenthly and lastly.

## INDEFINITE NUMERAL EXPRESSIONS.

**403.** The most usual way of expressing a number approximately is by placing before it the plural of *uno*, which is then generally to be rendered *some*:—

Guayacán, notable por sus extensas obras de fundición de cobre, tiene unos 2.000 habitantes.

Unas diez de las baterías del enemigo se han colocado á lo largo de aquel cerro.

La cantidad de lluvia que cae anualmente en la isla de la Trinidad es de unas 65 pulgadas.

Guayacan, noted for its extensive copper-smelting works, has some 2,000 inhabitants.

Some ten of the enemy's batteries have planted themselves along yonder ridge.

The mean annual rainfall in the island of Trinidad is about 65 inches.

**404.** The following expressions also are frequently used:—

El faro está situado como á seis millas del promontorio.

De aquí el pico parece tener una altura de 8.000 metros, poco más ó menos.

The light-house is situated at about six miles from the point.

From here the peak appears to have an altitude of 10,000 feet, more or less.

Este lago tiene una superficie como  
de unas doscientas millas cuadra-  
das.

This lake has an area of some two  
hundred square miles.

Á cosa de seis leguas de la costa.

At about 15 miles from the coast.

600 pies ó cosa así.

600 feet or thereabouts.

La cosecha total monta á cerca de  
2,900 fanegas.

The total crop amounts to about  
2,900 bushels.

**405.** The collective numerals in *-ena* have frequently an indefinite value:—

Una decena de libras.

About ten pounds.

Una centena de varas de terciopelo  
negro.

Some hundred yards of black velvet.

#### EXERCISE XXIX.

a) 1. El sistema *métrico* recibe su nombre del "*metro*," unidad de longitud que es la diez-millonésima parte de la *distancia* del polo terrestre al *ecuador*, y sirve de base al sistema de medidas, pesos, y monedas. 2. La unidad de superficie para los terrenos es el "*área*," ó cuadrado cuyo lado mide diez *metros*. 3. Por consiguiente el *área* se compone de cien *metros* cuadrados. 4. El "*litro*" es la unidad de *capacidad* para los *líquidos*, los granos, la sal, etc., y equivale á un cubo cuyo lado es la décima parte del *metro*. 5. Por consiguiente, un *metro cúbico* contiene mil *litros*. 6. El "*esterio*," unidad de volumen para las maderas, equivale á un *metro cúbico*, ó sea mil *litros*. 7. El "*gramo*," unidad de peso, es el peso de una cantidad de agua destilada, en su *máximo* de *densidad* (es decir, en la *temperatura* de cuatro grados, cuarenta y cuatro centésimos), que equivale al volumen de un pequeño cubo, cuyo lado es la centésima parte de un *metro*. 8. Como el *litro* contiene un millar de estos pequeños cubos, el peso de un *litro* de agua es de mil gramos. 9. La unidad *monetaria* basada en este sistema es el "*franco*," moneda compuesta de nueve partes de plata *pura* y una de cobre. 10. El franco pesa cinco gramos, y se divide en cien céntimos. 11. La moneda de cobre del valor de cinco céntimos pesa cinco gramos, y la (*that*) de diez céntimos, diez gramos. 12. Por consiguiente las monedas se emplean con frecuencia como pesos. 13. En España la *peseta* (de cien céntimos) es *equivalente* al franco francés. 14. La *peseta* vale cerca de veinte centavos *americanos*.

b) 1. Bodies fall with accelerated *velocity*: a body traverses about 5\* *meters* in the first second of its fall, 15\* *meters* in the second, 25 in the third, 35 in the fourth, and so on successively. 2. *La Guaira* was founded

\* The student should, for practice, write out all the Spanish numerals in full.

by the Spaniards in the year 1588; the English besieged it twice unsuccessfully—in 1789 and 1742. 3. There are some 100,000 foreigners employed on the 11,000 miles of railway in (*de*) the *Argentine Republic*, *Uruguay*, and *Chile*. 4. The equator is divided into 360 degrees; the degree is subdivided into 60 minutes, and the minute into 60 seconds. 5. Our neighbor John *Péres* has 21 cows, 141 sheep, and some hundreds of chickens. 6. 49 is the square of 7; the cube root of 343 is 7. 7. The roll of bank-notes contained 5 twenties, 7 tens, 23 fives, and 17 ones. 8. Mutton chops cost now about 25 cents a pound, and beefsteak costs 28 cents; fresh eggs are worth 18 cents a dozen. 9. The binding of the seventh volume of the *encyclopedia* is in bad condition. 10. Philip V, the grandson of Louis XIV. of *France*, was elected king of Spain in 1700. 11. William III., emperor of Germany, decreed that the year 1900 was the first year of the 20th century. 12. The time that the earth takes (*ocupa*) in traversing its orbit around the sun is called a *tropical* or *solar* year, and consists of 365 days, 5 minutes, and 49.7 seconds. 13. A second is the 60th part of a minute,  $\frac{1}{60}$  of an hour, and  $\frac{1}{86400}$  of a day. 14. There are, consequently, 81,536,349.7 seconds in a *tropical* year. 15. We were half dead with fatigue when we reached our destination.

### LESSON XXX.

#### MEASURES OF TIME AND DIMENSION.

##### TIME AND ITS DESIGNATIONS.

#### 408.

##### DIVISIONS OF TIME.

El siglo, the century.  
 El año, the year.  
 El año bisiesto, the leap-year.  
 El mes, the month.  
 La quincena, } the fortnight.  
 Quince días, }  
 La semana, } the week.  
 Ocho días, }  
 El día, the day.  
 La noche, the night.  
 Mediodía, midday, noon.  
 Medianoche, midnight.  
 El amanecer, the dawn, daybreak.  
 El anochecer, dusk, nightfall.

La hora, the hour.  
 Media hora, half an hour.  
 Un cuarto de hora, a quarter of an hour.  
 Tres cuartos de hora, three quarters of an hour.  
 Una hora y media, an hour and a half.  
 Una hora y un cuarto, an hour and a quarter.  
 Una hora y tres cuartos, an hour and three quarters.  
 El minuto, the minute.  
 El segundo, the second.



## THE SEASONS OF THE YEAR.

La primavera, the spring.	El otoño, the autumn, fall.
El verano, el estío, the summer.	El invierno, the winter.

## THE MONTHS.

Enero, January.	Mayo, May.	Septiembre, September.
Febrero, February.	Junio, June.	Octubre, October.
Marzo, March.	Julio, July.	Noviembre, November.
Abril, April.	Agosto, August.	Diciembre, December.

## THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

El domingo, Sunday.	El jueves, Thursday.
El lunes, Monday.	El viernes, Friday.
El martes, Tuesday.	El sábado, Saturday.
El miércoles, Wednesday.	

## ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

Ayer, yesterday.	Anoche, last night.
Antes de ayer, } { the day before	Antes de anoche, } { the night before
Anteayer, } { yesterday.	Antenoche, } { last.
Mañana, to-morrow.	De día, by day, in the daytime.
Pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow.	De noche, by night, in the night.
Mañana y pasado, to-morrow and next day.	A la madrugada, before sunrise, at an early hour.
Anteanteayer, three days ago.	A la noche, at night.
Ayer por la mañana, yesterday morning.	Anteantenoche, three nights ago.
Ayer por la tarde, yesterday evening.	Por la mañana, in the morning.
Mañana por la mañana, to-morrow morning.	Por la tarde, in the evening.
Mañana por la tarde, to-morrow evening.	Por la mañana temprano, early in the morning.
Mañana por la noche, to-morrow night.	Por la tarde temprano, early in the evening.
Al amanecer, at dawn.	Á una hora avanzada de la noche, late at night.
En el día, at the present day.	Á la caída de la tarde, at night-fall.
	Al anochecer, at dusk.
	Al otro día, on the following day.

407. The days of the month, with the exception of the first, are counted in Spanish by the cardinal numerals, preceded by

the definite article. In dating letters, however, the article is omitted. The month and year, when expressed, are connected with the date by the preposition *de*:—

El primero de mayo.	The first of May.
El cuatro de julio.	The fourth of July.
El siete de agosto de mil ochocientos noventa y nueve.	August seventh, eighteen hundred and ninety-nine.
Lima, 26 de Abril de 1900.	Lima, April 26th, 1900.

408. When the month is not expressed, it is usual to place the word *día*, *day*, before the numeral; this is occasionally done when the month is given:—

Le espero el día treinta.	I expect him the thirtieth.
Partiremos el día quince.	We shall start on the fifteenth.
El día catorce de marzo. }	The fourteenth of March.
El catorce de marzo. }	

409. There are several formulæ for inquiring the day of the month, among which there is no preference; the only restriction is that the answer should conform to the terms of the question:—

¿A cómo estamos? }	What day of the month is it?
¿A cuántos estamos? }	
¿Qué día del mes tenemos? }	
Estamos á diez y seis. }	It is the sixteenth.
Tenemos el diez y seis. }	
¿A cómo estamos hoy? }	What day of the month is to-day?
¿A veinticinco. }	
¿A cómo estaremos mañana? }	What day of the month will it be to-morrow?
¿A cuántos estaremos mañana? }	
¿Qué día del mes tendremos mañana? }	
¿A veintiséis. }	The twenty-sixth.
El veintiséis. }	

410. In addition to the division of time into *day* (*día* = sunrise to sunset) and *night* (*noche* = sunset to sunrise), the Spaniards further subdivide these into four portions, which are:—

*La madrugada*, the morning (*midnight to sunrise*).

*La mañana*, the morning, forenoon (*sunrise to noon*).

*La tarde*, the evening, afternoon (*noon to sunset*).

*La noche*, the evening (*sunset to midnight*).<sup>1</sup>

411. In salutations, these divisions of the day are put in the plural:—

¡ *Buenos días* ! good morning ! good day !

¡ *Buenas tardes* ! good afternoon ! good evening !

¡ *Buenas noches* ! good evening ! good night !

REMARK.—*Buenas mañanas* is not used; *buenos días* is the salutation employed in the forenoon. As *buenas noches* is applicable any time after sunset, it is used as a greeting as well as an adieu.

412. The days of the week require to be preceded by the definite article, except when used in the dating of letters and the like. No preposition corresponding to the English *on* is then employed:—

Permaneceré hasta el lunes.

I will stay until Monday.

El domingo es día de descanso.

Sunday is a day of rest.

El sábado es el último día de la

Saturday is the last day of the week.

*semana*.

Tendré el dinero el lunes.

I shall have the money Monday.

Comemos pescado los viernes.

We eat fish on Fridays.

Toma lecciones de francés los lunes,

She takes French lessons Mondays,

miércoles y viernes, y de música

Wednesdays and Fridays, and music

los martes y jueves.

lessons Tuesdays and Thursdays.

413. The day of the month, when unaccompanied by the day of the week, may be expressed by a cardinal numeral without an article, but preceded by *a* which is to be rendered *on*:—

A uno de mayo.

On the first of May.

A dos de junio.

On the second of June.

A quince de octubre.

On the fifteenth of October.

414. The hour or time of day is expressed by the cardinal numbers, preceded by the feminine article (to agree with *hora*,

<sup>1</sup> In popular usage these limits are not strictly adhered to, the point of division being often a little later than that prescribed above.

horas, understood). The verb *to be*, when needed, is then singular or plural as may be required by the number of hours:—

¿Qué hora es?	What time, what o'clock is it?
¿Qué hora tiene V.?	What time have you?
Es la una; son las cuatro.	It is one o'clock; it is four o'clock.
Á la una; á las cinco.	At one o'clock; at five o'clock.
Lo haré antes de las doce.	I shall do it before twelve.
Estaré en mi despacho á las nueve en punto.	I shall be at my office at exactly nine.
Entre la una y las dos.	Between one and two o'clock.
¿Son las ocho ya?	Is it eight o'clock yet?
Sólo son las siete.	It is only seven.
Son cerca de las once.	It is nearly eleven.

415. Portions of time before or after an hour named, are placed after it, connected by *y*, *and*, or *menos*, *less*; the word *minutos*, *minutes*, is often omitted:—

Es la una y media.	It is half past one.
Es la una menos cuarto.	It is a quarter to one.
Son las dos y diez minutos.	It is ten minutes past two.
Me ha prometido venir á las diez menos veinte.	He promised me to come at twenty minutes to ten.
Estará aquí á las cuatro y pico.	He will be here at a little after four.
Le espero á las once y cuarto.	I expect him at quarter past eleven.
Me quedará hasta la una y diez minutos.	I shall stay until ten minutes past one.

416. The particular hour of any of the larger divisions of the day is connected with it by the preposition *de*, where in English *in* or *at* is used:—

Á las tres de la madrugada.	At three o'clock in the morning.
Á las siete de la mañana.	At seven o'clock in the morning.
Á las cinco de la tarde.	At five o'clock in the evening.
Hasta las diez de la noche.	Until ten o'clock at night.
Son las doce del día.	It is twelve noon.
Son cerca de las doce de la noche.	It is nearly twelve at night.

417. *To strike*, in speaking of the hour, is *dar*, used intransitively, the verb then agreeing in number with the hour:—



La una va á dar.	It is going to strike one.
Las dos van á dar. }	It is going to strike two.
Van á dar las dos. }	
¿Han dado las doce ya?	Has it struck twelve yet?
Han dado las cinco. }	It has struck five.
Son las cinco dadas. }	
Este reloj da las medias horas.	This clock strikes the half hours.

418. The division of time in the immediate future is expressed by *próximo*, *next*, or *que viene* (in literary style, *venidero*), *coming*; the present time is represented by *actual* or *presente*, *present*, or *corriente*, *current*; and that past by *pasado*, *último*, *last*, or *próximo pasado*, *lately past*. Thus:—

El siglo pasado; el siglo venidero.	The last century; the next century.
El año pasado; el año que viene.	Last year; next year.
El mes pasado; el mes que viene.	Last month; next month.
De otro modo quedaremos empata-	Otherwise we shall remain in a dead-
dos hasta el otoño venidero.	lock until next autumn.
La comitiva partirá en el mes que	The retinue will start next month.
viene.	
Iré el viernes próximo.	I will go next Friday.
En el mes de julio próximo pasado.	In the month of July just past.
Desde el jueves de la semana pasada.	Since Thursday of last week.
El lunes de la semana que viene.	On Monday of next week.
El día treinta y uno del mes co-	The thirty-first of the current month
rriente recibiré mil pesos.	I shall receive \$1,000.

419. In business style, when the month is qualified by one of the above expressions, the word *mes* is frequently omitted:—

El día veinte del próximo pasado.	The twentieth of the month just past.
El cinco del actual; el doce del	The fifth instant; the twelfth ultimo.
último.	

420. The expressions *quince días*, *ocho días*, are more frequently employed in the singular than the general terms *quin-cena* and *semana*:—

De hoy en quince días.	A fortnight from to-day.
De hoy en ocho días.	A week from to-day.
De mañana en ocho días.	A week from to-morrow.
Llegará dentro de ocho días.	He will arrive within a week.
Pasaré allí dos ó tres semanas.	I shall spend two or three weeks
	there.

421. Expressions for the beginning, middle or end of any period of time are made more indefinite by being put in the plural:—

Á primero del mes que viene.	On the first of next month.
Á primeros del mes que viene.	In the early part of next month.
Á principios del siglo actual.	Along at the beginning of the present century.
Á fin del año.	At the end of the year.
Á fines del año.	In the latter part of the year.
Á mediados del año pasado.	About the middle of last year.
Á últimos del mes.	Toward the end of the month.

#### NOUNS EXPRESSING TIME IN ITS VARIOUS ASPECTS.

There are in Spanish a number of nouns which correspond to some value of the English *time*, but which are distinct in their usages.

422. *Tiempo* is *time* in its widest and most general sense, and is the term for time in philosophy and science:—

El tiempo es el oro del sabio y el juguete del necio.	Time is the wise man's gold and the fool's plaything.
Tiempo sidereal, tiempo medio.	Sidereal time, mean time.
No tenemos tiempo ahora.	We have not time now.
No llegará á tiempo.	He will not arrive in time.

REMARK.—*Tiempo* means also *weather*:—

Tiempo variable, tiempo borrascoso,	Changeable weather, stormy weather,
tiempo apacible, tiempo cubierto.	pleasant weather, cloudy weather.

423. *Plazo* is a period of time appointed or agreed upon:—

Señalar un plazo.	To appoint a time, set a time.
Acortar, alargar el plazo.	To shorten, extend the time.
El plazo se ha cumplido.	The time has expired.
Á plazos cortos.	On short instalments.
Al plazo y en el lugar convenidos.	At the time and place agreed on.

424. *Rato* is an undetermined, generally short, space of time, equivalent to the English *while*. It is also used when reference is had to the quality of an occasion:—

Al cabo de un rato.

Después de un buen rato.

Estuvo largo rato pensando.

¿No quiere V. esperarle un rato?

¿Qué rato han llevado Vds.?

Hemos llevado mal rato.

After a while.

After a good while.

He stood a long while thinking.

Won't you wait for him a while?

What kind of a time did you have?

We had a poor time.

**425.** *Espacio* is often used when especial reference is had to duration:—

Permaneció silencioso durante un espacio considerable.	He remained silent for a considerable length of time.
--	---

**426.** *Época* is a fixed point of time:—

En aquella época estaba de cónsul en Valparaíso.	At that time he was consul at Valparaíso.
--	---

**427.** *Vez* is a point of time considered as part of a series:—

Esta vez te perdono.	This time I forgive you.
Es la primera vez que le he visto.	It is the first time that I have seen him.
Algunas veces; rara vez or raras veces; repetidas veces.	Sometimes; rarely; repeatedly.

#### MANNER OF EXPRESSING DIMENSIONS.

**428.** The principal nouns and adjectives used are the following:—

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
La altura or elevación, height.	Alto, high or tall
La longitud or extensión, length.	Largo, long.
La anchura, width or breadth.	Ancho, wide or broad.
La profundidad, depth.	Profundo or hondo, deep.
El espesor, thickness.	Grueso, thick.

**429.** When the dimension stands in the predicate after the thing described, the connecting verb is *tener* in Spanish, while in English it is the verb *to be*. *Tener* is followed by a noun of dimension connected with the numeral by *de*. The adjectives *alto*, *largo*, and *ancho*, however, are frequently used in place of

their corresponding nouns, especially in technical language. There is, therefore, the following latitude of expression:—

La torre tiene 50 metros	{ de elevación. de altura. de alto.	The tower is 164 feet high.
El seto tiene 800 metros	{ de extensión. de longitud. de largo.	The hedge is 985 feet long.
El foso tiene tres metros	{ de anchura. de ancho.	The ditch is ten feet wide.
El pozo tiene 25 metros de profundidad.		The well is eighty feet deep.
Estas chapas de acero tienen 20 milímetros de espesor.		These steel plates are $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thick.

REMARK.—In cases where a noun of dimension is required as a leading word in the sentence, the adjectives *alto*, *largo*, *profundo*, and *hondo* are inadmissible; *ancho* and *grueso* may be used as nouns:—

El valle de Quito tiene una altura media de 9,540 pies.	The valley of Quito has a mean altitude of 9,540 feet.
La anchura del tapete no está en proporción con su largura.	The width of the rug is not in proportion to its length.
<i>but</i>	
El ancho del arroyo no pasa de cuatro metros.	The width of the watercourse does not exceed thirteen feet.
El grueso de la tapia es de tres ladrillos.	The thickness of the wall is three bricks.

430. When the word denoting dimension is used attributively without a connecting verb, the numeral is preceded by *de*. The following alternatives are therefore offered:—

Una torre	{ de 50 metros { de elevación. de altura. de alto. alta de 50 metros.	A tower 164 feet high.
Un seto	{ de 800 metros { de extensión. de longitud. de largo. largo de 800 metros.	A hedge 985 feet long.
Un foso	{ de tres metros { de anchura. de ancho. ancho de tres metros.	A ditch ten feet wide.
Un pozo	{ de 25 metros de profundidad. profundo { de 25 metros. hondo	A well eighty feet deep.
Unas chapas	{ de 20 mm. de espesor. espesas de 20 mm.	Plates $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick.



**431.** The following miscellaneous expressions of a technical character may prove useful:—

El Itata era un vapor de hélice, de 1.200 toneladas. Tenía 300 pies de eslora, 45 de manga, y 18½ de puntal, y desalojaba 3.730 toneladas. Su velocidad pasaba de 18 nudos por hora.

La bandera nacional tiene 9 metros de vuelo y 6 metros de ancho.

La rada tiene una profundidad de tres brazas con una anchura como de cuatro cables.

El pedestal tiene 10 pies en cuadro.

El edificio ocupa una área de 250 pies cuadrados.

Un círculo de 90 mm. de diámetro.

Este árbol tiene más de seis metros de circunferencia.

The Itata was a screw steamer of 1,200 tons. She measured 300 feet on the water-line, 45 ft. beam, and 18½ ft. in draft, with 3,730 tons displacement. Her speed exceeded 18 knots per hour.

The national flag [of Chile] has 29½ ft. fly and 19½ ft. hoist.

The harbor has a depth of three fathoms with a width of about four cable-lengths.

The pedestal is ten feet square.

The building covers an area of 250 square feet.

A circle 3.543 inches in diameter.

This tree is over 19 feet in circumference.

**432.** Weight is expressed in the same manner as in English:—

El cañón con su cureña pesa 261.000 libras.

Esta grúa levanta con facilidad un peso de doscientas toneladas.

415 billetes nuevos de á peso, de los Estados Unidos, según prueba verificada, equivalen en peso á una libra

The cannon with its carriage weighs 261,000 lbs.

This crane raises with ease a weight of 200 tons.

415 new U. S. dollar bills are, according to actual experiment, equal in weight to one pound.

**433.** After the verb *ser*, numerals denoting dimensions weights, prices, etc., are preceded by the preposition *de*:—

El tamaño de los torpedos es de 14 pulgadas de diámetro y de 14 pies 6 pulgadas de largo.

La distancia es de veinte millas.

La cosecha será probablemente de 20.000 arrobas.<sup>1</sup>

The size of the torpedoes is 14 inches in diameter and 14 feet 6 inches in length.

The distance is twenty miles.

The crop will probably be 5,000 hundredweight.

<sup>1</sup> The arroba is ½ cwt., and is used both as a dry and a liquid measure.

El peso de una moneda de oro de 20 pesetas es de 6,45 gramos.	The weight of a 20-peseta gold-piece is 6.45 grammes.
El precio de este solar es de dos pesos el pie cuadrado.	The price of this building-lot is \$2 per square foot.

## MANNER OF EXPRESSING AGE.

434. Age is expressed by *tener*, followed by a cardinal denoting the number of years:—

¿Cuántos años tiene V.?	}	How old are you?
¿Qué edad tiene V.?		
Yo tengo veintitrés años y mi hermano tiene veinte.		I am twenty-three years old and my brother twenty.
Tiene treinta años cumplidos.		He is just thirty years old.
Cumpliré veintiún años el cinco del mes próximo.		I shall be twenty-one on the fifth of next month.

435. The birthday is not celebrated in Spanish countries, but the day of the saint after whom the person is named. When mention is made of the anniversary of one's birth it is called *el día de su cumpleaños*, *el día de sus años*, or *su cumpleaños*. One's saint's-day is spoken of as *el día de su santo*, or simply *sus días*:—

Mañana son los días de Don Agapito.	To-morrow is Don Agapito's saint's-day.
"Á mi madre en sus días." <sup>1</sup>	To my mother on her saint's-day.

436. The following adjective and adverbial expressions relating to age are the same in both languages:—

No representa su edad.	He does not look his age.
Somos de la misma edad.	We are of the same age.
Á la edad de 80.	At the age of 80.
Ha entrado en su sexagésimo año.	He has entered his sixtieth year.

EXERCISE XXX.<sup>2</sup>

a) 1. El *Cotopaxi* en 1738 arrojaba rocas á más de (*than*) mil metros de altura sobre su *cráter*, y en 1754 hacía un ruido tan fuerte que se oía á la

<sup>1</sup> The title of a pretty little poem by Don Antonio Marroquín, of Colombia.

<sup>2</sup> In translating this exercise, the student should give in full all the numerals in their Spanish form.

*distancia* de 900 *kilómetros*. 2. En 1797 el *ordier* del *Tunguragua*, que está en uno de los picos más (*most*) elevados de los *Andes*, arrojaba *torrentes* de *lava* que hacían subir el nivel de los ríos y *formaban* nuevos lagos de unos 18 *metros* de profundidad. 3. La corriente de *lava* del *Vesuvio* en 1837 llegó á contener 10,080,000 de *metros cúbicos* de materia *sólida*, y en 1793 la masa de *lava* abultaba unos 18,500,000 *metros cúbicos*. 4. En 1769 el *Etna* cubrió casi cien *kilómetros* de tierra con las materias que vomitaba, y que *probablemente* no bajaban de 80,000,000 de *metros cúbicos*. 5. La corriente que *formó* la *lava* arrojada por el *Etna* en 1810, siguió corriendo (*continued to flow*) durante nueve meses después de la *erupción*, y se dice que al cabo de diez años aun no estaba consolidada. 6. En la *erupción* del *Vesuvio* del año 79 después de Jesucristo, la escoria y las cenizas que arrojó excedían del tamaño *total* de la montaña, mientras que en 1660 vomitó materias que *formaban* una masa veinte veces mayor que (*than*) el volcán. 7. La historia nos cuenta que el *Vesuvio* ha arrojado sus cenizas hasta Constantinopla, *Siria* y Egipto, y ha lanzado piedras de más de (*than*) 15 kilos de peso sobre Pompeya, que está á una *distancia* de 11 *kilómetros*, y á veces las ha lanzado á más de (*than*) 600 metros de altura. 8. El *Cotopaxi* lanzó una piedra de unos 100 *metros cúbicos* de volumen á una *distancia* de 17 *kilómetros*. 9. El *Sumbawa*, en 1815, en (*at*) la época de la *erupción* más (*most*) terrible que se recuerda de este volcán, envió cenizas hasta *Java*, que se halla á una *distancia* de 550 *kilómetros*.

b) 1. What time is it? 2. It has not yet struck nine. 3. We shall start within half an hour, and if the roads are in good condition, we shall reach our destination by four o'clock in the afternoon. 4. A week from to-day, I expect to be in *Chicago*. 5. What day of the month will next Wednesday be? 6. To-day is Saturday, the ninth; consequently, Wednesday will be the 18th. 7. Then (*pues*) Thursday will be my birthday; I shall be just twenty years old. 8. Early in the morning and at nightfall the grass is covered with dew. 9. In the spring and autumn the days and nights are of equal *duration*. 10. The classes in (*de*) our College begin at quarter past nine in the morning and end at half-past three. 11. The night before last, we witnessed a *splendid* display of shooting stars. 12. At dusk the bats and owls begin to fly. 13. A week from to-morrow my wife and I start for the seashore, where we shall spend six weeks, and then we shall go to the Hot Springs until October. 14. The last time I saw *President Caamaño* was in *Quito* in the spring of 1894. 15. The *Washington* (3) *Monument* is 555 feet high, 55 feet square at (*por*) the *base*, (*f.*) and contains about 1800 blocks of marble two feet thick. 16. The *Suez Canal* is 95 miles in length and 28 feet deep; its cost was in round numbers 100,000,000 dollars. 17. After the first of next month the Library of Congress will be open to (*para*) the public from nine in the morning until ten

at night. 18. Your letter dated the 27th ultimo was not received until the third instant.

NOTE. 9. days . . . nights: singular in Spanish.

#### REVIEW EXERCISE.

1. The powerful monarch Philip II founded, at seven leagues from *Madrid* on a slope of the hills that *separate* the two Castiles, the *palace* of the *Escorial*. 2. The work was begun in the year 1578 and was not finished until 1584. 3. The founding had two objects: first, that (*el*) of *commemorating* the battle of St. Quentin, won from (*á*) the French in 1555, and, second, to fulfil the vow of Emperor Charles V for the erection of a royal *Pantheon* (*m.* 1). 4. In the midst of a rugged and imposing situation rises this astounding structure, a work of *granite* which extends (*se extiende*) from north to south 744 feet, and 580 from east to west. 5. The ground-plan of the building is (*tiene*) 3,012 feet in (*de*) circumference. 6. The *interior* structure is divided into three *principal* parts: the first comprises the entrance of *Honor*, the Court of the Kings, and the temple; the second, the *Convent*; and the third, the *palace*. 7. The work, upon which thousands of artisans labored, lasted 21 years. 8. There are counted in the building 63 running fountains and 13 unused ones, eleven cisterns, and some forty cellars; 12 cloisters, 80 staircases, 16 courts, 5 *refectories*, 13 chapels, 9 towers, 14 lobbies, 5 *habitable* stories, an infinite number of doors and some 10,000 inner and outer windows. 9. There are 73 statues of bronze and of marble, 6 *colossal* ones of *granite*, and one of three times the *natural* size. 10. The quantity of iron that entered into the *construction* is *incalculable*: the keys alone weigh about 1825 lbs.

- NOTES. 1. the two, *ambas*. (See also § 306.)  
 3. founding: put subject after verb.  
     to fulfil: supply *el de* = that of.  
 7. labored: put verb before subject.  
 8. There: not expressed in Spanish.  
     unused ones, *sin uso*.  
     an infinite number, *infinidad* (omit the article).  
 9. ones: not expressed in Spanish.  
 10. lbs.: express in *arrobas* = 25 lbs.



## LESSON XXXI.

OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. (*Continued.*)

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

While in English there are separate special forms (*myself, herself, ourselves*, etc.) of the personal pronouns when used reflexively, no equivalent distinction of form is made in Spanish, except in the case of the pronoun of the third person.

437. The ordinary objective cases of the personal pronouns of the first and second persons are used reflexively without change:—

Me ha comprado una sortija.

Me he comprado una sortija.

Hablan de mí.

Hablo de mí.

Te matarán:

Te matarás.

¿Os llamáis sabios?

Nos hemos armado; si nos acometen,  
nos defenderemos.

He has bought *me* a ring.

I have bought *myself* a ring.

They speak of *me*.

I speak of *myself*.

They will kill *you*:

You will kill *yourself*.

Do you call *yourselves* wise?

We have armed *ourselves*; if they  
attack *us* we will defend *ourselves*.

438. If in similar reflexive expressions the subject is of the third person, the reflexive pronoun *se* is used as object, whatever be the gender or number of the subject:—

El niño *se* ha lastimado.

El muchacho *se* ha hecho un silbato.

Mi tía *se* ha comprado un nuevo  
manguito.

Los fugitivos *se* ocultaron detrás de  
unas rocas.

Ellas *se* han dedicado al estudio de  
la música.

Hablan siempre de sí y de sus nego-  
cios.

Ellas nunca piensan en sí.

The child has hurt *himself*.

The boy has made *himself* a whistle.

My aunt has bought *herself* a new  
muff.

The fugitives hid *themselves* behind  
some rocks.

They have devoted *themselves* to  
the study of music.

They always speak of *themselves*  
and their affairs.

They never think of *themselves*.

REMARK.—Since *usted* is practically a pronoun of the third person, it takes *se* as a reflexive form:—

¿Se afeita Vd. antes de almorzar?	Do you shave yourself before breakfast?
Vds. se incomodan inútilmente.	You disturb yourselves uselessly.
¿Habla Vd. de sí?	Are you speaking of yourself?
Veo que Vds. han vuelto en sí.	I see that you have come to your senses ( <i>sí</i> , to yourselves).

439. The objective cases of the personal pronouns of the third person, including *usted*, always designate a different individual or thing from the subject:—

Ella la llama.	She calls her.
Ella se llama Paca.	She calls herself Fanny.
Vds. los incomodan.	You disturb them.
Vds. se incomodan.	You disturb yourselves.
El capitán habla siempre de ella.	The captain is always talking of her.
El capitán habla siempre de sí.	The captain is always talking about himself.
El guardia los ve venir hacia sí.	The guard sees them coming towards him.
El hombre pone el libro delante de sí sobre la mesa.	The man lays the book on the table before him.
El mozo entra y pone una botella de vino delante de él.	The waiter comes in and places a bottle of wine before him.

440. When *mí*, *tí*, *sí* are governed by *con*, *with*, it is joined to them, and *go* is added to the combination, producing the peculiar forms *conmigo*, *contigo*, *consigo*:—

¿Quiere V. venir conmigo?	Do you want to come with me?
Quiero hablar contigo.	I want to speak with thee.
Mi hermana está enfadada consigo.	My sister is angry with herself.
Mi hermana está enfadada con ella.	My sister is angry with her ( <i>some other lady</i> ).
Llevan víveres consigo.	They carry provisions with them.
¿Han traído Vds. sus libros consigo?	Have you brought your books with you?

The explanation of this is that the Latin *cum*, *with*, was affixed to personal pronouns: *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*. The first three of these have been preserved in modern Italian with the forms of *meo*, *teco*, *seco*. In old Spanish they appear as *migo*, *tigo*, *sigo*, *nosco*, *vosco*; subsequently the last two became obsolete, and the origin of the others being forgotten, the preposition *con* was again added.

## TERMINAL DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

441. The dative and accusative forms, being short and of weak sound, are not sufficiently sonorous to bear any degree of emphasis; and moreover the dative, not having a distinction of gender, is often not precise enough to prevent ambiguity. It is clear that something further is necessary.

This lack is supplied by the use of the prepositional case (which is fuller in form and maintains throughout a distinction of gender) preceded by the preposition *á*. This will be called the *terminal* dative or accusative, since it may follow any form of the verb without being appended to it. The *á* in this case is merely a grammatical device, and has no prepositional value. The terminal forms, although stronger in sound, are exactly equivalent in meaning to the simple forms:—

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
		SIMPLE.	TERMINAL.			SIMPLE.	TERMINAL.
1 p.	{ Dat. Acc.	me me	á mí	1 p.	{ Dat. Acc.	nos nos	á nosotros, -as
2 p.	{ Dat. Acc.	te te	á tí	2 p.	{ Dat. Acc.	os os	á vosotros, -as
3 p.	{ M. { Dat. Acc.	le le, lo	á él	3 p.	{ M. { Dat. Acc.	les les, los	á ellos
	{ F. { Dat. Acc.	le la	á ella		{ F. { Dat. Acc.	les las	á ellas

The terminal form is used in two ways: *1st*, as a substitute for the simple form; *2nd*, in addition to and in conjunction with it.

442. It is seldom used as a mere substitute, except in the following instances, where it is the only construction admissible:—

*a.* Where the verb which governs the pronoun, having been previously expressed, is understood but not repeated. (There is

then no verb before which the simple objective form could be placed.)

No busca á Vd. sino á mí.

He is not looking for you but for me.

No ha dicho á los fiscales tanto como á nosotros.

He did not tell the officials as much as [he did] us.

Más quiere al artista que á mí.

She likes the artist better than me.

¿Á quién ha visto Vd.—Á él, á ella, á Vd., á ellos, etc.

Whom did you see?—Him, her, you, them, etc.

b. When the direct object is a pronoun used reflexively, and the indirect object is any other personal pronoun, the latter assumes the terminal form:—

Me he ofrecido á él como guía.

I offered myself to him as guide.

Se recomienda á ellos.

He recommends himself to them.

Se dirige á mí.

He addresses himself to me.

Se ha presentado á nosotros en un estado deplorable de embriaguez.

He presented himself to us in a deplorable state of intoxication.

c. Where the direct object of a verb is a pronoun of the first or second person, the indirect object, if a pronoun, must assume the terminal form:—

Me han recomendado á V.

They have recommended me to you.

Me han enviado á tí.

They have sent me to thee.

¿Por qué te han enviado á mí?

Why have they sent thee to me?

Vuestro general os ha entregado á nosotros.

Your general has delivered you to us.

443. A personal pronoun representing the terminus of a motion expressed by an intransitive verb, is put in the prepositional case and preceded by á. This construction is not the terminal dative, the á having a true prepositional value:—

Viene á mí y me da una esquila.

He comes to me and gives me a note.

Dice que me ha mandado un paquete, pero no ha llegado á mí.

He says he sent me a package, but it has not reached me.

Anita, la chiquilla te llama.—Voy á ella ahora.

Annie, the baby is calling you.—I am going to her now.

REMARK.—In no other class of cases will it be advisable to use the terminal form alone; in the few other instances where it might be em-



ployed, the double construction explained below would be equally applicable and generally preferable.

#### REDUNDANT CONSTRUCTION.

**444.** The use of the terminal form for the purpose of emphasis or clearness, is as an addition to the simple form. This combination of the two forms we will call the *redundant* construction. The forms are combined as follows:—

	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.
SINGULAR.	Me . . . . á mí. Te . . . . á tí. Le . . . { á él. { á ella. { á V.	Me . . . . á mí. Te . . . . á tí. Le . . . . á él ( <i>animato</i> ). Lo . . . . á él ( <i>inanimato</i> ). La . . . . á ella. Le . . . . á V. ( <i>masc.</i> ). La . . . . á V. ( <i>fem.</i> ).
PLURAL.	Nos . . { á nosotros. { á nosotras. Os . . . { á vosotros. { á vosotras. Les . . { á ellos. { á ellas. { á Vds.	Nos . . { á nosotros. { á nosotras. Os . . . { á vosotros. { á vosotras. Los . . . á ellos. Las . . . á ellas. Los . . . á Vds. Las . . . á Vds.

**445.** Either pronoun may come first, but greater emphasis is conveyed when the terminal form precedes. Where the simple form is first, the verb is placed between the two pronouns; otherwise the verb either precedes or follows both:—

Le enseño á ella el castellano.

I am teaching her Spanish.

Les escribiré á ellas una relación  
circunstanciada del suceso.

I will write them a detailed account  
of the occurrence.

¿Á él qué le importa?

What does it matter to *him*?

Á ellos no les diré nada.

I shall not tell *them* anything.

Á mí me parece que el hombre es  
loco.

It seems to me that the man is mad.

Me parece á mí que no llegará hoy.

It seems to me he will not arrive  
to-day.

¿No le recibirá V. á él?	Won't you receive him?
No nos convidarán á nosotros.	They won't invite <i>us</i> .
Te mandaré á tí la próxima vez.	I will send <i>thee</i> the next time.
Le han concedido á él una pensión, y las niegan á personas que verda- deramente las merecen.	They have granted <i>him</i> a pension, and refuse them to persons who really deserve them.

446. This usage is so general that it is often carried to excess. It is furthermore extended to nouns, in which event the noun is preceded by *á* and accompanies the simple objective pronoun:—

Al príncipe le han matado.	They have killed the prince.
No les parece conveniente á las señoras.	It does not seem proper to the ladies.
No le dan nada al mozo.	They give nothing to the waiter.
Al hombre no le es siempre permi- tido obrar con libertad.	Man is not always permitted to act with freedom.
Á los modernos les sucede lo contra- rio.	The contrary happens to the moderns.

REMARK.—In such cases the pronoun is the real object of the verb, and the noun may be regarded as added by way of explanation, as we often see in reports of trials in English: "and, furthermore, that he, the witness, saw *him*, the defendant, on the night of . . ."

#### INTENSIFICATION BY MISMO.

447. The nominative forms of all the pronouns may be intensified by the addition of the appropriate form of *mismo*, *self*, which is varied like all adjectives in *o*:—

Yo mismo, yo misma.	I myself.
Tú mismo, tú misma.	Thou thyself.
Él mismo, ella misma.	He himself, she herself.
Nosotros mismos; nosotras mismas.	We ourselves.
Usted mismo, usted misma.	You yourself.
Ustedes mismos, ustedes mismas.	You yourselves.

448. *Mismo* may be applied to nouns in the same manner:—

El emperador mismo.	The emperor himself.
Su madre misma lo ha dicho.	His mother herself said it.
Procura castigar á los culpables mismos.	He seeks to punish the offenders themselves.

449. The appropriate form of *mismo* may be used, when great emphasis is needed, to intensify the prepositional case or the compound forms of the dative and accusative; but it is not applicable to the simple dative and accusative forms:—

Con su terquedad, no perjudicará á nadie sino á sí mismo.	With his obstinacy, he will injure nobody but himself.
Veó que en vez de engañar á V., me he engañado á mí mismo.	I see that instead of deceiving you I have deceived myself.
El que enseña bien á otro se enseña también á sí mismo.	He who teaches another well, teaches himself also.
Nos hemos perdido á nosotros mismos.	We have ruined our own selves

#### THE ACCUSATIVE OF SUBSTITUTION.

450. The forms *le* or *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, serve to recall a previous noun without repeating it. When this is done in English it is by some such indefinite word as *one*, *any*, *some*, *such*:—

Alega que no tiene influencia, pero yo creo que <i>la</i> tiene.	He alleges that he has no influence, but I believe that he has.
Compraré billetes si <i>los</i> hay todavía.—Ya no <i>los</i> hay.	I shall buy tickets if there still are any.—There are no more.
¿Tiene V. vino de Manzanilla?—Sí señor, <i>lo</i> tengo, y de primera clase.	Have you any Manzanilla wine?—Yes, Sir, I have, and first class.
¿Quién quiere agua?— <i>La</i> quiero yo.	Who wants water?—I do.
¿Tiene V. ganas de comer?— <i>Las</i> tengo y urgentes.	Have you an appetite?—I have, and a pressing one.

451. The neuter form *lo* serves similarly to recall an adjective, a noun taken in an indeterminate sense with an adjective value, or an entire phrase or statement, and is then often equivalent to the English *so* or *to*:—

Ella está mala, pero no <i>lo</i> parece.	She is sick, but she does not look so.
El alcalde, pues supe después que <i>lo</i> era, <i>etc.</i>	The alcalde, for I afterwards learned that he was one, <i>etc.</i>
Su paso era ligero, porque <i>lo</i> era su corazón.	His step was light because his heart was.
Considero necesario, como <i>lo</i> considera también la comisión, conservar intacta la cláusula.	I consider it necessary, as does the committee also, to preserve the clause unchanged.

452. This neuter *lo* accompanies the verb *ser* in answers, to represent the predicate of the question:—

¿Son Vds. los soldados que prendieron al espía?—Lo somos.	Are you the soldiers who took the spy?—We are.
¿Es V. la madre de este niño?—Lo soy.	Are you the mother of this child?—I am.
¿Es V. madre?—Lo soy.	Are you a mother?—I am.
¿Es ella la dueña de la casa?—No lo es.	Is she the mistress of the house?—She is not.

REMARK.—This manner of answering is, however, rather formal; in ordinary style the answers would be *sí señor*, *no señora*, etc.

### EXERCISE XXXI.

a) 1. En su primer encuentro con los indios salió *Cortés victorioso*, merced al *terror* que *inspiraron* las detonaciones de las armas de fuego y al aspecto de los jinetes que á los indígenas les parecían seres sobrenaturales. 2. *Continuó* el conquistador su rumbo hacia el oeste, pero no encontró sitio á propósito para desembarcar hasta llegar á *San Juan de Ulloa*. 3. Aquí recibió una diputación de indígenas que venían de parte de su monarca Motezuma para averiguar la *misión* que llevaba *Cortés*. 4. Á éstos les participó sus pacíficas *intenciones*, y les dió regalos. 5. Para dar á aquellos pobres indios una *idea* de su poder, hizo maniobrar entonces á sus soldados, y al fin mandó disparar las piezas de *artillería*. 6. El destrozo que las balas *causaron* en los árboles, y el estruendo que produjeron, llenaron de espanto á los aztecas, pues á ellos les parecía que los españoles disponían del rayo mismo. 7. Á los pocos días *se presentaron* nuevos embajadores de Motezuma. 8. Éstos traían consigo regalos para *Cortés* de telas *finas* de algodón y artefactos de oro y plata. 9. Se mostró *Cortés* muy satisfecho con estos presentes, pero insistió en que le era preciso tener una entrevista con el emperador mismo. 10. Cuando notó que sus soldados empezaban á murmurar entre sí, comprendió que le era *imposible* mantener su *autoridad* sin desvanecer todo empeño de los descontentos, en *abandonar* aquella tierra. 11. *Determinó*, pues, barrenar y echar á pique las naves que tenía, y dejar á sus hombres encerrados en un *territorio* desconocido, poblado por belicosos habitantes que en la guerra no perdonaban á sus prisioneros. 12. Cuando llegó á *Cholula* *se presentaron* á él mil personas de *distinción*, según demostraban sus ricos mantos de algodón adornados de vistosas plumas, y le anunciaron la venida del emperador. 13. Motezuma *se presentó* llevado en hombros de sus *nobles* en un *palanquín* adornado de oro y plumas. 14. *Cortés* le



acogió con respeto, y aceptó la *invitación* que le hizo de *visitar* la *capital*, y de residir en un antiguo *palacio* que le tenía de antemano *preparado*.

b) 1. "When there is no meat," said the laborer, "I *content* myself with potatoes." 2. The young man was fanning himself with his straw hat. 3. Johnnie would not (*i.e.* did not want to) come with me to the *zoological* gardens (*sing.*) because he is afraid of (*a*) the *elephants*. 4. The dog stretched himself on the rug in front of the fire. 5. It seems to me that you will do well to (*en*) postpone your departure until next week. 6. I met (*conoci*) General Salazar in Paris (*m.* 1) last year; the Chilean *Minister* introduced me to him. 7. Anthony is very angry because the teacher praised me more (*más*) than (*que*) him. 8. The wounded soldier dragged himself with difficulty to a large rock, which he perceived not far from him, in order to be under shelter from the burning rays of the sun. 9. There the ambulance dog found him unconscious from loss of blood, and at once went back and led his *conductor* to him. 10. We do not properly *appreciate* the mule (§ 446) in this country. 11. Besides being strong and healthy, he is endowed with almost *human intelligence*, and readily *adapts* himself to any (*cualquiera*) environment. 12. Good morning, Mr. *Repollo*, have you any asparagus to-day? 13. Yes sir, I have some very nice and tender. 14. Are there many oysters around here? 15. No sir, there are none here; but on (*a*) the other side of the bay, there are fine big ones. 16. She has always talked freely to me of her plans, but I notice that with him she is very *reticent*. 17. You told me yesterday that Mr. *Calvo* was an applicant for the position of sheriff, and to-day he came to me and assured me that he is not.

NOTES. 9. at once went back, *al momento regresó*.

11. Render: an intelligence almost human.

12. asparagus: plural in Spanish.

## LESSON XXXII.

### OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. (*Continued.*)

#### EMPLOYMENT OF *USTED* AND ITS SUBSTITUTES.

**137** *Usted*, being grammatically a noun, is invariable except as regards number. Still, it is practically employed as a personal pronoun, and will be treated of here as such.

453. Both for clearness and courtesy *usted* should appear at least once in every sentence relating to the second person, except

familiarly in very short ones where there is no danger of ambiguity:—

¿Qué dice? Qué quiere?	What do you say? What do you want?
¿Cómo está su señor padre?	How is your father?
¿Quiere fumar?	Have a smoke?
Me hace un gran favor.	You do me a great favor.
Yo le prestaré lo necesario si quiere.	I will lend you the necessary [amount] if you wish.

454. As subject, *usted* is usually expressed once near the beginning of the sentence, and afterwards left to be understood, except when required for clearness:—

Vd. tiene talento, pero no quiere estudiar.	You have talent, but you won't study.
¿Cuándo enviará V. á su hermano los libros que le ha prometido?	When will you send your brother the books you have promised him?

455. *Usted* appears as object only when governed by a preposition. In the dative and accusative its place is taken by the datives and accusatives of *él* or *ella*, according to the sex of the person addressed:—

No partiremos sin Vds.	We will not start without you.
Tengo gran confianza en V.	I have great confidence in you.
Ninguno de Vds. ha hallado la solución del enigma.	None of you has found the solution of the enigma.
Ya que ha venido V., le diré algo que le será interesante.	Now that you have come, I will tell you something that will be interesting to you.
¿No creen Vds. que les pagaré?	Do you not believe I will pay you?
Vd. me ha engañado, pero yo la perdono.	You deceived me, but I forgive you ( <i>fem.</i> ).

456. But if *usted* has not previously appeared in the sentence, or if the person referred to is not sufficiently apparent, *á Vd.*, *á Vds.*, is added to the personal pronoun, in the same manner as the redundant construction previously explained:—

Le esperaré á V. mañana.

Ya la comprendo á V., señorita.

Les digo á Vds. la pura verdad.

¿Qué le ha dicho á V. su hermano?

Su señor hermano cree que yo no le pagaré á V.

I shall expect you to-morrow.

Now I understand you, Miss.

I am telling you the plain truth.

What has your brother told you?

Your brother believes that I will not pay you.

457. Still, á Vd. will be found as the sole object of the verb, and the objective pronoun sometimes appears unattended by á Vd., when Vd. has not previously appeared in the sentence. So that the following three modes of expression are admissible, the first being familiar (sometimes even to the verge of disrespect) and the third the most usual:—

Le devolveré el libro.

Devolveré á V. el libro.

Le devolveré á V. el libro.

} I will return you the book.

} I will return the book to you.

REMARK.—The objective forms á V., á Vds., are required under the same circumstances as those enumerated for the terminal dative and accusative:—

He venido á V.

Me dirijo á Vds.

• I have come to you.

I address myself to you.

458. As usted requires the third person, the reflexive sí is applicable to it in the same manner as to any word used in the third person, and with the same restrictions:—

¿Se ha quemado V.?

V. se pondrá en ridículo.

Vds. se cansarán innecesariamente.

¿No ve V. la taza delante de sí?

¿No ve V. que la taza está delante de V.<sup>1</sup>?

¿No ve V. la taza delante de él?

Have you burned yourself?

You will make yourself ridiculous.

You will tire yourselves unnecessarily.

Don't you see the cup before you?

Don't you see that the cup is before you?

Don't you see the cup before him?

459. Although usted does not exhibit the gender of the person it represents, all variable words which qualify or relate

<sup>1</sup> Usted is here required because there is a change of subject.

to it agree in gender as well as number with the person represented:—

V. es rico y dichoso.	}	You are rich and happy.
V. es rica y dichosa.		
Vds. son ricos y dichosas.		
La considero á V. como muy afortunada.	}	I consider you very lucky.
Las considero á Vds. como muy afortunadas.		

~~There~~ There can be no definite rule prescribed as to how often *usted* should appear in a long sentence or address. The student must simply strive to attain clearness on the one hand, and on the other to avoid undue repetition.

#### TWO PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

426) 460. When a verb has two objects, both may be pronouns. In such case they appear together, with no word intervening, and so take the same place with regard to the verb as a single pronoun. The dative precedes the accusative, with the exception that the reflexive *se* always stands first, whatever may be its case:—

No te lo daré; no te la daré.	I will not give it to thee.
Creo que me lo prestará.	I think he will lend it to me.
Nos los promete; nos las promete.	He promises them to us.
Se lo aplica.	He applies it to himself.
Se me figura que . . .	It seems to me that . . .

461. If both objects be pronouns of the third person, the dative, of either number, assumes the form *se*, to avoid the concurrence of two short syllables beginning with *l*:—

le le, les le, <i>become se le</i> ;	le les, les les, <i>become se les</i> ;
le la, les la, " <i>se la</i> ;	le los, les los, " <i>se los</i> ;
le lo, les lo, " <i>se lo</i> ;	le las, les las, " <i>se las</i> .

Abro la carta y <i>se la leo</i> .	I open the letter and read it to him (or her).
Su cuñado de V. quiere comprar mi casa, pero yo no <i>se la vendo</i> .	Your brother-in-law wishes to buy my house, but I will not sell it to him.



El coronel ha olvidado sus quevedos; mi criado <i>se</i> los llevará.	The colonel has forgotten his glasses; my servant will take them to him.
Ya he escrito la carta, pero aun no <i>se</i> la he enviado.	I have already written the letter, but have not yet sent it to them.

462. The redundant construction is applicable to the dative when there are two pronouns as objects, in the same manner as when there is but one:—

No <i>me</i> lo ha dicho á mí.	He has not told it to me.
Ya <i>se</i> lo he dicho á ellas.	I have already told it to them.
Espero hoy á mi hijo; <i>se</i> le presentaré á V. mañana.	I expect my son to-day; I will introduce him to you to-morrow.
<i>Se</i> lo explicaré á Vds.	I will explain it to you.
Haré los marcos hoy, y <i>se</i> los mandaré á V. mañana.	I will make the frames to-day and send them to you to-morrow.
¿Cuándo <i>nos</i> lo prestará V. á nosotros?	When will you lend it to us?
No <i>se</i> las dará á ellas antes de mañana.	I will not give them to them until to-morrow.

463. Two objective pronouns of simple form can be used as exhibited above, only when the direct object is of the third person. If it be of the first or second, the indirect object must assume the terminal form:—

Te enviarán á mí.	They will send thee to me.
Me la enviarán.	They will send her to me.
Me enviarán á tí.	They will send me to thee.
Te le enviarán.	They will send him to thee.
Me han dirigido á él.	They have directed me to him.
Me le han dirigido.	They have directed him to me.

464. Between the prepositional form and the preposition preceding it, nothing whatever should intervene. Consequently when two or more prepositionals are the objects of the same verb, the preposition must be repeated before each:—

Nos busca á V. y á mí.	He is looking for you and me.
Quiere vengar la ofensa hecha á su hermano y á sí mismo.	He wishes to avenge the injury done to his brother and himself.

465. The preposition *entre*, however, cannot be thus repeated since its meaning is reciprocal. The usage is that when

it governs two prepositional forms ending in *í*, they may admit a conjunction between them; but if the form of one of them is identical with that of the nominative and must precede the other, the second assumes the nominative form :—

Entre tí y mí.	Between thee and me.
Entre él y yo.	Between him and me.
Este informe queda entre V. y yo.	This information is between you and me.
La amistad que existe entre mi hermano y tú.	The friendship that exists between my brother and thee.

#### ENCLITIC USE.

**466.** When simple objective pronouns precede a verb, they stand separately; when they follow, they are appended to it so as to form one word. This latter use is called *enclitic*. Some forms of the verb (*e.g.*, infinitive, § 215, gerund, § 504, imperative, §§ 782–8), require the enclitic use. In other cases its use, when permissible, is rhetorical and distinctive of a literary, as opposed to a colloquial, style.

**467.** When one or more objective pronouns of simple form are governed by an infinitive, they are either affixed to it enclitically, or they immediately precede the verb which governs it,—the former being the more usual construction :—

Quiere hablarme. }	He wants to speak to me.
Me quiere hablar. }	
Viene á buscarlos. }	She is coming to look for them.
Los viene á buscar. }	
Voy á decírselo. }	I am going to tell it to him.
Se lo voy á decir. }	
Ella ha prometido enseñármelo. }	She has promised to teach it to me.
Ella me lo ha prometido enseñar. }	
Necesito consultarle á V. }	I need to consult you.
Le necesito consultar á V. }	
Quiero llevarla al teatro. }	I want to take her to the theater.
La quiero llevar al teatro. }	

**468.** A pronoun sometimes has an appearance of being governed by the infinitive, when it really depends upon the

preceding verb; in this case it must not be attached to the infinitive, but must precede the verb:—

Me es imposible salir ahora.

It is impossible for me to go out at present.

Los veo venir.

I see them come.

No le gusta estudiar.

He does not like to study. (*Lit.* it does not please him to study.)

**REMARK.**—Evidently *salirme*, *venirlos*, *estudiarlo*, would be inadmissible, as the meaning cannot be *to go out me*, *to come them*, or *to study him*.

**469.** Frequently a pronoun may depend either upon the infinitive or the preceding verb, according to the meaning intended; in which case each pronoun accompanies the verb to which it belongs:—

Será inútil escribirle.

It will be useless to write to him.

Le será inútil escribir.

It will be useless for him to write.

Nos será difícil procurarlos.

It will be difficult for us to procure them.

Será difícil procurármelos.

It will be difficult to procure them for us.

Nos será difícil procurárselos.

It will be difficult for us to procure them for him.

No les parece prudente intentarlo.

It does not seem prudent to them to attempt it.

**470.** The enclitic use of pronouns, when optional, is limited to the indicative mood, and is most frequently found in connection with the present, imperfect, and aorist tenses. The choice depends upon the location of the verb, the general principle requiring it to stand at the beginning of the sentence:—

Dígolo porque creo en la justicia de su pretensión.

I say it because I believe in the justice of his claim.

Preparábaseles una recepción regia.

A regal reception was being prepared for them.

Acompañábale una numerosa y brillante comitiva.

A numerous and brilliant retinue accompanied him.

Hízole subir el posadero una esca-	The innkeeper made him go up a
lera angosta y desvencijada.	rickety narrow staircase.
Recibiósele con extraordinarias de-	He was received with unusual ex-
mostraciones de júbilo.	pressions of joy.

**471.** When the verb, at the beginning of an independent clause, is preceded by one of the conjunctions, *y*, *ó*, *mas*, or *pero*, or by an adverbial expression of time, the enclitic use is quite permissible:—

Despertaron al carcelero y obligá-	They awakened the jailer and ob-
ronle á rendir las llaves.	liged him to give up the keys.
Desterraban á los demás, ó encerrá-	They banished the rest, or incar-
banlos en los calabozos.	cerated them in dungeons.
Dos horas más tarde encontráronse	Two hours later the explorers found
los exploradores en la meseta del	themselves on the plateau of the
primer cono.	first cone.

**REMARK.**—Considerable liberty is indulged in by Spanish writers in using the enclitic pronouns with an indicative verb; and the foreigner needs to become very thoroughly imbued with the spirit of the language before he can safely venture to do the same. The novice may bear in mind that to place the pronoun *before* the verb in such cases will never be incorrect.

#### PRONOUN FOLLOWED BY A NOUN IN APPPOSITION.

**472.** When the pronoun is subject and followed by a noun in apposition which limits or defines it, the definite article is interpolated between the pronoun and said noun:—

Yo el rey lo mando.	I, the king, command it.
Nosotros los Mejicanos somos muy	We Mexicans are very touchy.
pundonorosos.	
Vds. los artistas tienen grandes	You artists have great privileges.
privilegios.	

**473.** Frequently the pronoun is suppressed, the verb retaining the person and number which it would have if the pronoun were given:—



Los nordistas pensamos de un modo diferente.	We Northerners think differently.
Sois los Sud-Americanos muy progresivos.	You South Americans are very progressive.
Tendremos el gusto los liberales de presenciar el cambio.	We liberals will have the pleasure of witnessing the change.

474. When an objective personal pronoun is accompanied by a noun in apposition, the following is the mode of expression used:—

Claro, á nosotras las mujeres nos engañan con mucha facilidad.	Clearly they deceive us women very easily.
Las locuras humanas llevan mucho dinero á las arcas de Vds. los abogados.	The follies of mankind put much money into the coffers of you lawyers.

#### EXERCISE XXXII.

a) 1. Tengo una muela que me hace padecer mucho. 2. ¿Por qué no se la hace Vd. arrancar? 3. Mis *ocupaciones* no me lo han permitido; y, además, tengo un terror invencible á (*of*) los mangoneos de los *dentistas*. 4. No obstante, si se toma Vd. ese *gas* que *usan* ahora, apenas le lastimará el estirón. 5. Iré con V. y le mostraré el camino, Srta. *Ruiz*, si me lo permite. 6. Se lo agradezco, señor, mas no quiero molestarle á V. 7. No será molestia, sino un verdadero placer, se lo aseguro. 8. Si encuentro ciruelas maduras en la huerta, las cojeré para usted. 9. Paquito se ha hecho una hermosa cometa, y acaba de levantarla muy alto; ahora sus compañeros quieren pedírsela prestada. 10. El señor esposo de Vd. acaba de encontrarme en la calle y me ha dicho que Vds. necesitan una sirvienta; así pues, me he tomado la libertad de venir á *recomendarle* mi hija *Julia*. 11. Es *aseada* y *quieta*, y tiene *experiencia*, y estoy segura de que Vd. estará contenta con ella si la emplea. 12. La ostra joven no tiene al principio concha; pero no tarda en pegarse á una roca, y allí produce una materia calcárea que *forma* la doble pechina en donde se oculta. 13. La pesca de las ostras se hace con unas tenazas de hierro, llamadas "aragas," que sirven para despegarlas de las rocas. 14. Le prometo á Vd. cuidar bien la cámara si me la presta, y devolvérsela en buen estado. 15. La joven se sentó en el poyo de la ventana abierta, y miró ensimismada la gente que pasaba por debajo de ella. 16. Usted se va á matar de seguro si trabaja á este paso; no se da ni (*even*) una hora de expansión al día. 17. Empleo á creerlo, pues me lo han dicho tres personas.

b) 1. What did Mr. White say to you with regard to our *invention*? 2. I did not see him, but the junior member of the firm. 3. Did you *explain* it to him? 4. Yes, I described it to him in detail, and he showed himself quite interested. 5. Your secret will be safe with me, but if you *confide* it to her she will disclose it, I assure you. 6. I congratulate you on (*por*) the success of your last novel. 7. Although my brother is rich, I am not; nevertheless I hope to be some (*un*) day. 8. It is necessary for me to finish this overcoat for your father to-day, for I have promised to send it to him to-morrow morning. 9. If you do not understand the phenomenon of the tides, I will try to explain it to you. 10. Flies have eyes that enable them to see objects that are *situated* behind them. 11. I am sure that (*de que*) my grandfather will not sell you the pony, because he has already promised it to me. 12. It will not be very difficult for you to convince them of the justness of your claim. 13. Between him and me there is *perfect* congeniality. 14. I have forgotten the book I promised to lend you, but I shall surely bring it to you to-morrow. 15. When my wife's stepfather went to Europe, he left his books, china, and silver with her and me. 16. We manufacturers will be seriously *affected* by the reduction which you democrats wish to make in the tariff. 17. It will not be *possible* for me to give you (*pl.*) a definite answer until the day after to-morrow.

NOTES. 11. *has* . . . promised: see § 185.

12. the justness, *lo justo* (§ 297).

## LESSON XXXIII.

### PARTS OF THE BODY.

~~475~~ In speaking of the parts of the body of man or beast, the Spanish usage differs considerably from the English, the chief deviation consisting in a less frequent use of the possessive pronouns, and a preference for the definite over the indefinite article. The same modes of expression that apply to parts of the body are also extended to articles of clothing *on the person*.

475. When one does anything to his own hand, foot, coat, etc., the appropriate article and not the possessive pronoun precedes the part in question:—

Él ha perdido el brazo derecho.

He has lost *his* right arm.

El niño abre los ojos.

The child opens *its* eyes.

Ella bajó la cabeza.

She bowed *her* head.

Mete la mano en el bolsillo.

He puts *his* hand in *his* pocket.

Recibió una herida en el pecho.

He received a wound in his chest.

REMARK.—The possessive is really unnecessary here, as there can be no doubt as to whose right arm he has lost, or whose eyes the child opens, etc.

476. When the limbs, etc., of another are acted upon, the verb takes the person as the indirect,<sup>1</sup> and the parts of his body or clothing as the direct, object:—

Me pisó el vestido.

He trod on my dress.

El cirujano le ha compuesto el brazo.

The surgeon has set his arm.

El barbero me ha cortado el pelo.

The barber has cut my hair.

Vd. me ha salvado la vida.

You have saved my life.

La madre corta las uñas al niño.

The mother cuts the child's nails.

Me apretó afectuosamente la mano.

He pressed my hand affectionately.

477. In actions affecting the agent's own person or parts thereof, a nice distinction is made between the two preceding constructions :

a. The first construction is used when the action is wholly confined to the part in question and its natural functions, not involving the use of any external means:—

Abrió la boca.

He opened his mouth.

Le tendí la mano.

I stretched out my hand to him.

Dobló el brazo.

He bent his arm.

Movió la cabeza.

He shook his head.

Estiró las piernas hacia la lumbre.

He stretched out his legs towards the fire.

b. The second construction is required when some instrumentality is expressed or understood. (The indirect object is then, of course, the reflexive pronoun.):—

Se quitó el sombrero y se limpió la frente.

He took off his hat and wiped his forehead.

---

<sup>1</sup> This use of the indirect object may be regarded as a survival of an old and widely extended construction—the dative of possession.

*advantage*

Me lavo las manos en la palangana.	I wash my hands in the washbowl.
Se ha roto el brazo.	He has broken his arm.
Se afeitó la cabeza.	He shaved his head.
Se cubrió las piernas con un manto.	He covered his legs with a rug.
Se desgarró el jubón en un clavo.	She tore her waist on a nail.

REMARK.—The instrumentality in question may be some other bodily organ:—

Me he mordido la lengua.	I have bitten my tongue.
Se retorció el bigote	He was twisting his moustache.

478. When the part of the body is qualified by an adjective, the possessive pronoun is used as in English:—

Ha cortado su larga barba.	He has cut off his long beard.
El perro lamía su pata sangrienta.	The dog was licking his bleeding paw.
Alargué mis entumecidas manos hacia las llamas de la hoguera.	I stretched out my benumbed hands toward the flames of the camp-fire.

479. So, also, when the part in question is the subject of the sentence or clause, possession is expressed as in English by a possessive pronoun:—

Sus ojos negros brillaron como chispas.	Her black eyes gleamed like sparks.
Eran de mediano grosor sus labios.	Her lips were of medium thickness.
Sus ojos eran grandes y negros, sus pestañas largas, y sus cejas de una delineación perfecta.	Her eyes were large and black, her lashes long, and her eyebrows of perfect form.
Mis pobres ojos no me sirven ya para gran cosa.	My poor old eyes are no longer good for very much.
Lucían sus ojos al través de sus lágrimas con desusado brillo.	Her eyes shone through her tears with unwonted brightness.

480. The possessive pronoun is moreover required for the sake of clearness in cases where the ownership could not be expressed by the construction with the indirect object:—

Una sonrisa de inefable bondad animó su rostro arrugado.	A kindly smile animated her wrinkled face.
Un bigote moreno sombreaba su boca.	A dark mustache shaded his mouth.
Un inmenso gato negro se estregaba contra sus piernas.	An immense black cat was rubbing itself against his legs.



481. After *tener*, *to have*, or an equivalent, the definite and not the indefinite article is used, unless the latter be required as a numeral. This construction with *tener* is often employed in connections where the verb *to have* would not be used in English:—

D. Tomás tiene el pecho bien desarrollado.	Thomas has a well-developed chest.
El enfermo tiene el pulso débil y la respiración difícil.	The patient has a weak pulse and labored breathing.
Tenía los cabellos desordenados y la cara encendida.	Her hair was disarranged and her face flushed.
El orangután tiene la nariz chata, la frente deprimida, la boca enorme, y las quijadas muy salientes.	The orangoutang has a flat nose, a retreating forehead, an enormous mouth, and very prominent jaws.
El arenque tiene el cuerpo plateado, larga la mandíbula inferior, y la cola ahorquillada.	The herring has a silvery body, a long lower jaw, and a forked tail.

*but*

Llevo un diente postizo.	I have one false tooth.
Tengo un pie estropeado	I have a crippled foot.
Ha perdido un ojo.	He has lost an eye.

REMARK.—When the part referred to is expressed by the plural or a general term, the definite article *may* be omitted:—

Tiene ojos azules, facciones delgadas y pelo rubio.	She has blue eyes, delicate features, and light hair.
Usa barba cerrada.	He wears a full beard.

482. When the part in question is modified by a relative clause, the indefinite article is required in Spanish:—

Tiene una nariz que parece ser remolacha.	He has a nose that looks like a beet.
El elefante tiene unas orejas enormes que le somborean por completo los dos lados de la cabeza.	The elephant has enormous ears that completely shade both sides of his head.

483. The distinction between the definite and the indefinite article as applied to parts of the body, clothing, etc., is that the definite article applies to an habitual possession, a natural and expected feature; the indefinite article implies that the noun

which it accompanies is unexpected or unusual. The indefinite article mentions a thing for the first time, and after it is associated with a person and becomes a known part of him, it takes the definite article:—

Un oficial de marina estaba á la puerta con la espada desenvainada. A naval officer stood at the door with his sword drawn.

*(Navy officers usually carry swords.)*

Mi padre entró con una espada en la mano. My father entered with a sword in his hand.

*(The old gentleman was not in the habit of carrying one.)*

El teniente tenía un bigote poblado. The lieutenant had a thick (i.e. populated) mustache.

*(It was hitherto unknown that he had one.)*

El teniente se retorció el bigote. The lieutenant twisted his mustache.

*(The mustache has now become a recognised feature.)*

REMARK.—For example, in describing an animal unknown to our auditory, we would say:—

Tiene el hocico puntiagudo, los ojos pequeños y penetrantes, las orejas cortas, afilados los dientes, etc. It has a pointed muzzle, small, piercing eyes, short ears, sharp teeth, etc.

Because the animal would be expected to have a muzzle, eyes, ears, teeth, etc. But, in mentioning features not possessed in common by all animals, it would be necessary to say:—

Tiene una cola larga y flexible, de que se sirve para agarrarse á los ramos; la hembra tiene además, colocada bajo el vientre, una bolsa en que guarda á sus hijuelos después de nacidos. It has a long, flexible tail, which it uses to cling to boughs; furthermore the female has, under her belly, a pouch in which she keeps her young after they are born.

a. This is sometimes extended to the necessary parts of inanimate objects:—

La ciudad de Nápoles tiene las casas altas y las calles angostas. The city of Naples has tall houses and narrow streets.

La estatua tendrá el pedestal de mármol. The statue will have a marble pedestal.

484. A person is sometimes singled out by naming some marked bodily or other characteristic, preceded by *de*, where in

modern English *with* is used. (In older English it was *of*, as in Spanish):—

El soldado de la barba.	The soldier with the beard.
Aquel caballero de las grandes patillas es inglés.	That gentleman with the long side-whiskers is an Englishman.
¡Hola! Usted del sombrero de copa!	Hullo! You with the plug hat!
Prefiero la muchacha del traje azul.	I prefer the girl with the blue dress.
Aquella de pelo moreno es mi hermana.	That one with brown hair is my sister.
Vino á la puerta un hombre de calva y barba roja.	A man with a bald head and a red beard came to the door.

485. There is a usage in Spanish of applying an adjective as it were to the individual, and then restricting it to a particular part by the preposition *de*. The result is obtained in English in various ways, principally by a compound adjective:—

Era un hombre de mediana edad, ancho de espaldas, agradable de facciones, resuelto de ademanes, firme de andadura, y de mirar osado y vivo.	He was a man of middle age, broad-shouldered, pleasant-featured, of determined bearing, firm step, and with a quick, resolute glance.
El capitán mi tío es alto de estatura y robusto de temperamento.	My uncle the captain is tall in stature and of a robust constitution.

486. In speaking of a thing which is found singly in a number of individuals, it is placed in the singular in Spanish—contrary to the English usage:—

Ambos máscaras se quitaron la careta.	Both maskers took off their dominoes.
Se tiñeron la cara y las manos.	They dyed their faces and hands.
Todos los animales tienen cabeza.	All animals have heads.
Todos los animales tienen pies.	All animals have feet.

REMARK.—To say *todos los animales tienen cabezas* would convey the idea that each one has several heads. However, when there is no chance for equivocation, the plural is used:—

Salieron con las cabezas rotas.	They got away with their heads broken.
Quitaron las sillas á los caballos.	They took the saddles off the horses.

487. When describing the attitude or action of a person, the disposition of the parts of the body or things intimately connected therewith is usually given in an absolute clause without any connecting word, where in English it is introduced by *with* or *having* :—

En eso entró mi hermano, los cabellos desordenados y la cara encendida, y me dijo . . .

Estaba en la esquina de la calle, las manos metidas en los bolsillos.

At this juncture my brother came in with his hair in disorder and his face flushed, and told me . . .

He was standing on the corner of the street with his hands thrust into his pockets.

This is a relic of the Latin ablative absolute; thus in the phrase *passis manibus milites implorabant* (with outstretched hands they implored the soldiers), the circumstance of the noun and adjective being in the ablative shows that they are merely explanatory; the Spaniards, not having any case-endings, add the bare words, separating them from the main part of the sentence by commas.

#### EXERCISE XXXIII.

a) 1. El *tucúquero* es el gran buho pardo de los *Andes* chilenos. 2. De día se esconde en las grietas de las rocas ó en los huecos de los árboles, donde descansa en una especie de letargo ó sueño, con las plumas comprimidas, los ramilletes en forma de orejas caídos y sobrepuestos al *plumaje* de la cabeza, y los ojos entreabiertos. 3. Cuando el sol ya deja de alumbrar, se sacude, enrosca las plumas, los dos ramilletes se levantan, y los ojos se abren extensamente; luego empieza á volar, y se oye su grito melancólico y monótono. 4. Vuela silenciosamente con las alas desplegadas, y sólo de cuando en cuando suele pegar al aire con ellas; muy luego se sienta en una rama ó encima de una roca para *observar* el vecindario. 5. Se deja caer con *agilidad* sobre su presa, y la mata de (*with*) un picotazo y de un apretón con las garras. 6. En seguida la devora casi íntegra; sólo la despedaza cuando es demasiado grande. 7. De día es cobarde, astuto y destructor de noche. 8. Come *principalmente* roedores, murciélagos, pajarillos, pero no rehusa los *insectos*, y come hasta lagartos. 9. Se encuentra *ordinariamente* en las selvas ó las montañas, aun en las alturas muy grandes. 10. Anida en los lugares de refugio, donde construye un ligero nido de ramitas secas y pastito, ó usa un nido *abandonado* por otra ave, si el tamaño le acomoda. 11. La hembra pone de dos á tres huevos blancos y casi redondos. 12. Los polluelos guardan nido mucho tiempo, adonde los padres les llevan el alimento que necesitan para su sustento.

b) 1. At nightfall owls open their eyes and come out of their hiding-



places. 2. They fly very silently, for their bodies are thickly covered with soft *plumage*. 3. Buzzards fly without beating the air with their wings. 4. Ostriches do not build nests, but (*sino que*) lay their eggs on the sand, where the heat of the sun hatches them. 5. The blacksmith's little boy burned his hand on (*con*) a piece of hot iron. 6. His father cooled it in the trough, poured some oil on it, and bound it up with his handkerchief. 7. The stranger carried a fishing-rod over (*en*) his right shoulder, and a basket on his left arm. 8. A broad-brimmed straw hat protected his head from (*contra*) the sun, and he wore waterproof boots to keep his feet dry. 9. The young man put his hand in his vest pocket, took out a coin, and gave it to the beggar. 10. Have you seen Mr. N. since (*desde que*) he returned from Germany? He has let his hair grow long (*mucho*), and has shaved off his mustache. 11. The old gentleman with the bald head and a white necktie is a *prominent* lawyer. 12. *General Lastarria* wears a full beard to cover a scar that he has on his right cheek. 13. The prisoner stood at the window, with bowed head, his lips tightly compressed, and his arms folded across (*sobre*) his breast. 14. The surgeon took off his coat and rolled up his shirt-sleeves, and then washed his hands in an *antiseptic solution* before commencing the *operation*. 15. The witness was about sixty years old, tall and thin, with an aquiline nose, and piercing grey eyes that shone beneath thick, bristling eyebrows. 16. His face was carefully shaven, and his straight mouth and thin lips, together with his *prominent* chin, indicated a resolute, if not obstinate, character. 17. He laid (*puso*) his hat on a chair, and ran his bony fingers through his white hair before beginning to speak.

NOTES. 6. poured some oil on it, *le echó aceite*.

9. vest pocket: render—the pocket of, etc.

11. the bald . . . a white: omit the articles.

15. beneath, *á la sombra de*.

17. ran: use appropriate form of *pasar*.

---

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND THE GERUND.

488. The true present participle ending in *ante*, *ente* or *iente*, derived from the Latin participle in *an[t]s*, *antis*, *en[t]s*, *entis*, is no longer in use in Spanish as a part of the verb. Some of these obsolete participles are now employed as adjectives,

others only as nouns, while a few do duty as prepositions, adverbs or conjunctions; but the greater number have disappeared from the language:—

Causar, to cause.	Causante, causative.
Distar, to be distant.	Distante, distant.
Perseverar, to persevere.	Perseverante, persevering.
Diferir, to differ.	Diferente, different.
Depender, to depend.	Dependiente, dependent.
Estudiar, to study.	El estudiante, the student.
Residir, to reside.	El residente, the resident.
Habitar, to inhabit.	El habitante, the inhabitant.
Escribir, to write.	El escribiente, the amanuensis.
Romper, to break.	Los rompientes, the breakers.
Bastar, to suffice.	Bastante, sufficient, enough.
Durar, to last.	Durante, during.
Etc. Etc.	Etc. Etc.

#### THE GERUND.

489. The place of the present participle, as a part of the verb, has been taken by a form adopted almost unchanged from the Latin and called the *gerund*. In regular verbs of the first conjugation this is formed by adding *ando* to the stem; in those of the second and third conjugations, by the addition of *iendo*:—

Comprar; comprando.	To buy; buying.
Vender; vendiendo.	To sell; selling.
Vivir; viviendo.	To live; living.

This is also the case in most of the irregular verbs:—

Estar, estando.	Querer; queriendo.	Dar; dando.
Haber; habiendo.	Tener; teniendo.	Ver; viendo.
Ser; siendo.	Hacer; haciendo.	Salir; saliendo.

490. In the 2d and 3d conjugations, the *i* of the termination *iendo* is changed to *y* in the following cases: 1, when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, because unaccented *i* must not occur between two vowels; 2, the gerund of *ir*, *to go*, is *yendo*, because initial *i* followed by a vowel is changed to *y*:—

<i>Caer, to fall:</i>	<i>cayendo,</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>caiendo.</i>
<i>Construir, to construct:</i>	<i>construyendo,</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>construyendo.</i>
<i>Ir, to go:</i>	<i>yendo,</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>iendo.</i>

491. There is a *perfect* of the gerund made up of a past participle governed by the gerund of the auxiliary verb *haber*:—

<i>Habiende comprado,</i> having bought.	<i>Habiendo vivido,</i> having lived.
<i>Habiendo vendido,</i> having sold.	<i>Habiendo visto,</i> having seen.
Etc.	Etc.

492. The gerund is invariable in form and has the same regimen as the verb from which it is derived; it is always subordinate to some other verb, and relates to either past, present or future according to the connection in which it is employed. Its leading use is in parenthetic, explanatory clauses:—

<p>Su discusión será además trabajo para muchos meses, porque, <i>siendo tan complicada la materia y teniendo tan estrechas relaciones con la legislación interior de cada país,</i> no será posible conciliar de momento sus diversos intereses.</p>	<p>Its discussion, furthermore, will be a work of many months, because, the subject being so complex and having such close relations with the internal legislation of each country, it will not be possible to adjust offhand their several interests.</p>
---	--

<p><i>Dando vuelta á la ciudad por el valle de Silo, y subiendo por la margen izquierda del torrente Cedrón,</i> regresamos al monte Olivete.</p>	<p>Making the circuit of the city along the valley of Shiloh, and ascending the left bank of the brook Kidron, we returned to the Mount of Olives.</p>
---	--

493. In descriptions and narrations the gerund is most elegantly placed at the beginning of the sentence, even when the subject is a noun:—

<p><i>Llegando tarde á la fonda los demás,</i> no hallaron habitación vacía.</p>	<p>The rest arriving late at the hotel, did not find a room empty.</p>
<p><i>Queriendo ahora el alcalde poner término á la contienda,</i> dijo . . .</p>	<p>The mayor now wishing to put an end to the controversy, said . . .</p>
<p><i>Habiendo notado el ladrón que se hallaba abierta una de las ventanas del piso segundo,</i> se metió á trepar por las enredaderas que cubrían la fachada de la casa.</p>	<p>The thief having noticed that one of the windows on the second floor was open, began to climb up the vines that covered the front of the house.</p>

**494.** In clauses where it would otherwise be difficult to determine which of several nouns is the subject of the gerund, the appropriate personal pronoun is inserted immediately after the gerund:—

La encontré volviendo yo de la caza.	I met her as I was returning from hunting.
Temí que mi hermano, no estando yo presente, cometiera algún disparate.	I feared that my brother, I not being present, would commit some blunder.
Toda su felicidad estaba circunscrita en aquel niño, y faltándoles él, parecía la casa solitaria.	All their happiness was centered in that child, and when he was absent from them the house seemed desolate.

**495.** In all the foregoing examples the gerund is explanatory of the subject of the sentence ; it may equally apply to the object:—

Veo á los niños jugando en la plaza.	I see the children playing in the square.
Hallé á mi hermano escribiendo una carta á su esposa.	I found my brother writing a letter to his wife.
Aquí tengo su carta anunciando su intención de partir.	I have his letter here announcing his intention to leave.

**496.** The gerund serves also to describe the action of a verb which it accompanies:—

El muchacho viene corriendo.	The boy comes running.
Van cantando por las calles.	They go singing through the streets.
Ella entró llorando.	She came in weeping.
Continúa hablando.	He continues speaking.
El general pasó la noche estudiando los mapas de la comarca y marcando en ellos las posiciones que consideraba ventajosas.	The general spent the night studying the maps of the territory and marking on them the positions which he considered advantageous.

**497.** The gerund is used with *estar*, *to be*, to express the action of the verb as unfinished and continuing at the time in question. This usage is parallel with the English mode of expression:—



Ella está tocando el piano.	She is playing the piano.
¿De qué están Vds. hablando?	Of what are you talking?
¿Qué ha estado V. haciendo hoy?	What have you been doing to-day?
Estaba yo escribiendo cuando entró.	I was writing when he entered.
¿Qué estaban haciendo los muchachos en el patio?	What were the boys doing in the court-yard?
Mañana á estas horas estaremos viajando.	This time to-morrow we will be travelling.

REMARK.—The verb *ser*, *to be*, is never employed with the gerund, since the latter denotes only a temporary duration.

498. The gerunds of *ir*, *to go*, *venir*, *to come*, and *ser* and *estar*, *to be*, are not used with any tense of *estar* to express continuance; the verb is simply placed in the tense proper to the time in question, or the idea is expressed by some different construction:—

Mis tres hermanas vienen esta tarde para tocar el piano.	My three sisters are coming this evening to play the piano.
Iba allí cuando V. me vió.	I was going there when you saw me.
Están pintando mi casa.	My house is being painted.

499. With the verbs *ir* and *andar*, both meaning *to go*, and *venir*, *to come*, the gerund expresses continuance with a progressive meaning, indicating that the action of the gerund goes on increasing:—

Voy comprendiendo su significado.	I am getting to understand its meaning.
Anda haciendo disparates.	He goes on making blunders.
En la parte exterior, y conforme avanzaba la noche, la tempestad iba tomando proporciones formidables.	Outside, the storm, as the night advanced, was assuming formidable proportions.
Su insolencia viene siendo insupportable.	His insolence is getting to be unbearable.

500. The gerunds of *estar*, *ir*, and *andar* may be used as auxiliaries to other gerunds:—

Yendo haraganeando de esta manera, atravesó un puente y llegó á una plaza espaciosa.	Going strolling along in this way, he crossed a bridge and came to a spacious square.
Estando escribiendo el coronel, no quiso molestarle su ayudante.	As the colonel was writing, his adjutant did not wish to disturb him.

**501.** When the gerund governs one or more personal pronouns of simple objective form, they are appended to it so as to form one word:—

Encontrándola; viéndose.	Meeting her; seeing himself.
Dándomelo; prestándonoslos.	Giving me it; lending us them.
Encontrándose tan inesperadamente privados de luz, . . .	Finding themselves so suddenly deprived of light, . . .
El único caballo que nos quedó, faltándole un ojo, no servía.	The only horse we had left was of no use, as he lacked an eye.

**502.** But if the gerund be governed by *estar*, *ir*, *andar*, or *venir* (as shown in § 499), the pronouns may either precede the verb or be joined to the gerund, the former being the usual arrangement:—

Le estoy escribiendo ahora. }	I am writing to him now.
Estoy escribiéndole ahora. }	
Me estaba afeitando cuando llamó á la puerta.	I was shaving myself when he knocked at the door.
Estaba afeitándome cuando llamó á la puerta.	
Le voy comprendiendo á V.	I am getting to understand you.
Ella se va americanizando.	She is becoming Americanized.
Pronto tendrán Vds. la ocasión de presenciar espectáculos como el que les vengo describiendo.	You will soon have an opportunity to witness scenes like that which I am describing to you.

REMARK.—The objective pronouns, as we have seen (§§ 467–9), are similarly appended to the infinitive.

**503.** If the personal pronoun be governed by the compound gerund (formed of *habiendo* and the past participle of another verb), it is attached to *habiendo*, and does not follow the past participle:—

El marinero sacó del bolsillo una pipa corta y ennegrecida, y habiéndola llenado de tabaco ordinario, la encendió con una brasa.  
El juez limpió sus espejuelos, y habiéndose los puesto, escudriñó al testigo.

The sailor drew from his pocket a short blackened pipe, and having filled it with coarse tobacco, lit it with a coal.  
The judge wiped his glasses, and having put them on, scrutinized the witness.

504. The gerund is used to express the cause, manner, or means of an action, without being introduced by any connecting word. In English some such word as *by*, *as*, *since*, *when* or *while* would be needed, or the gerund would be replaced by some other tense:—

El comercio no debemos buscarlo combatiendo los artículos de producción barata sino abaratando los de producción cara, para que ellos aumenten el consumo poniéndose al alcance del mayor número y consultando así el interés de la colectividad.

We must not seek trade *by* fighting against articles of cheap production, but *by* cheapening those of dear production, so as to increase their consumption *by* placing them within the reach of the greater number and consulting in this way the interests of the people at large.

No teniendo dinero, empeñó su reloj.

As he had no money he pawned his watch.

Siendo tan tarde, no iré.

Since it is so late I shall not go.

Siendo capitán el almirante Blake, fué mandado con una pequeña escuadra contra las posesiones españolas.

While Admiral Blake was a captain, he was sent with a small squadron against the Spanish possessions.

REMARK.—The greater number of such sentences might also be rendered as in English:—

Como no tenía dinero . . .

As he had no money . . .

Puesto que es tan tarde . . .

Since it is so late . . .

Mientras que era capitán . . .

While he was captain . . .

505. The gerund in Spanish is never preceded by any preposition except *en*, which is used when something happens after the completion of the action expressed by the gerund; an expression of like value is formed in English by *on* before a present participle:—

En acabando mi cigarro, le acompañaré á V.	When I have finished (on finishing) my cigar, I will go with you.
En regresando del teatro, fui á mi habitación.	On returning from the theater I went to my room.
	<i>but</i>
Regresando del teatro perdí mi cartera.	In returning from the theater I lost my wallet.

506. In all other cases it is the infinitive which in Spanish is governed by a preposition, while in English it is uniformly the present participle:—

No soy capaz de distinguirlos entre sí.	I am incapable of distinguishing between them.
Está adicto á beber.	He is addicted to drinking.
No tardará en venir.	He will not delay in coming.
La dificultad consiste en hallarle en casa.	The difficulty consists in finding him at home.
Después de comer fuma su cigarro de sobremesa.	After eating he smokes his after-dinner cigar.
Además de no pagarme, me insulta.	Besides not paying me, he insults me.

507. After verbs of seeing and hearing, the infinitive is more usual than the gerund:—

La vimos bailar.	We saw her dance.
Los veo venir.	I see them coming.
La oímos tocar el piano.	We heard her playing the piano.

508. The gerund cannot be used as a verbal noun, as is the English present participle; in Spanish it is the infinitive which is so employed. When not governed by a preposition, the verbal noun usually takes the definite article:—

El perfecto tocar de este músico me encanta.	The perfect playing of this musician delights me.
No es cosa fácil el escribir un buen poema.	Writing a good poem is no easy thing.
El leer con luz insuficiente perjudica los ojos.	Reading with insufficient light injures the eyes.
Esta señorita aborrece el fumar.	This young lady abhors smoking.



509. Nor can the gerund be used as an adjective to qualify a noun; the meaning must be expressed by the present participle, or some adjective of equal value. As no such difference exists in English, the following examples are given to aid the student in distinguishing between the gerund and a participial adjective:—

Un libro interesante.	An interesting book.
Una cesta colgante.	A hanging basket.
Agua corriente.	<i>Running</i> water.
Esta inmensa cantidad de agua corriendo al mar, se pierde para ser levantada después por la acción de los rayos solares.	This immense body of water <i>running</i> to the sea, loses itself to be afterwards drawn up by the action of the solar rays.
Un blanco flotante.	A <i>floating</i> target.
Los marineros vieron un objeto informe flotando en el agua.	The sailors saw a shapeless object <i>floating</i> in the water.
La colonia creciente.	The <i>growing</i> colony.
El niño, creciendo diariamente, llegará á ser hombre.	The child, <i>growing</i> daily, will get to be a man.
El gladiador moribundo.	The <i>dying</i> gladiator.
Le encontramos muriendo de hambre.	We found him <i>dying</i> of hunger.

510. If no participial, or equivalent, adjective exists, its place is supplied by a relative pronoun and a finite verb:—

Cerca de mi finca hay numerosos arroyos que contienen abundancia de peces.	Near my estate there are numerous brooks containing an abundance of fish.
Era imposible subir más á causa de las rocas que obstruían el canal.	It was impossible to go farther up on account of the rocks obstructing the channel.
Los geranios necesitan mucho sol, y no prosperan colocados en las ventanas que dan al norte.	Geraniums need a great deal of sunlight, and will not thrive [when] placed in windows facing the north.

511. When used descriptively to express a condition and not an action, the following past participles are required instead of gerunds:—

Colgado, hanging.

Dormido, sleeping, asleep.

Echado, lying.

Inclinado, leaning.

Parado, standing.

Reclinado, reclining.

Sentado, sitting.

Tendido, lying (*lit.* stretched out).

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

a) 1. Con ademán cortés y gracioso Don Joaquín ayudó á su novia á subir al wagón, empujándola levemente por el tallo. 2. Después entró él, arrojando antes el puro á medio fumar. 3. Ya oscilaba el tren cuando penetró en el departamento, cerrando la portezuela tras sí. 4. La velocidad fué aumentando, y el tren completo cruzó ante las gentes de la despedida, dejándoles en los ojos confusa *impresión* la línea de las caras asomadas á las ventanillas. 5. La férrea serpiente, majestuosa y veloz, salió á (*into*) la noche, despidiendo la negra máquina centellas de fuego, semejantes á espíritus *funkísticos*, danzando entre las tinieblas nocturnas. 6. Mientras Don Joaquín metía en la rejilla mantas, sacos, y lio de paraguas, la novia lloraba silenciosamente, ocultando la cara en el pañuelo. 7. Á su vez consideraba á la niña Don Joaquín como aquél (*one*) que volviendo de países nevados y desiertos, mira un vallecillo alegre que por casualidad encuentra en el camino. 8. Bien comprendía el novio que le tocaba decir algo, compartir aquel primer dolor, mas sabiendo que hay casos en que fracasan las huecas fórmulas, guardó el silencio, pensando para (*to*) si mismo:—No es más que un chubasco; tras la lluvia vendrá el buen tiempo. 9. El tren seguía su marcha retemblando, acelerándose, y cuneando á veces, deteniéndose un minuto solo en las *estaciones*, cuyo nombre cantaba la voz ronca y melancólica de los empleados. 10. Fuera, los postes del telégrafo parecían una fila de espectros; los árboles sacudían su desmelenada cabeza, agitando ramas semejantes á brazos tendidos con (*in*) desesperación pidiendo socorro.

11.

“Es de mañana: el cefrillo blando,  
 Los nidos de las tórtolas meciendo,  
 Se escucha entre las hojas susurrando,  
 Gratos aromas del vergel trayendo,  
 Divinos sonos del laúd llevando,  
 Y mis sueltos cabellos esparciendo  
 Sobre la frente de (*with*) placer *radiante*,  
 Me refresca y serena el semblante.”

ÚRSULA CÉSPEDES DE ESCANAVERINO.

b) 1. While John was leading his pony to water (*at abrevadero*), he slipped on the ice and sprained his ankle; he came back limping, supporting himself on the pony's neck. 2. The *entomologist* learned the habits of the ants by *observing* them daily at (*on*) their busy tasks. 3. While the

lighthouse-keeper was sitting smoking, his Newfoundland dog stood close by him, resting his muzzle upon his master's knee. 4. The door-keeper told me that the attorney-general was *dictating important* letters and did not wish to be interrupted. 5. The new boarder showed his low breeding by picking his teeth at the table. 6. When I entered the room, the colonel was standing before the fire-place, smoking a cheroot, with his hands thrust into his pockets, gazing steadily at the glowing embers. 7. The artist was painting a picture *representing* a beautiful girl reclining on a low couch and fanning herself with a fan of ostrich plumes. 8. "You lie!" shouted the lieutenant, throwing aside the curtains and striding forward into (*hacia*) the middle of the room. 9. We spend the long winter evenings sitting by (*junto á*) the fire, reading or telling anecdotes. 10. To-morrow Messrs. *Torres & Co.* will sell at (*en*) auction the row of houses that are being built on (*en*) Spring Street. 11. *Professor Kratzenkopf* has spent thirty years studying the development of the vowels of *popular* Latin in the Romance Languages. 12. The shepherd-boy was lying on his back watching the fleecy clouds floating in the sky above him. 13. Instead of studying or attempting to improve his mind, he spent his evenings playing billiards or talking politics. 14. The *barometer* (3) kept on falling and the heat was getting to be unbearable. 15. Now (*ya*) I am getting to *appreciate* the hardships that you have undergone. 16. Having built a screen of fir boughs to protect us from (*contra*) the wind, we kindled a good fire and began preparations for (*de*) supper.

NOTES. 3. stood, *permanecía parado*.

9. the . . . winter evenings, *las . . . veladas del invierno*.

12. the sky above him, *lo alto del cielo*.

13. his evenings, *las veladas*.

16. preparations . . . supper: supply definite article in each case.

## LESSON XXXV.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

¶ There are a number of words of a hybrid character, vacillating in value and usage between pronouns and adjectives, and occasionally employed adverbially, which we will call *adjective pronouns*. The class comprises indefinite pronouns, possessive pronouns or adjectives, demonstrative pronouns, and a large residuum of miscellaneous adjective pronouns. These groups will be treated separately and in the order named.

512. The following, which never designate any particular person or thing, are regarded as indefinite pronouns:—

**Alguien**, somebody, anybody.

**Alguno**, some, any.

**Algo**, something, anything.

**Nadie**, nobody, not anybody.

**Ninguno**, none, no, not any.

**Nada**, nothing, not anything.

NOTE.—**Alguien**, **algo**, and their opposites **nadie**, **nada**, are invariable in form, have no plural, and are only used absolutely, i.e., they stand alone and do not qualify nouns.

**513.** **Alguien** applies to persons only. It may be preceded by any preposition, and as it denotes a person, it requires **á** when it is a direct object :—

**Alguien** viene; **alguien** habla.

¿Estudia V. con **alguien**?

¿Busca V. **á** **alguien**?

¿Ha visto V. **á** **alguien**?

Somebody is coming; someone speaks.

Do you study with anyone?

Are you looking for anyone?

Did you see anybody?

**514.** **Algo** applies only to things. It may be used before an adjective just as *something* or *anything* is in English :—

¿Busca V. **algo**?

Ví **algo** blanco.

¿Hace el muchacho **algo** útil?

¿Tiene V. **algo** bonito?

Are you looking for anything?

I saw something white.

Does the boy do anything useful?

Have you anything pretty?

REMARK.—An adjective following **algo** is often preceded by **de** :—

Tengo **algo** de interesante.

¿Dicen **algo** de nuevo?

I have something interesting.

Do they say anything new?

**515.** **Algo** is also used as an adverb before adjectives or other adverbs in the sense of *somewhat*, *rather* :—

Ella es **algo** preguntona.

Mi padre está **algo** malhumorado esta noche.

Vino **algo** tarde, **algo** temprano.

She is rather inquisitive.

My father is somewhat ill-humored this evening.

He came rather late, rather early.

**516.** **Alguno** is used either alone or as an adjective, and applies to persons or things. It is varied like any adjective in **o**.



517. Referring to persons, *alguno* means *some, any, a few, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody*, and requires the preposition *á* when it is direct object:—

Alguna niña; algunos soldados.	Some girl; a few soldiers.
Vemos á alguno de los amigos de V.	We see one of your friends.
Voy á llamar á alguno.	I am going to call one (of them).

518. *Alguno*, used absolutely and denoting a person, is distinguished from *alguien* in this, that *alguno* applies to some one of a number already referred to or thought of; *alguien*, to somebody not previously considered. So *alguien* cannot, like *alguno*, be followed by *de*, indicating some one of a number:—

¿Ve V. á alguien?	Do you see anybody?
¿Ve V. á alguno?	Do you see any one (of those we are looking for)?
Alguien viene.	Someone ( <i>unknown</i> ) is coming.
Alguno viene.	Some one (of those we expect) is coming.
Alguno de mis amigos viene.	Some one of my friends is coming.

REMARK.—Of course where a distinction of number or gender is required, the appropriate form of *alguno* takes the place of *alguien*:—

Veo á alguna.	I see somebody ( <i>female</i> ).
Algunos vienen.	Some folks are coming.

519. *Alguno*, when referring to things, has the meaning of *some, any, a few*. It is oftener omitted before a noun than the corresponding English words (§ 95):—

Voy á vender algunos de mis caballos.	I am going to sell some of my horses.
Quiero comprar algunos libros.	I want to buy a few books.
Yo también quiero comprar algunos.	I also wish to buy some.
¿Tiene V. tabaco?	Have you any tobacco?
Sí, tengo.	Yes, I have some.

520. The distinctions drawn between *alguien*, *alguno* and *algo* also apply to their corresponding negatives *nadie*, *ninguno* and *nada*. These negatives require the addition of *no* to complete

the negation when they stand after the verb, but not when they precede it or stand alone <sup>1</sup>:—

No veo á nadie.	I do not see anybody.
Á nadie veo.	I see nobody.
No halló nada.	He did not find anything.
Nada halló.	He found nothing.
¿Qué dice?—Nada.	What does he say?—Nothing.
¿Quién llama?—Nadie.	Who calls?—No one.
No viene ninguno de nuestros amigos.	} None of our friends are coming.
Ninguno de nuestros amigos viene.	
¿No tiene V. tabaco?	Haven't you any tobacco?
No tengo ninguno.	I haven't any.
Ninguno tengo.	I have none.

REMARK.—The construction with *no* is the common usage of the language; the other is literary or rhetorical.

521. Any of these negatives may be combined in the same sentence:—

Él no dijo nada á nadie.	He said nothing to anybody.
Nadie dice nada.	No one says anything.
Nadie quiere leer ninguno de mis poemas.	No one will read any of my poems.

522. The positive forms *alguien* and *algo* are never used with a negative; in such a construction only *nadie* and *nada* are admissible:—

No estoy escribiendo á nadie ( <i>not no</i> estoy escribiendo á alguien).	I am not writing to anybody.
No quiero nada por ahora ( <i>not no</i> quiero algo).	I do not want anything at present.

523. *Alguno*, however, may be used in a negation, but only when associated with and following a singular noun; in such a construction it is more emphatic than *ninguno*, especially after *sin*, *without*:—

---

<sup>1</sup> The subject of negatives will be considered *in extenso* in Lesson XLIII.

El nuevo presidente no ha hecho cambio alguno.	The new president has made no changes.
No toma precaución alguna.	He takes no precaution whatever.
No tienen influencia alguna.	They have no influence at all.
Sin desgracia alguna.	Without any mishap whatsoever.
Habla sin preparación alguna.	He speaks without any preparation.

REMARK.—But if the noun be understood, or placed at a distance, *ninguno* only can be used:—

Habla de cambios sin hacer ninguno.	He talks of changes without making any.
Compra libros, pero no lee ninguno.	He buys books, but reads none.

524. After the prepositions *sin*, *without*, and *antes de*, *before*, the negative forms *nadie*, *nada*, must be used, and not *alguien*, *algo*:—

Sin ver á nadie.	Without seeing anybody.
Antes de hacer nada.	Before doing anything.
Leyó la carta sin decir nada.	He read the letter without saying anything.

525. *Nada* is employed as an adverb with the meaning of *not at all*, *by no means*. When so used it sometimes discards the attendant negative *no*:—

No adelanta nada en sus estudios.	He does not advance at all in his studies.
No es nada evidente.	It is by no means evident.
Ella es nada bonita.	She is not at all pretty.

526. *Nada* may be followed directly by a qualifying adjective, which in that case is masculine:—

No tengo nada bonito.	I have nothing pretty.
No hace nada útil.	He does nothing useful.
No queremos hacer nada imprudente.	We do not want to do anything imprudent.

527. Both *alguno* and *ninguno* drop the final *o* when used as adjectives before masculine singular nouns. This occurs also when other words intervene, provided that *alguno* or *ninguno* properly belongs to and agrees with the noun in question:—

Ella tiene algún talento musical.	She has some musical talent.
Ella no tiene talento musical alguno.	She has no musical talent whatever.
¿Tiene V. algún buen café?	Have you any good coffee?
No tengo ninguno bueno.	I have none good.
No tenemos ningún buen tabaco.	We have no good tobacco.
No veo á ningún soldado.	I do not see any soldier.
No veo á ninguno de los soldados.	I do not see any of the soldiers.

**528.** *Alguna cosa* is a popular form of *algo*, with which it is interchangeable; in like manner *ninguna cosa* or *cosa alguna* is a substitute for *nada*:—

Ya no se interesa en cosa alguna.	She no longer takes an interest in anything.
No encontraremos ninguna cosa más apropiada.	We shall not find anything more suitable.

**529.** SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE USE OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

	VARIABLE. Accompanying a noun.	INVARIABLE. Instead of a noun.
REPRESENTING PERSONS.	alguno ninguno	alguien nadie
REPRESENTING THINGS.	alguno ninguno	algo nada

**EXERCISE XXXV.**

a) 1. Algunos autores parecen *imaginar* que los sustantivos son demasiado débiles para permitirles andar sueltos y sin la custodia de algún adjetivo, y en vez de decir, "Vimos la luna asomando su faz por encima de las techumbres de los edificios," dicen, como para dar realce al cuadro que tratan de describir, "Vimos la blanca y *solitaria* luna asomando silenciosa su *pálida* faz por encima de las *irregulares* y empinadas techumbres de los soberbios edificios." 2. Á mí me parece que nada hay de inverosímil en el relato del batidor. 3. El agua del manantial tenía un gusto salobre y algo desagradable, y por consiguiente no bebí de ella. 4. Hasta



el día nadie ha logrado alcanzar el polo norte. 5. Ningún sér viviente habita aquellas comarcas de la muerte. 6. Como el aspecto de la trampa no *presentaba* nada de sospechoso, el oso ignoraba el peligro que le esperaba. 7. Es *evidente* que el testigo sabe algo que no quiere exponer. 8. Oí pasos, y salí de la garita, mas no ví á nadie. 9. Me ha confiado su secreto porque le he prometido no divulgarlo á nadie. 10. La niebla era tan *densa* que no era *posible* distinguir nada á diez pasos de *distancia*. 11. Los prisioneros eran soldados rasos, y ninguno de ellos sabía nada acerca de los *planes* de su jefe. 12. No he encontrado la última novela de V. en ninguna de las librerías; parece que nadie sabe nada de sus obras. 13. Los bandoleros miraron cautamente á derecha é izquierda, y no viendo á nadie, empezaron á desalojar los rieles con las alzaprimas que traían. 14. El proyecto de V. nos parece algo arriesgado, y antes de prometer nada, queremos saber *exactamente* qué ventaja vamos á sacar de él. 15. Si llegamos á *Santander* sin ser conocidos por nadie, estoy seguro de que cumpliremos nuestra *misión* sin contratiempo alguno, puesto que los aldeanos de por allí *simpatizan* secretamente con los *carlistas*, aunque ninguno de ellos tiene la osadía de *expresar* en público sus sentimientos.

b) 1. There is nothing of any *special importance* in his letter. 2. Nothing is preferable to *liberty* and *independence*. 3. His *expressions* are not at all *elegant*. 4. I have seen nothing in the newspapers about his marriage. 5. Does your brother want anything?—Yes, he wants some money. 6. I have no Spanish books, but my sister has some. 7. I have *invited* your friends to the wedding, but none has come. 8. It is rather *extraordinary*, isn't it? 9. It makes no *difference* whatever. 10. I have not said anything to anybody about your plan. 11. Nothing is more *important* at present. 12. I suppose that some of my friends has taken the umbrella. 13. I have no reason whatsoever to (*para*) suppose anything of the kind. 14. The *professor of Latin* (1) has some *Roman* coins that are very old. 15. It is preferable to await news from home before deciding anything. 16. We have searched his pockets without finding anything. 17. Do you want something sweet or something sour?—I haven't any *preference*. 18. His books are not at all interesting. 19. Is there anybody in the parlor?—Yes; but none of the members of the family. 20. He has written the exercises without making any mistakes. 21. I have *visited* the art gallery several times without meeting any *artists*. 22. Nothing is more *probable*. 23. They have *political influence*, but we have none. 24. None of the *roses* was *perfect*. 25. Nobody paid any *attention* to my *instructions*. 26. Jane, did any one come while I was out? 27. I did not see anybody, sir; but somebody left this letter while I was in the kitchen. 28. Do you owe anything to anybody? 29. No sir, I no longer owe any one a cent. 30. To a resolute man nothing is difficult. 31. At

(*en*) this *moment* the Cardinal entered, and crossing the hall without speaking to any one, entered the King's apartments.

NOTE. 30. a resolute man: use definite article in Spanish.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

#### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

530. In addition to those already given (§ 98), the possessive pronouns have fuller forms when they follow, or take the place of, a noun. They are then varied like adjectives ending in *o*:—

SING.	{ 1st p. Mío.	Mine, my.
	{ 2d p. Tuyo.	Thine, thy.
	{ 3d p. Suo ( <i>same as plur.</i> )	His, hers, her, its; yours, your.
PLUR.	{ 1st p. Nuestro.	Ours, our.
	{ 2d p. Vuestro.	Yours, your.
	{ 3d p. Suo ( <i>same as sing.</i> )	Theirs, their; yours, your.

REMARK.—These are called *absolute* forms because they can be used without a noun. The conjunctive forms already given (*mi, tu, su*, etc.) stand regularly before the noun, and are shorter, except *nuestro* and *vuestro* which are identical. These pronouns therefore resemble the class of adjectives which drop the final syllable before a noun, but never when coming after, or standing in place of, one.

531. The possessive pronoun is placed *after* the noun for *sake of emphasis*, in spirited language, in contrast, and for rhetorical effect; the noun in that case is regularly accompanied by the definite article:—

El derecho mío.	My right.
La influencia suya.	His influence.
Según el parecer nuestro.	According to <i>our</i> opinion.
El amor nuestro á la patria.	Our love for the country.

532. But in some expressions of a general character, occurring so frequently as to have become familiar phrases, the article is omitted;—

De parte mía.	On my part.
Á casa nuestra.	To our house.
Á fe mía.	On my word.
En favor nuestro.	In our favor.
Á costa suya.	At his expense.
Á instancias suyas.	At his entreaty.
Miró en torno suyo.	He looked around him.

533. The Spanish usage corresponds to the English in expressions where the verb *to be* is used or understood:—

El dinero es mío.	The money is mine.
El caballo castaño es suyo.	The chestnut horse is his.
Tuya es la culpa.	Thine is the blame.
¿De quién es este diccionario?—Mío.	Whose is this dictionary?—Mine.

534. In such cases *suyo* is replaced by the appropriate personal pronoun preceded by *de*, when ambiguity would otherwise result:—

Los zapatos de charol son de él;	The patent-leather shoes are his;
los botines de cuero rojo son de ella.	russet leather boots are hers.
La pluma de oro es de V.	The gold pen is yours.
Las casas de ladrillo son de ellos.	The brick houses are theirs.
Los abanicos de gasa son de ellas.	The gauze fans are theirs.
La culpa no es mía, sino de V.	The fault is not mine, but yours.

535. The possessives of the first person, i.e. *mío* and *nuestro* when employed in direct address, regularly follow the noun provided said noun be not accompanied by an adjective:—

¡Hijo mío!—Sí madre mía.	My son!—Yes, mother.
Amigos míos; oyentes míos.	My friends; my hearers.
Padre nuestro que estás en los cielos.	Our Father who art in heaven.

536. But if an adjective accompany the noun, either form may be used, with this distinction, as above stated, that the fuller form is more emphatic, and therefore more affectionate:—

Mi querido hijo. }	My dear son.
Querido hijo mío. }	

REMARK.—In the army and navy, however, superior officers are commonly addressed as *mi capitán*, *mi coronel*, *mi general*, etc.

**537.** The possessive pronoun follows the noun when taken in an indeterminate sense. It then corresponds to the English idiomatic expressions *of mine, of ours, of his*, etc.:—

Un antiguo conocido mío, nuestro.	An old acquaintance of mine, of ours.
Busca á un criado suyo.	He is looking for a servant of his.

**538.** When this usage occurs after the verb *ser*, the article is omitted unless the noun be qualified by an emphatic adjective:—

Son parroquianos nuestros.	They are customers of ours.
Es buen amigo mío, suyo.	He is <i>a</i> good friend of mine, of his.
Es un fiel y estimado amigo mío, suyo.	He is <i>a</i> faithful and valued friend of mine, of his.

We may also say:—

Es amigo mío y de mi padre.	He is a friend of mine and of my father's.
Es vecino nuestro, y del ministro mejicano.	He is a neighbor of ours and of the Mexican Minister's.

**539.** The absolute forms of the possessive pronouns are frequently used in cases where, in English, the preposition *of* or *from* and a personal pronoun would be required:—

Á pesar mío.	In spite of me.
Á nuestro rededor.	Around us.
Salieron en busca suya.	They went out in search of him.
Todavía no he recibido carta suya.	I have not yet received a letter from him.

**540.** The possessive pronoun should be repeated before each noun, unless it refers to the same person or object:—

Mi tío, mi tía y mi prima están en Guayaquil.	My uncle, aunt and cousin are in Guayaquil.
Señor mío y amigo.	Sir and friend.
Mi amigo y colega, el Sr. Gómez.	My friend and colleague, Mr. Gomez.

**541.** When the subject of the sentence is of the third person, *su* (alone) and *suyo* regularly refer to the subject, so that the



possessions of another third person must be expressed by *de él*, *de ella*, *de Vd.*, etc., either alone or in connection with *su*:—

Mi hermano ha venido á pedir á V. un libro suyo.	My brother has come to ask you for a book of his.
He venido á pedir á V. la mano de una hija suya.	I have come to ask you for the hand of one of your daughters.
V. no ha tomado el sombrero de él sino el suyo.	You have not taken his hat but your own.
Él no ha tomado el sombrero de V. sino el suyo.	He has not taken your hat but his own.

542. The possessive pronoun may be strengthened by the addition of the appropriate form of the adjective *propio*, *own*:—

Vivo en mi propia casa.	I live in my own house.
Ella enseña á sus propios niños.	She teaches her own children.
Engrandecen su propia importancia.	They magnify their own importance.

REMARK.—*Propio* is occasionally, though rarely, used interchangeably with *mismo* to intensify a personal pronoun:—

Él propio lo ha hecho.	He himself has done it.
------------------------	-------------------------

#### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.


543. Interrogative pronouns have usually been considered after the relatives, but the interrogative usage is the original one. The forms of the words are the same. The interrogative usage passes imperceptibly into one where there is no trace of an interrogation, as in the following example, where the same words occur in the same order in each sentence, shading off from a distinct question to no question at all:—

¿Quién ha ganado el premio gordo?	Who has won the capital prize?
Queremos saber quién ha ganado el premio gordo.	We wish to know who has won the capital prize.
No sabemos quién ha ganado el premio gordo.	We do not know who has won the capital prize.
El diario de hoy nos dirá quien lo ha ganado.	To-day's paper will tell us who has won it.

REMARK.—The first example is called a *direct* interrogation; the second and third, *indirect* interrogations. In these the interrogative use is dis-

tinguished in Spanish by the written accent. This not only applies to pronouns but to certain adverbs which are used both as interrogatives and as relatives:—

PRONOUNS.		ADVERBS. <sup>1</sup>	
INTERROGATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.	RELATIVE.
Quién Who?	Quien Who	Cuándo When?	Cuando When
Cuál Which?	Cual Which	Dónde Where?	Donde Where
Qué What?	Que That	Cómo How?	Come As
Cuyo Whose?	Cuyo Whose	Por qué Why?	Porque Because
Cuánto How much?	Cuanto As much		

 The above pronouns, with the exception of the invariable *que*, are varied in the same manner as adjectives of like terminations, and conform to the same laws of agreement. The adverbs are of course indeclinable.

**544.** *Quién* is only used substantively and is restricted to persons:—

¿Quién llama?

Who calls?

¿A quiénes ha ajustado V.?

Whom (what persons) have you hired?

**545.** *Qué* may precede nouns representing either persons or things. Used alone, it always has a neuter value:—

¿Qué ser humano, qué animal, qué planta ó piedra no demuestra la presciencia de Dios?

What human being, what animal, what plant or stone does not show the providence of God?

¿Qué falta en sus obras? Nada.

What is lacking in his works? Nothing.

**546.** Popularly *qué cosa* is often used for *qué* in its neuter value:—

¿Qué cosa ha dicho V.? or ¿Qué cosa?

What did you say? or What?

¿Qué cosa es? ¿Qué cosa quiere?

What is it? What does he want?

¿Qué cosa es "anacronismo"?

What is "anachronism"?

<sup>1</sup> The usage of these adverbs has been explained in previous lessons, and need not be recapitulated.

547. *Cuál* (plural *cuáles*), *which*, is applicable to persons or things, or may be used alone as referring to either. It queries *a certain one* (or *ones*) of a number indicated or understood:—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ¿Cuál de los caballos va V. á comprar, el bayo ó el negro? | Which horse are you going to buy, the bay or the black one? |
| ¿Cuál de los caminos conduce á Bemba?                      | Which road leads to Bemba?                                  |
| ¿Cuál necesita V., éste ó aquél?                           | Which do you want, this or that?                            |
| ¿Cuáles de sus casas ha vendido V.?                        | Which of your houses have you sold?                         |

548. *Cuál* takes the place of *qué*, *what*, before the verb *to be*, when the noun follows, except when a mere definition of a word is asked for:—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ¿Cuál es la fecha de su carta?  | What is the date of his letter?                               |
| ¿Cuáles son los deberes de un cónsul?   | What are the duties of a consul?                              |
| ¿Cuál será el resultado?  | What will be the result?                                      |
| ¿Qué es el panteísmo?   | What is pantheism?  |
| ¿Qué es la diferenciación del homogéneo?  | What is the differentiation of the homogeneous?               |
| ¿Qué (i.e. qué cosa) es el peligro que os espanta sino una infundada aprehensión? | What is the danger that appals you but an unfounded fear?     |
| Vds. hablan de precauciones, pero ¿cuál (not qué) es el peligro que les espanta?  | You speak of caution, but what is the danger that appals you? |

549. *Cuánto* (varied like adjectives in *o*) in the singular is equivalent to *how much*, in the plural, *how many*:—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ¿Cuánto dinero ha recibido V.?               | How much money have you received?          |
| No le diré á V. cuánto.                      | I shan't tell you how much.                |
| ¿Cuánta pólvora necesitan los soldados?      | How much powder do the soldiers need?      |
| ¿Cuántos bocoyes de azúcar han vendido Vds.? | How many hogsheads of sugar have you sold? |

550. *Cuyo* (varied like adjectives in *o*) corresponds to the English *whose*. Its interrogative use is now rare, and is almost entirely limited to cases where it is followed by the verb *ser*.

In other connections the meaning is expressed by *de quién*, or a different form is given to the inquiry by using *cuál* or *qué*:—

¿De quién es este sombrero?	}	Whose is this hat?
¿Cuyo es este sombrero?		
¿De quién es aquel hermoso edificio?	}	Whose is that handsome building?
¿Cuyo es aquel hermoso edificio?		
¿De quién es hijo ese joven?¹		Whose son is that lad?
¿Qué cuadro ha ganado el premio?		Whose picture has won the prize?
¿Cuál historia de España prefiere V.? or ¿Quién es el autor de la historia de España que V. prefiere?¹		Whose history of Spain do you prefer?

551. *Qué* and *cuánto* are also used in exclamations. These are but an extension of the interrogative use, and differ only in punctuation and the fact that they do not ask for information. The two kinds of sentences pass into each other so imperceptibly that it is sometimes difficult to distinguish them.

552. *Qué* is employed in exclamations with the meaning of *what!*; before an adverb, or an adjective not accompanying a noun, it is rendered *how!*:—

¡Qué feliz es V.!	How happy you are!
¡Qué dicha! ¡Qué lujo!	What luck! What luxury!
¡Qué vista grandiosa!	What a magnificent view!
¡Qué biblioteca elegante tiene su señor padre!	What an elegant library your father has!
¡Qué bien habla!	How well he speaks!
¡Con qué acierto teclea!	With what accuracy she fingers (manipulates the keys)!

NOTE.—No article is admissible in Spanish between the exclamatory particle and the following noun.

553. Greater emphasis or vivacity is imparted by interpolating *más*, *more*, or *tan*, *so*, between an adjective and a noun preceded by *qué*:—

---

¹ Such expressions as *¿cuyo hijo es ese joven?* *¿cuya historia de España prefiere V.?* are not now considered admissible, although recommended by their brevity and the example of various classic authors.



- ¡Qué tinta más mala! What bad ink!  
 ¡Que lugar tan silencioso, tan poético! What a quiet, poetical place!  
 ¡Qué obra tan digna de admiración! What an admirable work!

**554.** *Cuánto*, when used in exclamations, is shortened to *cuán* before adjectives not accompanying nouns, and before adverbs. Otherwise it is inflected regularly:—

- ¡Cuánto ha cambiado su señorita hermana! How much your sister has changed!  
 ¡Cuánto sabe! ¡Cuán docto es! How much he knows! How learned he is!  
 ¡Cuán fácilmente lo hace! How easily he does it!  
 ¡Cuán grandes tesoros! What great treasures!  
 ¡Cuán inocentes vidas! What innocent lives!  
 ¡Cuántos grandes tesoros! How many great treasures!  
 ¡Cuántas inocentes vidas! How many innocent lives!

**555.** *Cuánto* may be resolved into *qué tanto*, and *cuán* into *qué tan*:—

- ¡Qué tanto dista del puerto la ciudad? How far is the city from the port?  
 Qué tan arraigado es este sentimiento muy pocas personas en América lo saben. How deep-rooted this feeling is, few persons in America know.

**REMARK.**—In direct exclamations the resultant expression is identical to one explained in § 558:—

- ¡Qué acción tan generosa aquella! What a generous action that [was]!  
 ¡Qué alma tan noble! What a noble soul!

**556.** In like manner *cuál* may be resolved into *qué tal*, which is more usual than the change of *cuánto* just mentioned. Where the meaning permits, there is a distinction between *cuál* and *qué tal*: the former questions identity; the latter, quality:—

- ¡Cuál es la casa que V. habita? What house do you live in?  
 ¡Qué tal es la casa que V. habita? What kind of a house do you live in?  
 Si éstos son los vencidos, ¿qué tales serán los vencedores? If these are the vanquished, what kind of men may the victors be?  
 ¡Cuáles son los vencedores? Who (i.e. which) are the victors?

557. In indirect questions, and in both direct and indirect exclamations, a preposition governing the relative pronoun usually precedes its antecedent:—

¡De los extravíos que es capaz una imaginación exaltada ( <i>instead of</i> los extravíos de que)!	Oh the extravagances of which an exalted imagination is capable!
Sé al blanco que tiras ( <i>instead of</i> sé el blanco á que tiras).	I know what you are aiming at.
Era cosa de ver con la presteza que acometió los comestibles.	It was a sight to see the celerity with which he attacked the eatables.
La joven echó de ver con la insistencia que yo la miraba.	The young girl noticed the intentness with which I looked at her.
No quiero referir en las muchas ocasiones que yo le he prestado ayuda.	I will not mention the many occasions on which I have given him assistance.

#### EXERCISE XXXVI.

a) 1. Mi Coronel, quiero presentarle á usted á dos antiguos amigos míos, D. Fulano de Tal y D. Zutano de Al. 2. Caballeros, tengo mucho gusto en conocer á ustedes. 3. Pedro Blanco ha sido expulsado del *colegio* por haber *presentado* como suya una *tesis* que le fué escrita por Juan Moreno. 4. ¡Qué *crisántemos* tan magníficos! ¿Para quién son? ¿Quién los mandó? 5. ¡Qué hermoso es el significado de algunas palabras! “Escuela” *se deriva* de una palabra que significa “ocio.” ¿Ocio para qué, creen ustedes? 6. Y (*both*) Don Enrique y su hermano están enamorados de Doña Laura; ¿á cuál de los dos cree Vd. que ella prefiere? 7. ¿Qué es un antónimo? Es la palabra que significa lo contrario de otra palabra; por ejemplo, el antónimo de común es descomunal, de *regular*, *irregular*, etc. ¿Cuáles son los antónimos de lleno, grande, bajo? 8. No me dijo el forastero de qué ciudad era natural, pero según el tonillo suyo, será de Asturias. 9. El examen consistía en las siguientes preguntas: ¿Qué nos dice *Diodoro Sículo* acerca de las costumbres de los antiguos celtíberos? ¿Cuántas clases de colonias tenían los *Romanos*? ¿Qué eran las colonias *militares*? ¿Quién fundó las primeras colonias *militares* en España, y cuál fué su motivo en hacerlo? ¿Quién fué *Sertorio*, y qué estableció en España? ¿En qué *ocasión* fueron cerradas por primera vez las puertas del Templo de *Jano*, y por qué? ¿Cuáles fueron los *principales* resultados de la guerra *mársica*? ¿Cuántos días tenía el mes de agosto en el calendario primitivo, y por qué motivo lo alargaron? ¿Cuál fué la causa de la querella entre *Maxencio* y *Constantino el Grande*? ¿Cuál de los dos salió *victorioso*?

19.

¡Cuán hermoso está el sol! ¡Cuán dulce suena  
El céfiro fugaz entre las flores!  
¡Cuán alegres en grupos caprichosos  
Van las aves cantando sus amores!

ISAAC CARRILLO Y O'FARRILL.

8) 1. The *invention* is not entirely mine, since it was suggested to me by a neighbor of mine, Mr. *Murguía*. 2. Dr. N. has a valuable collection of coins; numismatics is a hobby of his. 3. The dress that she wears is not hers, but her married sister's. 4. This letter is undoubtedly from my grandfather, but the handwriting is not his. 5. It is not difficult to foresee what will be the result of your blunder. 6. "The glory is mine," shouted the maniac, "and no one shall take it away from me!" 7. What a picturesque place! How clearly the outlines of the trees are reflected in the water! 8. Is this note-book yours? 9. No sir, it is not mine, but Mr. *Nixon's*. 10. What are the vowels that are *combined* to form a diphthong? 11. What treatise on (*de*) nervous diseases did the doctor recommend to you? 12. He mentioned two that he *considered* excellent, but he did not say which he preferred. 13. The money is not yours; you have no right to use it. 14. What! don't you know Mr. *Villalón*? Why (*si*), he is an old friend of mine and of your father's. 15. How showy the *pelargoniums* in (*de*) our neighbor's garden are! What a *variety* of colors he has! 16. "As for my destination, and what *mission* I bear," the stranger said to me insolently, "they are my affairs and not yours." 17. What *edition* of my grammar have you, Mr. *Milton*; the second or the third? 18. I haven't it with me to-day, *Professor*, since I lent it to a class-mate of mine; but I am almost sure it is the third. 19. My uncle and former tutor has just started for *Carthagena*, where his little granddaughter is ill at her Aunt Margaret's. 20. What news does your sister-in-law's letter contain? 21. It says that your brother Thomas and his ward, Miss *Cortina*, and her cousin *Bertha*, are going to *visit* us towards the end of the month. 22. What good news! How welcome they will be!

NOTE 22. Render: What a welcome they will have!

## LESSON XXXVII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. ABSOLUTE USE OF  
ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

558. There are four demonstrative pronouns in Spanish: *este*, *ese*, *aquel* and *el* (which is the same as the definite article).<sup>1</sup> They agree with the noun to which they relate, in the same manner as adjectives:—

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
SING.	<i>Este</i> ,	<i>esta</i> ,	<i>esto</i> .	This.
	<i>Esa</i> ,	<i>esa</i> ,	<i>eso</i> .	That ( <i>near you</i> ).
	<i>Aquel</i> ,	<i>aquella</i> ,	<i>aquello</i> .	That ( <i>yonder</i> ).
	<i>El</i> ,	<i>la</i> ,	<i>lo</i> .	That ( <i>the one</i> ).
PLUR.	<i>Estos</i> ,	<i>estas</i> ,	[ <i>none</i> ].	These.
	<i>Esos</i> ,	<i>esas</i> ,	[ <i>none</i> ].	Those ( <i>near you</i> ).
	<i>Aquellos</i> ,	<i>aquellas</i> ,	[ <i>none</i> ].	Those ( <i>yonder</i> ).
	<i>Los</i> ,	<i>las</i> ,	[ <i>none</i> ].	Those ( <i>the ones</i> ).

559. *Este* denotes what is near to, or associated with, the speaker; *ese*, what is near to, or associated with, the person spoken to; and *aquel*, what is remote from both. They precede the nouns to which they belong:—

<i>Este</i> libro que yo tengo.	This book which I have.
<i>Esta</i> ciudad en donde yo estoy.	This city where I am.
<i>Ese</i> libro que V. tiene.	That book which you have.
<i>Esa</i> ciudad en donde está V.	That city where you are.
<i>Aquel</i> libro que mi tío tiene.	That book which my uncle has.
<i>Aquella</i> ciudad en donde está mi tío.	That city where my uncle is.

560. Similarly, *este* refers to a subject mentioned by the speaker; *ese*, to one mentioned by the person addressed; and *aquel*, to the ideas of a third person:—

<i>Este</i> ejemplo que he citado.	This example which I have cited.
<i>Esa</i> opinión que tiene V.	That opinion which you hold.
<i>Aquella</i> doctrina de San Pablo.	That doctrine of St. Paul's.

<sup>1</sup> The five forms of the article, *el*, *la*, *lo*, *los*, *las*, are derived from the Latin demonstrative pronoun *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; acc. plur., *illos*, *illas*. This explains the use of the article as a demonstrative pronoun in Spanish.



561. With reference to time, *este* relates to the present, *ese* to a period relatively near, while *aquel* applies to a remote time:—

Esta mañana, este año, este siglo.	This morning, year, century.
Esa época, esos años.	That epoch, those years.
Aquel suceso; aquellos siglos.	That occurrence; those centuries.
En esas horas estará en París.	By that time he will be in Paris.
Aquellos días no los llegaremos á ver.	Those days we shall not live to see.

562. In business style, *en ésta* and *en ésa* are used elliptically, the word *ciudad*, *city*, or *plaza*, *market*, being understood:—

En ésta los precios de géneros extranjeros suben sin vacilar á causa del aumento de derechos de importación.	Prices of foreign goods are steadily rising here on account of increase in import duties.
¿Cómo van los negocios en ésa?	How is business with you?

563. *Ese* (like the Latin *iste*) occasionally implies contempt, especially when placed after a noun, which in that event takes the definite article:—

¿Quién es ése?	Who is that [fellow]?
Ese chicuelo chillón.	That squalling brat.
El gaitero ese.	That confounded bagpiper.
La taimada esa.	That sly-boots.

564. The neuter forms, *esto*, *eso* and *aquello*, are only used absolutely; that is, they are never found associated with nouns. They do not refer to tangible objects, but to some statement, remark or abstract idea:—

¿Ha leído V. esto?	Have you read this?
Eso es.	That's it.
Eso parece impracticable.	That (which you propose) seems impracticable.
Aquello del filósofo griego.	That [thought] of the Greek philosopher.
Aquello no es de ninguna consecuencia.	That is of no consequence.

THE LOGICAL PRONOUN **EL**.

**564** From the Latin pronoun *ille, illa, illud*, is derived a set of forms which has three separate uses and appears in the grammars under three distinct names. Preceding a noun, or adjective used as a noun, it is called the *definite article*. As the representative of a person or thing, it appears in fuller forms as the *personal pronoun of the third person*. With these two uses the student is already familiar.

Used absolutely, occurring only as the antecedent of a relative, or preceding a possessive, but always referring to some previous noun or statement, it is treated as a demonstrative; it is, however, merely a logical demonstrative, as it does not point out, but refers to, a noun. It may thus be called the *logical pronoun*.

**565.** **El** in its several forms, when used as a pronoun, does not accompany a noun, but serves to avoid the repetition of one; it is equivalent to the English *that, those, the one, the ones*, referring to something already mentioned or understood:—

Mi casa y la que V. ve.	My house and the one which you see.
El jardín de mi casa, y el de la que V. ha comprado.	The garden of my house and that of the one which you have bought.
La pluma de acero y la de oro.	The steel pen and the gold one.
Este potro es el de que le he hablado á V.	This colt is the one about which I spoke to you.
¿No es esa escopeta la que le va á regalar á V. su tío?	Is not that gun the one your uncle is going to give you?
Los cigarros de V. ó los de su señor hermano.	Your cigars or those of your brother.

REMARK.—The last example might be expressed in English by using the possessive, but in Spanish there is only one mode of expression:—

Los cigarros de V. ó los de su señor hermano.	Your cigars or your brother's.
No tengo mi escopeta sino la de mi vecino.	I have not my gun but my neighbor's.

**566.** The logical pronoun similarly denotes persons, and should be used instead of the personal pronouns *él, ella, ellos, ellas*, when a relative pronoun follows:—

Los que hablan son Guatemaltecos.	Those who are speaking are natives of Guatemala.
El que desea mucho, siempre es pobre.	He who desires much is always poor.

Las que me ha indicado V. son primas mías.

Aquel soldado es el que ha matado á mi perro.

La de quien VV. hablan es mi hermana.

Those [ladies] whom you have pointed out to me are cousins of mine.

That soldier is the one that killed my dog.

She of whom you speak is my sister.

567. But when the relative following is governed by a preposition, *aquél* is more usual as an antecedent than *el*, when referring to persons:—

Aquella á quien adoro.

Aquél de quien he recibido esta carta.

Aquéllos con quienes hemos hablado no apoyan la medida.

She whom I adore.

He from whom I have received this letter.

Those with whom we have spoken do not favor the measure.

568. The masculine singular of the logical pronoun, *el*, coalesces with *de* and *á* in the same manner as when it is the definite article. (The personal pronoun, *él*, of stronger form, does not do so):—

Los que viven en el hemisferio austral ven al sol describir su arco diurno por encima del horizonte del norte y no por encima del del sur.

Al que tiene, se dará; y al que no tiene, aun lo que tiene, se le quitará.

¿Á qué teatro iremos?—Al del Duque.<sup>1</sup>

Those who live in the southern hemisphere see the sun describe its daily arc above the horizon of the north and not above that of the south.

To him that hath shall be given; and from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath.

What theater shall we go to?—To the Duke's.

569. The neuter form *lo* refers only to a previous idea, thought or sentence, and not to any person or thing. Its principal use is to supply the antecedent before a relative pronoun, which in English is contained in the pronoun *what*, which is always expressed in full in Spanish by *lo que*:—

<sup>1</sup> A theater in Seville, named in honor of the Duke of Montpensier.

Eso es exactamente lo que quiero.	That is exactly what I want.
¿Ha leído V. lo que he copiado?	Have you read what I have copied?
Si lo que dice es verdad, . . .	If what he says is true, . . .
Estas circunstancias han ayudado materialmente á hacer á la Inglaterra lo que es en la actualidad.	These circumstances have aided materially in making England what she is at present.

570. Either part of the expression *lo que* may be governed by a preposition, which in either case precedes the entire expression. In English a preposition governing the relative part of *what* is placed at the end of the phrase:—

No puedo formar concepto de lo que dirá.	I can not form a conjecture of what he will say.
V. encontrará las costumbres muy diferentes de lo que espera.	You will find the customs very different from what you expect.
Eso es exactamente en lo que yo estaba pensando.	That is exactly what I was thinking about.
Es imposible prever á lo que la tiranía pueda incitarlos.	It is impossible to foresee what tyranny may drive them to.

NOTE.—In the last two examples the preposition governs *que*, although standing before *lo*; the construction resembles that explained at § 557.

571. When each member of the expression *lo que* is governed by a separate preposition, both prepositions precede *lo*, the one applying to *que* being placed last. But this is a clumsy construction, and should be avoided whenever possible:—

Es difícil conciliar lo que refiere el profesor, con á lo que hemos estado acostumbrados.	It is difficult to reconcile what the professor says with what we have been accustomed to.
No tengo ningún recuerdo de á lo que V. se refiere ( <i>better</i> de eso á que V. se refiere).	I have no recollection of what you refer to.

572. *Lo que*, in exclamations, expresses manner or quantity, thus being equivalent to *cómo* or *cuánto*:—

¡Lo que ciega á los hombres la codicia!	How cupidity blinds men!
¡Lo que vale la influencia política!	How much political influence is worth!



¿Lo que es tener buena ropa!	What a fine thing it is to have good clothes!
La experiencia de cada día muestra lo deleznable que es la popularidad.	Daily experience demonstrates how unstable is popularity.

573. *Lo* is used elliptically with *de* to represent *the question, the affair of*; thus:—

Es lo de siempre.	It is the old story ( <i>that of always</i> ).
Lo del arancel.	The tariff question.
Concerniente á lo de Pierra.	Concerning the Pierra affair.

#### ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS USED ABSOLUTELY.

574. In Spanish any adjective, participle or adjective-pronoun may be used absolutely; that is, may stand alone, either employed as a noun, or referring to a noun understood or previously expressed. (This is not common in English except in the plural, where we say: *the rich and the poor; the righteous, the wicked*. Usually in the singular, and often in the plural, we express the noun, or indicate it by the use of *one, ones*):—

El viejo, una vieja.	The old man, the old woman.
Un anciano, una anciana. <sup>1</sup>	An elderly gentleman, an aged lady.
El rico; los ricos.	The rich man; the rich.
El enfermó, la enferma.	The sick person ( <i>male or female</i> ).
El potro bayo y el negro.	The bay colt and the black one.
Las ventanas abiertas y las cerradas.	The open windows and the closed ones.
¿Qué escopeta ha tomado V.?—He tomada la cargada.	Which gun did you take?—I took the loaded one.

575. This usage also applies to the absolute forms of the possessive pronouns *mío, suyo*, etc. When these stand in the place of nouns, they are regularly accompanied by the definite article, both agreeing with the thing possessed:—

---

<sup>1</sup> *Anciano* is more respectful than *viejo*, and is therefore preferable in polite language when applied to persons. *Old*, relating to the length of existence of anything, is rendered by *antiguo*: *un antiguo amigo, a friend of long standing*.

Entre su familia y la mía existe una amistad muy estrecha.	A very close friendship exists between his family and mine.
Los amigos de V. y los nuestros.	Your friends and ours.
Ese sujeto no está contento con gastar su propio tiempo, sino que quiere también gastar el mío.	That individual is not satisfied with wasting his own time, but wishes to waste mine too.
Mi casa es semejante á la suya.	My house is similar to his.

576. When necessary for the clearness of the sentence, *suyo* is replaced by the appropriate personal pronoun preceded by *de*, the article still agreeing with the thing possessed:—

Nuestros amigos y los de V.	Our friends and yours.
Mi casa está cerca de la de ella.	My house is near hers.
Ha cambiado su caballo por el de ellas.	He has exchanged his horse for theirs (the ladies').

577. When *uno* represents a noun previously expressed, it is not apocopated, even though followed by an adjective; but an adjective used as a noun representing a person, requires the apocopated form:—

Si V. no tiene paraguas, le prestaré uno viejo mío.	If you have no umbrella, I will lend you an old one of mine.
Esposo mío, este abrigo que tengo está algo raído, además de estar fuera de moda; necesito uno nuevo.	Husband, this cloak of mine is rather shabby, besides being out of fashion; I need a new one.
Que un rico no tiene cuidados no es verdad.	It is not true that a rich man has no cares.

REMARK.—When the adjective is in the predicate after the verb *to be*, the indefinite article is omitted, contrary to the English usage:—

El caso es curioso.	The case is a curious <i>one</i> .
La idea de Vd. es buena.	Your idea is a good <i>one</i> .
Como mis botines eran nuevos y no tenía chanclos, no quise salir.	As my shoes were new <i>ones</i> , and I had no rubbers, I did not want to go out.

578. When the demonstrative pronouns *este*, *ese* and *aquel* are employed absolutely, they assume the written accent as a mark of distinction:—

Este caballo y aquél.  
Esa escopeta de V. y ésta mía.

This horse and that one yonder.  
That gun of yours and this one of mine.

¿Quiere V. aquellos libros ó éstos?

Do you want those books [over there] or those [near you]?

579. In referring to two persons or things, *éste* is equivalent to *the latter*, and *aquél*, *the former*; the order therefore is the reverse of the English:—

César y Cicerón son igualmente célebres en la historia romana; éste por su elocuencia, aquél por su valor.

Cæsar and Cicero are equally celebrated in Roman history; the former for his valor, the latter for his eloquence.

Una mujer hermosa gusta á los ojos; una mujer buena gusta al corazón. Si aquélla es una joya, ésta es un tesoro.

A handsome woman pleases the eyes; a good woman pleases the heart. If the former is a jewel, the latter is a treasure.

580. When there is danger of mistaking which of two nouns is the subject of a verb in a dependent clause, the one intended is reproduced by a demonstrative—*éste* applying to the nearest, and *ése* to the farthest one:—

Si la nación no ama al rey, es porque se deja [*éste or ésa*] llevar de perniciosas influencias.

If the nation does not love the king, it is because [he *or* it] allows [himself *or* itself] to be led astray by evil influences.

581. When adjectives or participles are used absolutely after the verb *to be*, they may or may not take the definite article; the distinction being that *without* the article the mere value indicated is expressed, while *with* the article it is expressed as belonging to a particular object (or objects) understood:—

Estas manzanas son agrias.  
Estas manzanas son las agrias.  
Este abanico está roto.  
Este abanico es el roto.

These apples are sour.  
These apples are the sour ones.  
This fan is broken.  
This fan is the broken one.

582. The same principle applies to the possessive pronouns: without the article they merely express ownership; with it, some particular possession:—

Aquella finca es mía.

Aquella finca es la mía.

La pluma de oro es la mía.

Estos niños son los míos.

That estate is mine (*is my property*).

That estate is mine (*the one belonging to me*).

The gold pen is my one.

These are my children.

**583.** Used absolutely in the masculine plural, the possessive pronouns denote the persons (friends, relations, servants, etc.) connected with anyone:—

Los míos.

¿Cómo están V. y los suyos?

¿Va V. á llevar á los suyos consigo?

El coronel condujo los suyos á la brecha.

My people, my friends, my party.

How are you and yours?

Are you going to take your folks with you?

The colonel led his men to the breach.

**584.** The neuter of the possessive pronouns is only used absolutely, and denotes property collectively and abstractly:—

He ganado lo mío honradamente.

No desea sino lo suyo.

I have gained my possessions honestly.

He wants only what belongs to him.

### EXERCISE XXXVII.

a) 1. ¿Cuál fué la causa del alboroto que oímos anoche en el corredor? 2. El señor *Tragalón* volvió algo achispado, y quiso entrar en la habitación del Juez *Corpancho*, creyendo que era la suya. 3. Me parece que las turcas del Señor *Tragalón* van siendo harto *frecuentes*. 4. Mamá, ¿cuál de los trajes vestiré hoy, el azul ó el castaño? 5. Me parece que éste es preferible á aquél, por ser muy ligero. 6. Éstos son lugares predilectos de los cazadores de patos silvestres. 7. Ya he leído esta revista. ¿Me hace usted el *favor* de prestarme ésa? 8. Esto que le refiero es lo que acaeció, punto por punto. 9. Lo que Jorge nos contó nos pareció verosímil, pero no pusimos fe en lo que nos dijo el práctico. 10. Caballero, ¿me hace Vd. el *favor* de decirme cuál de estos caminos conduce á *Quinas*? 11. Éste por aquí, á la derecha; aquél es el camino de (*to*) *Batabanó*. 12. Éste es el quinto día desde que mandé aquella carta, y todavía no he recibido contestación. 13. Á propósito de lo de su señor cuñado, ¿qué cosa se ha decidido? 14. No he recibido noticias desde la semana pasada, pero los suyos no tamen ningún éxito desfavorable. 15. Los griegos sobresalieron en las artes *elegantes*, los romanos en las *prácticas*; aquéllos deleitaron al mundo,




mientras que éstos lo conquistaron y lo gobernaron. 16. ¿Qué le quería á Vd. el Señor *Valdepeñas*, un préstamen? 17. Sí, ¡lo de siempre! Dijo que estaba sin trabajo y que los suyos carecían de comida. 18. ¿Cuál de aquéllos caballeros es el Señor *Robledo*? 19. El de patillas rojas y terno de sarga azul. 20. ¿Cuál fué la causa de alboroto que se armó en la cocina? 21. Mientras que la cocinera estaba hablando á la sirvienta acerca de las malas costumbres del novio de ésta, y la sirvienta replicaba contando algunos rasgos de la vida del marido de aquélla, entró un perro, creo que era el de Vd., y robó el pollo asado. 22. ¡Ay, lo que vale una buena memoria!

b) 1. What most attracted our *attention* in the *museum* was a large *aquarium* that contained hundreds of fish of showy *colors*. 2. The rich do not *realize* what it is not to have money to buy food and clothing. 3. Will you do me the *favor* to tell me which is Judge *Calvo's* house? 4. It is that large one opposite the church. 5. "These are my *jewels*," said *Cornelia*, resting her hands on the shoulders of her sons. 6. Those who have *visited* the city of Mexico extol its healthful climate, the beauty of its situation, and the courtesy of its inhabitants. 7. That is *exactly* what Dr. *Marden*, who has just returned from there, told me. 8. The pears in (*de*) your orchard are magnificent, but they do not equal those in (*de*) your friend's. 9. "That suggestion of yours is very *ingenious*," said the skipper, "but it is not *feasible*; consequently I prefer the boatswain's." 10. This cigar is one of those you gave me yesterday; they are *imported* ones, aren't they? 11. No, they are from Key West; but their flavor is equal to that of the *imported* ones. 12. This is not your cloak, but mine; yours is hanging on (*de*) the hook behind the door. 13. Now that Andrew has squandered his own [money] he comes to beg money from (*á*) his brothers. 14. Business is going very poorly here, on account of the uncertainty existing with regard to the result of the coming *election*. 15. Is this your house? 16. No sir, it is not the one in which I now live, but the one which I have just sold; mine is across the street, next to that tall one with the sandstone front. 17. What a fine thing it is to be young and have good health! 18. There go Messrs. *Catchem* and *Skinne*m, the stock-brokers, who made \$75,000 during the last panic. 19. The devil always takes care of his own.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

 A relative pronoun connects two propositions having something in common. It belongs logically to the second of the two, and relates back to a person or thing mentioned in the first, which is called the *antecedent*.

585. The most commonly-used relative in Spanish is *que*, which is applicable alike as subject or object to persons or things of either gender or number.

*Que* follows close after its antecedent, so that, although it is invariable in form, we are at no loss to see what it refers to. A preposition may intervene when it relates to things; but when it relates to persons, no preposition is admissible:—

Eligió en la playa un sitio despedido que el mar había nivelado perfectamente.	He selected on the beach a clear space which the sea had leveled perfectly.
Los asuntos que hemos sido invitados á considerar.	The matters which we have been invited to consider.
Los albañiles que hemos ajustado.	The bricklayers whom we have hired.
La yerba de que están alfombrados los prados.	The grass with which the meadows are carpeted.
Los estudios á que dedico mis horas desocupadas.	The studies to which I devote my leisure hours.

586. As *que* governed by a preposition is not applied to persons, *quien*, *who*, is used in its place; just as in English we may say “the man *that*,” but have to say “the man *from whom*.” *Quien* is confined to persons, collective bodies of persons, and things personified:—

La persona á quien me recomendó V., ha prometido conseguirme un empleo.	The person to whom you recommended me has promised to get me a situation.
Los autores de quienes he sacado estos ejemplos.	The authors from whom I have taken these examples.
Era hombre á quien nada significa-	He was a man to whom the means

ban los medios si se conseguiera el fin.	were of no consequence if the end was attained.
Pronto se mostraba la Aurora á quien saludaban los pájaros con alegres gorgeos.	Soon the dawn showed itself and the birds saluted it with joyous carols.

587. A peculiarity of *quien*, either as subject or object, is that it may include its antecedent; it is then equivalent to *he who*, plural *those who*:—

<i>Quien</i> no sabe esto es ignorante de veras.	He who does not know that is ignorant indeed.
La culpa no fué suya, sino de <i>quien</i> se lo aconsejó.	The fault was not his, but of the person who advised him [to do] it.
Afirman <i>quienes</i> presenciaron la erupción que la columna de cenizas fué proyectada hasta una altura de cinco millas.	Those who witnessed the eruption assert that the column of ashes was thrown to a height of five miles
No teniendo á <i>quien</i> consultar, ideé una traza que me produjo el mejor resultado posible.	Not having anyone to consult, I devised a scheme which produced the best possible result.

REMARK.—In English a like combination is presented by *what* = *that which*, rendered in Spanish by *lo que*.

588. Used in this sense, *quien* is not necessarily the first word of the clause:—

Soldados son <i>quienes</i> vienen. }	Those who are coming are soldiers.
<i>Quienes</i> vienen son soldados. }	
El corresponsal del Herald fué <i>quien</i> hizo esta pregunta.	It was the correspondent of the Herald who asked this question.
Francia fué en efecto <i>quien</i> fundó los primeros establecimientos extranjeros en la parte inferior del Plata.	It was indeed France who founded the first foreign settlements in the lower part of the Plata.

589. When *quien* does not include its antecedent as above, it cannot be the subject of a sentence except when used as supplementary to an antecedent clause which is otherwise complete in itself:—

El tiburón con un vigoroso aletazo se lanzó sobre el negro, *quien*, echándose diestramente á un lado, logró evitar el ataque del animal.

No asistiré á la función de esta noche; me quedaré en casa para escribir á mi esposa, *quien* está mala en San Francisco.

El primer europeo que tendió la vista por el inmenso piélago llamado, á causa de la tranquilidad de sus aguas, Océano Pacífico, fué Vasco Núñez de Balboa, *quien* tomó posesión de él á nombre del rey de España.

The shark, by a vigorous stroke, darted upon the negro, who, throwing himself dextrously to one side, succeeded in avoiding the animal's attack.

I shall not go to the play this evening. I shall stay at home and write to my wife, who is sick in San Francisco.

The first European who cast his gaze over the immense sea called, because of the stillness of its waters, Pacific Ocean, was Vasco Núñez de Balboa, who took possession of it in the name of the King of Spain.

590. The following contrasted examples illustrate the distinction in the usage and value of *que* and *quien* as subject of a relative clause:—

El rey confió esta misión á un diplomático *que* había vivido seis años en Constantinopla.

El rey confió esta misión al conde Roberto, *quien* había vivido seis años en Constantinopla.

El dueño de la casa, *quien* está actualmente en el extranjero, me ha encargado de repararla.

El dueño de la casa, *que* está muy deteriorada, me ha encargado de repararla.

The king intrusted this mission to a diplomat who had lived six years in Constantinople.

The king intrusted this mission to Count Robert, who had lived six years in Constantinople.

The owner of the house, who is at present abroad, has engaged me to repair it.

The owner of the house, which is very dilapidated, has engaged me to repair it.

#### EL CUAL AND EL QUE.

591. *Cual*, plural *cuales*, corresponds to the English *which*, as *que* does to *that*. *Cual* and *que*, preceded by the article *el*, *la*, *lo*, *los*, *las*, form relatives more precise than *quien* or *que* alone, as they have the advantage of inflection.

The two do not differ in meaning, and may be used as subject or object relating either to persons or things; but *el cual*



belongs rather to a studied or oratorical, and *el que* to a more easy and off-hand, style—just the difference between *which* and *that* in English.

**592.** *El cual* or *el que* is substituted for *quien* and *que* (according as a person or thing is referred to) under the following circumstances:—

1. When the antecedent clause is lengthy, or when the relative is at some distance from its antecedent, so that the connection is not perfectly obvious:—

Sin hablar de una ventaja que no es de despreciarse, la cual es que las islas del Cabo Verde no distan mucho del Senegal.

Registrando mi cuñado los papeles viejos de sus abuelos, halló uno muy amarillento y carcomido, el cual reconoció ser un instrumento de cesión de terrenos firmado por el cuáquero Guillermo Penn.

Without speaking of an advantage which is not to be despised, which is that the Cape Verde Islands are not far distant from Senegal.

While my brother-in-law was looking over the old papers of his ancestors, he found one, very yellow and worm-eaten, which he recognized as a deed of land signed by William Penn the Quaker.

2. When two or more nouns differing in gender or number in the antecedent clause require to be kept distinct. *El cual*, or *el que*, can then by means of its inflection point directly to the word intended:—

Me dió unos apuntes sobre las costumbres del país, los cuales me fueron después muy útiles.

Le mando á V. la narración de los viajes de Dampier, la que hallaré V. muy interesante.

Otras veces corría un arroyuelo al través de la espesura, el que atravesaban sin trabajo los exploradores.

El barón de cuando en cuando daba batidas por aquellos bosques á las cuales convidaba á sus amigos.

He gave me some points on the customs of the country which were very useful to me afterwards.

I send you the narrative of Dampier's voyages, which you will find very interesting.

At other times a brook ran through the undergrowth, which the explorers crossed without difficulty.

The baron from time to time gave hunting parties in those woods, to which he invited his friends.

3. After a clause making sense by itself, and requiring a pause—more or less slight—in speech or a punctuation mark

in writing, *el cual* or *el que* serves to resume the thread of discourse:—

Apenas entraron los cazadores en la espesura, vieron al perro luchando con un animal desconocido, al cual tenía asido por una oreja.

The hunters had scarcely entered the thicket when they saw the dog struggling with an unknown animal which he held fast by one ear.

Acabo de leer un artículo interesante sobre aquella planta notable, el plátano, la cual no produce semillas.

I have just read an interesting article upon that remarkable plant, the banana, which produces no seeds.

Pizarro acabó por hacer creer á sus compañeros que la empresa acometida era una empresa religiosa, en la cual tendrían siempre el poderoso y directo apoyo del cielo.

Pizarro eventually made his companions believe that the enterprise undertaken was a religious one, in which they would ever have the powerful and direct aid of heaven.

4. When the relative is preceded by one of the longer prepositions, or a prepositional phrase; in this case *el cual* is preferable to *el que*:—

El biombo tras el cual nos ocultábamos.

The screen behind which we were hiding.

El fin hacia el que caminamos.

The end to which we are advancing.

Un minuto, que fué un siglo, transcurrió, durante el cual Núñez trató de sorprender algún latido del corazón del desgraciado.

A minute, which was a century, passed, during which Núñez tried to discover some pulsation of the unfortunate man's heart.

Los náufragos volvieron á la punta roqueña cerca de la cual había zozobrado la goleta.

The castaways returned to the rocky point near which the schooner had capsized.

La pared del fondo, al través de la cual una puerta ancha comunicaba con la sala contigua, estaba adornada de un modo rústico pero pintoresco en alto grado.

The farther wall, through which a wide door communicated with the adjacent hall, was adorned in a rustic but highly picturesque manner.

593. When the antecedent denotes an idea or a statement and not a material reality, the relative assumes the neuter form *lo cual* or *lo que*; the simple relative *que* is then inadmissible:—

Las aguas del arroyo eran dulces, lo que nos hacía suponer que las del lago lo eran también.

B— conocía al mozo y sabía que era muy capaz, por lo cual lo había recomendado al obispo.

Al anochecer el horizonte occidental comenzó á cargarse de brumas espesas, lo que indicaba que el monzón iba á establecerse durante la noche.

The water of the brook was fresh, which made us suppose that that of the lake was so likewise.

B— knew the lad, and knew that he was very capable, for which [reason] he had recommended him to the bishop.

At nightfall the western horizon began to fill with a dense haze, which [phenomenon] indicated that the monsoon was going to set in during the night.

**594.** So when the relative is of masculine or feminine form, it relates to some previous noun of that gender; but when it is neuter it refers to the entire statement embodied in the antecedent clause:—

El coronel en su última carta habla en términos muy lisonjeros de la obra de V., la que le agrada muchísimo.

El coronel en su última carta habla en términos muy lisonjeros de la obra de V., lo que me agrada muchísimo.

Nuestro corresponsal nos envía libros, informes impresos y recortes de los periódicos del día, que nos proporcionan todos los datos que necesitamos.

Nuestro corresponsal nos envía libros, informes impresos y recortes de los periódicos del día, lo que nos proporciona todos los datos que necesitamos.

The colonel in his last letter speaks in very flattering terms of your work, which pleases him very much.

The colonel in his last letter speaks in very flattering terms of your work, which pleases me very much.

Our correspondent sends us books, printed reports and cuttings from the newspapers of the day, which give us all the information we need.

Our correspondent sends us books, printed reports and cuttings from the newspapers of the day, which gives us all the information we need.

**NOTE.**—Thus, to analyze the last pair of examples, in the first one the relative refers to the articles sent, in the second to the action of the correspondent.

**595.** El cual may be followed by a noun, as may the English *which*:—

Trató de fraguar una explicación, *en el cual esfuerzo*, no siendo hombre de imaginación acalorada, fracasó miserablemente.

He tried to invent an explanation, in which effort, not being a man of vivid imagination, he failed miserably.

El conde de Pidal entró y atravesando todo lo largo del salón, salió por la otra extremidad sin fijarse en nadie, *la cual conducta* sorprendió mucho al duque.

The count of Pidal entered and, crossing the entire length of the hall without noticing anybody, went out at the other end, which conduct very much surprised the duke.

REMARK.—Instead of this construction the noun (unaccompanied by an article) may be placed in apposition, the relative then following:—

Trató de fraguar una explicación, *esfuerzo en que* fracasó miserablemente.

He tried to invent an explanation, in which effort he failed miserably.

Atravesó todo lo largo del salón sin fijarse en nadie, *conducta que* sorprendió mucho al duque.

He crossed the entire length of the hall without noticing anybody, which conduct very much surprised the duke.

596. Cuyo is occasionally met with as a substitute for *el cual* in the construction shown above. Although objected to by grammarians, its use is nevertheless gaining acceptance:—

El cóndor, adorado en otro tiempo por los Incas, es el rey de los Andes meridionales, *en cuyas regiones* alcanza un desarrollo extraordinario.

The condor, worshipped in former times by the Incas, is the king of the southern Andes, in which regions it reaches an extraordinary size.

Toda la región de los contornos se inclina aquí por largas pendientes hacia un centro común, *cuya* ancha depresión está ocupada por el lago Salinas.

All the surrounding region converges here by long slopes towards a common center, which wide depression is occupied by lake Salinas.

597. The possessive relative *cuyo*, -a, -os, -as, relates to either persons or things, and corresponds to the English *whose*, of *which*. It agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed and not with the possessor.



Un lago trasparente, cuyas aguas reflejan las formas de los árboles que lo asombran.	A transparent lake, whose waters reflect the forms of the trees which overshadow it.
Hermosos jardines cuyas flores perfuman el aire.	Beautiful gardens whose flowers perfume the air.
Es un soldado cuyo valor es incontestable.	He is a soldier whose bravery is unquestionable.
Un pequeño pueblo, cuyo nombre he olvidado.	A small village, the name of which I have forgotten.
El caballero á cuya esposa le he presentado á V., es amigo de mi padre.	The gentleman to whose wife I presented you is a friend of my father's.

**598.** As the direct possessive is not used in Spanish in speaking of the parts of one's own person or clothing when they are the objects of a verb, *á quien* is employed in that connection instead of *cuyo*:—

Mi esposa, á quien ya le empezaba á doler la cabeza, se retiró.	My wife, whose head already commenced to ache, withdrew.
El sarjento á quien amputaron ayer la pierna, sigue bien esta mañana.	The sergeant whose leg they amputated yesterday is doing well this morning.

**599.** *Cuyo* naturally relates to an antecedent immediately preceding; reference may be made to an anterior word by means of *de quien* or *de quienes*:—

Parmenio y Clito eran dos capitanes de Alejandro de quienes el espíritu y valor eran la admiración de la posteridad. ( <i>Cuyo espíritu y valor would refer to Alejandro.</i> )	Parmenio and Clitus were two of Alexander's captains whose spirit and valor were the admiration of posterity.
--	---

**600.** *Cuanto*, when used relatively, includes its antecedent, and is to be rendered *as many as*, *as much as*, *all that*:—

Aquella desgracia inesperada llenó de espanto á cuantas personas se hallaban allí reunidas.	This unexpected calamity filled all who were there with terror.
Sus compañeros le dejaron decir cuanto quiso.	His companions let him say all he wanted to.
De cuantas personas veo no conozco á ninguna.	Of all the persons I see I do not know one.

Hasta hoy ha sido infructuoso cuanto he hecho.	Until now everything I have done has been fruitless.
Estas palabras causaron una impresión extraordinaria en cuantos las oyeron.	These words produced an extraordinary impression on all who heard them.

601. *Quien* and *cual* are repeated as correlatives either in the singular or in the plural, in which case they assume the accent for the purpose of distinction:—

Se disfrazaron <i>quién</i> de una manera, y <i>quién</i> de otra.	They disguised themselves some one way, some another.
Tengo muchos libros, <i>cuáles</i> de inglés, <i>cuáles</i> de otros idiomas.	I have many books, some in English, some in other languages.

#### LOCATION AND AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

602. A relative pronoun is never omitted as it often is in English, and when there is a governing preposition it must precede the relative:—

La nación que me cabe la honra de representar.	The nation I have the honor to represent.
Los resultados á que ya hemos llegado nos hacen esperar un éxito propicio.	The results we have already attained make us hope for success.
El error en que estamos.	The error we are in.
Las leyes á que estamos sujetos.	The laws we are subject to.

603. The sentence should be arranged so that the antecedent may stand as close before the relative as possible. In the following pairs the first version is incorrect:—

<i>Encuentro máximas en sus discursos que son contrarias á la moral.</i>	I find maxims in his speeches which are contrary to good morals.
Encuentro en sus discursos máximas que son contrarias á la moral.	I find in his speeches maxims which are contrary to good morals.
<i>(In the first, que would relate to discursos; in the second, to máximas.)</i>	
<i>La pescadora dice que tiene una cantidad de arenques en su carreta que venderá en dos pesos.</i>	The fish-wife says she has a lot of herrings in her cart which she will sell for two dollars.
La pescadora dice que tiene en su	The fish-wife says she has in her cart

carreta una cantidad de arenques  
que venderá en dos pesos.

a lot of herrings which she will sell  
for two dollars.

(*In the first example, que would relate to carreta.*)

Cicerón ha imitado á Demóstenes en  
todo lo que tiene de más elo-  
cuente.

Cicero has imitated Demosthenes in  
all his most eloquent passages.

Cicerón, en todo lo que tiene de  
más elocuente, ha imitado á De-  
móstenes.

Cicero, in all his most eloquent pas-  
sages, has imitated Demosthenes.

**604.** The verb of a relative clause usually precedes the noun, whether this be subject or object; while in English, when the noun is subject it is placed first:—

El mineral que había recogido el  
ingeniero era muy puro y rico.

The ore which the engineer had  
picked up was very pure and rich.

Los faros que revisten la costa de  
Holanda están todos contruidos  
sobre cimientos artificiales.

The light-houses which line the coast  
of Holland are all built on artificial  
foundations.

La barranca que han cavado las  
aguas del Colorado tiene aquí  
más de 500 metros de profundi-  
dad.

The ravine which the waters of the  
Colorado have excavated is here  
more than 1,500 feet deep.

Bajo la bóveda impenetrable de ver-  
dura que formaban los árboles,  
no se adivinaba cuánto había  
adelantado el sol en su carrera.

Under the impenetrable vault of  
foliage which the trees formed, it  
could not be told how far the sun  
had advanced in his course.

**REMARK.**—When the verb of the relative clause governs the relative as its direct object and has in addition an indirect object, the subject precedes the verb:—

Se cercioró de que el agua que el  
arroyo suministraba al lago (*not*  
que suministraba el arroyo al  
lago) era abundantísima.

He satisfied himself that the water  
which the brook furnished the lake  
was very abundant.

**605.** When a personal pronoun is followed immediately by a relative which is the subject of the verb in the relative clause, the verb agrees in person as well as number with the antecedent pronoun:—

Yo, que hablo á V., era antes duque de Algaba.	I who speak to you was formerly Duke of Algava.
Tú que tienes tanta influencia podrás conseguirlo.	Thou who hast so much influence wilt be able to obtain it.
Nosotros que somos tan despreciados.	We who are so despised.

606. The student will often find the relative as object of a following verb in cases where in English, to avoid placing the verb at the end, the relative clause would take the passive form:—

Cuando el gitano penetró en el corredor, dió un silbido bajo, al cual respondió otro idéntico.	When the gypsy entered the passage he gave a low whistle, which <i>was answered</i> by another like it.
Los colonos siguieron una larga playa que bañaba el vasto mar.	The colonists followed a long beach which <i>was bathed</i> by the open sea.
Un europeo en estas comarcas es un ser útil cuyo valor conocen los salvajes.	A European in these regions is a useful being, whose worth <i>is well known</i> to the savages.

607. In such constructions in English the relative and the auxiliary verb *to be* may frequently be omitted:—

La navegación de los afluentes del Amazonas está sujeta á restricciones que embarazan el franco transporte de las riquezas que brindan los bosques centrales de Sud-América; y no sé si los tratados que existen para la navegación de los ríos Orinoco, Paraná, Plata y otros, estipulan todas las garantías que demanda el crecimiento vertiginoso del comercio y de las explotaciones agrícolas.	The navigation of the tributaries of the Amazon is subject to restrictions which impede the free transportation of the treasures <i>produced</i> by the inland forests of South America; and I do not know whether the <i>existing</i> treaties concerning the navigation of the rivers Orinoco, Paraná, La Plata and others afford all the guarantees <i>demanded</i> by the amazing growth of commerce and agricultural enterprises.
---	--

#### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

a) 1. No muy lejos de nuestra casa hay una pintoresca cañada, *cuyos* dos lados están ribeteados de graciosos abedules. 2. Por la cuenca de la cañada corre un arroyo, que borbolla entre las rocas, *formando* remansos y diminutas *cascadas*. 3. Sus márgenes están pobladas de hermosos helechos,



los cuales son este año muy *abundantes* y lozanos. 4. Al pie de la cañada existe una profunda cueva, que parece destinada á servir de morada á algún dios fluvial. 5. Saliendo al campo raso, *forma* el arroyo un estanque en que *ordinariamente* abundan los peces. 6. Mi hermano y yo, que estamos muy aficionados á la pesca, acudimos á ese sitio con nuestros aparejos para pescar lobinas. 7. Un día yo cogí allí catorce que pesaban por término medio una libra. 8. Sí ¿eh? 9. Los paisajes que el campo nos presenta en el otoño son bastante variados para recrearnos contemplándolos. 10. Los árboles no presentan aquel verdor casi uniforme que tiene su follaje en el verano; tampoco (*nor*) son aquellos esqueletos desnudos en que silba el viento del invierno. 11. En el otoño algunos de los árboles están verdes y lozanos todavía, mientras que hay muchos cuyo follaje ha tomado un matiz de vistoso carmesí. 12. El contraste que se presenta entre el verde oscuro de los árboles siemprevivos, el amarillo de los abedules, el moreno rojizo de los robles, y el manto encarnado con que se han revestido los áceres, nos ofrece un cuadro cuyas variadas bellezas son *comparables* á los arreboles de oro y grana que pintan en el horizonte occidental los últimos fulgores del sol poniente. 13. La senda que conducía á la cumbre era harto escabrosa, y el avance era difícil á causa de la *multitud* de piedras movedizas de que estaba salpicado el terreno. 14. Las moles peñas-cosas que *formaban* sus lados parecían la obra destructora de un temblor de tierra. 15. El ingeniero que nos acompañaba dijo que la índole *volcánica* de la *región* era indudable.

b) 1. He who does not know thoroughly the grammar of his native language is *ignorant* indeed. 2. The *officials* with whom we have spoken believe that a war with *China* is *inevitable*. 3. In front of my window I have *planted* a climbing rose, which I water daily with the watering-pot that my cousin Charles gave me. 4. *Professor Calvo* says he has a copy of *Shakespeare's* plays in his library that was printed in the year 1623. 5. There is a word in this manuscript that is illegible. 6. There are three books among those that you sent me whose bindings are badly (*muy*) damaged. 7. The village blacksmith, who had no matches, procured fire by hammering a piece of stout iron wire, which astonished the children who were watching him. 8. It was the postman who first called my *attention* to my mistake. 9. Those who have all the money they need are not therefore (*por eso*) completely happy. 10. The robbers stationed themselves near the road, some behind trees, some under the bridge, and some crouching in the shadow of an overhanging rock. 11. The Secretary of War intrusted this hazardous *mission* to Lieutenant *Rowan*, who, besides being energetic and resourceful, was already acquainted with the *topography* of the island. 12. This muff is made of the fur of a beaver, which was given me by Johnnie *Gómez*, who caught the *animal* in a trap last spring. 13. Wal-

rusks are sought for their hides, for the oil that they give, and for their tusks, which often measure a *meter* in length. 14. The cuttlefish secretes a black fluid from (*con*) which India ink is made, and also the pigment called *sepia*, which is used in drawing. 15. The snail is a land mollusk that walks with his shell on (*á*) his back, and whose eyes are *situated* at (*on*) the ends of a pair of *tentacles* that look like horns, and which the animal lengthens or shortens at will. 16. *Coral* is a *calcareous* substance produced by polyps, commonly called "*coral insects*," which live in the *numerous cavities* or cells like bees in a hive. 17. The *solid structure* within which one of these communities of polyps dwells is called a "*polypary*," and has the form of a tree upside down, whose trunk is *fixed* to a rock.

NOTES. 2. China. supply definite article.

6. bindings: singular in Spanish (§ 486).

13. hides: see preceding note.

15. ends: see preceding note.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

608. The term *comparison* of adjectives and adverbs was invented by the early compilers of Latin grammars to denote the three forms assumed by adjectives and adverbs in Latin in making comparisons. These three forms were: *positive*, the original value; *comparative*, the value in a higher degree; *superlative*, the value in the highest degree.

a. In English we obtain these two higher degrees by adding respectively the terminations *er*, *est*, to the positive or simple form of the adjective or adverb (*long*, *longer*, *longest*), unless that would give rise to a clumsy word, in which case the same purpose is attained by employing the adverbs *more*, *most*, (*more liberal*, *most liberal*.)

b. The positive or simple form of the adjective does not in itself imply comparison.

609. There are, however, five possible degrees of comparison, three of which have been generally ignored by grammarians because they have no representative forms in Latin:—

In comparing the quality of one thing with that of another, the result may be that the first is greater than the second, or is less than it, or that both are equal. Hence are produced the comparatives of superiority, inferiority and equality. Again, one quality compared with a number of others, may prove superior or inferior to *all* the rest, thus making the superlatives of superiority and inferiority. The three additional degrees are obtained in English by the use of adverbs—*less, as, least*.

610. In Spanish all these degrees of comparison are expressed by adverbs, which do not affect the form of the adjective or adverb which they accompany; the only variations of form being in the following eight words:—

a. Four adjectives, in addition to their regular comparatives, have other and preferred forms which were irregular in Latin and have descended as anomalies into Spanish:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.
Buena, good.	Mejor ( <i>rarely, más bueno</i> ), better.
Mala, bad, poor.	Poor ( <i>seldom, más malo</i> ), worse, poorer.
Grande, great, large.	Mayor ( <i>or, más grande</i> ), greater, larger.
Pequeño, little, small.	Menor ( <i>or, más pequeño</i> ), littler, smaller.

b. Four adverbs have independent comparatives derived from the Latin, and have no others in use<sup>1</sup>:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.
Mucho, much.	Más, more.
Poco, little.	Menos, less.
Bien, well.	Mejor, better.
Mal, ill, badly.	Poor, worse.

REMARK.—As the superlative differs from the comparative only by being preceded by an article or pronoun, it is omitted above.

In all other cases the comparative of superiority is obtained by the use of *más*; that of inferiority, by *menos*:—

<sup>1</sup> *Más bien*, although in use, is not employed in comparisons. It has the meaning of *rather*, in the sense of *more correctly*, and is used in such connections as the following:—

La causa de su quiebra fué <i>más bien</i> mal manejo que mala suerte.	The cause of his failure (bankruptcy) was rather bad management than bad luck.
Su figura era seria <i>más bien</i> que triste.	His countenance was grave rather than sad.

Negro, black.	Más negro, blacker.	Menos negro, less black.
Capaz, capable.	Más capaz, more capable.	Menos capaz, less capable.
Temprano, early.	Más temprano, earlier.	Menos temprano, less early.
Cuidadosamente, carefully.	Más cuidadosamente, more carefully.	Menos cuidadosamente, less carefully.

## COMPARISON OF INEQUALITY.

611. *Más* and *menos* apply in the same way to any things or ideas susceptible of comparison. As the grammatical construction is the same for both, the two will be treated of together as the *comparison of inequality*.

In this comparison, the second member, or that *with* which the quality in question is compared, is introduced by *que*, *than*, when both members are of the same nature:—

V. anda más aprisa que yo.	You walk faster than I.
Los eclipses de luna acaecen menos amenudo que los de sol.	Eclipses of the moon occur less often than those of the sun.
Tiene más dinero que juicio.	He has more money than sense.
Es menos útil ahora que antes.	It is less useful now than before.
Don Eduardo me ha dicho que su hermana está peor.	Edward tells me his sister is worse.
La condesa fué más magnífica que elegantemente vestida.	The countess was more magnificently than elegantly dressed.
No apetezco más que el reposo de la vida privada.	I do not desire more than the quiet of private life.
No aspira á menos que al poder ejecutivo.	He aspires to no less than the executive power.
Fué más que injusto, fué brutal.	He was more than unjust, he was brutal.

612. When each member of the comparison contains a different verb, but the second member is elliptical in such a way that to fill the ellipsis the verb of the first member must be repeated, *que* is replaced by *de lo que*:—

Tiene menos dinero de lo que dice.	He has less money than he says [he has].
El examen fué menos formidable de lo que habíamos temido.	The examination was less formidable than we had apprehended [it would be].



Averigué que la yegua era más vieja de lo que me habían asegurado.	I ascertained that the mare was older than they had assured me [she was].
Ha cometido menos crímenes de lo que V. piensa.	He has committed less crimes than you think [he has].

613. If the point of comparison be a noun, the *object* of the first verb and elliptically omitted in the second member, the neuter *lo* is replaced by the proper objective pronoun (*el, la, lo; los, las*) agreeing with said noun and taking its place:—

Me ha traído menos dinero del que V. le dió.	He has brought me less money than [the money] you gave him.
Encontraron mayores inconvenientes de los que habían previsto.	They found greater difficulties than [the difficulties] they had foreseen.
Averigué que la yegua tenía más defectos de los que habían nombrado.	I found out that the mare had more defects than [the defects] they had enumerated.
Ha cometido más crímenes de los que ha confesado.	He has committed more crimes than [the crimes] he has confessed.

REMARK.—The original *que* may here be restored in place of *de*; although *de* is preferable, especially after the comparative forms in *-or*.

614. *De* alone is placed after *más* and *menos* when followed by numerals or any numerical expression, provided the sentence be affirmative; if in any way negative, either *que* or *de* may be used, the preference being for *que*:—

He perdido más de mil pesos.	I have lost more than \$1,000.
Quedan menos de cuatro días.	Less than four days remain.
No necesito más que dos.	I do not need more than two.
Le contesté sin escribir más que cinco renglones.	I answered him without writing more than five lines.
El almirante perdió más de la mitad de la flota.	The admiral lost more than half of the fleet.
Quedará más de mes y medio.	He will remain more than a month and a half.

615. The only tangible distinction between *mayor*, *menor*, on the one hand and *más grande*, *más pequeño*, on the other, is that when applied to persons the former always signify respectively *older* and *younger*. In other cases the two forms are inter-

changeable. *Mayor* and *menor*, however, occur oftener in literary language than the other two; they are also occasionally used with a metaphorical meaning, denoting eminence or importance rather than actual size:—

¿Es Don Juan mayor ó menor que V. ? Is John older or younger than you?

Diego es más grande que su hermano mayor. James is larger than his older brother.

Esta mesa es menor que ésa. } This table is smaller than that.  
Esta mesa es más pequeña que ésa. }

París es mayor que Madrid. Paris is larger than Madrid.

El altar mayor; la Plaza Mayor; La Calle Mayor; el palo mayor. The grand altar; the principal square; Main Street; the mainmast.

616. When the measure of difference in a comparison is given, it precedes the comparative adjective as in English:—

Esta grada es dos pies más ancha que aquélla. This harrow is two feet wider than that one.

Él es tres años mayor que yo. He is three years older than I.

La Navidad es tres días más pronto de lo que yo creía. Christmas is three days nearer than I thought.

#### COMPARISON OF EQUALITY.

617. The comparison of equality is expressed by *tanto*, *as much*, *so much*, *as*, *so*, the second member being introduced by *como*, *as*. The usage is as follows:—

a. When *tanto* stands before, or instead of, a noun, it is to all intents an adjective, and is varied like adjectives in -o:—

No ha mostrado tanto celo como su hermano. He has not displayed as much zeal as his brother.

Quiero tanta agua como vino. I want as much water as wine.

¿Tiene Vd. tantas rosas como dalias? Have you as many roses as dahlias?

Mi tío posee cerca de dos mil libros. My uncle has about 2,000 books,—I did not think he had so many.

b. In all other cases *tanto* is an adverb, losing the final syllable before the positive forms of adjectives and adverbs, but otherwise invariable:—

Mi criado es tan testarudo como ignorante.	My servant is as obstinate as he is ignorant.
Es hombre de gran influencia, tanto con la clase trabajadora como con la gente rica.	He is a man of great influence, as much with the working classes as with the rich people.
Don José es tan amable como su hermano es malhumorado.	Joseph is as pleasant as his brother is ill-humored.
¿Está su habitación de V. tan bien amueblada como ésta?	Is your room as well furnished as this one?
Nunca he visto una carta tan mal escrita.	I have never seen a letter so badly written.
Yo no he leído tanto como Vd.	I have not read as much as you.

618. When *tanto* is used absolutely after a verb, i.e. is not followed by a noun, adjective or adverb, *como* may be replaced by *cuanto* (meaning literally *how much*):—

Gasta tanto cuanto su hermano. }	He spends as much as his brother.
Gasta tanto como su hermano. }	
Él tiene tanto cuanto quiere.	He has as much as he wants.
Tomó tanto cuanto le pareció necesario.	He took as much as seemed to him necessary.

619. When *tanto* merely denotes a high degree producing a certain result, its correlative is *que*, and not *como*, as there is no comparison:—

Estaba tan oscuro que era imposible leer.	It was so dark that it was impossible to read.
Me dijo tanto sobre la belleza de aquella actriz que fui á verla.	He told me so much about the beauty of that actress that I went to see her.

620. *Tanto*, used adverbially and followed by *que*, means *as well as*:—

La construcción de este motor me costó muchos desvelos tanto que al superintendente.	The construction of this motor cost me as well as the superintendent many sleepless nights.
--	---

621. In the formula *tan—como*, the first may be omitted, as may its English equivalent:—

Negro como el ébano.	Black as ebony.
Redondo como una naranja.	Round as an orange.
Este pan es duro como una piedra.	This bread is hard as a rock.

622. In elevated style *como* may then be replaced by *cual*, the following noun in that case rejecting the article:—

Blanco <i>cual</i> nieve; <i>or better</i> , }	As white as snow, <i>or</i> snow-white.
<i>Cual</i> la nieve blanco.	

623. *Cual* may occasionally replace *como* in other constructions:—

Se arrojó sobre sus enemigos <i>cual</i> toro enfurecido.	He dashed upon his enemies like an enraged bull.
El conde contestaba á las preguntas con exquisita cortesía, <i>cual</i> si se hallase en una recepción palaciega.	The count answered their questions with exquisite courtesy, as if he was at a palace reception.

624. *Tanto* and not *tan* is required before *all* comparative forms of adverbs; the four separate comparative forms of adjectives, *mayor*, *menor*, *mejor*, *peor*, take *tan*. Before all other comparatives of adjectives, *tanto* is required, because it comes in contact with an actual comparative adverb—*más* or *menos*:—

<i>Tanto</i> mejor, <i>tanto</i> peor ( <i>adv.</i> ).	So much better, so much worse.
<i>Tan</i> mejor, <i>tan</i> peor ( <i>adj.</i> ).	So much better, so much worse.
<i>Tanto</i> más sólido; <i>tanto</i> más sólidamente.	So much more solid; so much more solidly.

625. In speaking of the health *mejor* and *peor* are by usage considered adjectives, and we say:—

El enfermo está <i>tan</i> mejor que quiere dejar la cama.	The patient is so much better that he wants to leave the bed.
Á las nueve estaba <i>tan</i> peor que mandaron traer el viático.	At nine o'clock he was so much worse that they sent for the sacrament.

626. *Cuanto*—*tanto*, followed by any comparatives, are used as correlatives to express ratio, corresponding to the English formula *the . . . the . . .*:—



Cuanto más gasta tanto menos ahorra.	The more he spends the less he saves.
Cuanto más viejo es el vino, tanto mejor es.	The older the wine the better it is.
Cuanto más largo es el día tanto más corta la noche.	The longer the day the shorter the night.
Cuanto más lo examino, tanto menos sentido encuentro en ello.	The more I examine it the less meaning I find in it.

REMARK.—In such sentences *tanto* may be elliptically omitted; also, *mientras* may be used instead of *cuanto*:—

Cuanto más, mejor.	The more the better.
Claro era que cuantas más botellas de medicina tomaba, mis padecimientos eran mayores y más prolongados.	It was clear that the more bottles of medicine I took, the greater and more prolonged were my sufferings.
Mientras más rápidamente se calienta ó se enfría el aire, más fuerte es el viento.	The more rapidly the air is heated or cooled the stronger is the wind.

627. *Tanto . . . cuanto* are used adverbially as correlatives before two clauses which are considered equal in importance:—

Me invitó á acompañarle, lo cual acepté con gusto, tanto por enterarle de mi proyecto cuanto por dar aquel grato paseo.	He invited me to accompany him, and I accepted with pleasure, as well to inform him of my plan as to take that pleasant drive.
El príncipe era buen compañero, muy dado á los ejercicios corporales, y muy hábil tanto en la equitación cuanto en el manejo de las armas.	The prince was a good companion, much given to bodily exercise, and expert both in horsemanship and the use of arms.

628. In this connection *como* may be substituted for *cuanto*, being in fact the more usual at the present day:—

Todas las repúblicas de Centro América, exceptuando el Salvador, tienen puertos tanto en el Mar Caribe como en el Océano Pacífico.	All the republics of Central America, except Salvador, have seaports on the Caribbean Sea as well as on the Pacific Ocean.
--	--

629. The formulæ tanto más . . . cuanto que, tanto menos . . . cuanto que, correspond to the English *all the more . . . because, all the less . . . because*:—

Esta reprensión era tanto más im-  
perdonable cuanto que había sido  
merecida.

This rebuke was all the more un-  
pardonable because it had been  
deserved.

Estoy tanto menos satisfecho de su  
conducta cuanto que me creía con  
más derechos á su amistad.

I am all the less satisfied with his  
conduct because I thought I had  
more rights to his friendship.

630. The que following cuanto is really superfluous and, although generally employed, may be omitted:—

Adoptó por fin un plan de opera-  
ciones sobre el cual creyó poder  
contar, tanto más cuanto la ejecu-  
ción sólo dependía de él, y se  
sentía capaz de todo por la causa  
que había abrazado.

He finally adopted a plan of action  
upon which he thought he could  
count, the more so because the exe-  
cution depended upon him alone  
and he felt himself capable of any-  
thing for the cause which he had  
embraced.

631. Tanto, in its invariable form, is used adverbially before a comparative in certain exclamatory answers:—

¡Tanto mejor!

So much the better!

¡Tanto peor para V.!

So much the worse for you!

632. Un tanto, algún tanto or un tanto cuanto, form neuter phrases meaning *a little, or somewhat*:—

Rosa, un tanto más consolada, re-  
gresaba á su casa.

Rosa was returning home a little  
more consoled.

Esta respuesta le satisfizo algún  
tanto.

This reply satisfied him somewhat.

La conversación era poco animada,  
y sólo crecía un tanto cuanto en  
interés cuando entraban nuevas  
visititas.

The conversation was not very ani-  
mated, and only increased a little  
in interest whenever new callers  
came in.

633. When several adjectives or adverbs with the same degree of comparison occur together, más, menos or tan, as the case may be, need only be placed before the first one; for

greater emphasis, however, the adverb may be repeated before each:—

Cicerón era más sabio, elocuente y patriótico que Catón.	Cicero was wiser, more eloquent and patriotic than Cato.
La vertiente oriental era menos escarpada, áspera y escabrosa que la que acababan de subir.	The eastern slope was less steep, rough and craggy than that which they had just ascended.

634. In the case of adverbial expressions made up of a noun and the preposition *con*, *más* or *menos* is placed immediately before the noun; with those composed of a noun and some other preposition, *más* or *menos* precedes the preposition:—

<i>Con cuidado</i> , carefully.	<i>Con más cuidado</i> , more carefully.	<i>Con menos cuidado</i> , less carefully.
<i>De propósito</i> , purposely.	<i>Más de propósito</i> , more purposely.	<i>Menos de propósito</i> , less purposely.
<i>A fondo</i> , thoroughly.	<i>Más á fondo</i> , more thoroughly.	<i>Menos á fondo</i> , less thoroughly.

635. When *tanto* is applied to such adverbial phrases, the usage is as follows:—

<i>Con tanto cuidado</i> , as carefully.	<i>Tan de propósito</i> , as purposely.
<i>Con tanta diligencia</i> , as diligently.	<i>Tan á fondo</i> , as thoroughly.

636. The adverbs *más*, *menos*, *tan*, *muy* are placed immediately before nouns, with the same value which they have before adjectives; their English equivalents *more*, *less*, etc., require *of a* to connect them with a noun, or the idea is expressed in some different manner:—

<i>Es más tonto de lo que parece.</i>	He is more of a fool than he looks.
<i>No le creí tan niño.</i>	I did not think him such a child.
<i>V. es menos caballero de lo que yo creía.</i>	You are less of a gentleman than I thought.
<i>Es muy Inglés.</i>	He is very much of an Englishman.
<i>Es muy hombre de mundo.</i>	He is a thorough man of the world.
<i>Muy señor mío. (In letters.)</i>	Dear Sir.

637. The force of these adverbs of comparison may, by means of other adverbs, be modified to any extent—made greater or

less, or entirely negative—without affecting the grammatical construction:—

La menor es aun más linda.	The younger one is even prettier.
Mucho mejor, mucho menos.	Much better, much less.
Bastante más difícil. }	A good deal more difficult.
Harto más difícil. }	
Considerablemente más útil.	Considerably more useful.
Algo menos penoso.	Somewhat less laborious.
Poco más cómodo.	Little, scarcely more comfortable.
Un poco más cómodo.	A little more comfortable.
Todavía menos importante.	Still less important.
Ella no toca tan acertadamente	She does not play as accurately as
como su hermana menor.	her younger sister.
Vd. lo ha hecho mejor sin tener	You have done it better without
tantas ventajas como ellos.	having as many advantages as
	they.

REMARK.—Any of these modifying adverbs that are also used as adjectives, agree with a noun when followed by one:—

Harta más paciencia.	A good deal more patience.
Poca más agua. Pocas más rosas.	Little more water. Few more roses.
Muchos más ríos.	Many more rivers.
Tantas más dificultades.	As many more difficulties.

### 638. MISCELLANEOUS IDIOMS WITH TANTO AND MÁS.

Entre tanto; mientras tanto.	Meanwhile; in the meantime.
Por lo tanto.	Consequently.
Tanto monta.	No matter. It's all the same.
Estar al tanto de . .	To be aware of, to be posted on . . .
Ya estoy al tanto.	Now I see; now I understand.
Á lo más.	At the utmost, at most.
Á más de esto; á más de eso.	Besides this; besides that.
Sin más ni más.	Without more ado.
Á más tardar.	At the latest.
Más adelante.	Later on ( <i>time</i> ); farther on ( <i>location</i> ).
Más arriba; más abajo.	Higher up; lower down.
Más al norte, más al sur, etc.	Farther north, farther south, etc.
Más acá del río.	On this side of the river.
Más allá de aquel cerro.	Beyond, on the other side of, that
	hill



Más allá del alcance ordinario de las mareas.	Beyond the ordinary reach of the tides.
Este relato es tan verídico como el que más.	This account is as true as can be.
(I.e., como el que lo es más.)	
Ella es discreta hasta no más.	She is extremely discreet.
Estaba borracho hasta no más.	He was as drunk as could be.
Los dos alumnos son á cual más estudiosos.	The two scholars vie with each other in studiousness.

### EXERCISE XXXIX.

a) 1. En el sur los *Andes* son más bajos y menos *compactos* que en el norte, y por consiguiente dejan mayor número de pasos por las abras y gargantas de las corrientes que descienden al poniente. 2. Los ríos de estas *latitudes* difieren de los del norte, no sólo por su mayor extensión y volumen, sino también por correr los más de ellos profundamente encauzados, y por no experimentar tan grandes crecidas estivales. 3. La *temperatura* es menos elevada en el verano, y la capa de nieve que se *acumula* en las alturas, más delgada. 4. Por consiguiente la fusión no es tan *rápida* ni tan *abundante* como en las *regiones* más al norte. 5. Los ríos que no proceden de las nieves ó lagos *andinos*, disminuyen en extremo su caudal en el verano. 6. Pero, tanto los que nacen de (*in*) los *Andes* como los que tienen su origen en otras serranías, aumentan *rápida* y *excesivamente* su caudal con las lluvias invernales. 7. Lo quebrado del terreno da origen á la *formación* de saltos de magnífico *efecto*, como por ejemplo el de *Callín*, que tiene una altura de poco menos de treinta *metros*, y el de *Huachuán*, de más de treinta *metros*, y que *presenta* un espectáculo tan aterrador en el invierno como delicioso en el verano. 8. Con los ríos se relacionan los depósitos de agua, lagos ó lagunas, que se encuentran en el *territorio*, ya en la zona *andina*, ya más abajo. 9. El mayor número pertenece al primer grupo. 10. Flanqueados por cerros que descienden hasta sus playas en forma de anfiteatro, y poblados de selvas de pinos y cipreses, reciben las aguas de *torreñales* que mantienen siempre llenos estos *inmensos receptáculos*, origen á su vez de los ríos mayores de la *región*.

b) 1. In *Cuba* I have seen sweet potatoes as large as water-melons. 2. Gold is heavier than lead, although it is not so heavy as *platinum*. 3. It is said that *elephants* in a wild state live more than two hundred years, although in a state of captivity they *generally* do not live more than some fifty years. 4. The nasturtium is more showy than the violet, although it is less fragrant. 5. I think that the storm will be less violent than you fear. 6. The more I study Spanish *literature*, the more charms I find in it. 7. It has rained so much that we have put off our hunting trip until

next week. 8. The earlier we begin the work, the sooner we shall finish it. 9. The clouds heaped on the western horizon resembled rather snow-covered mountains than masses of *vapor*. 10. These ferns are not so luxuriant as those that grow in the ravine beyond that pine-grove. 11. My sister writes faster than I, but her handwriting is not so good as mine. 12. My stenographer does not write so fast as yours, but she makes less mistakes. 13. In the cold *regions* of the north, vegetable life is not so luxuriant as in our country. 14. Notwithstanding, the children of those *latitudes* enjoy almost as many *diversions* as we do. 15. This translation is better than your last; there are less mistakes than I expected. 16. I am all the more satisfied with your work because your elder brother has made less progress than you. 17. My neighbor was much worse yesterday; but this afternoon he is so much better that he has gone out on (*d*) the veranda. 18. I think your *client* has a larger income than he admitted to the collector. 19. Lower down, the river is much deeper and there are not so many rocks as in this place; consequently it is preferable to go swimming there. 20. I am inclined to think that the lawyer is more of a rascal than his *client*.

NOTES. 8. state: omit article in each case.

14. do: not expressed in Spanish (§ 88, Rem.).

16. progress: plural in Spanish.

## LESSON XL.

### SUPERLATIVES.

There are two distinct forms in Spanish bearing the name of superlative: *a.* the true superlative, which regularly follows the comparative on the scale and is formed from it, and expresses the highest or lowest degree of a quality as compared with other degrees; *b.* the absolute superlative, which expresses a very high or the highest possible degree without reference to any other, and therefore does not belong to the comparative scale.

#### THE SUPERLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

##### ADJECTIVES.

639. The superlative does not differ in form from the comparative of inequality, its meaning being determined entirely by the connection in which it is used. When followed by a noun,

the superlative of adjectives is accompanied by the definite article or a possessive pronoun:—

El acusado contestaba á sus preguntas con la mayor calma posible.

The accused answered their questions with the greatest possible calmness.

El día 21 de junio es el día más largo, y el 21 de diciembre el más corto del año.

The 21st of June is the longest, and the 21st of December the shortest, day of the year.

D. Fulano es el más listo de mis alumnos.

Jones is the brightest of my students.

El menos lúgubre de sus poemas.

The least gloomy of his poems.

Esta novela es su mejor obra.

This novel is his best work.

Hecha importante que nuestros más célebres historiadores han pasado por alto.

An important fact which our most celebrated historians have overlooked.

**REMARK.**—There is thus no difference between a comparative preceded by a definite article or possessive pronoun, and the superlative; but the context will seldom fail to decide which meaning is intended:—

Sus más ciertos poemas nos presentan una serie sumamente amenizada de cuadros de la vida rústica.

His shorter (*or* shortest) poems offer us a very delightful series of pictures of rustic life.

Los diplomáticos y cónsules de la Gran Bretaña unánimemente aseguran en sus informes oficiales, que sus paisanos son suplantados en los mercados hispano-americanos por los más frugales é industrioses alemanes.

The diplomats and consuls of Great Britain affirm unanimously in their official reports that their countrymen are supplanted in the Spanish American markets by the more (*or* most) frugal and industrious Germans.

**640.** The superlative of an adjective takes the same place before or after its noun that a positive would:—

La más hermosa flor. }  
La flor más hermosa. }

The most beautiful flower.

El más profundo dolor.

The deepest sorrow.

El foso más profundo.

The deepest ditch.

Mi hermano mayor.

My oldest brother.

Los cinco pasos más frecuentados.

The five most frequented passes.

**641.** When the superlative adjective follows the noun to which it belongs, the place of the definite article or possessive pronoun is before the noun:—

La cosa más fácil.

The easiest thing.

Es el libro menos interesante que en mi vida he leído.

It is the least interesting book I have read in my life.

Este barrio está habitado por la gente más mala de la ciudad.

This ward is inhabited by the worst people of the city.

642. When the noun qualified by the superlative adjective is in apposition to another noun, the article immediately precedes the superlative. The same is the case when the superlative is used absolutely (instead of a noun):—

Tiahuatlán, ciudad la más antigua de América.

Tiahuatlan, the most ancient city of America.

La mordedura de la cobra, serpiente la más venenosa de la península india, es siempre mortal.

The bite of the cobra, the most venomous snake of the Indian peninsula, is always mortal.

Esta carta es la menos importante.

This letter is the least important [one].

643. When the superlative adjective is in the predicate, the article is omitted when reference is had to different degrees of a quality in the same person or thing. If the quality of the noun is compared with that of other nouns, named or understood, the article is required:—

Esta mujer tiene la habilidad de llorar cuando está menos afligida.

This woman has the power of weeping when she is least afflicted.

De todas mis hermanas Pepita no lloró, aunque era la más afligida.

Of all my sisters, Josie did not cry, although she was the most afflicted [one].

Éste era el procedimiento que nos pareció más realizable.

This was the procedure which seemed to us most feasible.

Este procedimiento nos pareció el más realizable.

This procedure seemed to us the most feasible [one].

Realizó que lo había perdido justamente en el momento en que su uso era más necesario.

He realized that he had lost it just at the moment that its use was most necessary.

REMARK.—In the last example, *era el más necesario* would mean *when its use was the most necessary use*, and would not make sense.

644. The superlative, unaccompanied by a noun, may be used partitively by placing *de* before it; in rendering the con-



struction into English, some such word as *kind*, *nature*, is to be supplied:—

Tiene una pasión de las más exageradas por la música.	He has a passion of the most exaggerated kind for music.
Estoy sobre la pista de una conspiración de las más graves.	I am on the track of a conspiracy of the gravest nature.
Su vestido era carmesí del más vistoso.	Her dress was crimson of the most showy hue.

645. Superlatives are connected with the remainder of the sentence by the prepositions *de*, *of*, or *entre*, *among*. The employment of *en* for this purpose, although met with, is a vulgarism to be avoided:—

Era el catedrático más docto del país.	He was the most learned professor in the country.
¿Cuál es el río más largo del mundo?	Which is the longest river in the world?
Soy de opinión que Tácito fué el más profundo entre los historiadores antiguos.	I am of the opinion that Tacitus was the most profound of ancient historians.

646. The English grammatical quibble whether we should say *the more learned* or *the most learned of the two*, is impossible in Spanish, as the form would be the same in either case:—

¿Quién es más fuerte, V. ó yo?	Which is the stronger, you or I?
La más plausible de las dos suposiciones era la presentada por el abogado.	The most plausible of the two suppositions was that presented by the lawyer.

647. Participles used as adjectives have the same degrees of comparison, formed in the same manner, as those of adjectives. Some of these participial adjectives need to be rendered into English by placing *well* before them; their comparatives and superlatives are then translated by *better* and *best* instead of *more* and *most*:—

Un hombre leído.	A well read man.
Un hombre más leído	A better read man.
El hombre más leído.	The best read man.
Una ilustración conocida.	A well-known illustration.
Una ilustración más conocida.	A better-known illustration.
La ilustración más conocida.	The best-known illustration.

648. It has already been shown at § 296 how the neuter article *lo* is used with the positives of adjectives and past participles; it is similarly employed, with great effect, before superlatives. The meaning may generally be rendered in English by adding *thing* or *part* to the adjective:—

En el <i>más</i> apartado de los arrabales.	In the remotest of the suburbs.
En lo <i>más</i> apartado de los arrabales.	In the most remote part of the suburbs.
En lo <i>más</i> profundo del bosque.	In the depths of the wood.
El sueño profundo que se había apoderado del herido era lo <i>más</i> á propósito para reparar sus fuerzas.	The deep sleep which had overcome the wounded man was the most appropriate thing to restore his strength.

649. *Más*, although usually an adverb, sometimes serves as an adjective pronoun representing the majority or greatest number of any collective plural; with a singular noun the expression used is *la mayor parte*:—

Los <i>más</i> de los indios se ocultaron detrás de las peñas.	The most of the Indians hid themselves behind the rocks.
Las <i>más</i> de las veces.	The greater number of times.
La cordillera marítima tiene una larga línea de montañas volcánicas, las <i>más</i> de ellas inactivas.	The Coast Chain has a long line of volcanoes, the greater number of them inactive.
Ha perdido la mayor parte de su dinero.	He has lost the most of his money.
Pasó la mayor parte de la noche velando.	He passed the most of the night awake.

#### SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS.

650. The superlative of the adverbs is formed in essentially the same manner as those of adjectives, but it is not preceded by a possessive pronoun or a definite article. It is therefore in no wise distinguished from the comparative:—

Los mejores criados son los que hablan menos.	The best servants are those that talk least.
El río corre <i>más</i> aprisa justamente antes del salto.	The river flows fastest just above the fall.
El alumno que había estudiado <i>más</i>	The student who had studied most

diligentemente no logró pasar el examen.	diligently failed to pass the examination.
Esa era la respuesta que menos esperaba oír.	That was the answer she least expected to hear.
Amo el mar cuando más alto suben las olas.	I love the sea when the waves run highest.

REMARK.—When the superlative adverb qualifies an adjective or participle used absolutely, it is preceded by the article,—which is to be considered as applying to the adjective (§ 574):—

Su casa es la más elegantemente amueblada.	His house is the most elegantly furnished.
--	--

651. When precision is required, the superlative use may be distinguished by a circumlocution with *ser* and the logical pronoun (*cf.* § 565):—

De todos los defectos el que más detesto es la afectación.	Of all foibles I hate affectation most.
La comisión informó que el fusil Lebel era el que más alargaba.	The Board reported that the Lebel rifle shot farthest.
Las historias cortas son las que escribe mejor.	Short stories are what he writes best.
Donde corre el río más aprisa es justamente antes del salto.	The river flows fastest just above the fall.
De toda la compañía ella es la que canta más dulcemente.	She sings the sweetest of all the company.

652. An adverbial superlative is formed by placing the neuter article *lo* before a superlative adverb followed by any phrase expressing possibility. This is properly a superlative absolute and not a superlative of comparison.

Esta maniobra indicó que el capitán quiso acercar el bergantín lo más posible á la costa.	This manœuvre indicated that the captain wished to bring the brigantine as near as possible to the coast.
Me salvé lo mejor que pude de aquellos peligros.	I escaped from those dangers as I best could.
Echó á correr lo más aprisa que le pudieron llevar sus piernas.	He set out on a run as fast as his legs could carry him.
Los colonos se pusieron en marcha	The colonists set out with the inten-

con intención de llegar lo más pronto posible á la costa occi- dental.	tion of arriving as soon as possible at the west coast.
--	--

### THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE.

#### ADJECTIVES.

**652** The absolute superlative of adjectives, when formed regularly, is made by adding *-ísimo*; it is then varied like any adjective ending in *-o*. This termination, although descended from the true Latin superlative, has in Spanish a merely intensive value, equivalent to the English *very* or *most* before the positive.

a. The principal accent of the absolute superlative is on the first syllable of the added termination (whatever be its form). The syllable originally accented then takes a secondary accent.

b. The original adjective sometimes requires modification before taking the termination *-ísimo*, for the reason that this form is a direct inheritance from the Latin, and not derived from the modern Spanish adjectives.

**653.** The following distinctions are to be observed in the formation of the absolute superlative:—

1. If the positive adjective ends in a consonant, it receives the termination *-ísimo* without undergoing any change, unless the final consonant be *z*, which changes to *c* before *i* (§ 37):—

Hábil, skilful.	Habilísimo, very skilful.
Liberal, liberal.	Liberalísimo, very liberal.
Feliz, happy.	Felicitísimo, very happy.
Feroz, fierce.	Ferocísimo, very fierce.

2. A final vowel or diphthong is omitted before receiving the termination. If two terminal vowels form two syllables, only the last is omitted:—

Importante, important.	Importantísimo, very important.
Injusto, unjust.	Injustísimo, very unjust.
Duro, hard.	Durísimo, very hard.
Limpio, clean.	Limpísimo, very clean.
Sucio, dirty.	Sucísimo, very dirty.
Impío, <sup>1</sup> impious, wicked.	Impísimo, very wicked.
Feo, ugly.	Feísimo, very ugly.

---

<sup>1</sup> Many adjectives in *io* and *to* do not admit the superlative termination: as, for example, *lacio*, *temerario*, *vario*; *sombrio*, *tardío*, *vasto*, etc.



3. If, after dropping a final *a* or *o*, the last remaining letter be *c*, it is changed to *qu*, and similarly *g* to *gu*, to preserve the hard sound (§ 37):—

**Rico**, rich.

**Fresco**, fresh, cool.

**Large**, long.

**Riquísimo**, very rich.

**Fresquísimo**, very fresh.

**Larguísimo**, very long.

4. The expanded diphthongs *ie*, *ue*, revert to their primitive vowels *i* and *o*, since the accent is transferred to the termination (§ 14):—

**Buena**, good.

**Nueva**, new.

**Fuerte**, strong.

**Ferviente**, fervent.

**Benísimo**, very good.

**Novísimo**, very new.

**Fortísimo**, very strong.

**Ferventísimo**, very fervent.

REMARK.—There is an increasing popular tendency to retain the diphthong in the shorter and more familiar words. This innovation is strenuously resisted by the members of the Academy and the more conservative writers. The author has never met with any form of the absolute superlative of *viejo* but *viejísimo*, and *nuevísimo* is more common than *novísimo* in conversation.

5. The termination *-ble* reverts to the Latin *bil*<sup>1</sup>:—

**Notable**, notable.

**Voluble**, voluble.

**Terrible**, terrible.

**Notabilísimo**, very notable.

**Volubilísimo**, very voluble.

**Terribilísimo**, very terrible.

6. Adjectives ending in *-ficeo*, *-volo*, (from the Latin *-ficent*, *-volent*,) substitute these latter before *-ísimo*:—

**Benéficeo**, beneficent.

**Benévolo**, benevolent.

**Magníficeo**, magnificent.

**Benéficientísimo**.

**Benevolentísimo**.

**Magnificentísimo**.

LATIN.

*Beneficentissimus.*

*Benevolentissimus.*

*Magnificentissimus.*

7. The following revert to the original Latin for the entire words:—

<sup>1</sup> *Doble*, double; *endoble*, frail; *feble*, feeble, are exceptions, since they are not Latin:—

*Una dalia doblísima.*

A very double dahlia.

				LATIN.
ÁCRE:	acérrimo,	very bitter.	<i>Acer,</i>	<i>acerrimus.</i>
ÁSPERO:	aspérrimo,	very harsh.	<i>Asper,</i>	<i>asperimus.</i>
CÉLEBRE:	celebérrimo,	very celebrated.	<i>Celeber,</i>	<i>celeborrimus.</i>
ÍNTEGRO:	integérrimo,	very upright.	<i>Integer,</i>	<i>integerrimus.</i>
LIBRE:	libérrimo,	very free.	<i>Libor,</i>	<i>liberrimus.</i>
SALUBRE:	salubérrimo,	very healthful.	<i>Salubor,</i>	<i>saluberrimus.</i>
ANTIGUO*:	antiquísimo,	very ancient.	<i>Antiquus,</i>	<i>antiquissimus.</i>
CRUEL*:	crudelísimo,	very cruel.	<i>Crudelis,</i>	<i>crudelissimus.</i>
DIFÍCIL*:	difficilísimo,	very difficult.	<i>Difficilis,</i>	<i>difficillimus.</i>
FÁCIL*:	facilísimo,	very easy.	<i>Facilis,</i>	<i>facillimus.</i>
FIEL:	fidelísimo,	very faithful.	<i>Fidelis,</i>	<i>fidelissimus.</i>
FRÍO*:	frigidísimo,	very cold.	<i>Frigidus,</i>	<i>frigidissimus.</i>
SABIO:	sapientísimo,	very wise.	<i>Sapient[i]s,</i>	<i>sapientissimus.</i>

NOTE.—There are a few others occasionally to be met with, that have a more usual regular form. The irregular forms are given separate space in good dictionaries, and need not be presented here.

654. A number of comparatives and superlatives have descended from the Latin with little change of form, but retaining little of comparative or superlative force, and are to be considered as simple adjectives:—

Anterior, previous, preceding.	(Wanting.)
Citerior, hither.	(Wanting.)
Exterior, external, outside.	Extremo, extreme.
Inferior, inferior, lower.	Ínfimo, lowest.
Interior, internal, inside.	Íntimo, intimate.
Posterior, posterior.	Postremo, hindermost.
(Más cercano), nearer.	Próximo, nearest, next.
Superior, superior, upper.	Supremo, } supreme, highest.
Últior, ulterior, ultimate.	Sumo, }
	Último, last.

REMARK.—In addition to the regular absolute superlatives of *bueno*, *malo*, *grande* and *pequeño*, other forms are met with derived from the Latin superlatives, which were irregular. But these belong rather to the literary style than to every-day language:—

---

\* Those distinguished by an asterisk have regular comparatives which are more commonly met with.

			LATIN.
BUENO:	Benísimo,	or óptimo.	<i>Optimus.</i>
MALO:	Malísimo,	or pésimo.	<i>Pessimus.</i>
GRANDE:	Grandísimo,	or máximo.	<i>Maximus.</i>
PEQUEÑO:	Pequeñísimo,	or mínimo.	<i>Minimus.</i>

655. The above forms are occasionally used as simple adjectives, from which comparatives and superlatives may be formed:—

Los mandó llevar á la estación más próxima del ferrocarril.	He had them taken to the nearest railway station.
Cuando más tarde atravesó aquellas calles, ya no encontró en ellas la más mínima señal de la confusión de la mañana.	When he went through those streets later on, he no longer found the least trace of the morning's confusion.
No lo quiero vender á precio tan ínfimo.	I do not wish to sell it at so low a price.
No me descompuse lo más mínimo por los insultos del enano.	I did not bother myself in the least about the dwarf's insults.
Hizo traición á su más íntimo amigo.	He betrayed his most intimate friend.

#### ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS.

656. The absolute superlative of simple adverbs is formed in the same manner as that of adjectives; the distinctive endings (-a, -os) of *cerca*, *near*, and *lejos*, *far*, are transferred to the superlative termination:—

Pronto, soon.	Prontísimo, very soon.
Cerca, near.	Cercuísimo, very near.
Lejos, far.	Lejísimo, very far.

657. In the case of derivative adverbs formed by adding -mente to an adjective, the superlative termination is attached to the adjective; and as -mente requires the adjective to be in the feminine, the termination assumes the form -ísima:—

Noblemente, nobly.	Nobilísimamente, very nobly.
Ricamente, richly.	Riquísimamente, very richly.
Desproporcionadamente, disproportionately.	Desproporcionadísimamente, out of all proportion.

658. The effect of the absolute superlative may also be obtained by placing some such adverb as *muy*, *very*, *sumamente*

*highly, extremadamente, extremely, en extremo, to the extreme, en gran manera, to a great degree, en alto grado, to a high degree,* or by placing *además* after it. But the superlative termination has the most power, in addition to being much neater:—

Las pruebas resultaron sumamente satisfactorias.      The tests proved highly satisfactory.

Sus esfuerzos nos parecían en alto grado ridículos.      His efforts seemed to us highly ridiculous.


La tentativa será peligrosa además.      The attempt will be fraught with great danger.

**659.** In popular language *re-* (sometimes *rete-*) may be prefixed to adjectives or adverbs to add intensity; it is usually accompanied by *muy*:—

Es una tarea muy redifícil.      It is an awfully hard job.

Me saben muy re-bien estas fram-buesas.      These raspberries taste real good to me.

Tu traje es retebonito.      Your gown is just lovely.

 Many adjectives do not admit of comparison. The principal ones are those that involve the idea of infinity, or already express a superlative degree, or denote origin, material, shape or class:—

supremo.	metálico.	principal	inmortal.
italiano.	circular.	triangular.	celestial.
infernál.	militar.	clerical.	inmenso.

Some adjectives on account of their form do not admit of the termination *-ismo*. They are principally those having an antepenultimate accent and ending in *-eo*, *-ico*, *-imo*, *-fero*; those ending in *i* or *y*; and those in *-il* which apply to sex, age or condition:—

sanguíneo.	satírico.	marítimo.	argentífero.
férreo.	colérico.	legítimo.	ignívomo.
turquí.	verdegay.	juvenil.	senil.

**REMARK.**—Some adjectives of these forms may receive the termination *-ismo* in burlesque style.

#### EXERCISE XL.

a) 1. Bien sabido es que la ballena es el *animal* más grande, pero nadie sabe cuál es el más pequeño. 2. El puente de *suspensión* mayor del



mundo es el que atraviesa el río del Este, uniendo á Nueva York con *Brooklyn*. 3. El *túnel* ferrocarrilero más largo que existe es el de San Gotardo, entre Suiza é Italia. 4. El lago *Ontario* es el menos extenso de los Grandes Lagos de Norte América. 5. El *Pico Turquino* es la montaña más elevada de la isla de Cuba. 6. D. José María de Pereda ha escrito muchas preciosas novelas, pero "*Peñas Arriba*" es su obra más interesante. 7. La mayor parte de la superficie de la tierra está ocupada por los mareas. 8. El mejor café viene de la *Arabia*; sin embargo, el (*that*) de la isla de *Java* es excelentísimo. 9. Los huevos del colibrí son pequeñísimos, no más grandes que los chícharos, y tan blancos como la leche. 10. El espolique nos condujo por medio de espesísimos matorrales á una ancha *depresión* del terreno, en donde brotaba una fuente de aguas purísimas, tan transparentes como el cristal. 11. El obelisco erigido á la memoria de Jorge Washington, en la capital de los Estados Unidos, es el monumento más elevado del continente americano. 12. Aunque París no es tan grande como Londres, es considerada como la ciudad más hermosa del globo. 13. Á pesar de que *Tlahuatlán* es una de las poblaciones menos conocidas, es, sin embargo, la más antigua de América. 14. Aunque el río *Mississippi*, con su afluente el *Missouri*, constituye el río más largo del globo, no es tan caudaloso como el Amazonas. 15. El falsán habita ordinariamente en lo más denso de la selva. 16. De las obras de Estanislao Zeballos, las que más me han gustado son "*Painé*" y "*Belmú*." 17. ¡Caracoles! ¡Qué regordos son esos marranos de Vd.!

18. "De los vicios el menos de provecho,  
Y por donde más daño á veces proviene,  
Es el no retener el fácil pecho  
El secreto hasta el tiempo que conviene."

ALONZO DE ERCILLA Y ZÚÑIGA, *La Araucana*, canto xii.

b) 1. Spring is the most delightful season of the year. 2. The tired earth, refreshed by copious rains and caressed by the warm sunbeams, decks itself in (*con*) a most brilliant garment of fresh verdure. 3. Showy wild-flowers adorn the fields and roadsides, and the bees and the gaudy butterflies flit here and there, sucking the nectar (*m.* 2) from the fragrant calices. 4. The song-birds sing their sweetest songs, and the fruit-trees are covered with (*de*) the most delicately tinted blossoms. 5. America (*f.* 3) has the largest rivers in the world, and the most varied and picturesque scenery. 6. This continent has also the largest lakes, the most extensive forests, and the richest mineral deposits. 7. Africa (*f.* 3) contains the largest and most arid desert on the globe, and its coast line is the least indented of the five continents. 8. The Nile is the longest river in Africa, and also the one that possesses the greatest historical interest. 9. The narrow valley which it fertilizes with its periodical overflows was the

cradle of one of the oldest *civilisations* of the *human* race, and on its banks still stand the most *venerable* and enduring works that the hand of man has wrought. 10. The *flora* (*f.*) and *fauna* (*f.*) of *Africa* are alike remarkable for the *variety* of species that they *present*. 11. Most of the *animals* that attract our *attention* when we *visit* the menagerie or the *zoological* gardens are indigenous to (*de*) *Africa*. 12. The *senator* delivered a most *eloquent* address, which aroused the (*un*) wildest enthusiasm. 13. The highest strata of the atmosphere are the least *dense*. 14. That clerk is always absent when his *presence* is most *necessary*. 15. John is the youngest of my three sons, yet (*sin embargo*) he is taller than his oldest brother. 16. The rarest orchids grow in the most *inaccessible* [portions] of tropical forests. 17. The most *important* [thing] is to allay the suspicions of the police. 18. The bird of paradise and the peacock are *adorned* with a most beautiful *plumage*, yet the former is mute and the latter has a voice of the most disagreeable [kind]; whereas the nightingale, the most *melodious* of European song-birds, and the *singsong*, its *American* rival, have a dull and inconspicuous *plumage*. 19. We avoided as far as *possible* the lower portions of the town, where the danger of contagion was greatest. 20. *Emilio Castelar* was *considered* the most *eloquent* orator of Europe. 21. He was also a most celebrated writer; his more *important* works have been translated into (*al*) French, *Italian*, German, and even Russian.

*singsong-bird*

- NOTES. 3. here and there, *aquí y allá*.  
 4. render: blossoms of the most delicate tints.  
 5. scenery: plural in Spanish.  
 9. stand, *se hallan*.  
     works, *obras* (invert the order after the following relative;  
     see § 604).  
 11. gardens: singular in Spanish.

#### REVIEW EXERCISE.

1. London is the largest city in the world, and has the most *irregular* streets. 2. It is really an *agglomeration* of towns and villages, more or less extensive, that have been cemented together in recent years by new streets and houses. 3. It is not a pretty city, but it contains two of the most beautiful churches in the old world—namely, St. Paul's *Cathedral* (*f.*) and *Westminster* Abbey. 4. *Paris* (*m. 1.*) is the largest city on the European *continent*, and is undoubtedly the most interesting and fascinating in the world. 5. The most celebrated pictures of the French *artists* are in the *Museum* of the *Louvre*, at *Paris*. 6. This is the largest and most beautiful *museum* in Europe. 7. There is no city in Europe that contains more

interesting *monuments*. 8. In the 17th century, *Paris* held the most sumptuous court that the world has known—that of Louis XIV. 9. The *palace* of *Versailles*, which he ordered built, as he was not satisfied with the *grandeur* and *magnificence* of the *Louvre*, is even to-day one of the marvels of the French *capital* (*f.*). 10. Rome, the former mistress of the world, is for the tourist and the *antiquarian* the most interesting and imposing of European cities. 11. A year is not sufficient to *appreciate* the *historic* treasures that exist in its ruins, its *palaces*, its *catacombs* and its *temples*. 12. Even the surrounding country is rich in most valuable relics of *Roman civilisation*, many of which are yet to be discovered. 13. Naples, with its symmetrical bay and *Vesuvius* smoking in the background, is the most picturesquely *situated* city in Europe; but there are travelers who, while admitting this, say that it is the dirtiest. 14. For the *idealist*, Venice is the most enchanting city, especially at night. 15. It is certainly the *quietest* city in the world, for there are no horses and *vehicles* there, and (*ni*) no mode of transportation for those who do not wish to walk except (*sino*) the boats called *gondolas* (*f.* 8) that traverse the *innumerable canals* with (*de*) which the city is intersected.

NOTES. 9. to-day, *en el día de hoy*.

12. the surrounding country, *la campiña on su rededor*.

15. walk, *andar á pie*.

## LESSON XLI.

### MISCELLANEOUS ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

 We will first treat of the following, in the order named:—

Todo, -a, -os, -as.	Every, all.
Entero, -a, -os, -as.	Whole, entire.
Cada, ( <i>invariable</i> ).	Each, every.
Mucho, -a, -os, -as.	Much, many.
Poco, -a, -os, -as.	Little, few.
Demasiado, -a, -os, -as.	Too much, too many.
Bastante, -os.	Enough.
Solo, -a, -os, -as.	Alone, only.
Único, -a, -os, -as.	Only.

660. Todo, followed by a definite article, or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun before a noun, signifies: a) in the sing-

ular, the entire quantity of that noun; b) in the plural, the entire number of whatever it refers to. In both cases it is translated by *all*:—

Leyó todo el día.	He read all day.
Bebió toda la cerveza.	He drank all the beer.
Ella ha gastado todo su dinero.	She has spent all her money.
Todo aquel terreno es baldío.	All that land is worthless.
Todas las clases le honran.	All classes honor him.
Todos estos huevos están hueros.	All these eggs are addled.
Todos nuestros esfuerzos fueron inútiles.	All our efforts were useless.

REMARK.—*Todos*, -as, before a definite article and a measure of time, is to be translated in English by *every*, with the noun in the singular:—

El médico viene todas las horas.	The doctor comes every hour.
Sale todas las noches á las diez.	He goes out every night at ten.
Todos los lunes; todas las semanas; todos los quince días.	Every Monday; every week; every fortnight.

661. *Todo*, in the singular, when not followed by such defining word, indicates the entire class represented by the noun; it is then generally translated by *every*:—

Todo hombre honrado lo rechaza.	Every honest man rejects it.
Toda obra importante requiere trabajo.	Every important work requires labor.
Toda tentativa para forzar la puerta fué infructuosa.	Every attempt to force the door was fruitless.
En toda ocasión; en todo caso; á toda costa.	On every occasion; at all events; at any cost.

662. *Todo* seldom appears in the plural without one of the defining words above mentioned, except in certain indefinite phrases:—

Huyeron en todas direcciones.	They fled in all directions.
En todas partes.	Everywhere ( <i>rest</i> ).
Por todas partes.	Everywhere ( <i>motion</i> ).
Á todas horas del día.	At all hours of the day.
Tintas de imprimir de todas clases.	Printing-inks of all kinds.
De todos modos no será preciso escribirle.	At all events it will not be necessary to write to him.



**663.** Used pronominally, *todo* appears in the singular as a neuter only, and has the meaning of *everything, all*:—

Contiene un poco de todo.	It contains a little of everything.
Todo favorecía nuestra fuga.	Everything favored our escape.
Sobre todo; ante todo.	Above all; first of all.
Lo haré á pesar de todo.	I shall do it in spite of everything.
Estamos dispuestos á todo.	We are prepared for anything.
Esto es todo por ahora.	That is all for the present.

**664.** Used pronominally in the plural and not referring to a previous noun, it denotes persons only:—

Todos admiten la justicia de su pretensión.	All concede the justice of his claim.
Ésta es la opinión de todos.	This is the opinion of every one.

**665.** Standing for a noun in the plural, *todos, -as*, refers to either persons or things; when standing for persons, the preposition *á* is required when *todos, -as*, is the object of a verb, or is in apposition to an objective personal pronoun:—

Seis hombres bajaron, todos armados con fusiles.	Six men descended, all armed with muskets.
Las he vendido todas ( <i>houses</i> ).	I have sold them all.
Las saludé á todas ( <i>ladies</i> ).	I saluted them all.
Nos ha convidado á todos.	He has invited us all.

**666.** An antecedent must be supplied for a relative referring to *todo*, as *todo* alone is not used as such:—

Todos los que han escrito sobre el asunto nos dan informes contradictorios.	All who have written on the subject give us conflicting accounts.
Preguntó á todos los que tomaron parte en el asalto.	He questioned all who took part in the assault.
Todo el que. }	Every one who.
Todo aquel que. }	

**667.** In this manner the neuter *todo* followed by *lo que* forms a phrase equivalent to the English *all that* (*that* being elidable):—

Me ha referido todo lo que sucedió.	He has related to me all that happened.
Quitáronle los bandoleros la ropa	The robbers took from him the clothes

que llevaba, que era todo lo que le quedaba en el mundo.	he wore, which was all that he had in the world.
Tengo todo lo que quiero.	I have all I want.

REMARK.—In the case of the expression *todo cuanto* (*todos cuantos*) the antecedent is included in the relative :—

Mataron á todos cuantos encontraron.	They killed all they found.
Ha vendido todo cuanto poseía para satisfacer su pasión por el juego.	He sold all he possessed to satisfy his passion for gambling.

668. The plural of *todo* may either precede or follow a plural personal pronoun. The English usage of placing *of* before a pronoun when *all* precedes has no parallel in Spanish:—

Nosotros todos, <i>or</i> todos nosotros.	We all, <i>or</i> all of us.
Vds. todos, <i>or</i> todos Vds.	You all, <i>or</i> all of you.
Ellos todos, <i>or</i> todos ellos. }	They all, <i>or</i> all of them.
Ellas todas, <i>or</i> todas ellas. }	

669. *Todo* may precede an indefinite article and a noun, while its English equivalent would be placed between them:—

Todo un jamón; toda una lan- gosta.	A whole ham; a whole lobster.
Pasamos allí todo un invierno.	We spent a whole winter there.
No dudaban que la isla estaba habi- tada y tenía quizá toda una colo- nia dispuesta á defenderla.	They did not doubt that the island was inhabited and perhaps had a whole colony prepared to defend it.

670. *Todo*, as a neuter, may be applied to any neuter nominal or adjectival expressions:—

Redundará todo eso en nuestro provecho.	All that will turn out to our advan- tage.
Todo lo demás no importa.	All the rest does not matter.
Todo lo cual es verdad.	All of which is true.
Ha gastado todo lo suyo.	He has squandered all his property
Tiene todo lo necesario para su viaje.	He has everything necessary for his journey.
Todo lo largo del río.	All along the river.
Todo lo largo de la calle.	All along the street.

671. When *todo*, used absolutely as a neuter, occurs as the object of a verb, *lo* is added, to show that it is object:—

La pública supersticiosidad <i>todo</i> le materializa y personifica.	Public superstitiousness materializes and personifies everything.
El anciano no hablaba, y sus tristes ojos le miraban <i>todo</i> sin curiosidad.	The old man did not speak, and his sad eyes looked at everything without curiosity.
Lo hemos diferido <i>todo</i> para mañana.	We have put off everything until to-morrow.
Para mí, contestó, el estudio es un apoyo, un aliciente, una diversión que <i>todo</i> me lo hace olvidar.	To me, he replied, study is a support, an attraction, a diversion, that makes me forget everything.

672. *Todo* is idiomatically used with the larger measures of time to denote an indefinite point within such period:—

En <i>todo</i> el otoño venidero.	During next autumn.
Lo haré construir en <i>todo</i> el mes de enero.	I shall have it built some time in January.

673. *Todos*, *-as*, requires the definite article before numerals:—

Llegaron <i>todos</i> los cuatro á la misma hora.	All four arrived at the same time.
<i>Todas</i> las tres han ido al baile.	All three have gone to the ball.

674. The uninflected form *todo* is used adverbially, meaning *entirely*, *all* (this use being generally rather colloquial):—

El negocio ha salido <i>todo</i> al revés de lo que esperábamos.	The affair has turned out quite to the contrary of what we expected.
--	--

REMARK.—There are other cases apparently similar in appearance, in which *todo* is an adjective agreeing with a noun or pronoun:—

Estoy <i>todo</i> cansado.	I am all tired out.
Este pescado <i>todo</i> es espinas.	This fish is all bones.
Á <i>todo</i> correr; á <i>todo</i> vapor; á <i>toda</i> prisa.	At full speed; at full steam; at all haste.

675. *Todo*, as a masculine noun, means *whole*, *total*:—

¿Cuánto pide V. por el <i>todo</i> ?	What do you ask for the lot?
El <i>todo</i> es mayor que cualquiera de sus partes.	The whole is greater than any of its parts.
Una mínima parte del gran <i>todo</i> .	A very small part of the great whole.

**676.** *Entero* coincides in some respects with *todo*, meaning *whole, entire, or all*; it always follows its noun:—

Comió un pan entero.	He ate a whole loaf.
Empleó días enteros en copiarlo.	He spent whole days in copying it.
La noche entera; toda la noche.	All night.

**677.** *Cada, each, every*, is invariable in form and is used only before singular nouns:—

Cada vez que viene trae un libro.	Every time he comes he brings a book.
Iba disminuyéndose sensiblemente el intervalo que separaba cada relámpago de cada trueno.	The interval which separated each lightning flash from each clap of thunder was sensibly diminishing.

**678.** *Cada*, however, may be associated with a plural noun preceded by a numeral and used as a collective expression:—

Una tienda para cada doce soldados.	A tent for each twelve soldiers.
La luna cambia cada 28 días próximamente.	The moon changes about every 28 days.

**679.** *Cada* cannot stand in place of a noun; in order to be used pronominally it must be followed by *uno* or *cual*:—

Cada una de las señoritas tenía puesto un traje distinto.	Each of the young ladies had on a different toilet.
Cada uno llevó su mochila.	Each one carried his knapsack.
Dí á cada cual lo que mereció.	I gave to each what he deserved.
Cada cual fué á tomar el puesto que le correspondía.	Each one went to assume the post which corresponded to him.

**680.** *Mucho*, in its declinable form, precedes nouns or stands in place of them; in the singular it is equivalent to *much, a great deal of*; in the plural, to *many or a great many*:—

Lo haré con mucho gusto.	I will do so with much pleasure.
No tenemos mucho tiempo.	We haven't much time.
He vendido mucha harina.	I have sold a great deal of flour.
Recibimos muchas cartas.	We receive a great many letters.

**681.** The uninflected form *mucho* is used with a neuter value, and occasionally as an adverb qualifying verbs:—



Mucho quedaba aún por hacer.	Much still remained to be done.
Mucho dependía de su prudencia.	A great deal depended on his prudence.
Escribía mucho.	He used to write a great deal.
Eso no me gusta mucho.	That does not please me much.

682. **Mucho** is intimately connected in meaning with the adverb **muy**. **Muy** qualifies adjectives or adverbs, but never verbs. Its English equivalent is *very*; before participles, *much*:—

Muy bueno; muy bien; muy lejos.	Very good; very well; very far.
Estoy muy molesto.	I am much annoyed.
Este café era muy frecuentado por los artistas.	This café was much frequented by artists.
Las tierras altas no están muy cultivadas.	The high lands are not much cultivated.

683. **Muy** cannot stand alone, as may the English *very*. After a question or statement containing **muy** and requiring acquiescence, **mucho** is the word used:—

¿Escribe bien el nuevo dependiente?	Does the new clerk write well?—
—Mucho.	Very.
Ésta es una colección muy interesante.—Sí, mucho.	This is a very interesting collection. —Yes, very.

684. **Mucho**, not **muy**, is used before all comparative forms of adverbs. The separate adjective comparatives, **mayor**, **menor**, **mejor**, **peor**, take **muy**; before all other comparatives of adjectives **mucho** is required, because it comes in contact with an actual comparative adverb—**más** or **menos**. (Compare § 624):—

La enferma está muy mejor hoy.	The patient is much better to-day.
La enferma ha pasado mucho mejor las primeras horas de la noche.	The patient spent the first hours of the night much better.
Mucho más grande; mucho menos lejos; mucho más aprisa.	Much larger; much less distant; much faster.

685. In modern Spanish **mucho** cannot be intensified by **muy**, although examples are frequent in the old classics. **Muchísimo**, *very much*, is the only admissible expression:—

Ella es muchísimo más agradable que su hermana.	She is very much more pleasant than her sister.
La cabeza me duele muchísimo.	My head aches very much.

686. *Muy*, before an adjective followed by *para*, is equivalent to *too*, or *too much*:—

Estaba muy asustado para ofrecer resistencia.	He was too much frightened to offer resistance.
Mi marido es muy caballero para manifestar su enojo en presencia de ella.	My husband is too much of a gentle- man to show his annoyance in her presence.
La distancia que separaba las rocas era muy larga para poder salvarse de un salto.	The distance that separated the rocks was too great to be cleared with a jump.

687. The employment of *poco*, as an adjective pronoun, is exactly like that of *mucho*, of which it is the direct opposite in meaning. In the singular it is to be rendered by *little*; in the plural, *few*:—

"Poco dinero, pocos amigos."	"Little money, few friends."
De esas maravillas he visto yo pocas.	I have seen few of those marvels.

688. *Poco*, as an uninflected neuter, means *little*, as an adverb, *little*, *not very*. In its adverbial use it is the opposite of *muy* in meaning and has the same variety of application:—

Queda poco que decir.	Little remains to be said.
Vió que sus enemigos poco á poco iban ganando terreno sobre él.	He saw that his enemies were gaining ground on him little by little.
Un libro poco interesante.	A not very interesting book.
La noche era hermosa, y la oscuri- dad poco profunda todavía.	The evening was fine, and the dark- ness not yet very intense.
Su padre era poco indulgente.	His father was not very indulgent.
El hijo de V. escribe poco bien.— Sí, poco.	Your son does not write very well.— No, not very.

689. *Poco*, in any of its acceptations, may be preceded by the indefinite article; the distinction is then the same as that exhibited in English between *little* and *a little*:—

Hemos tomado un poco de vino.	We have taken a little wine.
Hemos bebido poco vino.	We have drunk little wine.
Habla poco.	He speaks little.
Hablo un poco el castellano.	I speak Spanish a little.
Tenemos pocos enemigos.	We have few enemies.
Tenemos unos pocos enemigos.	We have a few enemies.

690. Poco, in any of its values, may be intensified by *muy*, or the absolute superlative form *poquísimo* may be used:—

Tenemos muy poca luz.	We have very little light.
El sol ha lucido poquísimo durante la semana pasada.	The sun has shone very little during the past week.

691. Demasiado is inflected and employed just like *mucho*; in the singular it has the meaning of *too much*, in the plural, *too many*:—

Usted ha echado demasiada leche.	You have put in too much milk.
En este cuarto hay demasiadas sillas.	There are too many chairs in this room.

692. In its uninflected form, *demasiado* is used adverbially with the value of *too, too much*:—

Usted se molesta demasiado.	You trouble yourself too much.
Este tabaco es demasiado seco.	This cigar is too dry.

REMARKS.—a. Such a combination as *demasiado mucho* (-a, -os, -as) is inadmissible.

b. The expression *demasiado poco* (-a, -os, -as), *too little (few)*, is considered clumsy; *poco* alone, or *poquísimo* (in their proper inflexional forms) are preferable.

693. Bastante, when qualifying a noun, is declined like any adjective in -e, and means *enough*. Indeclinable, as an adverb, it has, besides its literal meaning, a secondary value of *tolerably, pretty*:—

¿Tiene V. bastantes limones para hacer un ponche?	Have you enough lemons to make a punch?
Ya ha dicho lo bastante para convencerme de su probidad.	He has already said enough to convince me of his probity.

Usted no ha estudiado bastante su lección.	You have not studied your lesson sufficiently.
Su estado es bastante grave.	His condition is pretty serious.
El proyecto de Vd. es bastante arriesgado.	Your scheme is pretty risky.

**694.** Solo is used as an adjective with the meaning of *alone, single, solitary*. As an adverb it is equivalent to *solamente, only*, for which it is a preferred shorter form. The adverbial employment is signalized by an accent—*sólo* :—

Quedó solo.	He remained alone.
¿Ha venido V. sola, señorita?	Did you come alone, Miss?
Sólo tengo dos.	I have only two.
Tengo dos solamente. }	
La noche era oscura; sólo algunos relámpagos de calor iluminaban de vez en cuando el horizonte.	The night was dark; only some heat-lightning from time to time illuminated the horizon.
Este mal tan grande no tiene una sola raíz sino muchas y diversas.	This great evil has not one single root but many and various.

**695.** Único must not be confounded with solo. It is used only adjectively, and means *sole, single, only, unique* :—

Un hijo único.	An only son.
Era el único sostén de su madre.	He was his mother's only support.
Es lo único que puedo hacer.	It is the only thing that I can do.
Aquel eco lejano fué la única respuesta que obtuvieron sus gritos.	That distant echo was the sole answer that their shouts obtained.

REMARK.—After *por*, *todo* is sometimes used instead of *único* :—

Pepe por toda respuesta me indicó una carta que reposaba en la mesa.	Joe as his only answer pointed out to me a letter which lay upon the table.
--	---

### EXERCISE XLI.

a) 1. Preguntó alguien á *Tales de Mileto* qué cosa era la más grande; “el *espacio*,” contestó, “porque lo abraza todo”; cuál la más veloz, dijo: “el pensamiento, porque lo recorre todo”;—cuál la más fuerte, repuso: “la *necesidad*, porque todo lo vence”;—cuál la más sabia, contestó: “el tiempo, porque lo enseña todo.” 2. La torre de *Eiffel* es, hasta la fecha, el edificio más alto del mundo entero. 3. La Biblioteca Nacional de *Paris*



es la más rica en volúmenes, de todas las existentes. 4. Muchos *efectos* brotan de una sola causa, y muchas causas contribuyen á un solo *efecto*. 5. "Poco importa" es una locución que muchos *usan* demasiado á menudo. 6. El año bisiesto ocurre cada cuatro años. 7. Mi socio y yo estamos muy chasqueados; el negocio ha salido todo al revés de lo que esperábamos. 8. Todas las fondas de esta parte del país son muy ruines, y el surtido de géneros de (*in*) las tiendas es extremadamente mezquino. 9. Aunque el vapor está todo dispuesto á zarpar, la marea no estará bastante alta antes de las cuatro de la madrugada. 10. Nuestra única esperanza consistía en cabalgar toda la noche, evitando las poblaciones y los caminos muy *frecuentados*. 11. Los guardias rurales volvieron todos los cuatro muy cansados, y todo cubiertos de lodo, mas no traían noticia del paradero del contrabandista. 12. Todo lo que acabo de referirle á Vd. no es más que el prólogo de unos acontecimientos mucho más sorprendientes todavía. 13. Los nidos de una especie de golondrina de mar constituyen un manjar muy estimado de los gastrónomos chinos. 14. Muchos hombres han pasado la vida entera amontonando un caudal que sus hijos han derrochado en unos pocos años. 15. La clase espera terminar la lectura de este *drama* en todo el mes que viene. 16. Casi todos los *animales* que se encuentran en la isla de Nueva Zelandia fueron introducidos allí desde Europa; dos especies de murciélagos son los únicos *ma-males* indígenas. 17. Los proverbios españoles son bastante ocurrentes; ¿no es verdad? 18. Sí, mucho.

b) 1. Farming is the most healthful of all *occupations*, although there are many that are less arduous. 2. Many farmers do not fully *appreciate* the *pure* air, the *active* outdoor life, and the freedom from noise which they enjoy. 3. Few men are more independent than the successful farmer. 4. Many countrymen complain of the lonesome life, but nowhere is it *possible* to be more completely alone than in a great city. 5. There every one works only for himself, and he is too busy with his own affairs to help his neighbor. 6. The city air is too full of smoke and unpleasant odors, there is always a great deal of noise there, and everybody seems to be *constantly* in a hurry. 7. Yet nearly all farmers' sons long to go to the cities, and very few are content to follow in the footsteps of their fathers. 8. This is because few parents are wise enough to instill in their children an (*el*) interest in (*de* or *hacia*) the nature that surrounds them. 9. From (*desde*) the departure of winter till its return, each season, each month, almost each day has its own *special* charm and its own proper enjoyments. 10. And all who learn to *appreciate* them will never be wholly satisfied with the *artificial* life of the cities. 11. But everything has its disadvantages as well as its advantages, and the country lacks many conveniences that even the poor enjoy in the cities. 12. A doctor is not always to be

had promptly every time anybody falls sick; and there are many things commonly found ready-made in the cities that are not on sale in the country stores, where the assortment of goods is almost always poor. 13. There are very few books in the country, and in most families too little *attention* is given to the *æsthetic* side of life. 14. There are also few schools, and those that there are, are often of a very elementary *character* (*m. 2*). 15. The farmer himself needs to know a little of all crafts, while (*al paso que*) his wife must (*debe*) be cook, seamstress, doctor, nurse, and teacher, all in one. 16. Enough treatises have been written on the pleasures of country life to fill a whole bookcase; but it is *impossible* to learn much about the matter from books. 17. *Experience* in this, as in most *practical* things, is the only reliable teacher.

- NOTES. 2. freedom from: *render*, absence of.  
 6. noise, *barullo (m.)* = confusion, bustle.  
 7. cities: singular in Spanish.  
 8. this is: use *ocurrir*, not *ser*.  
 9. Render "proper" by *natural*.  
 10. learn to, *llegan á* = get to.  
     cities: singular in Spanish.  
 11. as well as, *así como*.  
     cities: see notes to 7 and 10.  
 12. a doctor is: place verb before subject.  
     to be had, *asequible* = obtainable.  
     Supply relative after "things."  
 13. Begin sentence with "in the country."  
 15. in one, *en una pieza*.  
 16. the pleasures, *las delicias*.  
     from books, *con libros*.

## LESSON XLII.

### MISCELLANEOUS ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS (*Continued*).

 We will now consider the following, in the order named:—

Otro, -a, -os, -as.	Other, another, others.
Alguno que otro, ( <i>decl.</i> )	Some . . . or other.
Uno, -a, -os, -as.	One, some.
Unos, -as cuantos, -as.	Some, a few.

Uno y otro, } Ambos, } (declinable.) Entrambos, }	Both.
Varios, -as.	Various, several, sundry.
El, la, lo, los, las demás.	The rest, the others.
Mismo, -a, -os, -as.	Same; self, selves.
Propio, -a, -os, -as.	Own; self, selves.
Ajeno, -a, -os, -as.	Another's, somebody else's.
Cierto, -a, -os, -as.	Certain.
Tal, -es.	Such.
Semejante, -es.	Similar, like, such.
Sendos, -as.	Apiece.

696. Otro, used adjectively or pronominally, applies to persons or things : a) designating a particular person or thing, it is preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative or possessive pronoun; b) used indefinitely it does not admit the indefinite article:—

Otro tomo; el otro tomo.	Another volume; the other volume.
Busco otro; busco el otro.	I am looking for another; I am looking for the other.
Queremos otros; queremos los otros.	We want some others; we want the others.
Mi otra hija; sus otras fincas.	My other daughter; his other estates.
Estos otros goznes; ese otro fío.	These other hinges; that other bundle.
¿Dónde encontraré otra igual?	Where will I find another like her?
De otro modo, de otra manera.	Otherwise.

REMARK.—Otro is now rarely found appended to *este, ese*, (*estotro, this other; esotro, that other*),—combinations once quite common, but now written as separate words.

697. Otra cosa is a current phrase meaning *something else, anything else*; with a negative, *nothing else*:—

Otra cosa que el acaso ha producido el orden admirable del universo.	Something else than chance has produced the admirable order of the universe.
No piensa en otra cosa que en comer.	He doesn't think of anything else but eating.
Yo no hago más que emitir una conjetura y no otra cosa.	I only express a conjecture and nothing else.

**698. Otro tanto** means *as much more*; **otros tantos**, *as many more*:—

Pablo hizo **otro tanto** por su parte. Paul did *as much more* on his part.  
En la segunda cueva descubrieron casi **otros tantos** cofres de monedas. In the second cave they found almost *as many more* chests of coins.

De repente surcaron la oscuridad varios relámpagos, y luego estallaron **otras tantas** detonaciones. Suddenly several flashes pierced the darkness and immediately afterwards an equal number of reports rang out.

La mitad y **otro tanto**. (*A slang phrase for the whole of anything.*) As much again as half. (*Lit. the half and as much more.*)

REMARK — Tanto *otro*, *so much more*, tantos *otros*, *so many more*, are followed by *que* and a phrase expressing some result (*cf.* § 619).

**699. Numerals and adjectives of quantity** preferably follow the plural **otros**, *-as*:—

Al norte **otros dos** cabos cerraban la bahía. To the north two other capes shut in the bay.

Este distrito produce cobre, hierro, azogue, estaño, carbón y **otros muchos** minerales preciosos. This district produces copper, iron, mercury, tin, coal and many other valuable minerals.

Y **otras muchas** cosas. And many other things.

Desde su tiempo **otros varios** exploradores han intentado lo mismo. Since his time various other explorers have attempted the same thing.

Citaremos á tres personas entre **otras mil**. We will cite three persons among a thousand others.

**700. Alguno que otro**, followed by a noun, corresponds to the English expression of *some . . . or other*, or *an occasional*:—

Él está buscando siempre **alguno que otro** pretexto para verla. He is always seeking some pretext or other to see her.

No veíamos más que **algunos que otros** labriegos que regresaban de los campos. We saw only some farm-hands who were returning from the fields.

Le dirigió **alguna que otra** mirada exploradora. She directed an occasional inquiring glance at him.

**Alguna que otra vez** me interrumpía extendiendo la mano. From time to time he interrupted me by stretching out his hand.



REMARK.—In this expression *uno* may take the place of *alguno*:—

Por entre ese denso ramaje pasan algunos rayos de luz, y uno que otro pájaro atraviesa esas ráfagas, volando perezoso.	A few rays of light penetrate among this dense mass of branches, and occasionally a bird, flying lazily, crosses these streaks of light.
Uno que otro chirrido, uno que otro canto interrumpía el silencio.	An occasional chirp, an occasional carol, interrupted the silence.

701. *Uno*, with which we are familiar as a numeral and indefinite article, is also a declinable adjective pronoun, meaning *some*:—

Un día veremos.	Some day we shall see.
Unas señoras están abajo y quieren verla á V.	Some ladies are down-stairs and wish to see you, Ma'am.

702. *Unos*, *unas*, is weaker and more indefinite than *algunos*, *some*, and expresses indifference as to the exact number:—

Tenía unos cigarros por aquí, pero ya no los encuentro.	I had some cigarettes around here, but I don't find them any more.
Su pintura representaba un canasto con unas frutas.	His painting represented a basket with fruit.

703. *Uno* may be used with a partitive effect, followed by the preposition *de* and a noun:—

Uno de los puntos principales de interés en este lugar es el parque.	One of the principal points of interest in this place is the park.
--	--

REMARK.—In the plural, however, *algunos* takes the place of *unos*:—

Algunos de sus camaradas.	Some of his comrades (chums).
Algunas de las mujeres.	Some of the women.
Algunas de estas fresas ( <i>not</i> unas).	Some of these strawberries.

704. The combination *unos cuantos* is more definite than *unos*, and is interchangeable with *algunos*, *some*, *a few*:—

Allí ví á unos cuantos chicos jugando á la pelota.	I saw a few boys there playing ball.
Con excepción de unas cuantas personas cuyos negocios las obligaron á regresar á Madrid, . . .	With the exception of a few persons whose business obliged them to return to Madrid, . . .
Después de unos cuantos golpes de remo, la piragua tocó tierra.	After a few strokes of the oar, the dug-out touched land.

**705.** *Uno* is contrasted with *otro* in many ways. Contrary to the English usage, when employed absolutely it seldom takes the definite article:—

Una cosa es el agradecimiento, y otra el amor.	Gratitude is one thing and love another.
Mantenemos dos casas de huéspedes para nuestros operarios, una para los hombres y otra para las mujeres.	We keep two boarding-houses for our operatives, one for the men, the other for the women.
Es preciso resolver una cosa ú otra.	It is necessary to decide on one thing or the other.

**706.** *Uno y otro* is used with the meaning of *both* when we wish to preserve the separate identity of *each* of two nouns:—

Uno y otro han contribuido al buen éxito del proyecto	Both have contributed to the success of the scheme.
Será fácil abrir una carretera entre uno y otro punto.	It will be easy to cut a wagon-road between the two points.
Al ver allí á Doña Tula y Don Oscar, hice dos profundas y consecutivas reverencias á una y otro.	On seeing Doña Tula and Don Oscar there, I made them two profound and separate bows.

**707.** *Uno ú otro* means *either* of two individuals; *unos ú otros*, *either* of two groups. Their respective negative forms are *ni uno ni otro*, *ni unos ni otros*. Either, or each, member may assume the feminine form, as may be required:—

¿Quiere V. el “Imparcial” ó el “Globo”?—Uno á otro, no importa cuál.	Do you wish the “Imparcial” or the “Globo”?—Either; it does not matter which.
¿Le mandaré libros franceses ó españoles?—Unos ú otros; lee ambos idiomas con facilidad.	Shall I send him French or Spanish books?—Either; he reads both languages with ease.
No voto ni por el uno ní por el otro.	I shall vote for neither.
Juana, si viene la señora Caldas ó su hermano, no estoy en casa ni para una ní para otro. ¿Entiendes?	Jane, if Mrs. Caldas or her brother comes, I am not at home to either of them. Understand?

**708.** *Uno*, to avoid repetition, may take the place of a noun, and be qualified by an adjective or participle:—

La idea de V. es buena, pero creo tener una mejor.	Your idea is good, but I think I have a better one.
¿Quiere V. un cuello grande volteado ó uno corto parado?	Will you have a deep turned-down collar or a small stand-up one?

**709. Ambos, both,** is one of the very few words that may be said to be of the dual number, applicable only to two:—

Resultaron ambas proposiciones aprobadas por unanimidad.	Both propositions were unanimously adopted.
Ambos ríos son muy caudalosos.	Both rivers are very large.
Ambas orillas son altas y escabrosas.	Both banks are high and rugged.

**REMARK.**—*Ambos* may be replaced by *los dos*; thus we could say:

Resultaron las dos proposiciones aprobadas por unanimidad.	Both propositions were unanimously adopted.
Los dos ríos; las dos orillas.	Both rivers; both banks.

**710. Entrambos** is now interchangeable with *ambos*. Its original meaning, *between two* (*entre ambos*), is expressed by *ambos á dos*, or *entrambos á dos*, *between the two*:—

Ella se quedó inmóvil, agarrada con entrambas manos á las rejas.	She remained motionless, clinging with both hands to the railings.
Consiguieron levantar la piedra entrambos á dos.	They succeeded between them in lifting the stone.

**711. Varios, several, a good many,** is employed either as an adjective or a noun; it has no singular:—

Los operarios de la fábrica han formado varias sociedades de recreo é instrucción.	The factory hands have organized several societies of amusement and instruction.
Varias clases de lámparas de piano y de mesa.	Various styles of piano and table lamps.
Sacos de papel de varios tamaños.	Paper bags of various sizes.

**712. Una porción de** is a popular equivalent of *varios*, sometimes conveying the idea of considerable extent or numbers:—

Ya lo he dicho una porción de veces.	I have already said so several times.
Atravesó una porción de calles sin apercibirse siquiera de lo que hacía.	He crossed several streets without even taking account of what he was doing.
Había citado una porción de casos semejantes.	He had cited quite a number of similar cases.

• 713. *Demás* is invariable in form; in the singular, it appears only in the neuter: *a*) in the plural, preceded by the definite article (which distinguishes gender), it means *the rest, the others*; *b*) the neuter *lo demás* is equivalent to *everything else*:—

Lo decidiremos sin consultar á los demás socios.	We shall decide it without consulting the other members.
La afirmación de una cosa implica la exclusión de todas las demás.	The expression of one thing implies the exclusion of all others.
Por lo demás, digo, no lo quiero.	Besides, I say, I don't want it.
Lo demás importa poco.	All else matters but little.

REMARK.—*Demás*, in the predicate, means *superfluous*; compare the analogous French *de trop*:—

Abandonó bruscamente aquella sociedad donde se sentía estar demás.	He hastily left that society where he felt himself to be out of place.
En esta época tumultuosa no está demás toda clase de precauciones.	In the present troublous period no kind of precaution is superfluous.

714. *Mismo*, *same*, when used adjectively, precedes its noun, and is itself preceded by some qualifying word—article, or demonstrative or possessive pronoun. The neuter *lo mismo* is used absolutely and means *the same thing*:—

También soy yo del mismo parecer.	I'm of the same opinion too.
Esta nueva tentativa obtuvo el mismo resultado que antes.	This new attempt obtained the same result as before.
Será lo mismo que si él se lo hubiese dado á V.	It will be the same thing as if he had given it to you.

715. *El mismo* supposes a comparison, which *un mismo* does not. The distinction is sharply drawn:—

Esta casa es del mismo dueño que la vecina.	This house belongs to the same owner as the one next door.
Eran solteros, mozos de una misma edad y unas mismas costumbres.	They were bachelors, young fellows of the same age and the same habits.
Ambos tenían un mismo odio á los ingleses, una misma astucia en concebir sus proyectos, una misma crueldad en ejecutarlos; eran una alma en dos cuerpos.	Both had the same hatred of the English, the same cunning in devising their plans, the same cruelty in executing them; they were one soul in two bodies.



716. **Mismo**, following a noun or the nominative or prepositional form of a personal pronoun, has an intensive or emphatic effect, which may be rendered by *self*, *very* or *even*:—

Habla demasiado de sí mismo.	He talks too much about himself.
Sus hijos saben más que ellos mismos.	Their children know more than they [do] themselves.
Vale más de lo que ella misma se figura.	It is worth more than she herself imagines.
El camino era aquí tan áspero que las mulas mismas experimentaron dificultad en seguir adelante.	The road was here so rugged that even the mules experienced difficulty in going forward.

REMARK.—The student should avoid confusing *el mismo*, *la misma*, with *él mismo*, *ella misma*. The former denote merely likeness or identity; the latter are emphatic:—

Este hombre no es ya el mismo [que antes era]. ( <i>Likeness</i> .)	This man is no longer the same [as he was before].
Esta mujer no es la misma [que antes vimos]. ( <i>Identity</i> .)	This woman is not the same one [that we saw before].
Él mismo salió á mi encuentro.	He himself came out to meet me.
Ella misma nos lo dijo.	She told us so herself.

717. In the case of nouns, **mismo** with the definite article or a possessive pronoun may with the same effect be placed *before* a noun. The preposition *hasta* is occasionally used with similar emphasis either alone or in conjunction with **mismo**:—

Los mismos verdugos temblaron al oír sus palabras.	The very executioners trembled on hearing his words.
Hasta los mismos cactus parecían encogerse bajo la influencia de los rayos abrasadores.	Even the very cactus plants seemed to shrivel under the influence of the scorching rays.

718. After adverbs of time and place, **mismo** is invariable with the meaning of *this* or *that very*, though in some cases it cannot be rendered in English:—

Hoy mismo; ahora mismo.	This very day; this very moment.
Ayer mismo; mañana mismo.	Only yesterday; to-morrow.
Aquí mismo; allí mismo.	In this very place; that very place.

**719. Mismo** has a superlative form **mismísimo**, *very same, self-same*, which is declinable and is used only before nouns:—

Partió por casualidad en el mismísimo vapor que su rival.	He left by chance in the very same steamer as his rival.
Y allí ví los mismísimos versos.	And there I saw the self-same verses.

**720. Propio** emphasizes the word it accompanies. After a possessive pronoun it is rendered *own*; after a personal pronoun it is interchangeable with **mismo**, *self*:—

Cada estado hace por sí mismo sus propias leyes respecto á la herencia.	Each state makes for itself its own laws respecting inheritance.
Ellos propios han hecho la mismísima cosa.	They have done the very same thing themselves.

**721.** As a pure adjective, **propio** is followed by one of the prepositions **de**, **para**, or **á**. With **de** it means *becoming, appropriate to*; with **para**, *suitable for* (immediate suitability); with **á**, *suitable for* (future adaptability):—

Su conducta no era propia de un oficial y caballero.	His conduct was unbecoming an officer and gentleman.
Me parece que su discurso no era propio de ocasión tan solemne.	It seems to me that his speech was not appropriate to so solemn an occasion.
Esta yerba no es propia para el ganado.	This grass is not suitable for stock.
Estas frutas son propias á hacer dulces.	This fruit is suitable for preserving.
Un hombre propio para todo.	A man available for anything.
Un hombre propio á todo.	A man adaptable to anything.

**722. Ajeno** (derived from Lat. *alienus*, but equivalent to Lat. *alterius*) serves as a possessive to **otro** with the pronominal signification of *somebody else's, other people's*. It is thus the opposite of **propio**, *own*:—

El hombre discreto percibe las faltas ajenas, pero no habla de ellas.	The discreet man notices the faults of others, but does not speak of them.
Hablamos de los dolores ajenos con una gran frialdad.	We talk of other people's sufferings with great calmness.

723. *Ajeno*, as a pure adjective, means *foreign to* or *unaware of*, and is followed by *de*:—

La proposición de Vd. es ajena del cometido de nuestra comisión.	Your proposition is foreign to the scope of our committee.
Entretanto se hallaba muy ajeno de la suerte que le aguardaba.	In the meantime he was quite unaware of the fate that awaited him.
¡Qué ajeno estaba de tenerle tan cerca!	How oblivious I was of his being so near!

724. *Cierto*, *certain*, applies to persons or things which we wish to indicate, without being explicit. It is then always followed by a noun, and does not admit the indefinite article:—

Hasta cierto punto era esto verdad.	To a certain point this was true.
Mostraba cierta superioridad que me humillaba.	He exhibited a certain superiority which humiliated me.
Lo dije así por cierto instinto dramático que todas las mujeres tenemos.	I said it so through a certain dramatic instinct which all of us women have.
Ciertos inviernos son muy rigurosos en España.	Certain winters in Spain are very severe.

725. *Cierto*, as a pure adjective, follows its noun, or stands alone in the predicate; it means *certain* in the sense of *reliable*:—

Un indicio cierto; pruebas ciertas.	A certain indication; sure proof.
Una muerte cierta; noticias ciertas.	A certain death; reliable news.
No es cierto lo que dice.	What he says is not so.

726. *Tal*, *such*, when used adjectively, is not followed by the indefinite article, as is the case in English in the singular:—

De tal modo; de tal manera.	In suchwise; in such a manner.
Por tal y tal causa.	For such and such a cause.
Contra tales obstáculos es inútil luchar.	It is useless to struggle against such obstacles.
Bajo tales y tales condiciones.	Under such and such conditions.

727. Used absolutely, *tal* is frequently followed by a further statement, introduced by *como* or *que*, with this distinction, that *tal como* expresses a comparison, *tal que*, a result:—

La oscuridad era tal que no podían distinguir la vereda.	The darkness was such that they could not distinguish the path.
Los estallidos del trueno eran continuos entonces, y su violencia tal que era imposible oír una palabra.	The peals of thunder were then continuous, and their violence such that it was impossible to hear a word.
El capitán habló con tal acento de convencimiento que mis recelos se disiparon.	The captain spoke with such a tone of conviction that my fears were dispelled.
No tengo papel tal como V. quiere.	I have no paper such as you want.
No encontramos á los indígenas tales como nos los habían descrito los libros de viajes.	We did not find the natives such as the books of travels had described them to us.

**728.** *Tal* may be used absolutely as an indeclinable neuter, meaning *such a thing* :—

No quiero creer tal de su parte.	I won't believe such a thing of him.
Nunca he visto ni oído tal.	I have never seen or heard of such a thing.

**REMARK.**—*Tal cosa* is now commonly used for *tal* in this sense :—

No permitiré tal cosa.	I will not allow such a thing.
------------------------	--------------------------------

**729.** *Tal* may be used adverbially to add emphasis to a statement or question :—

¿Qué tal le parece á V. el resultado?	How does the result seem to you?
¡Sí tal; no tal.	Yes indeed; no indeed.
¿Y qué tal van tus amores?	And how go your love affairs?

**730.** *Tal* is preceded by the indefinite article only when used with the name of a person; it then means *one, a certain*. Before other nouns *cierto* is used, without an article :—

Me lo dijo un tal Palomares.	One Palomares told me so.
Cierto joven turco, un tal Hassán, ofreció enseñarnos la vereda.	A certain Turkish youth, one Hassan, offered to show us the path.

**731.** *El tal, la tal*, etc., applied to names of persons or things familiarly known, imparts an air of joviality :—

El tal criado no era tan tonto.	The said servant wasn't such a fool.
Como la tal condesa era muy esclava de la moda, no podía obrar de otro modo.	As the countess was much a slave to fashion, she could not act otherwise.



El tal borrico no quiso ir ni adelante ni atrás.	The rascal of a donkey would neither go forwards nor backwards.
Era un hombre acreditado al tal Rodríguez.	He was a man of repute, this Rodríguez.

732. *Cual* is often used as a correlative to *tal* in comparisons of two similar persons, things or statements:—

Según su doctrina, la vida futura será tal cual ha sido la de este mundo.	According to their belief, the future life will be in accordance with what that of this world has been.
Han amueblado de nuevo algunas piezas; pero el resto de la casa lo han dejado tal cual estaba antes.	They have refurnished a few rooms; but the rest of the house they have left just as it was before.

733. *Semejante*, meaning *such*, *like*, *similar*, is interchangeable with *tal* before nouns:—

Semejante conducta merece el vituperio de todos.	Such conduct deserves the condemnation of all.
Se han hallado restos semejantes en todas partes del Asia.	Similar remains have been found in all parts of Asia.

734. *Sendas* (from the Latin *singulos*) has a distributive effect, and means *one apiece*. It is used only in the plural:—

Los jueces llevaban sendas pelucas.	The judges all had on wigs.
Regaló al duque sendas espadas de Damasco y de Toledo.	He gave the Duke two swords, of Damascus and Toledo respectively.
Los seis gitanos montados en sendos burros, salieron al anoecer.	The six gipsies, mounted on as many donkeys, set out at nightfall.
La reina distribuyó entre los generales sendas medallas de oro.	The queen distributed among the generals a gold medal apiece.

735. *Uno*, *hombre*, *gente*, and, with a negative, *persona*, are occasionally used pronominally, unaccompanied by an article, with the vague meaning of *someone*, *anyone*; a like effect may be obtained by placing the verb in the plural without a subject:—

No está uno siempre preparado á improvisar un discurso.	One is not always prepared to make an impromptu speech.
No ví á persona con quien hablar.	I didn't see a person to talk to.
No quedó persona con vida.	No one was left alive.

No siempre es una dueña de sí misma.	One is not always mistress of one's self.
Llegar hombre á su casa y no encontrar escalera para subir á su cuarto, no es cosa de risa para gente cansada.	For a fellow to get home and not find any stairs to go up to his room by, is not a laughing matter for tired folk.

736. *Cosa, thing*, is often used with a pronominal value, while retaining its feminine gender. It is equivalent to *something, anything*; with a negative, *nothing*:—

¿Qué cosa le ha sucedido? Tiene V. la camisa toda ensangrentada. —Oh, no es cosa; un arañó.	What has happened to you? Your shirt is all bloody.—Oh, it is nothing; a mere scratch.
Ya hemos caminado veinte leguas sin ver cosa interesante.	We have already come sixty miles without seeing anything interesting.
El honorable delegado ha intimado que yo sé muy poca cosa acerca del asunto.	The honorable delegate has intimated that I know very little about the subject.

#### EXERCISE XLII.

a) 1. Cuando miramos el cielo en una noche clara, lo vemos sembrado de puntos relucientes que se llaman estrellas. 2. Casi todas esas estrellas, cuya luz es más ó menos viva, no varían nunca de *posición, formando* grupos que denominan los astrónomos *constelaciones*. 3. Si contemplamos cada noche uno de esos grupos, notaremos que las estrellas que lo componen conservan siempre una misma situación. 4. Por consiguiente se llaman estrellas fijas. 5. Sin embargo cada una de ellas tiene su propia órbita, que recorre con una *velocidad* vertiginosa, pero á tan *inmensa distancia* de nosotros, que el movimiento nos es *imperceptible*. 6. Todas las estrellas que vemos son otros tantos soles *luminosos* como el nuestro. 7. Si *continuamos* contemplando el cielo con mucha *atención* todas las noches, muy luego distinguiremos entre las *innumerables* estrellas, algunas que cambian de lugar, aunque éstas son muy pocas. 8. Ora las hallaremos cerca de una *constelación*, ora cerca de otra. 9. En ciertos meses del año veremos algunas que no son *visibles* en otros. 10. Hasta el día se han descubierto ocho *principales* y más de cien pequeños astros de esta clase; y como cambian de puesto con respecto á las demás estrellas, se llaman "planetas," palabra que significa cuerpos errantes. 11. Se ha *calculado* acertadamente la marcha de los planetas, y se ha probado que todos ellos giran en torno del sol, que los arrastra consigo en su veloz carrera por el *espacio*. 12. Además de los planetas, hay otros astros, llamados cometas,

cuyas órbitas son muy *excéntricas*. 13. Muy pocos de estos "pelegrinos del *espacio*" vuelvan á *visitar* el sistema *solar*, pero hay algunos que tienen un período fijo. 14. Por otra parte, los cometas se distinguen de los demás cuerpos celestes en que muchos de ellos tienen una *prolongación luminosa* que se llama cola. 15. Algunos cometas tienen varias colas: el de 1744 tenía seis.

b) 1. Although all the states are *subordinate* to the *central* government, each has its own governor and its own *legislative* body. 2. Even the judge himself smiled (*sonrió*) when the witness made that remark. 3. Your friend himself does not believe all the stories he tells; indeed I have sometimes told him so myself. 4. When Uncle Peter comes to *visit* us, he always brings us girls a box of candy apiece. 5. *Shakespeare* says that all the world is a stage, and the men and women are so many players; they have their exits and their entrances, and each one in his time plays many parts. 6. This novel is too gloomy; will you lend me another less pessimistic? 7. With much pleasure; I have quite a number of novels with a happy ending. Do you want one in French or in Spanish? 8. It does not matter; I read both languages with equal ease. 9. I have too many troubles of my own to listen to other people's tales of woe. 10. A certain mine owner from *Bolivia*, one *Contreras*, gave us this nugget; he says he finds a dozen such every month. 11. The Island of Pines possesses several harbors suitable for the establishment of a *naval* coaling station. 12. The Indian chiefs, one after another, took a few whiffs from the same pipe, as a symbol of their mutual acquiescence to the treaty. 13. The English claim the left bank of the river, but the Venezuelans have always held both banks, the one equally as much as the other. 14. Twelve monks followed the bier, bearing each a lighted taper. 15. Young *Preston* has just returned from a trip to Europe, and doesn't want to talk of anything else. 16. "My dear friend," said the lawyer, taking off his spectacles, "such a contract as that is not binding. You have certainly the same rights that every *naturalized* citizen has under (*en*) similar circumstances." 17. An occasional seal and a few flocks of gulls were the only living creatures that we saw during our *exploration* of the seacoast. 18. Towards six o'clock in the evening we reached a sort of cave formed of several enormous masses of rock, piled one upon another, as if by some *volcanic* upheaval. 19. This spot seemed to us a very suitable one for a camp, and as we soon heard the signal-shots of the rest of our companions, who had made the circuit of the island in the opposite *direction*, we decided to await them and to pass the night in this rude shelter, instead of endeavoring to regain the ship that same evening.

NOTES. 7. Render: do you want it (*la*).

8. it does not matter, *lo mismo da*.

10. from Bolivia, *boliviano*.
12. took: use  *echar*, not  *tomar*.
13. Render: as much the one as the other; do not express "equally."
15. young,  *chico* (see, also, § 286).
16. certainly,  *á buen seguro*.
18. formed: use  *hacer*, not  *formar*.  
one . . . another: plural in Spanish.  
as if by,  *como por efecto de*.
19. a camp, the opposite direction: omit article in each case.

---

## LESSON XLIII.

### NEGATIVES.

737. As we have seen (§§ 93, 94) the negative adverb *no* precedes the verb which it negatives and, in the absence of a verb, follows a personal pronoun, or an adverb of time or place:—

Si nuestros amigos no llegan pronto,	If our friends do not arrive soon
no conseguirán asientos.	they will not get seats.
¿No quiere Vd. ir esta noche á la ópera?	Don't you want to go to the opera to-night?
Yo no. Esta noche no. Aquí no.	Not I. Not to-night. Not here.
Aquéllos no. Al presente no.	Not those. Not at present.

738. In the case of the compound verbal forms with *ser*, *estar* or *haber*, it precedes the auxiliary, which is grammatically the finite verb:—

No hemos querido interrogarle respecto del suceso.	We have not wished to question him about the occurrence.
No estamos dispuestos á negarlo.	We are not prepared to deny it.
Su informe no fué acogido con el interés que merecía.	His report was not received with the interest which it deserved.

739. The order is not affected when the verb is omitted after having been previously expressed:—



Somos simples leñadores y no espías disfrazados.	We are simple woodcutters, and not spies in disguise.
Nos trata como presidiarios y no como gente honrada.	He treats us like convicts and not like honest people.
Sabe tocar, aunque no mucho.	She can play, although not much.
He corregido la mayor parte de las pruebas, pero no todas.	I have corrected most of the proof, but not all.

740. With the exception of the objective personal pronouns, no word may intervene between the verb and the negative (unless *no* negatives a phrase, as shown in § 757):—

Su proyecto no me parece realizable.	His plan does not seem feasible to me.
No se lo he conseguido todavía.	I have not obtained it for him yet.
Parecen distintos mas no lo son.	They seem different but are not.

741. *No* neutralizes any adjective, adverb or proposition of negative value, and is itself neutralized by repetition:—

Detalles no importantes.	Unimportant details.
"No sin" equivale á "con."	<i>Not without</i> is equivalent to <i>with</i> .
Pero no le fué permitido no asistir.	But it was not permitted him not to attend ( <i>i.e.</i> he was not allowed to be absent).
No podemos no admitir la justicia de sus observaciones.	We cannot fail to acknowledge the justice of his remarks.
Esta precaución no era inútil.	This precaution was not useless.

742. Otherwise, any number of other negatives, following a negated verb, only strengthen the negation; in fact, each adverb or pronoun of the negative clause assumes its negative form (when it has one):—

No toleraba nunca ninguna intervención de nadie.	He never tolerated any interference from anyone.
No veían en ninguna parte nada que indicase que hubiese habido naufragio de ninguna especie.	They did not see anything anywhere to indicate that there had been a shipwreck of any kind.

REMARK.—As *alguno* following a noun has a negative value (see § 526), it is only an apparent exception to the above statement:—

Hasta esta hora no he recibido noticia alguna de ellos.	Up to this hour I have not received any tidings of them.
No toleraba de nadie broma alguna.	He used not to tolerate any levity from anyone.

**743.** All auxiliary negatives, when they follow the verb, require **no** before the verb to complete the negation. Preceding the verb, they have full negative effect, and **no** is inadmissible:—

En cuanto á indígenas, no vimos á ningunos.	As for natives, we saw none.
En cuanto á indígenas, ningunos se mostraron.	As for natives, none showed themselves.
Nunca emplea más tiempo que el estrictamente necesario.	He never takes more time than what is strictly necessary.
No emplea nunca más tiempo que el estrictamente necesario.	

**744.** Certain words and phrases, not in themselves negative, are used to emphasize and strengthen **no**:—

No veo gota en este aposento.	I can't see at all in this room.
Por la calle no pasaba un alma	Not a soul was passing in the street.
No oigo palabra de lo que dice.	I do not hear a word of what he says.
No lo he hecho mejor en mi vida.	I have never done it better in my life.

**745.** Many expressions of this kind acquire a negative force by being placed before the verb; they are then treated exactly like the supplementary negatives mentioned in § 743, and **no** is omitted:—

En mi vida he visto tantas telarañas.	I have never seen so many cobwebs in my life.
En parte alguna la pudimos encontrar.	We could not find her anywhere.
En todo el año ha hecho tanto frío como hoy.	In the whole year it has not been so cold as to-day.
En toda la noche he podido dormir.	All night long I was unable to sleep.
En el mundo se hallará otra joven tan simpática.	You won't find another so charming a girl in the world.
En días de Dios ha sucedido tal cosa.	Never has such a thing happened before

**746.** In this way three words have become accepted as negatives which are not so etymologically. They are:—

**Nadie**, nobody. LATIN, *natus*, born; (*homo*, human being, understood.)

**Nada**, nothing. " *nata*, born; (*res*, thing, understood.)

**Jamás**, never. (Composed of *ya* and *más*.)

These are now employed either as auxiliary to *no*, or as actual negatives before a verb:—

Yo no le he ofendido jamás.

I have never offended him.

Yo jamás hago las cosas á medias.

I never do things by halves.

No ha ocurrido nada de nuevo. }

Nothing new has occurred.

Nada de nuevo ha ocurrido. }

Aquella desgracia, no prevista por nadie, llenó de espanto á todos.

That misfortune, not foreseen by anyone, filled all with dismay.

Nadie previó semejante desenlace.

No one foresaw such an outcome.

**747.** *Nada* may be employed as a feminine noun equivalent to the English *nothingness*:—

Los millares cuyos nombres se han sumergido en la nada.

The thousands whose names have sunk into nothingness.

Dios, quien sacó de la nada el admirable globo que habitamos, . . .

God, who produced from nothingness the wonderful globe which we inhabit, . . .

REMARK.—There is also a feminine noun *nonada*, meaning *a thing of no consequence, a mere nothing*; this may be used in the plural:—

Figúrese V. que esos dolores son nonadas, y no los padecerá.

Imagine that those aches are mere nothings and you will not feel them.

Su don es una nonada.

His gift is a mere nothing.

**748.** *Jamás* may be used as a mere expletive to strengthen *siempre*, *ever*, or *nunca*, *never*:—

La amaré por siempre jamás.

I shall love her for ever and ever.

Nunca jamás consentiré en eso.

I shall never, never consent to that.

**749.** *Nadie*, *nada*, and *jamás* are used with their original positive values of *anybody*, *anything*, and *ever* in the cases set forth below. This usage is generally extended by analogy to the true negatives *ninguno* and *nunca*:—

*a. In questions expecting negative answers:—*

¿Ha visto V. jamás nada que iguale á esto?	Have you ever seen anything to equal this?
¿Quién le exige á V. nada de eso?	Who is requiring of you anything of the kind?
¿Ha olvidado V. que á mí más que á ningún hombre toca hacer justicia de ese asesino?	Have you forgotten that it belongs to me more than to any man to render justice to that assassin?

*b. In exclamations of interrogative form:—*

¿Hay nada más sublime!	Is there anything more sublime!
¿Se ha visto jamás tal cosa!	Did you ever see the like!
¿Ha sido nadie tan desgraciado como yo en perder todos mis libros!	Was anyone ever so unfortunate as I in losing all my books!

*c. After comparatives and superlatives:—*

Importa á V. más que á nadie.	It matters to you more than any one.
Mis esperanzas renacieron ahora más frescas que nunca.	My hopes now sprang up again fresher than ever.
Estamos más resueltos que nunca.	We are more determined than ever.
Habla con más elocuencia que ninguno de sus colegas.	He speaks more eloquently than any of his colleagues.

*d. After expressions that embody a negative meaning:—*

Es imposible entender nada.	It is impossible to hear anything.
Me guardaré de hablar á nadie sobre lo sucedido.	I shall refrain from speaking to any one about what has happened.
Era inútil hacer ningún esfuerzo para huir.	It was useless to make any effort to flee.

*e. In clauses commencing with sin, antes, ni or tampoco:—*

Pero antes de emprender nada, convenía explorar el terreno.	But before undertaking anything, it was best to explore the ground.
Prefiero tener arreglados todos los pormenores antes de avisar á nadie.	I prefer to have all the details arranged before informing anyone.
Ellas me dirigían mil preguntas sin aguardar ninguna respuesta.	They asked me a thousand questions without waiting for any answer.
La noche pasó sin ningún incidente.	The night passed without any incident.
Su marido tampoco dijo nada.	Her husband also said nothing.



**750.** The location of several negatives may be summarized as follows: *a*) when *no* is employed, no other negative is placed before the verb; *b*) when *no* is not used, the other negatives may be distributed at pleasure, provided some one of them precedes the verb:—

Hasta esta noche jamás el alboroto	Until this night the revelry had never
había tomado tales proporciones.	assumed such proportions.
No hizo absolutamente nada para	He did absolutely nothing to aid any
ayudar á ninguno de ellos.	of them.
En ninguna parte he estado nunca	I have never been more comfortable
mejor; ni aún en mi gabinete.	anywhere; not even in my own
	study.
Voy á batir á V. como no ha sido	I am going to beat you as no Eng-
nunca batido ningún inglés.	lishman was ever beaten before.

**751.** In answers, when no verb is expressed, the auxiliary negatives are sufficient, and *no* is not used with them:—

De ningún modo. }	By no means, not by any means.
De ninguna manera. }	
¿Consentirá V. en ello?—  Nunca !	Will you consent to it ?—Never !
Á ningún precio, contestó el duque.	Not at any price, replied the duke.

**752.** A redundant use of the negative is common to both languages in exclamations of interrogative form:—

¿Qué no daría yo para poseer una	What wouldn't I give to possess such
voz tan maravillosa !	a wonderful voice !
¿Qué no dirá la Europa al oír tal	What will not Europe say on hearing
escándalo !	such a scandal !

**753.** *No* is sometimes used redundantly after *que* in the second term of a comparison, a usage to be avoided,—unless it adds to the euphony of the clause, as in the third example:—

Ella se lo sabrá decir á Vd. mejor	She will know how to tell you better
que no yo.	than I.
Me gustan más los jardines del	I like the Ducal gardens better than
Duque que no las Delicias. <sup>1</sup>	the Delicias.
Está más resuelto ahora que no	He is more resolute now than then.
entonces.	

<sup>1</sup> Names of two extensive gardens in Seville, the former private, the latter public.

**754.** But *no* is required by euphony between two *que*'s, meaning *than that*, but does not alter the sense:—

Más bien parecía que le llevaban que no que él andaba.	It seemed rather that they were carrying him than that he walked.
Es más probable que resigne su comisión que no que se someta á semejante injusticia.	It is more likely that he will resign his commission than that he will submit to such injustice.

**755.** Another common redundant use of *no* is after *hasta*, *until*, in a sentence of negative meaning:—

El capitán no quería decidirse hasta no haber explorado la costa hasta el extremo de la península.	The captian did not wish to decide until he had explored the coast as far as the extremity of the peninsula.
No amé nunca hasta que no ví á V.	I never loved until I saw you.
Hasta que todo no esté arreglado quiero que ella lo ignore.	I do not want her to know it until everything is arranged.

**756.** *No* followed by a verb and *más que* or *sino* is equivalent to *not more than*, *not but*, or *only*:—

Pero con eso no haremos más que retardar la inevitable catástrofe.	But by that we will only retard the inevitable catastrophe.
No tomaron más tiempo que el necesario para descansar.	They took only what time was necessary to rest.
Durante el primer cuarto de hora de marcha el silencio no fué interrumpido sino por esta sola observación del guía.	During the first quarter of an hour's march, the silence was broken only by this single remark of the guide's.
No les quedaba más remedio que rendirse.	They had no resource but to surrender.
¿Que tiene V.? No hace V. sino bostezar.	What's the matter with you? You don't do anything but yawn.

**757.** Since a negative influences the word or phrase which it precedes, its location determines the shade of meaning:—

Nada más deseo que el reposo de la vida privada.	I desire nothing beyond the quiet of private life.
Nada deseo más que encontrarme con él cara á cara.	Nothing do I more desire than to meet him face to face.

En nada menos piensa que en ocupar un ministerio de Estado.	He thinks of nothing less than getting a cabinet office.
En nada piensa menos que en solicitar el cargo.	There is nothing that he thinks of less than applying for the position.
La herida no puede ser mortal.	The wound cannot possibly be mortal.
La herida puede no ser mortal.	The wound may not be mortal.
Hace bien en no perder el tiempo leyendo novelas.	She does well in not losing time reading novels.
No hace bien en perder el tiempo leyendo novelas.	She does not do well in losing time reading novels.
De los candidatos no sirven todos para el destino.	Not all of the candidates are fit for the place.
De los candidatos todos no sirven para el destino.	All of the candidates are unfit for the place.
No á todos es dado expresarse con facilidad y elegancia	It is not given to all to express themselves easily and elegantly.

758. The correlatives *no . . . sino, no sólo . . . sino también* are therefore placed immediately before the words or expressions which they contrast:—

Era aquél, no el sueño de un volcán, sino su extinción completa.	That was not the sleep of a volcano, but its complete extinction.
El cuadro representaba un país iluminado no de frente por los rayos solares sino desde atrás por medio de su reflexión.	The picture represented a country not lighted from in front by the sun's rays, but from behind by means of their reflection.
Aplaudieron el discurso no porque les pareció elocuente sino porque era corto.	They applauded the speech, not because it seemed eloquent to them, but because it was short.
No sólo mataron á los prisioneros sino también los cortaron en pedazos.	They not only killed the prisoners but also cut them in pieces.
Degollaron no sólo á los hombres sino también á las mujeres.	They massacred not only the men but also the women.

759. If two negative clauses are so contrasted, the formula is *no sólo (or solamente) . . . sino [que] tampoco* :—

Nosolamente ninguna otra voz contestó á la suya, sino que tampoco ningún eco le devolvió el sonido de sus gritos.	Not only did no other voice reply to his own, but no echo returned the sound of his shouts.
---	---

**760. Tampoco** (lit. *as little*) negatives something in addition to a previous negation, and is equivalent to *neither, not . . . either*; it requires *no* or *ni* when it follows the verb, but not when it precedes:—

Donde yo no he logrado pasar, el regimiento de V. no pasará tampoco.      Where I have not succeeded in passing, your regiment will not pass either.

Esta nueva tentativa tampoco obtuvo el resultado apetecido.      This new attempt likewise did not obtain the desired result.

Á decir verdad, no quiero ir.—Ni yo tampoco.      To tell the truth, I don't want to go.—Nor I either.

**761.** After an answer by simple *no*, a second similar answer is expressed by *tampoco*:—

¿Sabe V. á dónde ha ido Paco?—No señor.—¿Ni qué comisión lleva?—Tampoco señor.      Do you know where Frank has gone?—No, Sir.—Or what errand he is on?—No, Sir.

**762. Siquiera, even,** strengthens a negative, and is always accompanied by one:—

No le conozco ni siquiera de vista.      I do not know him even by sight.  
No turbaba el silencio del bosque ni siquiera el más ligero ruido.      Not the slightest sound disturbed the silence of the forest.  
Nadie siquiera ha oído hablar de él.      No one has even heard tell of him.

**763.** The conjunction *ni* is a negative form of *y, and*. Its English equivalent is *nor*, which is not equal to *not or* but to *and not*:—

No veo el libro, ni tengo tiempo para buscarlo.      { I do not see the book, *nor* have I time to look for it.  
I do not see the book *and* have not time to look for it.

La peste ha cesado, ni hay motivo para temer su nueva aparición.      The plague has ended, *and* there is no reason to fear its reappearance.

El presidente no ha leído aún la memoria de V., ni tiene tiempo hoy para examinarla.      The president has not read your memorial, *and* he has *not* time to look at it to-day.



**764.** *Ni* connects negative sentences in the same manner that *y* does affirmative ones:—

No lo creo <i>ni</i> me lo persuadirá <i>nadie</i> .	I do not believe it and no one is going to persuade me of it.
Nunca recibí dinero de él <i>ni</i> pensé nunca en solicitárselo.	I never received any money from him, nor did I ever think of asking him for any.
Muchas personas me califican de escéptico, y dicen que no creo en nada <i>ni</i> que en nada espero.	Many persons call me a sceptic, and say that I believe in nothing and hope for nothing.

**765.** It is no exception to the above that, when the several connected words or clauses are negated in that particular combination, *y* is used; *ni* would negative all the members either jointly or severally:—

No quiso regar su propio jardín <i>y</i> el de su vecino.	He didn't wish to water his own garden and his neighbor's.
No quiso regar su propio jardín <i>ni</i> el de su vecino.	He didn't wish to water his own garden nor his neighbor's.
No es posible criar truchas y lucios en un mismo estanque, porque éstos devoran á aquéllas.	It is not possible to raise trout and pike in the same pond, as the latter will devour the former.
No será posible criar lucios <i>ni</i> truchas en este estanque, porque el agua es muy fangosa.	It will not be possible to raise [either] pike or trout in this pond, as the water is too muddy.

**766.** After *ni* the negatives *nadie*, *ninguno*, *nada* must be used, and not *alguien*, *alguno*, *algo*:—

No tengo vino <i>ni</i> quiero comprar ninguno.	I have no wine and do not wish to buy any.
<i>Ni</i> lo creo, <i>ni</i> me lo persuadirá <i>nadie</i> .	I do not believe it, nor will anyone persuade me to.
No encontraron <i>ni</i> leña, <i>ni</i> yerbas, <i>ni</i> musgo <i>ni</i> nada combustible.	They did not find any wood, or grass, or moss, or anything combustible

**767.** *Ni . . . ni* is equivalent to *neither . . . nor* (or *not . . . either . . . or*); the additional negative *no* is required when the phrase follows the verb, but not when it precedes:—

No tengo ni tabacos ni pitillos. }  
Ni tabacos ni pitillos tengo. }

Mi Capitán, no he encontrado vestigios de él ni á la ida ni á la vuelta.

Ni el salvaje, ni el ave ni la fiera habitaban por entonces aquellas regiones de muerte.

I have neither cigars nor cigarettes.

Captain, I have not found any traces of him either going or coming.

Neither savage, nor bird nor wild beast then inhabited those regions of death.

**768. Ni** takes the place of *ó*, *or*, after all negatives or clauses embodying a negative or restrictive meaning:—

Los árboles formaban una cúpula impenetrable sin un claro ni una hendedura.

Será imposible atender á tantas cosas á un tiempo, ni dar las órdenes oportunas.

Apenas podía respirar ni moverse.

¿Quién será capaz de describir el encanto de este lugar pacífico; qué artista sabrá reproducir esos matices de luz, ni qué músico apuntar las notas del murmullo de las aguas cristalinas?

The trees formed an impenetrable dome without a clearing or a break.

It will be impossible to attend to so many things at once, or to give the proper orders.

He could scarcely breathe or move.

Who is able to describe the charm of this peaceful spot, what artist can reproduce those gradations of light, and what musician can write the notes of the murmur of the crystalline waters?

**769. Ni** is placed before a noun which we cite as evidence to a negation; it then corresponds to the English *not . . . even*:—

No podría arrancarlo de sus manos ni el mismo Hércules.

La atmósfera estaba serena y tranquila; ni la más tenue nube se descubría por ningún lado.

No lo dudaban ni por un momento.

Observaba aquel espectáculo sin pronunciar ni una sola palabra.

Not even Hercules himself could wrest it from his hands.

The air was clear and motionless; not even the faintest cloud was to be seen anywhere.

They did not doubt it even for a moment.

He contemplated that spectacle without uttering a single word.

**770. Ni** may in this meaning be strengthened by *siquiera*, *even*, provided the two are placed immediately together:—

Lejos de dar toda la latitud debida á la defensa, ni siquiera dejó hablar al abogado.

So far from giving all necessary scope to the defense, he did not even allow the counsel to speak.

771. But if anything is interpolated between *siquiera* and the negative, the latter is *no* and not *ni*:—

No dejó hablar *siquiera* al abogado. He did not allow even the counsel to speak.

REMARK.—Notice that in the first arrangement it is *hablar* that is restricted by *siquiera*; in the second, it is *abogado*.

772. In the case of a series of negations, it is usual to employ *no* with the first one and *ni* with the rest, provided the first contain a verb; when nouns or adjectives alone are to be negated, *ni* is preferably placed before each:—

Sus investigaciones más minuciosas *no* revelaron *ni* el menor vestigio de campamento, *ni* cenizas de hoguera apagada *ni* huella de pie humano.

Their minutest investigations did not reveal the least trace of an encampment, nor the ashes of a burnt-out fire nor the print of a human foot.

*Ni* la templanza y benignidad del clima, *ni* la excelencia y fertilidad del suelo, *ni* su ventajosa posición para el comercio marítimo eran poderosas á superar los obstáculos que oponía á sus progresos la política coartatoria de los Ingleses.

Neither the temperateness and mildness of the climate, nor the excellence and fertility of the soil nor its advantageous location for maritime commerce were sufficient to overcome the obstacles which the restrictive policy of the English opposed to its progress.

REMARK.—However, *no* may be repeated before a series of nouns under such circumstances:—

*No* la sed de la gloria, *no* una ambición noble, *no* el deseo de hacer feliz á la patria les empujaron á esta guerra.

Not the thirst for glory, nor a noble ambition, nor a desire to make their native country prosperous incited them to this war.

773. *Sino*, with its primary value of *if not* (*si no*), is used to present an alternative in questions beginning with an interrogative pronoun or adverb and expecting a negative answer:—

Pues ¿cuándo deberemos dar el golpe *sino* ahora?

Then when shall we strike the blow if not now?

¿A quién he de acudir *sino* á mi propio hermano?

To whom am I to turn if not to my own brother?

¿Quién tiene el deber de velar sobre la moral pública, sino es la Santa Iglesia? Whose duty is it to watch over the public morals if not that of the Church?

REMARK.—The present tendency is either to accent the more emphatic component (*sinó*) or to separate the compound (*si no*).

### EXERCISE XLIII.

a) 1. El vistoso girasol, que no da alimento ni á la abeja ni á la bestia, suministra semillas á las avecillas del otoño y del invierno. 2. Siendo la alcachofa una de las legumbres más *deliciosas* del reino vegetal, no comprendo por qué nunca se come ni aun se conoce en los Estados Unidos; tampoco acierto á comprender por qué la carne de cabrito nunca se encuentra en los mercados de dicho país, ni por qué el garbanzo, que *forma* una parte tan *esencial* de la comida de los españoles, es absolutamente desconocido en la *América* Septentrional. 3. El sabio no dice todo lo que sabe, ni gasta todo lo que gana. 4. Las penalidades de Colón no cesaron cuando por fin zarpó del puerto de *Palos*, pues el mismo principio del viaje se señaló por la rotura del timón de una de las carabelas, *La Pinta*, tal vez por mala *intención* del timonel, á quien asustaban aquellas acuosas inmensidades, jamás surcadas por las quillas europea. 5. Los marineros tomaron este percance como presagio funesto; pero Colón, que nunca perdía la calma ni la serenidad, les dijo que era una aberración creer en malos agüeros ni en presagios de ninguna clase, y que la avería del timón no indicaba sino una sola cosa: la *necesidad* de componerlo. 6. Estuvimos sentados dos horas en el sol abrazador y no conseguimos ni una picada. 7. La mujer de Vd. no está mala; está simplemente molestandose en lo que es *realmente* una mera nonada. 8. Nada ansío más que legarles á mis hijos una renta pasable. 9. La faz del banquero era tan escuálida y apesadumbrada que ni aun sus antiguos íntimos le reconocieron á primera vista. 10. El *Presidente* no sólo nunca *acepta* una *invitación* á las casas particulares, excepto las de sus ministros, sino que ni aun transita por las calles á pie, á caballo, ni en coche sin ir acompañado. 11. Ningún compromiso previo, ni siquiera una *ceremonia* nupcial de ninguno, sirve de excusa para no cumplir con una *invitación* del *Presidente*.

b) 1. The Island of New Zealand is without *reptiles* of any kind. 2. There is no carpet on the floor, and we have no money to buy any. 3. These books are not at all suitable for children. 4. I never in my life heard anything so silly. 5. "Such a reply, sir," exclaimed the young girl, "is no answer to my question!" 6. That kind of work was entirely new to me, and no one offered me either advice or assistance. 7. You will not find better bargains anywhere else in (*de*) the city. 8. The optician



directed me to an *oculist*, but he (*este*) also did not afford me any relief. 9. Mr. *Palos* has now more hope than ever regarding the outcome of his lawsuit; in fact, he has more hope than any of his friends. 10. We are never so happy or so unhappy as we believe. 11. The insurgents trained their cannon on the field hospital, and did not respect even our flag of truce. 12. This novel is not only of extreme interest, but possesses marked *historical* value. 13. Not only am I starving and homeless, but I have no money to (*con que*) obtain food and shelter, and have no prospect of earning anything these hard times. 14. The college was *situated* in the crowded part of the town, and the students did not have the advantage of any grounds for recreation. 15. It did not contain a *gymnasium*, nor even an assembly-room for the students. 16. One of the larger rooms was called the library, but it could (*podía*) not boast of more than a thousand volumes, and not even a hundred of these were of any practical value. 17. Nor was the equipment of the class-rooms and the *laboratories* any better. 18. For instance, the *professor* of physics taught *electricity* without any *dynamo* (*m.* 8) or *motor*. 19. We studied *astronomy* by (*con*) the aid of a battered brass *telescope* not over four feet in length, which was the only piece of *apparatus* that we had. 20. The class never saw even a *sextant*, much less a transit instrument.

NOTES. 7. anywhere else = in any other part.

8. also: see § 760.

9. hope: plural in Spanish.

12. interest . . . value: see § 278.

13. food . . . prospect: plural in Spanish.

these hard times: supply the preposition *en*.

14. the crowded part: see § 297.

19. not over: render "that did not exceed . . ."

20. supply a conjunction to connect the two clauses.

---

## LESSON LXIV.

### COMPOUND TENSES. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD. SOME ADDITIONAL IDIOMATIC VERBS.

774. Besides the simple tenses—present, imperfect, aorist, and future, already discussed—grammarians, out of deference to their Latin models, have usually reckoned an equal number of *compound* tenses. These are formed in Spanish by adding an

invariable past participle to the various forms of the verb *haber*, *to have*. When so used, *haber* is called an auxiliary (or helping) verb, and retains no idea of possession.

REMARK.—Grammatically considered, *haber* is the principal verb in the compound tenses, and it is therefore necessary only to learn its inflections once for all in order to form these tenses for any verb.

775. The Spanish verb has 7 moods, 2 of which have 4 tenses each; the others exhibiting no distinctions of tense. These 13 heads, with their various distinctions for person, number and gender, include all the flexional forms of the Spanish conjugation:—

SCHEME OF INFLECTION OF VERBS.

MOOD.	NO. OF TENSES.	DESIGNATION.	NATURE OF SECONDARY INFLECTION.	NO. OF FORMS.
Indicative.	4	Present.	Person and Number.	6
		Imperfect.	" "	6
		Aorist.	" "	6
		Future.	" "	6
Subjunctive.	4	Present.	" "	6
		Imperfect.	" "	6
		Aorist.	" "	6
		Future.	" "	6
Conditional.	1	Future.	" "	6
Imperative.	1	—	2nd person, sing. and plur.	2
Infinitive.	1	—	Invariable.	1
Past Participle. <sup>1</sup>	1	—	Gender and Number.	4
Gerund. <sup>1</sup>	1	—	Invariable.	1
				62

Thus the maximum number of forms of a Spanish verb is 62; but as many of them are identical, and are distinguished only grammatically, the actual number is considerably less. One of the principal Spanish grammars has, by combinations with *haber*, by counting *usted* as a separate

<sup>1</sup> Although the past participle and gerund are not usually called moods, yet they differ from the other moods in the same manner as these moods do from each other.

number, and by other repetitions, made the number of forms mount up to 179.

It remains now only to discuss the application of the several forms of *haber* to a past participle, and the subject may then be dismissed.

**776.** The present of *haber* with a past participle constitutes what is generally known as the **PERFECT** tense, which, as we have seen at § 183, represents a past action occurring at an unspecified time or at one in some way connected with the present :—

Hasta ahora no ha contestado á nuestra petición.	Thus far he has not answered our request.
En cambio de la sangre que he derramado ¿qué me han hecho el rey y la patria ? ¡Nada !	What have the king and the country done for me in payment for the blood I have lost ? Nothing !

**777.** The imperfect of *haber* with a past participle forms the **PLUPERFECT** tense. The pluperfect represents an action or event as not only past but prior to another event also past; this latter is expressed by the aorist or imperfect, but not by the perfect. The usage is thus the same in both languages:—

Todo esto me lo dijo no creyendo que yo mismo había presenciado lo que había pasado en la huerta.	She told me all this not knowing that I had witnessed what had happened in the orchard.
Llegó á mi noticia que el rey había nombrado ya un almirante.	I learned that the king had already appointed an admiral.
Abrieron, no sin trabajo, camino entre aquellas malezas que jamás habían sido apartadas por mano de hombre.	They opened for themselves, not without labor, a road through that undergrowth which had never been separated by human hand.
Dí al cochero las señas de una casa de huéspedes que mi tío me había recomendado.	I gave the driver the address of a boarding-house that my uncle had recommended to me.

**778.** The aorist of *haber* with a past participle forms the **AORIST PLUPERFECT**. This tense expresses what took place *immediately* before another past event, this latter being expressed by the aorist and never by the imperfect, as the aorist pluperfect never denotes anything continuous or customary. It is always preceded by some one of the following conjunctions:—

aprendido las matemáticas y haberlas olvidado que nunca haberlas aprendido.

Habiéndole causado estas heridas un copioso derrame de sangre, pronto sintió que la tierra huía bajo sus pies, se le nubló la vista, y vino al suelo abrumado por el peso de la armadura.

learned mathematics and forgotten it than never to have learned it at all.

These wounds having caused him a profuse loss of blood, he soon felt that the ground was sinking beneath his feet, his sight became dim, and he fell to the ground borne down by the weight of his armor.

#### THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

783. The IMPERATIVE in Spanish is limited to the second person, and is employed only in direct, positive commands. It has only two forms, a singular and a plural.

The singular form is identical with the third person singular of the indicative present, whether that be regular or not; the plural form is obtained by changing the final *r* of the infinitive to *d*, and is therefore always regular:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
Dar, <i>to give</i> .	Da.	Dad.	<i>Give</i> .
Copiar, <i>to copy</i> .	Copia.	Copiad.	<i>Copy</i> .
Correr, <i>to run</i> .	Corre.	Corred.	<i>Run</i> .
Leer, <i>to read</i> .	Lee.	Leed.	<i>Read</i> .
Abrir, <i>to open</i> .	Abra.	Abrid.	<i>Open</i> .

784. Eight verbs make the second person singular of the imperative in abbreviated forms, the plural being regular:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
Valer, <i>to be worth</i> .	Val <i>and vale</i> .	Valed.	<i>Be worth</i> .
Salir, <i>to go out</i> .	Sal ( <i>for sale</i> ).	Salid.	<i>Go out</i> .
Venir, <i>to come</i> .	Ven ( <i>for viene</i> ).	Venid.	<i>Come</i> .
Tener, <i>to have</i> .	Ten ( <i>for tiene</i> ).	Tened.	<i>Have</i> .
Poner, <i>to put</i> .	Pon ( <i>for pone</i> ).	Poned.	<i>Put</i> .
Hacer, <i>to do, make</i> .	Has ( <i>for hace</i> ).	Haced.	<i>Do, make</i> .
Decir, <i>to say, tell</i> .	Dí ( <i>for dice</i> ).	Decid.	<i>Say, tell</i> .
Ir, <i>to go</i> .	Ve ( <i>for va</i> ).	Id.	<i>Go</i> .

As the Spanish imperative relates only to the second person, it is applicable only in the rare cases where that mode of address is used, and may therefore be disregarded by the foreigner.



785. In cases where it is applicable, the use of the imperative in Spanish is the same as in English:—

Juan, abre la puerta.	John, open the door.
Toma lo que quieres.	Take what you want.
Da una silla á esta señora.	Give this lady a chair.
Niño, ven acá.	Boy, come here.

REMARK.—In polite language where *usted* is used, and in all negative commands, the imperative is replaced by the subjunctive, as will be explained when that mood is discussed. The substitutes for imperatives of the first and third persons are also subjunctives.

786. When the pronoun subject of the imperative is expressed, it usually follows, although in conversational style it may occasionally precede, the imperative:—

Págame tú lo que me debes.	Pay me what you owe me.
Desechad vosotros el miedo.	Dismiss all fear.
Tú déjame lo gobernar.	Let me manage it.

787. Objective personal pronouns regularly follow the imperative and are appended to it:—

Tómalo; recojedlas.	Take it; pick them up.
Cuidate bien.	Take good care of yourself.
Díme lo; dádnoslos.	Tell it to me; give them to us.

REMARK.—It is to be noted that the final *d* of the second person plural is then elided before a vowel (with the single exception of *idos*, *go away*):—

Armaos; protejeos.	Arm yourselves; protect yourself.
--------------------	-----------------------------------

788. A compound imperative, made by associating the imperative of *haber* with a past participle, is met with, though it is of rare occurrence. This applies only to the plural:—

Haced aderezado la comida para cuando yo vuelva.	Have the dinner prepared by the time I return.
--	--

REMARK.—When the imperative of *tener* is substituted for that of *haber* there is both a singular and a plural form:—

Tenme preparado el desayuno.	Have breakfast ready for me.
Tenedme barrida la alcoba.	Have the alcove swept out.

## SOME ADDITIONAL IDIOMATIC VERBS.

 In the following verbs the Spanish point of view differs materially from the English:—

**789. Caber**, which is literally equivalent to the English *to get into*, is usually rendered by *to hold*, the Spanish subject then becoming object. It is connected with its object by *en*:—

Todos estos objetos no cabrán en el baúl.	The trunk will not hold all these things.
---	---

En cada cargador caben cinco cartuchos.	Each clip holds five cartridges.
---	----------------------------------

No cabe más en el saco.	The bag will not hold any more.
-------------------------	---------------------------------

Metió dentro todo cuanto cabía.	He put in all it would hold.
---------------------------------	------------------------------

No cabíamos ni parados.	We had not room to stand.
-------------------------	---------------------------

No cabía en sí de júbilo.	He could not contain himself for joy.
---------------------------	---------------------------------------

REMARK.—*Caber* is also used figuratively, expressing the ideas of possibility or capability:—

No cabe en la imaginación lo grandioso de la perspectiva.	The imagination can form no conception of the grandeur of the view.
---	---

Todo cabe en él.	He is capable of anything.
------------------	----------------------------

Es más feo que el otro, si cabe.	It is uglier than the other, if that be possible.
----------------------------------	---

**790. Casar.** The meaning and usage of *casar* varies according to the person who is its subject. When it governs the object directly it means *to join in wedlock*, and *to dispose of in marriage*. The action of either of the parties to the match is expressed by *casarse con*, *to marry* or *wed*:—

Los casó el obispo.	The bishop married them.
---------------------	--------------------------

Se casaron ayer.	They were married yesterday.
------------------	------------------------------

Casó á su hija con un barón alemán sin seso.	She married her daughter to a brainless German baron.
--	---

¿Es V. casado?—Aun no, pero me voy á casar luego.	Are you married?—Not yet, but I am going to get married soon.
---	---

**791. Doler**, *to ache*, takes as its subject a noun expressing a part of the body, and a person as indirect object:—

Me duele la cabeza.  
 Le duele el pulmón derecho.  
 Me dolían los pies.

My head aches.  
 He has a pain in his right lung.  
 My feet pained me.

**792.** *Faltar* and *hacer falta*, which are rendered into English by *to need* or *want*, take a person as indirect object, the thing wanted being subject:—

Sólo le hace falta á V. un poco de práctica.      You only need a little practice.

Nos faltan brazos.

We are short of hands (i.e. workmen).

No falta más.

That caps the climax.

**793.** *Gustar*, *to please*, *give pleasure*, is employed in connections where the English use *to like*, *to be fond of*, for which there is no direct equivalent in Spanish. The construction is then reversed as follows:—

Me gustan los pasteles.

I like pies.

¿Cómo le gusta V. mi alcoba?

How do you like my bed-room?

Parece que á la anciana le gusta charlar.

It seems the old lady likes to talk.

Á mí no me gustan las tragedias.

I do not like tragedies.

**794.** *Nacer*, which in Spanish is active intransitive, is translated in English by *to be born*, which is used as a passive:—

Nací en X, tres años antes de la guerra civil.

I was born in X, three years before the civil war.

Todo esto sucedió antes que V. naciera.

All this happened before you were born.

Quien nació para ahorcado no morirá ahogado.

He who was born to be hanged will never be drowned.

No le pesa haber nacido.

He does not regret having been born.  
 (Said of a self-conceited person.)

**795.** *Pesar*, expressing regret or sorrow, is construed impersonally, the person being indirect object and the noun denoting the cause of the sorrow being preceded by *de*. This preposition, however, may be omitted before either a noun or an infinitive, which in that case is considered as subject:—

Me parece que le pesa ahora [de] I think he is sorry now for his churlishness.  
su grosería.

Me pesa mucho [de] haberle ofendido. I am sorry I offended him.

¡Cuánto me pesa verla á V. tan triste! How sorry I am to see you so sad!

#### EXERCISE XLIV.

a) 1. Me pesa mucho verle á Vd. tan triste; ¿qué le ha pasado? 2. Mi tío se ha casado en segundas nupcias, de modo que ya no heredaré su caudal. 3. Ya que hube encontrado la consonancia que me hacía falta, terminé sin dificultad el soneto. 4. No me gusta la cocina francesa tanto como la española, aunque á ésta le falta la *inmensa variedad* de aquella. 5. Era tan *popular* el Dr. P. que cada vez que daba una conferencia *pública* no cabían en la sala las personas que querían escucharle. 6. Necesito comprar otro estante, pues mis libros ya no caben en el que tengo. 7. Mi dependiente principal va á casarse y poner casa el mes que viene, y le voy á dar licencia para seis semanas. 8. El anciano me devolvió el *álbum*, en el cual había escrito esta máxima: "Lo que sabes, enséñalo sin jactancia; lo que ignoras, confíésalo sin vergüenza." 9. Aunque la estación no estaba muy avanzada, ya se habían recogido las uvas y se había trasegado el vino. 10. Cuando la vendimia se hubo terminado, los cosecheros la *celebraron* con fiestas y agasajos. 11. Para fines del mes, se había terminado la siega del maíz, y los hacendados habían amontonado en las eras las doradas gavillas de trigo. 12. En cuanto se hubo terminado la trilla, y se hubo almacenado el grano, todos gozaron de un breve rato de descanso, durante el cual alzaron alabanzas á Dios por haberles prodigado un tiempo benigno y una cosecha abundantísima. 13. Juanito, toma esta escalera y descuelga la cometa de tu hermanito. 14. Ahora, niños, echadla al vuelo con más cuidado que antes. 15. Luego que hubimos bajado por el costado del cerro, llegamos á una corriente de cristalinas aguas, y resolvimos establecer allí nuestro campamento. 16. Después de haber cortado una cantidad de ramas verdes, construimos un tosco abrigo contra (*from*) la intemperie, y entonces encendimos lumbre para asar algunas de las perdices que habíamos matado. 17. La notable negrura y lustre del azabache lo han hecho un objeto valioso desde los tiempos antiguos, sobre todo para las prendas de luto; hasta tanto que algunos escritores lo han *clasificado* entre las piedras *preciosas*. 18. Verdaderamente pertenece á los *fósiles*, y es pariente del carbón que ha hecho un papel tan *importante* en la *civilización* moderna.

b) 1. You speak Spanish remarkably well; all that you lack is a little more practice. 2. Those gentlemen will soon be sorry for their levity. 3.



My eyes pain me on account of having spent three hours trying to decipher an old manuscript in (*con*) the dim light of this library. 4. When my father had killed the pheasant, the dog retrieved it. 5. When my father had shot any game, the dog retrieved it. 6. Your trunk holds a great deal more than mine, nevertheless I like mine better. 7. Are you fond of pomegranates? 8. I have never tasted any. 9. Then I am going to treat you to one; I am sure that (*de que*) you will like it. 10. The venerable priest introduced himself to me by informing me that it was he who had married my father and mother. 11. I shall invite only my relatives and my most intimate friends to (*para*) the wedding, as our drawing-rooms are so small that they will not hold more than fifty people. 12. Having spent several hours in the woods without seeing any game, we decided to go down to the lake where we had had such good hunting the day before. 13. As soon as we had bagged enough game for supper, we returned to the spring where we had established our camp. 14. They told me that the man who had just entered the room was the fortunate individual who had recently married the daughter of Mr. *Calderilla*, the multimillionaire. 15. I recognized him at once as (*por*) the man whose *attentions* had annoyed my sister so much at the bull-fight on the previous Sunday. 16. No sooner had he seated himself than I crossed the room, and, taking off one of my gloves, deliberately flung it in his face. 17. Formerly, as soon as *López* had received a letter from his parents, he had never failed to show it to me; but on this occasion, scarcely had he glanced at the postmark than he thrust the envelope in his pocket, and went out of the room without saying a word. 18. By seven o'clock the rain had entirely ceased, and the heavy clouds had been swept away by the west wind. 19. After having breakfasted, we went out into (*d*) the street, where the hostler was holding the saddled horses. 20. We mounted forthwith and set off at a gallop; and when we had covered half a mile of the road, we soon forgot the disappointment that the storm had *caused* us, and the plight in which we had arrived the night before seemed to us a matter for jest.

NOTES. 4. the dog retrieved it: put subject last.

10. it was he who: see § 588.

father and mother: see § 323.

12. had had: use *hacer*, not *tener*, for second verb.

18. supper: supply definite article.

14. had just: see § 255.

16. in his face, *en medio del semblante*.

17. a letter: omit the article.

without saying a word, *sin decir esta boca es mía*.

20. a gallop . . . the road: omit the articles.

a matter for jest, *cosa de burla*.

## LESSON XLV.

## TRANSITIVE, REFLEXIVE, RECIPROCAL, AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Verbs may be divided into the following classes, having reference to the manner in which their action is represented:

1. Transitive, or Active.
2. Reflexive and Reciprocal.
3. Intransitive, or Neuter.
4. Impersonal.
5. Inceptive, Inchoative, or Continuative.

## TRANSITIVE VERBS.

796. A transitive verb has a subject and an object—an actor who (or which) acts directly upon some person or thing. This object must be expressed, or the verb ceases to be transitive. Most verbs, either in English or Spanish, belong to this class; and the student is already familiar with their characteristics:—

El tábano pica al caballo.  
No quiero plegar el papel.  
Apararon su sed con agua.

The horsefly bites the horse.  
I do not want to fold the paper.  
They quenched their thirst with water.

## REFLEXIVE VERBS.

797. A transitive verb is called *reflexive* when its action returns upon the actor—when its subject and object are identical. Whatever the form of the subject and whether expressed or not, the object is always a pronoun, always expressed, and agreeing in person and number with the subject and verb. (It is to be noted that the reflexive pronoun of the third person, *se*, is without distinction of number.)

798. The usual position of the pronominal object is immediately before the verb, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses—in short, immediately before the finite verb. The following paradigm will serve for all tenses and combinations:—

yo	me disfrazo,	yo	me he disfrazado,
tú	te disfrazas,	tú	te has disfrazado,
él	} se disfrazo,	él	} se ha disfrazado,
ella		ella	
usted		usted	
nosotros	} nos disfrazamos,	nosotros	} nos hemos disfrazado,
nosotras		nosotras	
vosotros	} os disfrazáis,	vosotros	} os habéis disfrazado,
vosotras		vosotras	
ellos	} se disfrazan.	ellos	} se han disfrazado.
ellas		ellas	
ustedes		ustedes	

**799.** When the subject is a pronoun, it is usually omitted unless required for emphasis or contrast. When expressed, it either precedes or follows the entire verbal and pronominal phrase. In interrogations it is more frequently placed last:—

Ella se presenta. }	She presents herself.
Se presenta ella. }	
Nosotros no nos degradaremos. }	We will not degrade ourselves.
No nos degradaremos nosotros. }	
Aunque ellos se habían disfrazado. }	Although they had disguised themselves.
Aunque se habían disfrazado ellos. }	
¿Se ha cortado V.?	Have you cut yourself?

**800.** The reflexive object is regularly attached to the infinitive or the gerund, forming one word with it; if the subject pronoun be then expressed, it usually follows these forms:—

Disfrazándome, pasé desapercibido.	By disguising myself I passed unnoticed.
Quiere disfrazarse.	He wishes to disguise himself.
Habiéndose disfrazado él.	He having disguised himself.
Habiéndome disfrazado yo.	I having disguised myself.
No habiéndose disfrazado ellas.	Not having disguised themselves.
No disfrazarme yo.	For me not to disguise myself.
Haberse disfrazado él.	For him to have disguised himself.
Creyéndose fuera del alcance de sus tiros, se expuso temerariamente por encima del parapeto.	Believing himself out of reach of their shots, he exposed himself rashly above the parapet.

**801.** The reflexive object is in like manner appended to the imperative, and to the subjunctive used imperatively, provided

the verb *be* not negatived. In doing this two elisions take place: 1. the second person plural of the imperative loses the final *d*; 2. the first person plural of the subjunctive loses the final *s*:—

*consolaos, for consolados;*  
*defendaos, “ defendedos;*  
*cubrios, “ cubridos;*

*consolémonos, for consolémosnos.*  
*defendámenos, “ defendámosnos.*  
*cubrámennos, “ cubrámosnos.*

EXCEPTION.—The imperative of *irse* (*ir-se*) retains the *d*: *idos, go away*

802. In literary or elevated style, the reflexive object may be appended to any form of the verb (to the auxiliary in compound tenses), provided the verb stands at the beginning of the phrase. The subject, if then expressed, follows the entire verbal expression:—

*Entregóse en manos nuestras.*  
*Heme equivocado yo sin duda.*  
*Viéronse forzados á pernoctar allí.*

He gave himself into our hands.  
 I have doubtless made a mistake.  
 They saw themselves forced to pass  
 the night there.

*Habíanse provisto los rebeldes de*  
*varios cañones de campaña.*

The rebels had provided themselves  
 with several field-pieces.

803. The location of two or more pronominal objects with regard to their verb is the same as for a single pronoun, as they are placed in immediate sequence, whether before or after the verb:—

*Procurándoselo.*  
*Después de habérselo procurado.*  
*Échamelo (imperative).*  
*No me lo echas de ese modo.*

Procuring it for himself.  
 After having procured it for himself.  
 Toss it to me.  
 Do not toss it to me that way.

804. What one does to another he may do to himself; and so any transitive verb may be used reflexively if its meaning permit:—

*Le culpo; se culpa.*  
*La miré; se miró en el espejo.*

I blame him; he blames himself.  
 I looked at her; she looked at her-  
 self in the mirror.

*Me defendió; me defendí.*  
*Nos lisonjean; nos lisonjamos.*

He defended me; I defended myself.  
 They flatter us; we flatter ourselves.



805. When the verb is one that usually takes as its objects the dative of a person and the accusative of a thing, the pronominal or reflexive object is dative:—

No se permite diversión alguna.	He does not allow himself any recreation.
Se apropió el único asiento cómodo.	He appropriated to himself the only comfortable seat.
Me he comprado un bastón nuevo.	I have bought myself a new stick.
Nos hemos encontrado una casa de huéspedes.	We have found ourselves a boarding-house.

REMARK.—Unfortunately there is no distinction of form between a dative and an accusative reflexive object.

806. The use of the dative reflexive is extended further in Spanish than in English, imparting to the expression a slight degree of energy or piquancy that can seldom be translated:—

Se reclama el primer puesto.	He claims the first place.
Me propongo hacer un viaje á las Islas de Barlovento.	I propose to take a trip to the Windward Islands.
Se arrogó el mando.	He usurped the command.
Se pidió un vaso de agua.	He asked a glass of water for himself.
Se guardó la carta.	He kept the letter.
Me lo bebí.	I drank it up.
Me hallé un peso en la calle.	I found a dollar in the street.
¡Tú te lo sabes todo!	• Oh, you think you know everything!
Me tomé la libertad de entrar.	I took the liberty of entering.
Los tiburones se tragan á los hombres.	Sharks swallow men.

REMARK.—There is occasionally a chance for confusion between *se* as reflexive dative, and *se* as a substitute for the objective third person, before another objective pronoun of the third person:—

Á Enriqueta se le cayó el pañuelo, y un oficial que iba tras ella, lo recogió y se lo llevó.	Henrietta dropped her handkerchief, and an officer who was walking behind her picked it up and carried it off ( <i>or</i> carried it to her).
--	---

NOTE.—The meaning would be made clear by saying *se lo llevó consigo*, or *se lo llevó á ella*, according to which were intended.

807. Many verbs in Spanish are essentially reflexive, and have no meaning without the reflexive pronoun:—

Abstenerse de, to abstain from.

Airarse, to fly into a passion.

Arrepentirse de, to repent of.

Atreverse á, to dare to.

Dignarse, to deign to.

Jactarse, to boast, vaunt.

Quejarse de, to complain of.

Ausentarse, to absent one's self.

REMARK.—In English only two verbs, *betake* and *bethink*, are essentially reflexive; in all other cases the reflexive verbs are merely employed reflexively in a particular meaning.

#### RECIPROCAL VERBS.

808. If of several actors each acts on another, the verb is called reciprocal. It is always plural, but does not differ in form from the reflexive use; hence, when not specified, the expression is susceptible of two renderings (if the meaning permit):—

Se engañan.	{ They deceive themselves. They deceive one another.
Se felicitaban.	{ They were congratulating themselves. They were congratulating each other.
Se mostraron por encima de las murallas ( <i>reflex.</i> ).	They showed themselves over the ramparts.
Se mostraban sus condecoraciones ( <i>recip.</i> ).	They were showing each other their decorations.
Se vieron pero no se hablaron.	They saw each other but did not speak to each other.
Los lobos se ( <i>datives</i> ) disputaban los trozos del ciervo.	The wolves were wrangling with one another over the pieces of the deer.
Nos quedamos inmóviles y confusos, mirándonos con estupor.	We stood motionless and confused, looking at one another stupidly.
Nosotras no nos parecemos en nada.	We do not resemble each other at all.

809. When, for emphasis or to prevent ambiguity, it is desired to show unmistakably that the reflexive meaning is intended, the pronoun is repeated in the prepositional form strengthened by the appropriate form of *mismo* or *propio*. This may be done solely for emphasis in the case of a singular verb:—

Los bribones se engañaron á sí mismos. The rogues deceived themselves.

Se burlan de sí mismos.

They make fun of themselves.

El día vendrá en que nos llamaremos borricos á nosotros mismos por no haberlo aprovechado.

The day will come when we will call ourselves asses for not having taken advantage of it.

REMARK.—*Mismo* may be used with the *subject* of a reflexive verb:—

Se educó él mismo.

He educated himself.

Ordinariamente me afeito yo mismo.

Ordinarily I shave myself.

810. When it is desired to show beyond question that the action is mutual among several actors, accuracy is secured by the use of the appropriate forms of *uno . . . otro*:—

Los bribones se engañaron el uno al otro. The rogues deceived each other.

Los aeronautas, ayudándose unos á otros, lograron desprenderse de las mallas de la red.

The aeronauts, assisting one another, succeeded in freeing themselves from the meshes of the net.

Se aborrecen una á otra.

They hate each other.

REMARK.—The same effect may be produced by the adverbs *mutuamente* or *recíprocamente*:—

Se detestan mutuamente.

They detest each other.

Debemos ayudarnos recíprocamente.

We must help each other.

811. *Uno* may be thus contrasted with *otro* when the verb has not the reciprocal form, the reciprocal effect being imparted by means of a preposition governing *otro*:—

Los bailadores avanzan los unos hacia las otras.

The dancers advance towards one another.

Los novios parecen haber nacido el uno para la otra.

The lovers appear to have been born for each other.

Estas dos jóvenes son muy íntimas; no puede vivir la una sin la otra.

These two young girls are very intimate; they cannot live without each other.

Disputaban unos con otros.

They disputed with each other.

El cura y Diego caminaban uno junto á otro sin hablar.

The priest and James walked along beside each other without speaking.

Será preciso no alejarnos unos de otros.	We must not separate from one another.
Estas dos cordilleras corren casi paralelamente una á otra.	These two mountain chains run almost parallel to each other.

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

812. An intransitive verb is one whose action is complete in itself; it has a subject, but no object :—

El sol brilla; la yerba crece.	The sun shines; the grass grows.
El caballo relincha; el burro cojea.	The horse neighs; the donkey limps.
El criado no titubeó.	The servant did not hesitate.
Los niños están nadando.	The boys are swimming.

813. The action of an intransitive verb may be further extended by means of adverbial expressions of manner, time or place, but this does not amount to supplying it with an object :—

Los niños nadan en el lago.	The boys swim in the lake.
Quieren salir de la casa.	They want to go out of the house.
El sol brilla sobre la tierra.	The sun shines on the earth.

814. This class is in Spanish relatively—indeed inconveniently—small. Moreover, in English most verbs may be used either transitively or intransitively; but in Spanish they rarely oscillate from the one class to the other :—

Thus in English we say *the horses trot*, and also *the driver trots the horses*; in Spanish, *trotar* is intransitive only, and could apply in the first case but not in the second. Conversely, we say *the man opens the door*, and also *the door opens easily*; but in Spanish *abrir* is purely transitive, and could be used only in the first value. A Spaniard could by no stretch of imagination suppose that the door could, of its own action, *open* anything.

815. In Spanish a few transitive verbs, whose objects are not very essential to the meaning, may be used intransitively :—


Ella va á cantar una copla.	She is going to sing a couplet.
Ella va á cantar.	She is going to sing.
Vi que escribía una carta.	I saw he was writing a letter.
Vi que escribía.	I saw he was writing.
El niño quiere beber agua.	The child wants to drink water.



El niño quiere beber.	The child wants to drink.
Esta senda nos conducirá á la fuente.	This path will take us to the spring.
Esta senda conduce á la fuente.	This path leads to the spring.

**REMARK.**—Certain intransitive verbs may take what is called a *cognate* object; i.e., one allied or related in meaning to the verb:—

Vive una vida miserable.	He lives a miserable life.
“ Yo he peleado buena batalla, he acabado mi carrera, he guardado la fe.”	“ I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith.”
Llorar lágrimas de gozo.	To weep tears of joy.
Dormir un sueño profundo.	To sleep a deep sleep.

 Otherwise verbs can seldom be used interchangeably as transitive or intransitive; resort must be had to either one of the expedients given below, or else a different verb must be chosen.

**816.** A transitive sense may be imparted to an intransitive verb by placing a verb of causing before its infinitive:—

El fulminante se enciende, y comunicando una chispa á la carga, hace estallar la granada.	The fulminate ignites, and, communicating a spark to the charge, bursts the shell.
Dejó caer el libro.	He dropped the book.
El centinela le hizo parar.	The sentinel halted him.

**817.** Transitive verbs may be used intransitively by making them reflexive, so that although their action has an object, yet as that object is the actor, the action passes to no second person or thing. A comparison of the transitive and the intransitive use of each of the following verbs will make this distinction clearer:—

TRANSITIVE VALUE.	INTRANSITIVE VALUE.
Acostar, to put to bed.	Acostarse, to go to bed.
Levantar, to raise, lift up.	Levantarse, to rise, get up.
Enfadar, to anger.	Enfadarse, to become angry.
Desmayar, to dismay, discourage.	Desmayarse, to faint, swoon.
Sentar, to seat, cause to sit down.	Sentarse, to sit down.
Alegar, to gladden.	Alegarse, to be glad.
Avergonzar, to shame, make ashamed.	Avergonzarse, to be ashamed.
Helar, to freeze.	Helarse, to freeze, become frozen.

## TRANSITIVE VALUE.

Desatar, to untie.  
 Marchitar, to wither, cause to fade.  
 Acercar, to approach, bring near to.  
 Estremecer, to shake, make tremble.  
 Fundir, to melt.  
 Extender, to extend.  
 Mejorar, to improve.  
 Secar, to dry.  
 Desgarrar, to tear.  
 Hender, to split, crack.

## INTRANSITIVE VALUE.

Desatarse, to come untied.  
 Marchitarse, to wither, fade.  
 Acercarse, to approach, come near to.  
 Estremecerse, to tremble, shudder.  
 Fundirse, to melt.  
 Extenderse, to extend.  
 Mejorarse, to improve.  
 Secarse, to dry.  
 Desgarrarse, to tear.  
 Henderse, to split, crack.

## COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES.

No debo acostarme antes de acostar á los niños.	I must not go to bed before putting the children to bed.
El fuego funde el plomo.	The fire melts the lead.
El plomo se funde fácilmente.	Lead melts easily.
El sol ha marchitado las flores.	The sun has faded the flowers.
Las rosas se marchitan pronto.	Roses fade quickly.
Acercó una silla á la lumbre.	He placed a chair near the fire.
Se acercó á la lumbre.	He approached the fire.
Ella me enfadó.	She angered me.
Ella se enfadó.	She became angry.
Ellos nos horrorizaron.	They horrified us.
Ellos se horrorizaron.	They were horrified.
Las aves me regocijan.	The birds gladden me.
Las aves se regocijan.	The birds rejoice.
Su mujer le irrita.	His wife provokes him.
Su mujer se irrita.	His wife is provoked.
Le avergüenzo.	I put him to shame.
Me avergüenzo.	I am ashamed.
Vende vino y licores.	He sells wine and liquors.
El vino se vende bien este año.	Wine sells well this year.
El generalísimo opuso un ejército de 10.000 hombres á su avance.	The commanding general opposed an army of 10,000 men to their advance.
El presidente de la comisión se opuso á la medida.	The chairman of the committee opposed the measure.

818. Verbs naturally intransitive are sometimes made reflexive,—an idiomatic usage which is intended to emphasize the actor's interest, volition or free will and accord in the case:—

**Estuvo escondido.**

**Se estuvo escondido.**

**La gente entraba.**

**A pesar de las guardias apostadas á la puerta, la gente se entraba.**

**Los presos salieron.**

**Los presos se salieron.**

**He was hidden.**

**He was in voluntary concealment.**

**The people were going in.**

**In spite of the guards stationed at the gate, the people kept getting in.**

**The prisoners went out.**

**The prisoners got out.**

**819.** In some cases the meaning of an intransitive verb is so changed by being made reflexive as to amount to a new word; in others the meaning is not perceptibly affected. Careful observation is the only means of determining this usage:—

**Caer, to fall.**

**Escarpar, to escape.**

**Dormir, to sleep.**

**Morir, to die.**

**Ir, to go.**

**Venir, to come.**

**Volar, to fly.**

**Marchar, to march.**

**Llegar, to arrive.**

**Caerse, to tumble down.**

**Escaparse, to run away, get clear.**

**Dormirse, to fall asleep.**

**Morirse, to be on the point of death, to be dying.**

**Irse, to go away.**

**Venirse, to come along.**

**Volarse, to fly away, fly off.**

**Marcharse, to leave, depart.**

**Llegarse, to approach.**

**820.** The following verbs may be used optionally with or without the reflexive:—

**Errar, or errarse.**

**Combatir, or combatirse.**

**Parecer, or parecerse.**

**Tardar, or tardarse.**

**Quedar, or quedarse.**

**Fiar, or fiarse de alguno.**

**Chancear, or chancearse con alguno.**

**Reír, or reírse de alguno.**

**To err.**

**To fight.**

**To appear.**

**To delay, tarry.**

**To remain.**

**To trust somebody.**

**To joke with some one.**

**To laugh at some one.**

#### EXERCISE XLV.

a) 1. Las ballenas son mamíferos carnívoros, ó mejor dicho piscívoros; pero por la forma exterior de su cuerpo, se parecen más á los peces que las morsas y las focas. 2. Todos los años los buques balleneros se dirigen hacia los mares glaciales para la pesca de estos enormes cetáceos. 3. En cuanto el vigía divisa una ballena, los pescadores se embarcan en lanchas,

se aproximan con precaución al *animal*, y uno de ellos, que se pone de pie en la proa, le arroja el arpón. 4. La ballena herida se zambulle con prodigiosa rapidez, llevándose el arpón, y con él la cuerda larguísima que lo sujeta, y que se alarga á medida que el *animal* se aleja ó se sumerge. 5. Á poco reaparece el cetáceo, y vuelven á arponearlo; y así lo hieren cuantas veces sale á respirar, hasta que, exhausta con la pérdida de sangre, se queda á merced de los pescadores. 6. Luego la remolcan al buque, donde separan la espesa capa de grasa que envuelve su cuerpo. 7. "El mundo," dice un escritor *colombiano* de renombre, "es un conjunto de bocas, oídos y ojos, que se cierran para lo bueno y se abren golosos para lo malo." 8. Los náufragos se agarraron á un madero que las embravecidas olas conducían por acaso hacia la costa á la cual tanto ansiaban llegar. 9. Se encontraban á bastante *distancia* del casco de la goleta, el cual veían destacarse como un bulto negro por entre las espumosas aguas. 10. Por fin el marino, nadando con un solo brazo, pues asía con el otro á Jorge, alcanzó una escarpada roca, en la que logró apearse no sin grandes esfuerzos. 11. Se hallaban al extremo de una punta aguda, sobre la cual las rompientes se estrellaban con furor. 12. Se dirigieron hacia el norte, siguiendo la costa oriental de aquella tierra sobre la cual el destino les había arrojado. 13. Llegaron á una enorme aglomeración de rocas de *granito separadas* por angostos pasillos alfombrados de menuda arena, en los cuales penetraron los dos desgraciados en busca de abrigo. 14. "No me extraño de la equivocación de Vd.," me dijo sonriéndose la niña, "ya que mi hermana y yo nos parecemos como dos gotas de agua."

b) 1. There are *metals* which melt in boiling water. 2. When the snow thaws on the mountains, the streams increase *rapidly* in volume. 3. The fire burned low, and finally went out for lack of fuel. 4. After the rain, the grass sprang up with great luxuriance. 5. This town has developed *rapidly* since Mr. *Calvo* was elected mayor. 6. The *Welsbach* light burns with a white flame without consuming much *gas*. 7. The children (*f.*) were amusing themselves stringing beads, when *Julia* pricked her finger with the needle. 8. As we approached the door, it opened silently. 9. We had scarcely reached the middle of the *stream*, when the axle broke and we pitched headlong into (*d*) the water. 10. The boy was sinking for the third time when the sailor reached him. 11. This morning I rose earlier than usual, and dressed hurriedly without even shaving. 12. If we do not hurry we shall miss the ferry-boat. 13. This little episode was the signal for the commencement of open *hostilities*; hitherto, the *rivals* had been civil to each other, although it was clear to all of us that in their hearts they hated each other; but now they threw to the winds all dissimulation. 14. The road that skirts the lower part of the mountain forks at this point, and one branch leads to the ford. 15. We



called ourselves asses for not having thought of that *expedient* before. 16. The peasant crossed himself before going through the cemetery at night. 17. When the game-cock saw himself in the mirror, thinking it was another cock, he rushed violently against it (*en contra*). 18. The bay horse overreaches and the sorrel interferes; so (*por consiguiente*) I shall buy neither. 19. Formerly kings led their (*los*) flocks to pasture; nowadays servant-girls are ashamed to milk a cow. 20. Those who love each other dearly do not tire of being always together. 21. The English and the French do not respect each other, and each *nation* thinks itself *superior* to the other. 22. When her sweetheart went away in anger, the young girl threw herself upon the *sofa* (n. 1) and burst into tears. 23. The two brothers met after a *separation* of five years. 24. They did not recognize each other immediately, and looked at each other a *moment* without speaking. 25. Then they embraced and began to ask each other about everything that had happened to each.

- NOTES. 2. Render: increase their volume.  
 6. the . . . light, *el farol*.  
 10. the third time: omit the article.  
 11. even, *siquiera* (put at end of sentence).  
 12. Render: the ferry-boat will escape us.  
 13. clear to, *visto de*.  
     in their hearts, *de corazón*.  
 14. Render: one of the branches.  
 18. I shall buy: see § 241.  
 19. Consider "pasture" as an intransitive verb.  
 25. to each: see § 446 and § 679.

---

## LESSON XLVI.

### MORE DETAILED TREATMENT OF THE PASSIVE.

821. As has already been shown (§§ 178-9), the true passive in Spanish is formed as in English by associating the past participle of any active verb with the verb *ser*, *to be*. The active agent, when introduced, is connected with the passive verb by *por* when the action is physical, and by *de* when mental:—

Ella no será convidada.	She will not be invited.
El saltador fué ahorcado.	The road-agent was hanged.
Los insurgentes habiendo sido derrotados, . . .	The insurgents having been routed, . . .
La máquina necesitaba ser recorrida y limpiada.	The engine needed to be gone over and cleaned.

---

Era envidiada de todas.	She was envied by all.
Fueron ahorcados por el verdugo.	They were hanged by the hangman.
Las órdenes del ingeniero fueron ejecutadas por sus compañeros.	The orders of the engineer were carried out by his companions.

**822.** *Estar* is used as auxiliary instead of *ser* when the condition of the subject is described without reference to any action. The past participle is then merely an adjective:—

El teatro <i>está</i> bien alumbrado.	The theater is well lighted.
El informe <i>estaba</i> mal redactado.	The report was badly prepared.
Era evidente que el informe <i>había sido</i> redactado con precipitación.	It was evident that the report had been hastily prepared.
El palacio <i>fué</i> destruido por el terremoto reciente.	The palace was destroyed by the recent earthquake ( <i>an occurrence</i> ).
El palacio, cuando yo lo visité, <i>estaba</i> destruido.	The palace, when I visited it, was destroyed ( <i>in a destroyed condition</i> ).
Las olas <i>eran</i> agitadas por el viento.	The waves were agitated by the wind ( <i>action</i> ).
Las olas <i>estaban</i> todavía agitadas por el viento.	The waves were still agitated by the wind ( <i>condition</i> ).

**823.** Under such circumstances the expression may be varied by substituting for *estar* one of the following verbs:—

Ir, andar, to go.	Quedar, quedarse, to remain.
Verse, to see one's self.	Sentirse, to feel one's self.
Hallarse, encontrarse, to find one's self.	Presentarse, to present one's self.
	Mostrarse, to show one's self.

These are all to be translated by the verb *to be*, and are applicable only when a condition, not action, is expressed:—

La entrada de la cueva <i>se hallaba</i> obstruida por arbustos espesos.	The entrance of the cave was obstructed by thick shrubbery.
--	---

En las cercanías de Arequipa el país se presenta más accidentado.	In the neighborhood of Arequipa the country is more uneven.
El interior del Uruguay se ve atra- vesado por cerros bajos.	The interior of Uruguay is crossed by low mountains.
El país se ha visto frecuentemente desolado por los terremotos.	The country has been frequently devastated by earthquakes.
Se halla enfermo.	He is sick.
Se encontraba desprovisto de todo.	He was destitute of everything.
Quedaren asombrados al oír la no- ticia.	They were astounded on hearing the news.
Se quedó callado.	He was silent.
Se siente perplejo.	He is perplexed.
Anda muy distraído.	He is very absent-minded.
Los gauchos iban vestidos de pieles de guanacos.	The Gauchos were dressed in guan- aco skins.

REMARK.—*Sido* and *estado* are invariable when preceded by any form of *haber* (see § 188), while a following past participle of a transitive verb agrees in number and gender with its noun. This is because *sido* and *estado* are governed by *haber*, while the other past participle depends upon *ser* or *estar*:—

La casa ha sido pintada de nuevo.	The house has been repainted.
Los marcos habiendo sido limpiados y dorados, . . .	The frames having been cleaned and gilded, . . .
Era evidente que aquella botella ha- bía sido arrojada al mar desde un buque náufrago.	It was evident that that bottle had been thrown into the sea from some shipwrecked vessel.

#### REFLEXIVE SUBSTITUTE FOR PASSIVE.

824. In modern Spanish the formal passive is but little used, as it is considered too lengthy and roundabout; its place is usually taken by the much overworked reflexive form of the verb. (This, however, occurs only in the third person.)

The reflexive may be applied in two ways as a substitute for the passive: *a*) personally; *b*) impersonally. In the first case the verb can be transitive only; in the second, either transitive or intransitive.

825. When employed personally the subject is an expressed noun or pronoun, with which the verb agrees in number, taking

the reflexive *se* as its object. The reflexive force disappears, and the meaning conveyed is purely passive:—

Eso se hará fácilmente.

That will be easily done.

La cena se despachó pronto.

The supper was quickly dispatched.

Sus temores no se realizaron.

Their fears were not realized.

El bosque se componía en aquellos parajes, de árboles coníferos.

The forest in this region was composed of coniferous trees.

Su crédito se ha agotado.

His credit has been exhausted.

Se dejó á babor el célebre pico de Tenerife.

The celebrated peak of Teneriffe was left to port (larboard).

En Centro América por lo general no son los hoteles dignos de llamarse así.

In Central America the hotels are generally not worthy of being so called.

Los demás puntos no merecen la pena de visitarse.

The other points are not worth being visited.

826. When used impersonally the verb is in the third person *singular*, with *se* as its object, but *no subject* is expressed or understood; the verb is connected by a conjunction, adverb, or equivalent word, with the remainder of the sentence:—

Se dice que las fuerzas del gobierno se han sublevado.

It is said that the government forces have revolted.

No se explica cómo salió del apuro.

It is not explained how he extricated himself from the difficulty.

Se sabe bien que este peso disminuirá en razón inversa del cuadrado de la distancia.

It is well known that this weight will decrease in an inverse ratio to the square of the distance.

Se penetraba en aquella torre de metal por una abertura estrecha practicada en la pared de la base.

Entrance was effected into the metal turret by means of a narrow aperture cut in the wall of the base.

Se asegura que el pueblo está más enterado sobre la vida de los santos que sobre la geografía de su propio país.

It is asserted that the people are better informed about the lives of the saints than about the geography of their own country.

REMARK.—Nevertheless this construction is sometimes used in familiar style to refer to a person definitely understood.

Se me dijo anoche en el baile que se estaría en el paseo á eso de las seis.

Somebody told me at the ball last night that *somebody* was going to be on the promenade about six o'clock.



(*A friendly matron is giving the young man a pointer.*)

¡Con que! ¿Se ha estado juiciosa Well, has my little girl been good  
durante mi ausencia?—Sí, papá. while I was away?—Yea, Papa.

827. These passives of reflexive form (both the personal and impersonal constructions) are often equivalent in meaning to the English indefinite *they, you, we, one*, used as subject:—

De este modo se ganará tiempo y se ahorrará trabajo.	In this way we will gain time and save work.
Se caminó durante toda la mañana.	They journeyed all the forenoon.
¿Á dónde se nos va á conducir?	Where are they going to take us?
El pueblo es pequesísimo; al instante se sale de él.	The village is very small; you get outside of it in no time.
¡Jardinero! ¿Cómo se sale de estos jardines?	Gardener! How do you get out of these gardens?
¿Qué se debe hacer?	What's a body to do?
Alemania es un país exclusivamente militar; parece que no se vive más que para la guerra.	Germany is an exclusively military country; it seems that they do not live for anything but war.
Se cargaron las piezas con metralla.	They loaded the guns with grape-shot.
¿Se puede entrar? ¿Se puede pasar? ¿Se puede subir?	Can I (we) go in? Can I (we) come in? Can I (we) come up?

(*These requests are more modest than if put in the first person.*)

REMARK.—In Latin the verb often assumed the passive form, in the third person singular, with a like indefinite meaning:—

<i>Sic itur ad astra.</i>	So one goes to the stars.
<i>Ei resistetur.</i>	They will oppose him.
<i>Nuntiatum est adesse Scipionem.</i>	They reported that Scipio was near.
<i>Diu et acriter pugnatum est.</i>	They fought long and sharply.

REMARK 2.—In French and German there are expressions precisely equivalent in meaning to the Spanish, but different in form:—

<i>On peut le voir à son bureau.</i>	You can see him at his office.
<i>Où prend-on les crevettes?</i>	Where do they catch shrimps?
<i>Man hat mich versichert.</i>	They assured me.
<i>Man ist glücklich wenn man zufrieden ist.</i>	We are happy when we are contented.

**828.** In Spanish also the verb may be used impersonally in the third person plural with the same indefinite meaning as that conveyed by the reflexive:—

¿Á dónde nos van á conducir?	Where are they going to take us?
¿Me han traído las botas?	Have they brought my boots?
Hacen muy buenos quesos allí.	They make very good cheeses there.
¿Qué dicen de la elección?	What do they say of the election?
Producen mejor vino que éste en mi país.	They produce better wine than this in my country.

**829.** In placards and similar notices in which the reflexive is employed in Spanish, the meaning is usually expressed in English by the past participle alone (omitting the verb *to be*):—

Se necesita un jardinero.	Wanted, a gardener.
Aquí se habla español.	Spanish spoken here.
Se garantiza el trabajo.	Work warranted.
Se cierra los domingos.	Closed on Sundays.
Se compran y venden libros de lance.	Second-hand books bought and sold
Se confeccionan tarjetas y facturas en el acto.	Cards and billheads made up without delay.

**830.** With the personal construction, the active agent is introduced by *de* or *por*, just as with the true passive:—

Las pirámides se edificaron por esclavos.	The pyramids were built by slaves.
El fuego se apagará por la lluvia.	The fire will be put out by the rain.
Estas obras se venden por todos los libreros.	These works are sold by all booksellers.

**831.** If the subject represents a person capable of performing the action expressed by the verb, the latter will naturally be understood to be reflexive or reciprocal and not passive in meaning, although the form of expression is the same:—

Se envenenó el duque.	The duke poisoned himself. ( <i>Not the duke was poisoned.</i> )
Se miraban los reyes como superiores á la ley.	The kings regarded themselves ( <i>or each other</i> ) as above the law ( <i>Not the kings were regarded.</i> )
La joven se lisonjea.	The young girl flatters herself.
Los fugitivos caminaban de noche,	The fugitives travelled at night, and

y se escondían en los matorrales durante el día.	hid themselves in the thickets by day.
Se ataron uno á otro.	They tied themselves together.
Los intendentes se amenazaban.	The overseers threatened each other.

832. When it is desired to render the meaning of such phrases unmistakably passive, the impersonal construction is employed and the noun is made object:—

Se envenenó al duque.	The duke was poisoned, <i>or</i> they poisoned the duke.
Se miraba á los reyes como superiores á la ley.	The kings were regarded as above the law, <i>or</i> they regarded the kings as above the law.
Se lisonjea á la joven.	They flatter the young girl.
Se escondió á los fugitivos entre los helechos altos.	The fugitives were concealed among the tall ferns.
Se les ató uno á otro.	They tied them together.
Se amenazaba á los intendentes.	They threatened the overseers.
Se les señaló doble pago.	They were given double pay.

833. The same distinction exists when the subject is of the first or second person:—

Se me rechazó.	I was black-balled.
<i>(Me rechazé would mean I black-balled myself.)</i>	
Cuando las llamas me chamuscaron la ropa, me arrojé por la ventana.	When the flames scorched my clothing, I threw myself from the window.
En un abrir y cerrar de ojos se me arrojó por la ventana.	In the twinkling of an eye I was thrown out of the window.
Nos privábamos de todos los lujos.	We deprived ourselves of all luxuries.
Se nos privaba de todos los lujos.	They deprived us of all luxuries.

REMARK.—This is equally applicable with the redundant construction of personal pronouns:—

Á él se le mató á pedradas.	They stoned him to death.
No se nos dejó entrar á nosotros.	They did not allow us to enter.

834. A transitive verb in the impersonal construction takes as its object only an animate being, or a thing personified; the preposition á must therefore be used to designate the object:—

Se registró al prisionero.	The prisoner was searched.
Se inspeccionaba á los marineros semanalmente.	The sailors were inspected weekly.
Jamás se había visto al juez J. ni conmovido ni alterado.	Judge J. had never been seen excited or disturbed.
Se silbaba á Pérez siempre que se mostraba en público.	Perez was hissed whenever he showed himself in public.

**835.** But if the noun represents a thing, it is made subject, and the verb agrees with it in number:—

Se registró el baúl.	The trunk was searched.
Se inspeccionaban los navíos semanalmente.	The ships were inspected weekly.
No se han descubierto volcanes en el Brasil.	No volcanoes have been discovered in Brazil.
Se leían con avidez los periódicos.	The newspapers were eagerly read.

REMARK.—To say *se leía á los periódicos* would be a strained personification; while *se leía los periódicos* would be still worse, as it would be using a personified object without the preposition *á* to show that it is object.

**836.** The impersonal construction is required with all pronouns representing persons, or things personified; and consequently with all personal pronouns of the first and second persons. The pronoun then appears as object:—

Se la admitió.	She was admitted.
Creo que se me engaña.	I believe they are deceiving me.
La gente cree cuanto se le dice.	The people believe whatever is told them.
Se nos resistió hasta lo último.	We were resisted to the last.

**837.** It is customary to use the dative form *les* instead of the accusative *los*, when the objective pronoun is masculine plural; otherwise the accusative form is used:—

Se les (not los) desterró.	They were banished.
Se les condenó á muerte.	They were condemned to death.
Se las ayudó á bajar.	They were assisted to alight.

**838.** In many cases it does not matter whether we construe a reflexive verb as truly reflexive or as passive in meaning, and



in like manner whether it shall be considered intransitive or passive, the meaning being about the same either way:—

Este obrero se llama Paco.	{ This workman calls himself Frank. This workman is called Frank.
La porcelana se rompe fácilmente.	{ Porcelain breaks easily. Porcelain is easily broken.

839. A verb that requires a preposition to complete its meaning cannot be used passively. It therefore takes the impersonal construction, the preposition being retained:—

Se jugó al ajedrez y chaquete. ( <i>Not se jugaron ajedrez y chaquete.</i> )	They played chess and backgammon.
Se habló de varias cosas. ( <i>Not varias cosas se hablaron.</i> )	Various things were talked of.
Se trata de un asunto importantísimo.	A very important matter is being treated of.

REMARK.—Consequently such constructions as the following English sentences are inadmissible in Spanish, and must be translated by a circumlocution:—

Con profundo sentimiento se dijo adiós á estos lugares.	These places were said adieu to with deep regret.
Se pasó cerca de algunas rocas curiosamente manchadas.	Some curiously marked were passed near to.
Quejábanse ( <i>not quejábanse</i> ) de la acogida poco hospitalaria.	{ The inhospitable reception was complained of.
La acogida poco hospitalaria fué objeto de quejas.	

840. The repetition of *se* should be avoided unless it applies to the same construction; thus the following would be inelegant:—

Se dice que se ha asesinado al rey Humberto.	They say they have assassinated King Humbert.
Se dice que se ha hallado en el Ródano una sortija que se cree pertenecía á Aníbal.	They say they have found in the Rhone a ring which they believe belonged to Hannibal.

Because (to analyze the last one, for instance) the persons who say, those who found, and those who pronounce the opinion are different individuals. The following would be correct:—

Se dice que el rey Humberto ha sido asesinado.	They say King Humbert has been assassinated.
Según dicen, ha sido hallada en el Ródano una sortija que se cree haber pertenecido á Aníbal.	They say that a ring has been found in the Rhone which is believed to have belonged to Hannibal.

841. If the verb is essentially reflexive, the impersonal construction is not admissible. Thus the following must always refer to a subject, either expressed or understood:—

Se arrepiente.	He repents.
No se atreva á emprenderlo.	He does not dare to undertake it.
Se ausentó.	He absented himself.
Se acordó de la apuesta.	He remembered the bet.
Se ocupaba poco de aquellos rumores.	He concerned himself but little about those rumors.

842. Verbs which may take the reflexive pronoun to modify their meaning (as when transitives are made intransitive, or intransitives are made vivacious), are susceptible of two acceptations when they appear in the third person singular with no expressed subject: *a*) as having the modified meaning and referring to some singular subject; *b*) as being indefinite with the unmodified meaning:—

Se entró.	{ He "got in." { People entered. (Fr. <i>on entra.</i> )
Se marcha.	{ He "goes away." { They march. (Fr. <i>on marche.</i> )
Se durmió.	{ He "fell asleep." { They slept. (Fr. <i>on dormit.</i> )

843. In order to retain the modifying force conveyed by the reflexive, and at the same time render the phrase impersonal, an indefinite subject—*uno* or *gente*—must be supplied, or the verb placed in the third person plural (see § 828):—

Se burlan de sus amenazas.	They scoff at his menaces. (Fr. <i>on se fiche de ses menaces.</i> )
Cuanto más se acerca uno á la cumbre de una alta montaña. . . .	The more one approaches the summit (Fr. <i>plus on s'approche du sommet</i> ) of a high mountain. . . .

Se abriga uno para no sentir el frío.	A person wraps himself up so as not to feel the cold. Ger. <i>man verhüllt sich, um die Kälte nicht zu fühlen.</i> )
Se acordaron de la apuesta.	They remembered the bet. (Fr. <i>on se souvint du pari.</i> )
La gente se ocupaba poco de aquellos rumores.	They concerned themselves but little about those rumors. (Fr. <i>on s'occupait peu de ces rumeurs.</i> )

REMARK.—The idea is that *se* either renders the verb passive, or modifies its meaning; but it cannot perform both duties at the same time.<sup>1</sup>

844. In the infinitive any verb of reflexive form may be used impersonally:—

De nada sirve arrepentirse tarde.	It is worth nothing to repent late.
Es costumbre bañarse en Borneo tres veces al día.	It is customary in Borneo to bathe one's self three times a day.
Cuando llegó el momento de entregarse al sueño. . . .	When the time arrived for surrendering one's self to sleep. . . .
Bien valía la pena de detenerse á escucharles.	It was well worth while to stop [one's self] and listen to them.

845. The location of the pronoun *se* is the same whether the verb be used passively or reflexively:—

La cena se está preparando. }	Supper is being prepared.
La cena está preparándose. }	
Habiéndose erigido el cadalso.	The scaffold having been erected.
Más arriba, el río comenzaba á obstruirse con altas yerbas.	Higher up, the river began to be obstructed with high grass.
El acta que acaba de leerse. }	The minutes which have just been read.
El acta que se acaba de leer. }	
Séneca repetía dos mil nombres, habiéndosele dicho una sola vez, en el mismo orden en que se le habían referido.	Seneca used to repeat two thousand names, they having been said to him once only, in the same order that they had been told him.

<sup>1</sup> This can best be illustrated by comparison with the French and German. *Se lisongea* may mean on the one hand *he flatters himself*, *il se flatte*, *er schmeichelt sich*, or on the other *they flatter*, *on flatte*, *man schmeichelt*; but could not mean *they flatter themselves*, *on se flatte*, *man schmeichelt sich*.

## EXERCISE XLVI.

a) 1. Las raíces de las plantas están muy lejos de presentarse siempre en la misma forma. 2. Á veces se las ve meterse en el suelo en línea recta, adelgazándose á medida que se alejan del tallo: tales son las raíces fusiformes, como, por ejemplo, las zanahorias y las pastinacas. 3. Otras veces se dividen en cuatro ó cinco ramas, que se esparcen en *diferentes direcciones* ó se deslizan entre dos tierras, llegando de este modo á grandes *distancias* de su punto de partida: tales son las raíces rastreras, como se nota en la vid y los más de los árboles. 4. Otras se desarrollan en *infinidad* de pequeños *filamentos* que dan á la raíz el aspecto de un mechón de hebras: por esto se llaman raíces *fibrosas*. 5. Estos *filamentos* delgados, que se encuentran en todas las raíces, y se llaman su cabellera, constituyen sus *órganos principales*, por lo cual es preciso cuidar de no destruirlos cuando se trasplantan los vegetales. 6. Sucede con frecuencia que la raíz única ó las *divisiones* de la raíz se hinchan de jugos, formando gruesas masas que se denominan cebollas ó *tuberosidades*. 7. Importa no confundirse entre las *tuberosidades* y los *tubérculos*: así, por ejemplo, los *tubérculos* de las patatas no tienen nada de común con las raíces; son unas ramas que se desprenden del tallo, bajo tierra, hinchándose de fécula. 8. Las raíces se distinguen del tallo y las ramas en lo de no tener yemas. 9. Un célebre botánico *colombiano* ha dicho que las raíces son á la vez los pies y la boca de la planta: es decir, la sirven de apoyo, y la proveen del agua y las diversas sustancias que necesita para su alimento. 10. Así pues, para hallar los jugos nutritivos que buscan, *penetran* profundamente en el suelo, se alargan para atravesar las capas en que no hay ningún alimento, se ramifican, se extienden en todas direcciones, y ganando todos los *obstáculos* que se oponen á ellas, se introducen entre las piedras y hasta en las grietas de las rocas.

b) 1. When the young miner returned with the gold that he had found in *Alaska*, he was told that his fiancée had married a wealthy widower. 2. If you go out in (*con*) that ridiculous disguise, they will throw stones at you, I am sure. 3. A man is dishonored by his evil thoughts as well as by his evil deeds; with the sole *difference* that (*de que*) the former are known only to (*de*) himself and his Maker. 4. When it was rumored that King Humbert had been assassinated, nothing else was talked of throughout the *capital* (*f.*), and definite news was anxiously sought for. 5. I was called to the *telephone* and was told that my *services* were needed immediately for a man who had been run over by a milk-wagon. 6. The house appeared deserted; the blinds were closed, and the flower-beds were overgrown with weeds. 7. Many panes of glass in (*de*) the greenhouse



were broken by the hail. 8. The terrapin is not so much known in Spanish-American countries as in the United States, where it is *considered* a great delicacy. 9. *Central Africa* (f. 3) was long *considered* as an impenetrable *mystery*; but in the last fifty years it has been thoroughly *explored*, and accurate maps have been prepared of the entire *region*. 10. No portion of the *continent* has escaped the *invasions* of the European powers; and if we *examine* a recent map, we shall see that the English, French, and Germans have partitioned among themselves nearly the whole *territory*. 11. In the United States, calves'-liver is *generally* eaten fried with bacon; in *Montevideo* it is prepared as follows, according to a recipe that was given me by a cook in (*de*) one of the *principal cafés*: 12. "A mixture is made of oil and white wine, and the liver is cut into small cubes. 13. Then you put in the bottom of a stewpan a layer of parsley, chives, and chopped mushrooms, then a layer of liver, and so on *alternatively*, each layer being sprinkled with the oil and wine. 14. Finally you add a layer of strips of bacon and slices of bull-nose peppers. 15. The stewpan is covered closely (*bien*) and is set to cook two hours on a slow fire."

NOTES. 4. it was rumored that, *cundió la voz de que*.

9. was considered: use impersonal construction (§ 882), and put verb first.

10. among themselves: dative reflexive (§ 805).

15. on a slow fire, *a fuego suave*.

## LESSON XLVII.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS ; INCEPTIVE VERBS.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

846. Impersonal verbs have neither subject nor object. Whatever they may represent as being or as going on, nothing is suggested as taking any active part in it. There is no perfect example of such a verb in modern English; but Spanish has many that are either always or occasionally so used:—

Ha llovido mucho durante la noche.	It rained a great deal during the night.
Relampaguea por el lado del norte.	It lightens towards the north.
Parece que vamos á tener un temporal.	It seems that we are going to have a storm.

REMARK.—The English pronoun *it* is a mere form of expression due to the habit of our language, and in nowise represents the actor. The corresponding neuter pronoun *ello* is sometimes employed in Spanish when emphasis is required, but never in representing natural phenomena:—

Ello importa mucho.	It matters a great deal.
¿ Ha oído V. tronar ?	Did you hear <i>it</i> thunder ?
¿ Ha visto V. relampaguear ?	Did you see <i>it</i> lighten ?
Me gusta ver nevar.	I like to see <i>it</i> snow.

847. The only verbs restricted 'to the impersonal construction are those which express the phenomena of nature. They are limited in form to the infinitive, gerund, past participle and the third person singular of all other tenses; but within these limits their conjugation does not differ from other verbs. The following are the principal ones in use:—

ALBOREAR :	alboroa, it dawns.
AMANECER .	amaneece, it is getting to be morning.
ANOCHECER	anochece, it is getting to be night.
DILUVIAR .	diluvia, it is pouring.
ESCAMPAR .	escampa, it stops raining.
ESCARCHAR :	escarcha, there is hoar-frost.
GRANIZAR :	graniza, it is hailing. ;
HELAR :	hiela, it is freezing.
LLOVER :	lueve, it is raining.
LLOVIZNAR :	llovizna, }
MOLLIZNAR	mollizna, } it is drizzling.
MOLLIZNEAR :	molliznea, }
RELAMPAGUEAR :	relampaguea, it is lightening.
TRONAR :	trueno, it is thundering.
VENTEAR :	venta, it is blowing.
VENTISCAR :	ventisca, it is snowing and blowing.

REMARK.—Even some of these verbs may occasionally take a subject by figure of speech, and examples are to be found with an object:—

Tronaba la artillería por todos lados.	The artillery thundered on all sides.
Sus ojos relampagueaban.	His eyes flashed.
Amaneció el día claro y frío.	The day dawned clear and cold.
Los indígenas acudieron á Cortés, clamando sobre que no llovían sus dioses.	The natives came to Cortes, complaining that their gods did not rain.
Solís.	

No hicieron caso del pedrisco que llovía sobre ellos. CERVANTES. They paid no attention to the shower of stones which rained upon them.  
 Comenzaron los galeotes á llover piedras sobre Don Quijote. *Ibid.* The galley-slaves began to shower stones upon Don Quixote.

848. *Amanecer* and *anocheecer* are at times, though very rarely, used as verbs of full inflection, with the meaning of *to arrive* or *be present at daybreak* or *nightfall*:—

¿Anocheceremos en Burgos? Shall we get to Burgos by night-fall?  
*Amanecimos á vista de tierra.* When day dawned we were in sight of land.

849. The infinitives and gerunds of impersonal verbs communicate their impersonal effect to whatever verbs they depend upon. The same is true of verbs of occasional impersonal use:—

*Parece que va á llover.* It looks as if it were going to rain.  
*Comienza á nevar.* It is beginning to snow.  
*Acaba de tronar á lo lejos.* It has just thundered in the distance.  
*Seguía diluviando.* It continued pouring.  
*Eran entonces las cinco de la mañana, y empezaba á amanecer.* It was five o'clock in the morning, and it was beginning to dawn.

850. The verbs of occasional impersonal use are intransitive and correspond very closely to their English equivalents:—

*Acaecer*, to happen. *Convenir*, to suit, behoove.  
*Acontecer*, to happen. *Importar*, to be important, to matter.  
*Bastar*, to suffice. *Parecer*, to appear, seem.  
*Constar*, to be evident. *Precisar*, to be necessary.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Precisa, señores, poner término á esas crueles hecatombes.* It is necessary, Gentlemen, to put an end to these cruel sacrifices.  
*Conviene aquí decir que en las playas asiáticas esta especie de algas entra por mucho en la alimentación de los indígenas.* It should be mentioned here that on the Asiatic coasts this species of algæ is extensively used as food by the natives.  
*Constaba por las acciones de aquellos animales que no habían visto nunca al hombre.* It was evident from the actions of those animals that they had never seen a human being.  
*Acaeció que su marido se hallaba ausente por algunos días.* It happened that her husband was absent for a few days.

**851.** The verbs *ser* and *estar* are used with especial frequency impersonally, followed by nouns or adjectives:—

Es lástima. Es maravilla.	It is a pity. It is a wonder.
Está claro; está patente.	It is clear; it is evident.
Es necesario partir al instante.	It is necessary to start at once.
Estaba todavía oscuro cuando me levanté.	It was still dark when I got up.
Está muy nublado.	It is very cloudy.
Era muy tarde para ver la campiña.	It was too late to see the landscape.

**REMARK.**—There is an impersonal expression, of active form but of passive value, formed by the verb *ser* followed by *de* and an infinitive:—

Es de esperar.	It is to be hoped.
Era de desear.	It was to be desired.

**852.** A reflexive impersonal construction is applicable to a few verbs naturally reflexive, by which they are made reflexive in a second degree, so to speak, the meaning remaining the same:—

Me figuro.	I imagine ( <i>I figure to myself</i> ).
Se me figura.	I imagine ( <i>it figures itself to me</i> ).
Me olvidé de hacerlo.	I forgot to do it.
Se me olvidó hacerlo.	I forgot to do it ( <i>it forgot itself to me</i> ).
Me permito.	I allow myself.
Se me permite.	It is allowed me.

**853.** There are many cases where in English a verb would be used impersonally, governing an infinitive, while in Spanish the infinitive is the subject of the verb:—

Nos costó algún trabajo mantener el trineo en el camino.	It cost us some trouble to keep the sleigh in the road. ( <i>i.e.</i> , keeping the sleigh in the road cost us some trouble.)
Me tocó sentarme á su lado en la ópera.	It happened to me to be seated beside her at the opera.

**854.** *Es menester* is not impersonal, since it always has a subject, expressed or understood:—



Es menester mucha paciencia.	Much patience is necessary.
Eran menester muchas reparaciones.	Many repairs were necessary.
Era menester haberlo visto.	It was necessary to have seen it.

But *ha menester*, *there is need of*, is a true impersonal phrase:—

Ha menester cien duros para completar la suma.	There is need of \$100 to complete the sum.
Había menester largos rodeos para ganar la cumbre.	Long detours were necessary to gain the summit.

#### IMPERSONAL USE OF HABER.

855. We have seen that *haber* has practically lost its original meaning of possession, and that its principal value is that of an auxiliary in forming compound tenses (§§ 807–815). It has one other wide acceptance, namely when it is used impersonally.

NOTE.—In a few phrases, remnants of the value which it had in the past, *haber* still has the meaning of *to possess*:—

El ladrón no pudo ser habido.	The thief could not be taken.
Tendrá que habérselas conmigo.	He will have to have it out with me.
El difunto, cuya ánima Dios haya.	The deceased, may God have his soul.
Más vale saber que haber. ( <i>Prov- erb.</i> )	Knowledge is better than riches. ( <i>Lit.</i> it is worth more to know than to have.)

856. The form *hé*, followed by one of the adverbs *aquí*, *here*, *ahí* and *allí*, *there*, has been generally associated in the popular mind with *haber*. It is really from *ver*, *to see*, the original form having been *ve aquí*, etc. The object, if a noun, is placed last; if a pronoun, affixed to the verb. *Héme aquí* is literally *see me here*, but to be rendered freely *here I am*<sup>1</sup>:—

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare the French *me voici*.

Hé aquí las razones.

These are the reasons (*indicating what follows*).

Hé ahí las razones.

These are the reasons (*indicating what precedes*).

¿Dónde está mi raspador?—Hélo aquí.

Where is my eraser? Here it is.

No veo mis babuchas en ninguna parte.—Hélas ahí, debajo de su butaca.

I don't see my slippers anywhere.—There they are under your easy-chair.

REMARK.—In the Bible *hé aquí* corresponds to the English *behold*:—

Hé aquí yo estableceré mi pacto con vosotros.

Behold I will establish my covenant with you.

857. Only the third person singular, the infinitive, past participle and gerund of *haber* are used impersonally. The compound tenses are built up in the usual manner. One irregularity is that the present indicative is not *ha* but *hay*.

IMPERSONAL CONJUGATION OF <i>HABER</i> .		
SIMPLE TENSES.		
INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<i>haber</i> , there . . . to be.	<i>habiendo</i> , there being.	<i>habido</i> , there having been.
INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
PRESENT.		PRESENT.
<i>hay</i> , there is, there are.		<i>haya</i> , there may be.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
<i>había</i> , there was, there were.		<i>hubiera</i> , there might be.
AORIST.		AORIST.
<i>hubo</i> , there was, there were.		<i>hubiese</i> , there might be.
FUTURE.		FUTURE.
<i>habrá</i> , there will be.		<i>hubiere</i> , there shall or may be.
FUTURE CONDITIONAL.		
<i>habría</i> , there would be.		

COMPOUND TENSES.	
PAST INFINITIVE. haber habido, there . . . to have been.	COMPOUND GERUND. habiendo habido, there having been.
INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
PERFECT. ha habido, there has been, there have been.	PERFECT. haya habido, there may have been.
PLUPERFECT. había habido, there had been.	PLUPERFECT. hubiera habido, there might have been.
FUTURE PERFECT. habrá habido, there will have been.	FUTURE PERFECT. hubiere habido, there shall or may have been.
FUTURE CONDITIONAL PART. habría habido, there would have been.	

NOTE.—The peculiar form *hay* is a combination of *ha* with the now obsolete *y*, *there*, from Latin *ibi*, *i' i*, *i*, *y*. *Ha-y* is therefore homologous to the French *il-y-a*, *it has there* = *there is*, *there are*.

858. These forms denote the existence of what follows, and are to be translated by the appropriate forms of the verb *to be* preceded by *there*. In English the verb agrees in number with the following noun or nouns, while in Spanish it is singular throughout:—

**Habr**á mucha fruta este año.

There will be much fruit this year.

**Hu**bo un rato de silencio.

There was a moment of silence.

**Ha** habido terremotos é inundaciones

There have been earthquakes and floods.

Por este lado no **hab**ía ni arrecifes ni escollos.

On this side there were neither reefs nor submerged rocks.

**Hay** manantiales termales y alcalinos en varias provincias.

There are thermal and alkaline springs in several provinces.

En aquellas regiones no **hay** fiebres intermitentes.

In those regions there are no intermittent fevers.

Antes de esta época había habido ligeras vibraciones del suelo.

San Diego posee un clima notablemente saludable, no habiendo grandes extremos de calor ni de frío.

Prior to this time there had been slight vibrations of the ground.

San Diego has an especially healthful climate, there being no great extremes of heat or cold.

**859.** If the noun governed by *haber* has been previously expressed, its place may be taken by a personal pronoun, to avoid repetition:—

Se creyó que habría frutas en abundancia y las hubo.

Hay magníficas perspectivas en la cordillera, y no las hay menos hermosas en los valles.

Yo estaba temiendo un conflicto, pero no lo hubo.

Hay humorismo de varias clases; lo hay que consiste en mofarse de todo lo creado, poniendo una negación constante al lado de cualquier sentimiento humano.

They thought there would be an abundance of fruit and there was.

There are magnificent views in the mountains, and there are no less beautiful ones in the valleys.

I was fearing a conflict, but there was none.

There are several kinds of humor; there is that which consists in scoffing at all creation, placing a constant negation against every human feeling.

**860.** The infinitives *haber* and *haber habido* are used impersonally only when governed by a verb of finite form:—

Puede haber habido ocasión.

Solía haber un castillo en esta loma.

Debe haber habido un lago aquí en otros tiempos.

There may have been an opportunity.

There used to be a castle on this hill.

There must have been a lake here in other times.

**861.** *Hay* is used elliptically to denote distance:—

¿Cuánto hay de aquí á Londres?

¿Hay mucho de aquí á Cádiz?

¿Cuántas millas hay de Berlín á París?

Hay cerca de quinientas millas.

Hay más de A. á B. que de C. á D.

How far is it from here to London?

Is it far from here to Cadiz?

How many miles is it from Berlin to Paris?

It is about 500 miles.

It is farther from A. to B. than from C. to D.



**862.** *Haber* used impersonally and followed by *que* and the infinitive of some other verb, denotes necessity or obligation, and may be rendered by *to be necessary*:—

Había que perdonarle esta injusticia por lo que el pobre padecía.	It was necessary to forgive him this injustice on account of what the poor fellow suffered.
¿Qué hay que hacer?	What is to be done?
Hay que matarlos como se mata á los perros rabiosos.	They should be killed like mad dogs.
No había que pensar en ello.	That was not to be thought of.

**863.** When a noun (or equivalent word) intervenes between *haber* and *que*, the idea of obligation or necessity is more or less modified:—

Había muchos puntos de interés que visitar, pero no teníamos tiempo.	There were many points of interest to visit, but we did not have time.
No habiendo otro asunto que tratar, se suspendió la sesión.	There being no other business to consider, the meeting was adjourned.
Habrà más de una dificultad que vencer.	There will be more than one difficulty to overcome.
No había ningún peligro que temer por aquel lado.	There was no danger to be feared on that side.

**864.** With a similar value *haber* may take a subject, the following infinitive being then introduced by *de*. The expression denotes merely a probable futurity,—what is, or was, to happen in the natural course of events:—

¿Qué he de hacer?	What am I to do?
Mañana han de principiàr las elecciones municipales.	To-morrow the municipal elections are to begin.
Había de venir anoche, pero la tronada le impidió salir.	He was to come last night, but the thunder storm prevented him from going out.
Ignorábamos entonces que estos hombres habían de sernos muy útiles más tarde.	We were unaware then that these men were going to be very useful to us later on.

**REMARK.**—This construction is combined with impersonal *haber* as follows:—

Ha de haber un baile de máscaras mañana por la noche.	There is to be a masked ball to-morrow night.
Había de haber un baile de máscaras la noche siguiente.	There was to be a masked ball the following night.
Habiendo de haber un baile de máscaras, salí para escogerme el disfraz.	As there was to be ( <i>lit.</i> there being to be) a masked ball, I went out to choose my costume.

**865.** *Haber de* is also used with reference to the present, expressing then the belief of the speaker in the truth of the following statement:—

Ha de ser muy rico.	He must be very rich.
He de haberle visto en alguna parte.	I am sure I have seen him somewhere.
La palabra ha de estar en el diccionario.	The word must be in the dictionary.

**866.** The perfect *ha habido* closely approaches *ha estado* in meaning, but the two are not interchangeable. The former is impersonal and takes an object; the latter is personal and has a subject, with which it agrees in number. *Ha habido* covers the entire existence of its object, which may be but short; *ha estado* relates only to the time when its subject was in a certain place or condition:—

Ha habido un incendio en la casa. ( <i>It did not exist before or after being in the house.</i> )	There has been a fire in the house.
Ha estado un ladrón en la casa. ( <i>His presence there was but a part of his existence.</i> )	There has been a thief in the house.
Ha habido durante los últimos tres días gran aglomeración de gente en la ciudad. ( <i>The crowd did not exist as a crowd before or after being in the city.</i> )	During the last three days there has been a great crowd of people in town.
Han estado durante los últimos tres días cuatro gobernadores en la ciudad. ( <i>Their official existence did not begin or end with that visit.</i> )	During the last three days there have been four governors in town.
Ha habido un cambio de administración ( <i>Not ha estado.</i> )	There has been a change of administration.

## IMPERSONAL USE OF HACER.

**867.** *Hacer* is used impersonally with two values: in reckoning time, and in expressing the state of the weather. In either case only the third person singular, the infinitive, gerund, and past participle are used. Its object is either a measure of time or a noun expressing the state of the weather. Its English equivalent, in both uses, is the verb *to be*:—

Hace todo un año.

It is a whole year.

Hace frío, hace viento.

It is cold, it is windy.

## APPLIED TO TIME.

**868.** The expression of time containing *hacer* is followed by a date from which this time is reckoned; when this second clause contains a verb, it is connected with *hacer* by the conjunction *que*, equivalent to *since*; when it is expressed by a noun, it is introduced by the preposition *desde*, *since*:—

Hace unos seis años que le ví.

It is some six years since I saw him

No hace más de cuatro días desde el último día de pagos.

It is only four days since last pay-day.

**869.** *Hacer* expresses the length of time between two points. The initial point is always past; the terminal point may be past, present or future. *Hacer* corresponds to the terminal point, and is past, present or future accordingly:—

Hacía diez años que . . .

It was ten years since . . .

Hace diez años que . . .

It is ten years since . . .

Hará diez años que . . .

It will be ten years since . . .

**870.** The verb following *hacer* corresponds to the initial point. If the initial point is a completed occurrence, the verb is pluperfect when the terminal point is past, and aorist when the terminal point is present or future:—

Hacía entonces seis meses que había llegado.	It was then six months since he had arrived.
Hoy hace seis meses que llegó.	It is six months to-day since he arrived.
Mañana hará seis meses que llegó.	It will be six months to-morrow since he arrived.
Hace sólo una hora que almorcé.	It is only an hour since I breakfasted.
Hacía siete meses, día por día, que los naufragos habían sido arrojados á la isla.	It was seven months to a day since the castaways had been thrown on the island.

871. When the second verb covers the entire time between the two points it is of the same tense as *hacer*. In English the second verb is one tense anterior to the terminal point:—

Hacía dos años que vivíamos en aquella casa.	We had been living for two years in that house.
Hace dos años que vivimos en esta casa.	We have been living two years in this house.
De hoy en ocho días hará dos años que viviremos en esta casa.	A week from to-morrow we will have been living two years in this house.
No hacía más que media hora que estaba subiendo la marea.	The tide had not been rising more than half an hour.
Hace más de una hora que la aguardo aquí.	I have been waiting for her here for more than an hour.

872. The following examples show the contrast between the two usages:—

No hace mucho tiempo que <del>es</del> V. de nuestra opinión.	You have not been long of our opinion.
No hace mucho tiempo que <del>era</del> V. de nuestra opinión.	It is not long since you were of our opinion.
Hace dos años que <del>estoy</del> en Arica.	I have been in Arica for two years.
Hace dos años que <del>estuve</del> en Arica.	It is two years since I was in Arica.
Hace más de un año que <del>oí</del> hablar de él.	It is more than a year since I heard of him.
Hace más de un año que <del>no oigo</del> hablar de él.	I have not heard of him for more than a year.



873. *Hacer*, followed by a measure of time, may be used parenthetically, to give the date of anything. It is then not connected by *que* with a following statement:—

El tren salió <i>hace</i> solamente tres minutos.	The train left only three minutes ago.
Desde <i>hace</i> muchos siglos los brahmanes han sucedido á los sacerdotes del Buda.	Since many centuries ago the brahmins have supplanted the priests of the Buddha.
El niño no había comido desde <i>hacía</i> muchas horas.	The child had not eaten for many hours.

874. *Haber* also may be used impersonally to express time, in which case it uniformly follows the measure of time. The present indicative is then *há* and not *hay*:—

Cien años <i>há</i> ; quince días <i>há</i> .	A century ago; a fortnight ago.
Mucho tiempo <i>há</i> ; poco <i>há</i> .	A long time ago; a little while ago.
Ví al alcalde dos horas <i>há</i> .	I saw the mayor two hours ago.
Algunos meses <i>há</i> estaba en B.	A few months ago I was in B.

875. Length of time is also idiomatically expressed by *llevar*, *to carry*:—

¿Cuánto tiempo lleva V. en América?	How long have you been in America?
Encendí el cigarro y <i>saboreé</i> sus primeras aspiraciones con el deleite de un aficionado que llevaba dos días sin fumar.	I lit the cigar and enjoyed the first whiffs with the relish of a lover of the weed who had gone two days without smoking.
La luna, que apenas llevaba dos días, se perdía todavía entre los rayos solares.	The moon, which was hardly two days old, was still lost within the sun's rays.
La primavera llevaba entonces dos meses de fecha.	The spring was then two months advanced.

#### APPLIED TO WEATHER.

876. In speaking of the state of the weather, *hacer* takes as its object a noun expressing the phase desired:—

Hace mucho sol.	The sun shines brightly.
Ha hecho buen tiempo hoy por la mañana pero ahora lo hace malo.	It was fine this morning, but now it is bad weather.
¿Qué tiempo hace?	What kind of weather is it?
¿Qué tiempo hizo ayer?	What kind of weather was it yesterday?
¿Qué tal tiempo hacía cuando V. entró?	What kind of weather was it when you came in?
Hacía mucho viento.	It was very windy.
Hacía un tiempo magnífico.	It was magnificent weather.
Se había abandonado el patio por hacer ya demasiado sol.	The court-yard had been deserted on account of being too sunny.
Hace fresco en la sombra.	It is cool in the shade.

877. In expressing temperature, the Spanish verb corresponding to the English *to be* varies as follows: in speaking of the weather, it is *hacer*; of a person, *tener*; and of a thing, *ser* or *estar* according as the quality is inherent or accidental:—

Hace calor, hace frío.	It is hot, it is cold.
Hacía un calor insoportable.	It was unbearably hot.
Me acerco á la lumbre porque tengo frío.	I approach the fire because I am cold.
Teníamos calor, por haber andado aprisa.	We were warm from having walked rapidly.
El hielo es frío.	Ice is cold.
Esta sopa está fría.	This soup is cold.
El agua no está todavía caliente.	The water is not yet hot.
La pimienta es cálida.	Pepper is hot (pungent).

REMARK.—*Frío*, after *hacer* and *tener*, is a noun, and is intensified by *mucho*; after *ser* or *estar*, it is an adjective and requires *muy*. *Calor*, being a noun, requires *mucho*:—

Tengo mucho (muchísimo) frío.	I am very cold.
Hace mucho (muchísimo) frío.	It is very cold.
Esta cama está muy fría.	This bed is very cold.
Tengo mucho (muchísimo) calor.	I am very warm.
Hace mucho (muchísimo) calor.	It is very warm.

878. *Haber*, used impersonally, also applies to certain natural phenomena:—

Hay luna, hay claridad de luna.	It is moonlight.
Hay neblina; hay niebla.	It is misty, foggy.
Hay humedad, hay mucho polvo.	It is damp, it is very dusty.
Hay tempestad; hay mucho lodo.	It is stormy; it is very muddy.

## INCEPTIVE VERBS.

879. Verbs of this class, when intransitive, signify *to become* of a certain character or condition. They are formed from nouns or adjectives, and have the infinitive termination **-ecer**, in imitation of the corresponding class of Latin verbs ending in **-scere** (generally **-escere**).

A few inceptive verbs are intransitive; but the greater number are active, meaning *to make* of the character or condition expressed by the radical word. These become intransitive by being made reflexive.

880. The following are intransitive:—

Envejecer, to grow old.	Floreecer, to bloom.
Encanecer, to grow gray.	Enruiñecer, to become vile.
Encarnecer, to grow fleshy.	Convalecer, to get better.
Paldecer, to grow palé.	Verdecer, to turn green.

881. The following are transitive, unless used reflexively:—

## TRANSITIVE USE.

## INTRANSITIVE USE.

Endurecer, to harden.	Endurecerse, to become hard.
Ennegrecer, to blacken.	Ennegrecerse, to become black.
Enriquecer, to enrich.	Enriquecerse, to become rich.
Enrojecer, to redden.	Enrojecerse, to become red.
Esclarecer, to make clear.	Esclarecerse, to become clear.
Entristecer, to sadden.	Entristecerse, to grow sad.
Fortalecer, to strengthen.	Fortalecerse, to become strong.
Humedecer, to moisten.	Humedecerse, to become moist.

882. The same meaning may be expressed by **hacerse**, **ponerse**, **volverse**, **llegar á ser**, **venir á ser**, or **venir á parar**, all equivalent to the English *become*, followed by an appropriate noun or adjective:—

¿Qué se ha hecho de su hermano menor?—Se ha hecho médico; se	What has become of your youngest brother?—He has become a doctor;
--	---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ha trasladado á Nueva York, y á juzgar de las noticias que tengo de él, pronto se hará rico. | he has located in New York, and, to judge from the reports I have of him, he will soon become rich. |
| V. se pondrá malo si come más de esa ensalada de langosta.                                   | You will make yourself sick if you eat any more of that lobster salad.                              |
| Se puso como una cereza, y bajó la mirada.   | She became [as red] as a cherry, and looked down.   |
| ¡Qué caballerete se ha vuelto el nieto de V.!  | What a dude your grandson has become!   |
| No es imposible que Alahabad llegue á ser un día la capital de la India inglesa.             | It is not impossible that Allahabad may one day become the capital of British India.                |
| Llegó á ser decano de la universidad.  | He became dean of the university.   |
| Si su señor hermano sigue así, vendrá á parar en loco.                                       | If your brother keeps on so, he will go crazy.  |

**383.** The expressions *ir siendo*, *irse haciendo*, and *irse poniendo*, have a cumulative value, equivalent to the English *getting to be*:—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Este diálogo va siendo monótono.  | This dialogue is getting monotonous.  |
| La conducta del indio iba siendo sospechosa.  | The conduct of the Indian was getting to be suspicious.                                 |
| Al acercarnos á la frontera del Ecuador el aspecto del país iba siendo más agreste. | As we approached the frontier of Ecuador the aspect of the country kept getting wilder. |
| Me voy poniendo gordo.  | I am getting fat.   |
| Este calor se va haciendo insupportable.  | This heat is getting to be insupportable.   |

**384.** The same progressive value may be obtained by making a transitive verb reflexive (i.e. intransitive) and employing its gerund in connection with *ir*:—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| La temperatura se va elevando.                             | The temperature is rising.   |
| El orador, según avanzaba en el discurso, se iba animando. | The orator, as he progressed in his speech, became more and more animated. |
| Las sombras se iban espesando.                             | The shadows were growing deeper and deeper.                                |
| Notamos que el terreno se iba elevando poco á poco.        | We noticed that the ground was becoming gradually higher.                  |



## EXERCISE XLVII.

a) 1. Aunque amaneció sereno y despejado, pronto aparecieron en el horizonte unos nubarrones espesos, que no tardaron en cubrir el firmamento. 2. Hacía un calor sofocante, y había en el ambiente esa calma abrumadora que precede á las tempestades. 3. Efectivamente, apenas hubimos caminado cinco millas, cuando estalló una tormenta furiosa que nos obligó á refugiarnos en una choza abandonada. 4. Al paso que llovía á *torrentes* los relámpagos centelleaban por entre las negruzcas masas, el trueno parecía correr bramando y retumbando por el espacio, y el ruido ensordecedor de ese concierto de *elementos* desencadenados y confusos apenas nos permitía percibir el sonido de nuestras voces: llovía, granizaba, relampagueaba, tronaba, todo á la vez, mientras que el viento arremetía *irresistible* con su soplo, empujando á la lluvia por entre las mal unidas tablas de nuestro *miserable* albergue. 5. La tempestad duró todo el día, pero al fin su furor empezó á moderarse. 6. Cuando hubo escampado, regresamos al anochecer á la población, calados hasta los tuétanos, y completamente desazonados del funesto resultado de la gira de que tanto goce esperábamos. 7. Dice un proverbio chino: "Quien no sabe, y no sabe que no sabe, es un necio—hay que evitarle; quien no sabe, y sabe que no sabe, es un ignorante—hay que enseñarle; quien sabe, y no sabe que sabe, está dormido—hay que despertarle; y quien sabe, y sabe que sabe, es un sabio—hay que seguirle." 8. Hay un ocurrente refrán español que dice: "No por mucho madrugar amanece más temprano." 9. Habiendo habido muchos robos por los barrios, y anticipándose un aumento notable en el número de los presos, el ayuntamiento mandó agregar á la cárcel una nueva ala. 10. Ventea ahora y el aire está cargado de brumas; sin duda helará esta noche. 11. Anochecerá pronto y habrá que apresurar el paso; hace más de cinco millas de aquí á la aldea. 12. El pescador nos hizo observar que algunos de los barcos que al principio apenas se echaban de ver, parecían irse poniendo cada vez mayores; primero distinguimos los topes de los mástiles y las velas más altas, en seguida las velas más bajas, y al fin el casco. 13. Por otra parte, algunos de los buques que antes estaban poco distantes de la costa, se iban alejando poquito á poco, desapareciendo primero los cascos, luego las velas, y por último los topes de los mástiles. 14. Efectivamente parecía que los unos iban surgiendo de las aguas, mientras que los otros aparentaban sepultarse *gradualmente* en las profundidades del mar.

b) 1. In northern *latitudes* it dawns earlier and night falls later in summer than in winter. 2. In Lower *California* it rains very little and never freezes. 3. There was a terrific storm last night; it thundered and lightened incessantly for (*durante*) an hour. 4. The children like to see it

snow, but they are not so delighted when it begins to rain. 5. The *extra edition* of the newspaper says there has been a pitched battle, and that our men have been defeated. 6. How far is it from here to the village? 7. It is three miles by the road; but we are to take a short-cut across the fields. 8. "There being many people in the church," said the sexton to himself, "there will be more money than usual in the collection." 9. Twenty years ago there was not even a woodman's cabin within a *radius* of a hundred miles around the spot where now stands this prosperous city. 10. They say that the new *Public Library* that they are building opposite the City Hall is to be one of the finest structures in the city. 11. As we had been ten hours without eating, it was to be supposed that we did not lack an *appetite*. 12. It is more than seven years since there was an earthquake on this island, but there have been several hurricanes every year. 13. There not having been any rain during the previous week, there was *naturally* a great deal of dust in (*por*) the roads. 14. The English *consul* (*m.* 2) has been living ten years in this country, and has not yet learned to speak Spanish *correctly*. 15. It seems to me that the climate of the eastern coast of the United States is changing little by little; the winters are getting shorter, and it is much hotter in summer than it was twenty years ago. 16. It is less than a year since Mrs. *Robledo's* husband died, and now they tell me that she is going to get married again next month. 17. There being nothing more to do here, and since I am to leave for *Boston* by the midnight train, where there is to be an *important convention* which I am to attend, I am going to take leave of you if there is no objection. 18. Here is an edible mushroom! and there is another near your foot! there must be others around here. 19. It is necessary to be very careful in gathering wild mushrooms, for there are some that are very poisonous.

NOTES. 5. our men: see § 583.

8. to himself, *para sí* (placed immediately after verb).

11. an appetite: omit the article.

16. died, *murió* (irreg.); place verb before subject.

19. in gathering, *al recoger*.

## LESSON XLVIII.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**137** This mood derives its name from the circumstance that it is always *subjoined* to, or subservient to, some leading or governing idea.

885. The indicative mood is based upon knowledge or certainty, the subjunctive upon doubt, desire, or some emotion or mental inquietude. The indicative is used in principal and leading clauses, and states certainties—positive or negative—or asks direct questions. The subjunctive never makes a direct statement nor asks a direct question; it is secondary and dependent for existence either upon some finite verb (expressed or understood) or upon an uncertainty implied in some other way.

The student should bear in mind that: *a.* The subjunctive is not the only means for expressing contingency or dependence, which may be shown also by the infinitive or indicative. *b.* In many cases the subjunctive would be used in a formal or elevated style, but would be deemed affected in more free or colloquial speech. *c.* The line of demarcation is often faint, and not susceptible of clear definition. *d.* In Spanish, as in other modern languages, the use of the subjunctive is decreasing; so that many of the delicate distinctions of the last century would appear strained in writings of the present day.

**138** The subjunctive mood has the same simple and compound tenses as the indicative.

886. The present subjunctive is formed in regular verbs by joining the following terminations to the stem of the verb:—


		1ST CONJUGATION.	2ND AND 3RD CONJUGATIONS.
SING.	{ 1 pers.	-e,	-a,
	{ 2 pers.	-es,	-as,
	{ 3 pers.	-e,	-a,
PLUR.	{ 1 pers.	-emos,	-amos,
	{ 2 pers.	-áis,	-áis,
	{ 3 pers.	-en.	-an.

REMARK.—In the present indicative the characteristic vowel of the first conjugation is *a*, of the second and third, *e*. They change places in the present subjunctive.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE MODEL VERBS.				
SING.	1 pers.	compre,	venda,	viva,
	2 pers.	compres,	vendas,	vivas,
	3 pers.	compre,	venda,	viva,
PLUR.	1 pers.	compremos,	vendamos,	vivamos,
	2 pers.	compéis,	vendáis,	viváis,
	3 pers.	compren.	vendan.	vivan.

**887.** The subjunctive present of irregular verbs generally follows the irregularity of the indicative. The subjunctive present of those already introduced is given below,—that of *dar* being regular, and that of *estar* being irregular only in its accentuation<sup>1</sup>:—

QUERER:	quiera,	quieras,	quiera,	queramos,	queráis,	quieran.
TENER:	tenga,	tengas,	tenga,	tengamos,	tengáis,	tengan.
VENIR:	venga,	vengas,	venga,	vengamos,	vengáis,	vengan.
HABER:	haya,	hayas,	haya,	hayamos,	hayáis,	hayan.
HACER:	haga,	hagas,	haga,	hagamos,	hagáis,	hagan.
SER:	sea,	seas,	sea,	seamos,	seáis,	sean.
SALIR:	salga,	salgas,	salga,	salgamos,	salgáis,	salgan.
DECIR:	diga,	digas,	diga,	digamos,	digáis,	digan.
IR:	vaya,	vayas,	vaya,	vayamos,	vayáis,	vayan.
VER:	vea,	veas,	vea,	veamos,	veáis,	vean.
ESTAR:	esté, <sup>1</sup>	estés,	esté,	estemos,	estéis,	estén.
DAR:	dé, <sup>2</sup>	des.	dé,	demos,	deis,	den.

 The first and third persons singular are everywhere alike throughout this mood; the pronoun subject must therefore be expressed in cases where ambiguity would result from its omission.

**888.** The present subjunctive of *haber* followed by a past participle forms the perfect subjunctive, the two tenses bearing the same relation to each other as in the indicative mood:—

<sup>1</sup> *Estar* is accented on the last syllable because that is its essential part. The root is *sta* (Latin and Italian *stare*), and the initial *s* is prefixed because Spanish does not tolerate an initial *s* followed by a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> The accent on *dé* is merely diacritic—to distinguish it from the preposition *de*.



SING. { haya ido, dicho, visto, etc. { hayas " " " " { haya " " " "	PLUR. { hayamos ido, dicho, etc. { hayáis " " " { hayan " " "
---	---

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

889. The application of the subjunctive mood may be divided into two heads according as the idea which requires it is expressed or not. We will first consider the former.

##### AFTER VERBS OF CAUSING.

890. The principal use of the subjunctive is after verbs expressing an action calculated to cause another person or thing to act. The force of the governing verb varies from an authoritative command to a mere request or preference. What is true of the above is equally applicable to verbs of opposite effect, tending to prevent another from doing something:—

##### COMMAND.

El general ha mandado que se fusile á los desertores.	The general has ordered that the deserters be shot.
El tribunal decreta que se le restituya la propiedad.	The court has decreed that the property be restored to him.
Diré al gaitero que se vaya.	I will tell the bag-piper to go away.
Se resuelve: Que se nombre por el Señor Presidente una Comisión sobre Comisiones.	Resolved, That there be appointed by the President a Committee on Committees.

##### DEMAND, REQUEST.

Su deber exige que lo intente.	His duty demands that he try it.
Le ruego á V. que me ayude.	I beg you to aid me.
Suplico á Vds. que no se enfaden.	I entreat you not to be angry.
El conde de Meneses pide que Vuestra Majestad se digne acordarle la gracia de una corta audiencia.	Count Meneses asks that Your Majesty deign to grant him the favor of a short audience.

##### PROPOSAL, SUGGESTION.

Propongo, que, resultando empate en la votación, la cuestión se considere resuelta negativamente.	I propose that in case of a tie vote the question be considered as decided in the negative.
Me permito sugerir á la Mesa que	I beg to suggest that the Chair

declare un receso de quince minutos.

declare a recess of fifteen minutes.

*PERMISSION, DISPOSITION.*

Permitiré que se ausente por dos días.

I will permit him to be absent for two days.

He dispuesto que los empleados tengan un día festivo.

I have arranged for the clerks to have a holiday.

*APPROVAL, PREFERENCE.*

Apruebo que lo hagan.

I approve of their doing it.

Prefiero que no se lea la carta ahora.

I prefer that the letter be not read now.

¿Tendrá V. á bien que yo no vaya allí?

Will you approve of my not going there?

*PROHIBITION, HINDRANCE.*

Prohibo que entren.

I forbid their coming in.

Esto impedirá que salga el agua.

This will prevent the water from getting out.

Desapruebo que lo hagan.

I disapprove of their doing it.

No permito que los niños jueguen con armas de fuego.

I do not permit the children to play with fire arms.

El objeto de las leyes es impedir que se cometan injusticias.

It is the object of the law to prevent injustice from being committed.

*AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF EMOTION AND FEELING.*

891. By extension of the foregoing usage the subjunctive is required after verbs expressing a feeling about an action of some other person or thing:—

Extraño que V. haya necesitado tanto tiempo.

I am surprised that you have needed so much time.

Celebro que le haya salido tan bien su empresa.

I rejoice that his undertaking has turned out so well for him.

Temo que se lo diga á ella.

I am afraid he will tell it to her.

Siento que Vds. se hayan visto precisados á aguardarme.

I am sorry you have been obliged to wait for me.

Recelo que este retardo sea fatal para nuestros proyectos.

I fear that this delay may be fatal to our plans.

## AFTER IMPERSONAL VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS.

892. When impersonal verbs that do not state a certainty or probability characterize the action of a following verb with an expressed subject, that verb is subjunctive:—

Conviene que V. se lo <i>avise</i> .	It is proper for you to inform him of it.
Importa que <i>lleguen</i> á tiempo.	It is important for them to arrive in time.
Bastará que yo recoja algo más las costuras debajo del brazo.	It will do if I take in the seams under the arms a little more.
Precisa que nos <i>mantengamos</i> preparados.	It is necessary that we hold ourselves in readiness.

893. The same is true when *ser* (or *estar*), used impersonally, is followed by an adjective,—or noun of adjective value:—

Es lástima que tenga V. tanta prisa.	It is a pity that you are in such a hurry.
Es cosa singular que no se haya tratado nunca de este asunto.	It is a singular thing that this subject has never been treated of.
Es muy raro que se encuentren ballenas en esta latitud.	It is very rare that whales are met with in this latitude.
Es dudoso que hallen un coche á una hora tan avanzada.	It is doubtful if they find a hack at so late an hour.
No está bien que V. lo haga.	It is not proper for you to do it.
Es tiempo de que <i>partamos</i> .	It is time for us to start.
Es triste que haya visto fracasar todas sus tentativas.	It is sad that he has seen all his attempts fail.

894. The impersonal expression of passive value (§ 851, REM.), composed of *ser* connected with a following infinitive by *de*, likewise requires the subjunctive:—

Es de esperarse que la noche nos permita evadir sus pesquisas.	It is to be hoped that the night will permit us to elude their search.
Es de temerse que el gasto exceda á los ingresos.	It is to be feared that the expenditure will exceed the receipts.
Es de desearse que se aprovechen las vías férreas existentes.	It is desirable that the existing lines of railroad be utilized.

## AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF DENIAL OR DOUBT.

**895.** When the leading verb denies, or expresses uncertainty, doubt or disbelief about the action of another person or thing, the verb expressing that action is subjunctive:—

Niego que el ebanista <i>tenga</i> la intención de devolver el cepillo.	I deny that the joiner <i>intends</i> to return the plane.
Dudo que <i>sea</i> culpable.	I doubt his being guilty.
Apenas puedo creer que ella <i>haya</i> dicho tal cosa.	I can hardly believe that she <i>has said</i> such a thing.
¿Puede ser verdad que <i>trate</i> de engañarnos?	Can it be true that he <i>is trying</i> to deceive us?
No me imagino ni por un momento que <i>abrigue</i> la menor sospecha acerca de nuestros proyectos.	I do not suppose even for an instant that he <i>entertains</i> the least suspicion with regard to our plans.
No creo que mi padre <i>se alegre</i> mucho de este descubrimiento.	I do not think my father <i>will be very glad</i> of this discovery.
¿Cree V. que <i>se haya</i> rechazado mi demanda?	Do you believe my application <i>has been rejected</i> ?

REMARK.—In questions, if the dependent verb relates to the future, it is put in the future indicative:—

¿Cree V. que <i>llegaremos</i> á tiempo?	Do you think we <i>will arrive</i> in time?
¿Suponen Vds. que <i>se publicará</i> mi novela?	Do you suppose my novel <i>will be published</i> ?

## AFTER A RELATIVE.

**896.** After a relative pronoun referring to a person, thing or idea which is either unknown or not definitely known, the verb of the dependent clause is subjunctive:—

Quiero un guía que <i>hable</i> inglés.	I want a guide who <i>speaks</i> English.
No tardaremos en encontrar algún aldeano que <i>nos enseñe</i> el camino.	We shall not be long in meeting some peasant who <i>will show</i> us the road.
Debemos hacer cuanto <i>esté</i> de nuestra parte para ocultar nuestra presencia en la vecindad.	We must do all that <i>is</i> in our power to hide our presence in the neighborhood.
El capitán ha prometido una recompensa al primero de la tripulación que <i>aborde</i> un buque enemigo.	The captain has promised a reward to the first one of the crew who <i>boards</i> a vessel of the enemy.



Si V. quiere una hoja cuyo temple sea bueno, yo se la proporcionaré. If you want a blade whose temper shall be good, I will furnish it to you.

897. In the same manner a subjunctive follows a relative adverb of time, place, or manner when this is not definitely known:—

Se lo diré cuando venga.	I shall tell him when he comes.
Iré á donde V. me mande.	I will go where you may send me.
La pieza se amueblará como V. quiera.	The room will be furnished as you may wish.

898. Hence the indefinite expressions formed by appending the termination *quiera* to relative pronouns and adverbs are followed by a subjunctive. This *quiera* is itself the subjunctive present of *querer*, and corresponds to the English appended *ever* or *soever*, meaning *what you will*:—

Quienquiera que sea.	Whoever he may be.
Dondequiera <sup>1</sup> que se encuentre Vd.	Wherever you may find yourself.
Cuandoquiera que vuelvan.	Whenever they return.
Comoquiera que obremos.	However we manage.
Cualquiera disculpa que ofrezca.	Whatever excuse he offers.

899. Cualquiera and its plural cualesquiera may drop the final *a* when immediately preceding a noun, but not otherwise. The apocopation of *quiera* in other compound words is antiquated:—

Cualesquier noticias que nos traigan.	Whatever news they bring us.
Cualesquier esfuerzos que V. haga.	Whatever efforts you make.

REMARK.—*Quequiera* is not in use; its place is taken by *cualquier*[a] *cosa*, *whatever*:—

Cualquiera cosa que V. haya hecho por mi hermano.	Whatever you may have done for my brother.
Apuesto cualquier cosa á que no lo intenta.	I'll bet anything that he won't attempt it.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dondequiera* has an abbreviated form *doquiera* or *doquier*, found in poetic style.

900. *Cualquiera* may be employed as an adjective, or used partitively before a plural noun preceded by *de*:—

<i>Cualquier día; cualesquier criadas.</i>	Any day at all; any servants at all.
<i>Un defecto cualquiera.</i>	Any fault at all.
<i>Cualquiera de los buques.</i>	Whichever of the vessels.

REMARK.—*Whatever* may also be expressed by *sea el que quiera*, the demonstrative *el* agreeing with a following noun. The phrase is followed by a subjunctive preceded by *que*:—

<i>Sean las que quiera las escalas que haga el vapor, . . . .</i>	Whatever be the landings made by the steamer, . . . .
<i>Sean los que quiera los obstáculos que se opongan á nuestro progreso.</i>	Whatever obstacles may oppose our advance.

901. The subjunctive is in like manner required by the formula of similar value, *por . . . que*, the interval being filled by an adjective or adverb. The construction may be rendered in English by *however*, followed by an adjective or adverb:—

<i>Por atrevidos que sean sus proyectos.</i>	However daring his plans may be.
<i>Por cuerdamente que obran.</i>	However prudently they act.
<i>Por mucho que V. diga, . . . .</i>	However much you say, . . . .
<i>Por muy sencilla que parezca á primera vista aquella pregunta.</i>	However simple that question may appear at first sight.

902. When the intervening word is a noun, it is preceded by *mucho* or *más*, the formula being then translated by *whatever*:—

<i>Por muchas riquezas que tenga, bien pronto les verá el fin.</i>	Whatever riches he has, he will soon see the end of them.
<i>Por más dinero que gane, nunca se hará rico.</i>	Whatever money he earns he will never get rich.
<i>Por muchos disparates que V. haga, no me reiré de V.</i>	Whatever blunders you make I shall not laugh at you.

903. The dependent verb is also subjunctive after a relative when the antecedent clause is negative, restrictive, or interrogative requiring a negative answer:—

<i>No conozco á nadie que pueda igualarle.</i>	I know no one who can equal him.
--	----------------------------------

No puede hallar ningún criado que quiera servirle.	He cannot find any servant who is willing to serve him.
Aquí no hay cosa que merezca nuestra atención.	There is nothing here which deserves our attention.
Son tan parecidos en todo que no hay quien los distinga.	They are so much alike in every respect that there is no one who can distinguish them.
¿Acaso existe otra nación á cuya vista se despliegue el espectáculo de un porvenir tan grandioso?	Does any other nation exist before whose gaze is unfolded the prospect of so grand a future?

**REMARK.**—The subjunctive is occasionally employed (as in French) after a relative preceded by a superlative. This use is now almost wholly restricted to the perfect tense of the subjunctive.

Ésta es la mejor presentación del asunto, que yo haya visto.	This is the best presentation of the subject that I have seen.
Es el médico más hábil que yo haya conocido.	He is the most able physician that I have known.

#### AFTER CONJUNCTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

**904.** The subjunctive follows many conjunctions and conjunctive expressions, the most important of which are given in detail below; it is to be borne in mind that the subjunctive is employed after them only when the leading verb or idea expresses causation, or when the dependent verb implies negation or uncertainty.

#### 905.

#### PURPOSE.

The subjunctive may be used after the following conjunctions, to express the purpose or intention of an action:—

Á fin de que, in order.	Para que, } in order that.
De manera que, so as, so that.	Por que, }
De modo que, so as, so that.	Que, so that, in order that.

#### EXAMPLES.

Las muestras se hallan todas rotuladas, á fin de que los visitantes sepan á que atenerse.	The specimens are all labelled, in order that the visitors may know what they are looking at.
---	---

Colocaré el quinqué de manera que su luz se derrame sobre el libro de V.	I will place the lamp so that its light shall be shed on your book.
Lo pongo aquí de modo que no lo vea nadie.	I put it here so that no one shall see it.
De noche ponen linternas sobre los montones de morrillos para que nadie tropiece con ellos.	At night they put lanterns on the heaps of rubble so that no one shall stumble against them.
Ven que te abraze.	Come, that I may embrace you.
Colóquese V. aquí que no le vean.	Place yourself here so that they may not see you.

## 206.

RESULT.<sup>1</sup>

The subjunctive is used after the following conjunctions when they are preceded by a phrase expressing what is calculated to produce the result expressed by the subjunctive:—

Tal que, such that.	De tal modo que, in suchwise that.
Tanto que, so much that.	Para que, so that.
Tan . . . que, so . . . that.	Que, that, for.

## NEGATIVE RESULT.

sin que, without.

## EXAMPLES.

Importúnele V. tanto que se vea forzado á pagarle.	Dun him so much that he will have to pay you.
Es bastante amigo mío para que pueda fiarme de él.	He is sufficiently my friend for me to be able to trust him.
Haré construir una torre tan alta que domine á toda la ciudad.	I will have a tower built so high that it may overlook the whole city.
Trate V. de hablar de tal modo que nadie se ofenda.	Try to speak in suchwise that no one will be offended.
No podremos pasar las líneas sin que los piquetes hagan fuego sobre nosotros.	We cannot pass the lines without the pickets firing on us.

<sup>1</sup> When the result is spoken of as a fact, the dependent verb is indicative.



## 907.

## SUPPOSITION.

Dado que,	{	{ in case, supposing	Sea que,	{ if, whether.
Dado caso que,	{	that.	Ya sea que,	{
En caso de que,	{	in case.	Supóngase que,	{
Para el caso de que,	{		Suponiendo que,	{ supposing that.
Que, whether.			Supuesto que,	{

## EXAMPLES.

Dado que él haya divulgado el proyecto, como se dice, no veo que tengamos por qué desesperarnos.	Supposing he has divulged the plan, as they say, I do not see that we have reason to give up.
En caso de que venga el alcalde, ¿qué le diremos?	In case the mayor comes, what shall we tell him?
Será conveniente apartarnos todos del sitio para el caso de que la pieza reviente.	It will be advisable for all of us to get out of the way lest the piece should burst.
Que el "Popol Vuh" sea un libro auténtico ó una mera falsificación, es una cuestión que se agita aún entre los sabios.	Whether the "Popol Vuh" be a genuine book or a mere fabrication, is a question which is still discussed among the learned.
Ella tiene necesidad de nuestro auxilio, sea que lo merezca ó no.	She needs our assistance, whether she deserves it or not.
Aun suponiendo que sea un ciervo, no es posible que nuestras balas le alcancen á tanta distancia.	Even supposing that it be a deer, it is not possible for our bullets to hit him at so great a distance.

## 908.

## PROVISO.

Con tal [de] que,	{	provided that.	Á condición de que, on condition
Siempre que,	{		that.

## EXAMPLES.

Terminaré este capítulo á eso de las nueve, con tal que no vengán visitas que me interrumpen.	I shall finish this chapter about nine o'clock, provided no visitors come to interrupt me.
Consentiremos en asegurar su casa con tal de que mande demoler las barracas contiguas.	We are willing to insure his house, provided he will have the adjoining sheds torn down.
Consiento en comprar la casa, siempre que su dueño mande reparar los establos.	I am willing to buy the house, provided the owner has the stables repaired.

Mandaré hacer el apeo á condición de que V. sufrague los gastos. I will have the survey made on condition that you pay the expenses.

## 909.

## EXCEPTION.

Á menos que, }  
Á no ser que, } unless.

Excepto que, except that.  
Salvo que, save that, unless.

## EXAMPLES.

No saldré á menos que V. me acompañe. I shall not go out unless you accompany me.  
Es decir, á no ser que se me avise lo contrario. That is to say, unless I am informed to the contrary.  
Partiré mañana á menos que haga mal tiempo. I shall start to-morrow unless the weather be bad.  
Llegaremos á San Francisco en cuatro días excepto que acontezca un choque ó un descarrilamiento. We shall arrive in San Francisco in four days unless there is a collision or the train runs off the track.  
Salvo que los precios bajen de un modo inesperado, ganaré por lo menos ochenta por ciento. Unless prices fall unexpectedly I shall gain at least eighty per cent.

## 910.

## CONCESSION

Aunque, }  
Así, } although, though.  
Á pesar de que, }  
Á despecho de que, } in spite of.

Aun cuando, even though  
No obstante que, } { notwithstanding  
Sin embargo de que, } { ing that

## EXAMPLES.

No acabaré V. el traje para la hora prometida aunque trabaje toda la noche. You will not finish the gown by the hour promised, although you work all night.  
No faltaré á la cita, así tenga que pasar el río á nado. I shall not break my appointment, though I have to swim the river.  
Es un joven que, á pesar de que al principio tenga muchos obstáculos que vencer, no tardará en cobrar fama. He is a young man who in spite of [the fact] that he may have many obstacles to overcome at first, will not fail to make a name for himself.  
Aun cuando la rapidez de su marcha exceda quince nudos, no nos alcanzarán con la delantera que les llevamos. Even if their speed be over fifteen knots, they will not overtake us with the start we have on them.  
Lo que se llama "la Sociedad" What is called "Society" will often

amenudo rechaza á un hombre sin embargo de que su carácter sea intachable, sus modales distinguidos y sus sentimientos elevados.

reject a man notwithstanding that his character may be without fault, his manners refined and his sentiments elevated.

## 911.

## DENIAL.

Lejos de que, so far from.

No sea que, lest.

## EXAMPLES.

Lejos de que la adversidad sea un mal, es amenudo un remedio, un contraveneno de la prosperidad.

So far from adversity being an evil, it is often a cure, an antidote to prosperity.

El jurado se rehusa á leer los diarios, no sea que se exponga á influencias sobornadoras.

The juror refuses to read the daily papers lest he expose himself to improper influences.

## 912.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

After the following conjunctive expressions of time or extent, the subjunctive is required when uncertainty is implied:—

Á medida que, according as.

Hasta el momento en que, until the time when.

Antes [de] que, before.

Hasta que, until.

Come, as, whenever.

Luego que, as soon as.

Después que, after.

Mientras que, while.

En cuanto, when; as far as.

Para cuando, by the time when.

Hasta donde, as far as.

Siempre que, whenever.

Cuando, when.

Ya que, as soon as.

Para cuando, by the time that.

## EXAMPLES.

Corregiré las pruebas á medida que lleguen de la imprenta.

I will correct the proof according as it comes from the printer's.

Hay que estar en Arequipa antes de que salga el sol.

We must be in Arequipa before the sun rises.

Le mandaré á V. los fondos como V. los necesita.

I will send you the funds as you need them.

Después que haya hecho visar mi pasaporte, me dirigiré al banco.

After I have had my passport viséed I shall go to the bank.

En cuanto V. la conozca mejor, la hallará simpática é instruida.

When you get better acquainted with her, you will find her congenial and intelligent.

Trataré de complacerle á V. en cuanto me sea posible.	I shall endeavor to oblige you as far as may be possible for me.
Viajaremos en coche hasta donde el camino sea practicable.	We shall travel in a carriage as far as the road is passable.
Juzgo prudente el echar el cerrojo hasta el momento en que no haya que temer ladrones.	I deem it prudent to bolt the door until the time when there will be no need to fear robbers.
Quedaremos al abrigo de esta choza hasta que la tempestad se modere.	We will remain under the shelter of this cabin until the storm moderates.
Luego que V. los vea, admitirá que son admirables.	As soon as you see them you will admit that they are wonderful.
Seguiré la pista del asesino mientras que me sostengan las piernas.	I shall follow the trail of the murderer while my legs sustain me.
Estaremos listos para la partida para cuando salga la luna.	We will be ready for the start by the time the moon rises.
Siempre que V. necesite al portero, no tendrá V. que hacer más que tocar el botón del timbre eléctrico.	Whenever you need the messenger, you will have but to touch the button of the electric bell.

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

913. The perfect subjunctive follows only a leading verb in the present or future tense, and represents an action as completed before the time indicated by that verb:—

Es un milagro que no se haya roto el pescuezo.	It is a wonder that he has not broken his neck.
Le prestaré á V. este libro cuando lo haya leído yo mismo.	I will lend you this book when I have read it myself.
Se habrá ganado mucho cuando se haya llegado á adquirir aquella común confianza sobre la que debe descansar toda amistad internacional.	Great will have been the gain when we have acquired that common confidence upon which all international friendship must rest.

## GENERAL REMARKS.

914. Certain verbs, mostly intransitive, require a preposition both in English and Spanish to connect their meaning with a noun object. But while in English this preposition is omitted before a dependent verb, it is retained in Spanish, the conjunction que following:—



Todo contribuye á la felicidad de Vds.	Everything contributes to your happiness.
Todo contribuye á que Vds. sean felices.	Everything contributes to your being happy.
Me alegro del restablecimiento de la Srita. hermana de V.	I am glad of your sister's recovery.
Me alegro de que la Srita. hermana de V. esté restablecida.	I am glad that your sister has recovered.
Se admira de que hayamos logrado aprender el ruso.	He wonders that we have succeeded in learning Russian.
Señores, la Mesa insiste en que las actas sean suscritas por cada uno de los miembros.	Gentlemen, the Chair insists that the minutes be signed by each of the members.

915. The preposition is also retained after an adjective, participle or noun, followed by *que* and a dependent verb:—

Estamos muy contentos con que no se haya perdido el original.	We are very glad that the original has not been lost.
Estoy sorprendido de que el trabajo haya exigido tanto tiempo.	I am surprised that the work has taken so much time.
Tengo el más sincero deseo de que Vd. venga lo más pronto posible.	I have the most sincere wish that you come as soon as possible.
Hemos tenido sumo cuidado en que la doctrina de los modelos sea ejemplarísima y moral.	We have taken great care that the teaching of the examples may be most exemplary and moral.

916. The idea which causes the dependent verb to be subjunctive is not necessarily expressed by a verb. The ideas of causation and emotion require either a verb or an equivalent noun; but those of negation and uncertainty may be conveyed by a noun, pronoun, adverb or conjunction:—

Su objeción á que emprendamos el negocio está mal fundada.	His objection to our undertaking the business is ill-founded.
Sólo el temor de que su padre le castigue, le hace observar buena conducta.	Only the fear that his father will punish him makes him observe good behavior.
No hay peligro de que los equipajes se extravíen.	There is no danger of the baggage going astray.
La sentencia es que pague una multa	The sentence is that he pay a fine of

de cien pesos, ó, á falta de esto,  
que sufra tres meses de prisión.

\$100, or, in default thereof, that he  
receive three months' imprison-  
ment.

Acaso sea necesario advertir que . . .

Perhaps it may be necessary to ob-  
serve that . . .

Tal vez Vds. hayan oído ya este  
cuento.

Possibly you have already heard this  
story.

917. The conjunction *que* may be omitted before the sub-  
junctive when the latter is governed by an expression of causa-  
tion or emotion (§§ 890-1):—

Espero se *digne* V. recordar que  
yo no he abusado nunca de esta  
autoridad.

I hope that you will be good enough  
to remember that I have never  
abused this authority.

Me permito suplicar á V. se *sirva*  
enviarme los libros que á con-  
tinuación se expresan.

I beg to request that you will be so  
kind as to send me the books men-  
tioned below


Tememos *sean* socorridos los enemi-  
gos.

We are afraid the enemy will be  
reinforced.

Es de esperarse no *tarden* mucho en  
presentarse.

It is to be hoped they will not be long  
in presenting themselves.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

 In translating the Spanish portion of this exercise, the students  
should indicate each subjunctive form, and explain why this mood is re-  
quired.

a) 1. Acaso la mayoría de ustedes vivan en la ciudad, pero esto no cons-  
tituye un *obstáculo* para que de vez en cuando *visiten* el campo. 2.  
Siempre que lo hagan, será bueno y provechoso que *observen* á la Natura-  
leza y tomen nota de lo más interesante que adviertan en sus *observaciones*.  
3. Cuando ustedes vean que las plantas y otros objetos expuestos á la  
intemperie están mojados, sin que llueva, por la mañana temprano, ó bien  
al anochecer, les dirán los lugareños que "hay rocío." 4. Conviene que  
ustedes se den cuenta de que el rocío no cae como la lluvia, ni tampoco  
brota esta humedad, aunque así lo parezca, de la planta ó del suelo mismo,  
sino que se *forma* por la *condensación*, pegándose las gotitas á los objetos  
con los cuales el aire húmedo esté en *contacto*. 5. En cuanto pongan us-  
tedes un vaso frío en el aire húmedo y caliente, notarán en seguida unas  
gotas como de rocío que se desprenden de la parte exterior del vaso.  
6. La *diferencia* de *temperatura* entre diversos objetos y el aire que

los rodea, hace que la humedad que éste contiene, se *condense* y se convierta en agua. 7. Durante la noche el suelo y las plantas pierden el calor, se enfrían, y hacen que la atmósfera que está en *contacto* con ellos los bañe *gradualmente* al *condensarse* la humedad, produciéndose así el rocío. 8. Cuando es muy fuerte el enfriamiento, da lugar á que el rocío se hiele al *condensarse*, trasformándose en escarcha. 9. ¿No les parece á Vds. admirable un ameno prado que la frescura de la madrugada haya cubierto con un reluciente manto de escarcha? 10. En los países septentrionales, los labradores cubren sus plantas y flores tiernas, al anochecer, con paños y papeles, para que las primeras escarchas no las dañen, caso que vengan. 11. *Fórmase* el rocío *principalmente* en la primavera y en el otoño, cuando el sol es bastante caliente en medio del día, y las noches son más frescas que en el verano. 12. Ya que las nubes obstruyen la *radiación* del calor, impiden que se *forme* el rocío; hasta tal punto que es *imposible* que resulte el rocío cuando el cielo esté *completamente* nublado. 13. Para que Vds. comprendan que los rocíos fuertes valen tanto como las lluvias, no estará de más que les advierta que en el *Perú* hay vastas comarcas en que casi nunca llueve, y se alimenta la yerba tan sólo de los rocíos.

b) 1. However much we hurry, it will be *impossible* for us to reach the city before the banks close; consequently we had better stay here and return to the city by supper time. 2. What are we to do to pass the time? 3. Whatever you may suggest. 4. If you have no objection, we will go down to the lake and look for a place where it is cool and shady. 5. There we will rest until it is time for (*de que*) the boat to go back to town. 6. It is important that all the preliminary details be arranged before the Board of Directors meets to-morrow. 7. When I get to be rich, I am going to live in a country where there are no flies or mosquitoes. 8. No matter how many letters you write to the *President*, you will not receive an answer; his private *secretary* throws all such applications into the waste-basket without showing them to him. 9. The greater part of our noble forests will have disappeared by the end of the twentieth century, unless rigorous steps are taken to prevent their destruction. 10. What will the *human* race do when our vast coal deposits have been exhausted? 11. It is by no means likely that that will happen soon; meanwhile it is to be hoped that science will discover a way out of the difficulty. 12. *Lola, mama* (*f.* 1) says for us to come upstairs right away; she wants us to study our lessons before *papa* (*m.* 1) comes back, because she is going to ask him to take us to the beach this evening. 13. The students are all glad that *vacation* is approaching. 14. We need a Spanish *dictionary* that contains the *derivations* of the words; but I doubt if any good one exists. 15. The heiress wants to marry a man who will love her


for herself, and not for her property. 16. It is time for us to return home. 17. The Judge insists on our remaining to dine with him, for he is afraid it is going to rain. 18. I need the *services* of someone who will help me to translate an *official* report containing a lot of *technical* terms of *civil* engineering, and knowing that you are an expert on the subject, I write you this to ask you to tell me if you will have the time available to undertake this task,—which, of course, will (*ha de*) *present* little difficulty to a professional engineer.

- NOTES. 1. we had better = it is better that we, *más vale que*.  
and return = and that we return.  
8. no matter how many = however many (§ 921).  
an answer: omit the article.  
9. by the end, *para fines* (§ 421).  
11. a way out of, *un modo de salir de*.  
13. vacation: plural in Spanish.  
14. any good one: see §§ 530 and 577.  
18. this, *por la presente* (*carta* being understood).  
professional engineer = an engineer by (*de*) profession.

## LESSON XLIX.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*Continued*).

#### TENSES FORMED ON THE AORIST STEM.

 In the preceding lesson have been set forth the principal cases in which the subjunctive mood is required. The illustrations have been confined to the present and perfect tenses. In treating the remaining tenses it is to be understood that we are dealing with cases in which the subjunctive mood is required, and that we have only to consider what tense of that mood is to be adopted.

918. The imperfect, aorist and future tenses are formed by appending the terminations given in the table below to the stem of the aorist indicative as found by removing the termination of the first person singular. If that be irregular, the same irregularity pervades these tenses of the subjunctive. In regular verbs,



this is the same thing as adding the termination to the stem of the verb as obtained by removing the infinitive ending.

TABLE OF TERMINATIONS.

IMPERFECT.		AORIST.		FUTURE.	
1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.	1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.	1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.
-ara,	-iera,	-ase,	-iese,	-are,	-iere,
-aras,	-ieras,	-ases,	-ieses,	-ares,	-ieres,
-ara,	-iera,	-ase,	-iese,	-are,	-iere,
-áramos,	-iéramos,	-ásemos,	-iésemos,	-áremos,	-iéremos,
-arais,	-ierais,	-aseis,	-ieseis,	-areis,	-ieréis,
-aran,	-ieran.	-asen.	-iesen.	-aren.	-ieren.

## IMPERFECT, AORIST AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

The imperfect and aorist tenses, although tolerably distinct in the indicative, have ceased to be so in the subjunctive mood, and are interchangeable (except in expressing conditions, as shown in the next lesson).<sup>1</sup> It is found, however, that the aorist is the more frequently used, so that where there is a choice, it has the preference.

919. The imperfect and aorist subjunctive are used after a governing verb in the present or future tense when the action of the subjunctive verb is wholly past:—

Es muy dudoso que Marco Antonio  
fuese un hombre tan disoluto y  
abandonado como Cicerón le  
pinta.

It is quite doubtful whether Mark  
Antony was as dissolute and abandoned  
a man as Cicero paints  
him.

Algún día bendecirás á Dios de que  
tu padre tuviese la previsión de  
inculcarte la importancia de fijarte  
en los pormenores.

Some day thou wilt praise God that  
thy father had the foresight to  
inculcate in thee the importance  
of attending to minor details.

920. The imperfect and aorist subjunctive are also used after a governing verb in any past tense, when the action of the sub-

<sup>1</sup>The use of a past tense of the subjunctive as a substitute for the future conditional is not amenable to the ordinary rules of the subjunctive, and therefore will be treated separately.

junctive verb is simultaneous or subsequent to (but not prior to) the governing verb:—

Parecía imposible que un hombre bajara por aquel sitio.	It seemed impossible for a man to descend at that place.
Le dije á la niña que se alejase del pozo, porque temía que cayese dentro.	I told the child to go away from the well, for I was afraid she would fall in.
Solón mandó que á su muerte se llevasen sus restos mortales á Sálamis, que allí se quemasen y que las cenizas se esparciesen por el campo.	Solon ordered that on his death his remains be carried to Salamis and burned there, and that the ashes be scattered over the country.
Llamó á un muchacho que le trajese un ejemplar de dicho periódico.	He called to a boy to bring him a copy of the paper in question.
Se había mandado que los soldados economizasen las municiones.	It had been ordered that the men were to economize their ammunition.

921. The pluperfect is required after a governing verb in any past tense, when the action of the subjunctive is prior to that of the governing verb:—

Cuanto más reflexionaba, se admiraba más de que no se le hubieran ocurrido estas objeciones.	The more he reflected the more he wondered why these objections had never occurred to him.
No se podía averiguar si el presidiario hubiese pasado por allí.	They could not ascertain if the convict had passed by there.
Antes de leer aquel tratado, siempre había dudado que los Noruegos hubiesen desembarcado en el continente americano.	Before reading that treatise I had always doubted whether the Norsemen landed on the American continent.

922. The pluperfect subjunctive is also used after a governing verb in any past tense when the action of the subjunctive verb is subsequent to that of the governing verb, but completed before another action now also past:—

El indio esperó á que se hubiera apaciguado la agitación de las aguas, antes de dejar aquel sitio.	The Indian waited until the disturbance of the waters should have subsided before leaving the place.
Preferíamos aguardar á que se hubiese marchado.	We preferred to wait until he had left.

923. When the subjunctive follows a conjunction, or a relative adverb or pronoun, and no governing verb occurs, its tense is fixed by the time of its action with relation to the context:—

Todos se desearon una buena noche sin que nadie la <i>esperase</i> .	All wished each other a good night without anyone's expecting it.
Me prometió que cuando su secretario <i>hubiese copiado</i> el informe, me lo devolvería.	He promised me that when his clerk should have copied the report, he would return it to me.
Lo dije en voz alta, á fin de que lo <i>oyesen</i> los transeúntes.	I said it in a loud tone, so that the passers-by should hear it.
Estaba resuelta á no quedarme en el convento, aunque <i>tuviese</i> que saltar por la ventana.	I was determined not to stay in the convent, even though I should have to jump out at the window.
Ví que se preparaban á someterme á un examen, y me disponía yo á contestar como Dios me <i>sugiriese</i> .	I saw that they were preparing to subject me to an examination, and I got ready to answer as God might suggest to me.

924. So when the subjunctive depends upon an infinitive or a gerund, its tense is determined by that of the leading finite verb of the sentence:—

Me costó trabajo impedir que se <i>pudiese</i> de rodillas.	It cost me some trouble to prevent him from falling on his knees.
Temiendo que se <i>advirtiese</i> mi distracción, me despedí de las damas con afectada efusión, y me <i>marché</i> .	Fearing that they would notice my preoccupation, I took leave of the ladies with affected effusiveness, and departed.

## 925.

## SYNOPSIS.

a. The present subjunctive may relate to a time either co-existent with, or subsequent to, that of the governing verb:—

Es dudoso que lo sepa.	It is doubtful whether he knows it.
Merece que le castiguen.	He deserves to be punished.

b. When the governing verb is in the present tense, an imperfect or aorist subjunctive relates only to a prior time:—

Es improbable que los Fenicios <i>conociesen</i> la brújula.	It is improbable that the Phœnicians knew of the compass.
--	---

c. When the governing verb is imperfect or aorist, the imperfect or aorist subjunctive can refer only to a coexistent or subsequent time:—

No percibí que nadie hablase en el cuarto vecino.	I did not notice whether any one was talking in the next room.
Temíamos todos que el buque fuese á pique.	We all feared the vessel would go down.

d. After a governing verb in the imperfect or aorist, a subjunctive referring to a prior time must be pluperfect:—

En el siglo pasado se dudaba que Troya hubiese existido jamás.	In the last century they doubted whether Troy ever existed.
--	---

e. So we see that although the simple forms of the imperfect and aorist subjunctive may relate to a time prior to the present time, they cannot refer to a time prior to a past time:—

Se teme que los refuerzos no partiesen ayer.	It is feared that the reinforcements did not start yesterday.
Se temía que los refuerzos no hubiesen partido (not partiesen) el día anterior.	It was feared that the reinforcements had not started the day before.

#### FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

926. The future subjunctive applies only to future contingencies depending upon doubt or uncertainty; it is never dependent upon causation or emotion:—

Devolveré todo cuanto me dieran.	I shall return all they may give me.
Le escribiré á V. lo que decidieran.	I will write you what they may decide.

927. This tense is never governed by a verb, but is introduced by a conjunction, or a relative pronoun or adverb:—

En lo que tocara á defender mi persona, no tendré mucha cuenta con esas leyes, pues las divinas y humanas permiten que cada uno se defienda de quien quisiera agraviarle.	As far as may concern the defence of my person, I shall not take much account of those laws, for both human and divine ones permit everybody to defend himself against whoever tries to injure him.
Si el próximo invierno fuere tan	If next winter be as severe as the



riguroso como el último, los  
pobres padecerán muchísimo.

last, the poor will suffer greatly.

Los demás Estados que tomaren  
parte en la Conferencia serán  
representados por el número de  
Delegados que cada uno designa-  
re.

The other States which may partici-  
pate in the Conference shall be  
represented by as many Delegates  
as each may elect.

928. The future subjunctive, although once frequent, is now little used, and only to show that a contingency is future which the present subjunctive or indicative would not specify:—

Si tiene fortuna, le daré la mano de  
mi hija.

If he has (now) wealth, I will give  
him my daughter's hand.

Si tuviere fortuna, le daré la mano  
de mi hija.

If he have (at some future time)  
wealth, I will give him my daugh-  
ter's hand.

Las calidades que requiere la ley.

The qualities required by law (*fact*).

Las calidades que requiera la ley.

The qualities which the law may re-  
quire (now).

Las calidades que requiriere la ley.

The qualities which the law may re-  
quire (at some future time).

Con tal que esté en la ciudad.

Provided he be in town (now).

Con tal que estuviere en la ciudad.

Provided he be in town (at a future  
time).

929. It may be remarked here that *si*, *if*, cannot be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive, as is the case in English:—

Si hace viento propicio. }  
Si hiciere viento propicio. }

If there be a fair wind.

930. Otherwise, the future subjunctive is now usually re-  
placed by the present:—

Mientras durare la vida. }  
Mientras dure la vida. }

While life lasts.

Compraré la casa en que vivo  
{ cuando tuviere los medios. }  
{ cuando tenga los medios. }

I shall buy the house I am living in  
when I have the means.

931. The future perfect subjunctive (formed from the future subjunctive of *haber* and a past participle) is used when the action of the verb is to be completed prior to a future time:—

Si para fines del mes la comisión hubiere terminado su trabajo.	If by the end of the month the Com- mittee has concluded its work.
Dado caso que, á la expiración de dicho plazo, no se hubieren ofre- cido posturas.	In case, at the expiration of said time, no bids shall have been presented.

REMARK.—There is practically no difference in meaning, either in Spanish or English, among the following expressions:—

Cuando algún error se descubra.	When any error is discovered.
Cuando algún error se descubriere.	When any error shall be discovered.
Cuando algún error se haya descubierta.	When any error has been discovered.
Cuando algún error se hubiere descubierta.	When any error shall have been discovered.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**931.** The subjunctive without any governing word expressed, is of limited application. Expressions of this character may be considered elliptical, as a governing word or clause can easily be supplied, and are referable to the two general principles of causation and uncertainty. Under the first of these the subjunctive expresses a wish or command, and is equivalent to an imperative; under the second it expresses an alternative.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE USED AS IMPERATIVE.

**932.** The principal use of the subjunctive when no governing word is expressed, is as a substitute for an imperative. It may either take the place of an existing imperative, or supply the place of forms that are wanting. As the direct imperative is confined to the second person, and is never employed negatively, as in forbidding, its use is extremely limited. The present subjunctive is used for all other purposes of an imperative, and from its indirectness is more courteous.

**933.** There are various degrees of indirectness:—

1. When the imperative conveys a wish or command as a message through one person to another, the subjunctive is preceded by *que*, and a verb of wishing or commanding may be understood:—

Que suban la comida.	Let them bring up the dinner.
Que no entre nadie.	Let no one come in.
Que pase á mediodía.	Let him call at noon.
Que se les despida.	Let them be dismissed.
Que todo esté listo para cuando volvamos.	Let everything be ready by the time we return.

2. When the wish or command is not delivered as a message, but is merely expressed indefinitely about some person or thing not present, the employment of *que* is not uniform; its absence, however, pertains rather to an antique or elevated style:—

Que me ahorquen si lo hago.	May they hang me if I do.
Que te caigan los cielos.	May the heavens fall on you.
Que el diablo se vuele con él y sus antojos.	May the D—l fly away with him and his fancies.
Séale la tierra leve.	May the earth rest lightly upon him.
Dios le ampare á V.	God protect you.
Cúmplase la voluntad de Dios.	God's will be done.
Padre nuestro, que estás en los cielos, santificado sea tu nombre.	Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.
¡Viva la República!	Long live the Republic!

REMARK.—Certain stereotype expressions of a passive or impersonal nature, regularly discard the conjunction:—

Baste decir que llegó á su destino sin ser molestado.	Suffice it to say that he reached his journey's end without being molested.
Figúrense mis pensamientos, figúrese mi asombro, al verle vivo.	Imagine my thoughts, imagine my dismay, on seeing him alive.
No se crea que yo participaba de sus ideas pesimistas.	Let it not be believed that I shared his pessimistic ideas.

3. When the command is addressed to a person who is present, *que* is omitted, and the subjunctive is immediately followed by *V.* or *Vds.*, as the case may require:—

Hable V. más alto.	Speak louder.
Ponga V. la maleta sobre el baúl.	Put the valise on the trunk.
Vuelva V. cerca de las dos.	Come back about two o'clock.
Suban Vds. un piso más.	Come up another flight.
No abran Vds. las ventanas.	Don't open the windows.

4. A courteous or polite form is obtained by applying the above to some such verb as *servirse*, *to please*; *dignarse*, *to deign*; or some other circumlocution:—

<i>Sírvase V. tomar un asiento.</i>	Please take a seat.
<i>Dígnense Vds. pasar adelante.</i>	Please go first.
<i>Tenga V. la bondad de alargarme el aplo.</i>	Kindly reach me the celery.
<i>Hágame V. el favor de hablar más alto.</i>	Do me the favor of speaking louder.

934. The subjunctive is substituted for the true imperative in negative commands addressed in the second person:—

<i>Haz lo que te digo.</i>	Do what I tell thee.
<i>No hagas lo que te prohibo.</i>	Do not do what I forbid thee.
<i>Haced lo que os digo.</i>	Do what I tell you.
<i>No hagáis lo que os prohibo.</i>	Do not do what I forbid you.

935. When the subjunctive used imperatively has for object one or more personal pronouns, they are appended to it, if when the command is affirmative; if negative, they precede:—

<i>Váyase V. Acérquese V.</i>	Go away. Come near.
<i>No se vaya V. No se acerque V.</i>	Don't go away. Don't come near.
<i>Dénmelos Vds.</i>	Give me them.
<i>No me los den Vds.</i>	Do not give them to me.
<i>Enséñeselo V. á ella.</i>	Show it to her.
<i>No se lo enseñe V. á ella.</i>	Do not show it to her.
<i>Préstennoslos Vds. á nosotros.</i>	Lend them to us.
<i>Quítenmele Vds.</i>	Take him off of me.

936. The subjunctive also supplies the want of an imperative of the first person. When so used it is to be rendered in English by *let* or *may*; a personal pronoun, when subject, is then not expressed except for emphasis:—

<i>Salgamos á dar un paseo.</i>	Let us go out and take a walk.
<i>Entremos en la casa.</i>	Let us go into the house.
<i>Ocultémonos aquí, detrás de esta peña.</i>	Let us conceal ourselves here, behind this rock.
<i>Ande yo caliente y ríase la gente.</i>	Let me go warm and the people may scoff.



REMARK.—The verb *ir*, *to go*, has a shortened form, *vamos*, instead of the full form of the first person plural subjunctive present, *vayamos*:—

Vamos á la corrida de toros.	Let us go to the bull-fight.
Vamos á ver lo que haya.	Let's go see what there is.
Vámonos. ( <i>From irse.</i> )	Let us go, let us be off.

937. The subjunctive is used after *ojalá* in exclamatory wishes; but this is merely a seeming independent use of the subjunctive, as *ojalá* has all the force of a verb, being derived from the Arabic *in shá'llah*, *Allah grant that*:—

¡Ojalá que venga pronto !	O that he may come soon !
¡Ojalá que semejante desgracia no le suceda á V. nunca !	May heaven grant that such a misfortune may never happen to you !

938. *Ojalá* may be followed by the past tenses of the subjunctive,—the aorist or imperfect relating to the present, and the pluperfect to a past time:—

¡Ojalá que mi hermano estuviese aquí !	Would that my brother were here !
¡Ojalá que mi hermano hubiese estado allí !	Would that my brother had been there !

939. It may be added that only the present subjunctive is used as an imperative; an exception being the imperfect and aorist subjunctive of the irregular verb *placer*, in the expression *pluguiera* or *pluguiese á Dios*, *would to God*:—

¡Plegue á Dios que no salga así !	God grant it may not turn out so !
¡Pluguiese á Dios que yo fuera muerto !	Would to God I were dead !
¡Pluguiese á Dios que no hubiera ido !	Would to God I had not gone !

REMARK.—A somewhat similar elision is found in colloquialisms like the following:—

¡Quien fuera joven !	If I were only a young man !
¡Quien supiera leer !	If a body but knew how to read !

#### ALTERNATIVE EXPRESSIONS.

940. The alternative expressions made by the subjunctive used independently, may be regarded as modifications of the

imperative, in which the thing commanded is so indeterminate that they are mere general permissions:—

<b>Hagan</b> lo que se les antoje.	Let them do what they please.
<b>Digan</b> lo que quieran, no por eso alteraré mi conducta.	Let them say what they will, I shall not alter my conduct on that account.
Será preciso intentar la fuga, <b>cueste</b> lo que cueste.	It will be necessary to attempt an escape, cost what it may.
<b>Venga</b> lo que viniere, le sostendré hasta el ultimo extremo.	Come what may, I will stand by him to the last.

REMARK.—The second subjunctive in these clauses is required by the idea of uncertainty, after a relative.

941. A further deviation from the imperative force is found in such alternative expressions as the following:—

Tendrá que pagarme, que quiera ó que no quiera.	He will have to pay me, whether he be willing or not.
Sea hombre ó sea demonio, no me dejaré amedrentar.	Be he man or be he demon, I will not let myself be frightened.
Que llueva ó que no llueva, iré.	I shall go whether it rain or not.
Que lo consiga ó no, su intención es laudable.	Whether he succeed or not, his intention is laudable.

942. The *que* before the first subjunctive of an alternative clause may be omitted; and when the clause forms part of a sentence whose leading time is past, both subjunctives are put in the appropriate past tense:—

<b>Mañana, hayan</b> llegado ó no los refuerzos, intentaremos una sortida.	To-morrow, whether the reinforcements have arrived or not, we will attempt a sortie.
Nos decidimos á que al día siguiente, <b>hubiesen</b> llegado ó no los refuerzos, intentaríamos una sortida.	We decided that on the next day, whether the reinforcements should have arrived or not, we would attempt a sortie.
Declaró que, <b>viniese</b> lo que <b>viniese</b> , no me <b>abandonaría</b> nunca.	He declared that, come what might, he would never forsake me.
Nos prometimos fidelidad <b>hasta</b> la muerte, <b>sucediese</b> lo que <b>sucediese</b> .	We promised each other fidelity until death, whatever might happen.
<b>Era</b> un aventurero de oficio, á la disposición del primero que le	He was an adventurer by trade at the disposal of the first man who

[ pagase bien, ó del segundo que le pagase mejor, <del>fuese</del> cual <del>fuese</del> la clase del trabajo.	would pay him well, or of the second who would pay him better, no matter what the class of work might be.
--	---

943. The present subjunctive of *saber*, *to know*, *recordar*, *to recollect*, and *ver*, *to see*, may be employed with *que* to modify a preceding negation or question <sup>1</sup>:—

No ha entrado nadie, <i>que yo sepa</i> .	No one has entered, so far as I know.
No existen otros ejemplares, <i>que sepamos</i> .	No other copies exist, to our knowledge.
¿Se ha expedido jamás tal orden, <i>que V. sepa</i> ?	Has any such order ever been issued, so far as you know?
No lo he leído jamás, <i>que yo recuerde</i> .	I have never read it, so far as I remember.
No demuestra el menor remordimiento, <i>que yo vea</i> .	He doesn't show the slightest remorse, so far as I see.

944. A relic of the Latin pluperfect (in *-aram*, *-eram*) still exists in Spanish, and is popularly confounded with the imperfect subjunctive. Its use is now rather archaic, and is restricted to relative clauses:—

No tuvo Magallanes motivo para arrepentirse de la buena acción que ejecutara.	Magellan did not have occasion to regret the good action that he had performed.
Pero pronto un revés de fortuna debía nublar aquel cielo de esperanza que hasta entonces le sonriera.	But soon a reverse of fortune was to cloud the sky of hope which, until then, had smiled upon him.

#### EXERCISE XLIX.

a) 1. Ordenamos al guía que nos llamara muy de madrugada, para que desayunásemos y emprendiésemos la ascensión del volcán antes de la salida del sol. 2. Amaneció muy nublado, y temíamos que el tiempo fuera á interrumpir nuestra *expedición*. 3. Habían insinuado ya algunos de los expedicionarios que se aplazase la ascensión, cuando el guía nos reanimó, diciendo: "No teman ustedes al tiempo; pues, sea de ello lo que fuere, la lluvia no ha de ser de mucha monta, porque en esta estación no tenemos más que aguaceros; por otra parte, á mí no me parece que vaya á llover."

<sup>1</sup> Compare the Latin *quod sciam*, *quod noverim*, *quod meminim*.

4. Efectivamente, luego que aparecieron los primeros fulgores del alba, se levantó una ligera brisa, impregnada de un olor á resina, obligando á las densas nubes á que abrieran el paso á los rayos del sol naciente. 5. Nos alegrábamos de que hubieran sido tan *proféticas* las palabras del guía, y nos sentamos á la mesa abrigando las más vivas esperanzas de que hubiésemos de ser favorecidos por un tiempo benigno. 6. Antes de que hubiésemos terminado el desayuno, ya se había aclarado lo suficiente para presentarnos unas perspectivas tan deliciosas como *atractivas*, y nos felicitábamos de que se hubiesen disipado los temores que tanto nos molestaban. 7. El guía nos dijo que había dispuesto que todo estuviera listo para la partida en cuanto hubiésemos terminado el almuerzo, añadiendo que nos sobraba tiempo, y nos aconsejó que comiésemos bien, pues era preciso que nos fortaleciéramos *abundantemente* para las fatigas de la jornada que nos esperaba. 8. D. *Tiburcio*, por lo contrario, nos rogó que nos diésemos prisa, pues deseaba mucho que llegásemos á las Peñas del *Quaco* antes de que asomara el sol sobre el horizonte, á fin de que gozásemos del grandioso espectáculo de sus rayos *iluminando* las neveras de la serranía. 9. Puesto que D. *Tiburcio* era reconocido de todos como jefe *nominal* de la *expedición*, fué preciso que nos conformáramos con sus deseos, tanto más cuanto que el espectáculo de que se trataba valía bien la pena de que uno madrugase mucho para disfrutarlo. 10. Así fué que, sin más ni más, nos encontramos en la silla, y mientras el fulgor de los primeros rayos se dejaba ver sobre los encumbrados picos orientales, ya estábamos encaminados para el desempeñadero de “El *Quaco*.”

b) 1. Wait here until I find a match. 2. Do not move, for I am afraid you will run into some piece of furniture. 3. Hang me if I understand why the janitor doesn't light the *gas* (*m.*) before it gets dark. 4. I wish I had an apartment lighted by *electricity*. 5. Ah, here are the matches at last! 6. Give me your hat and stick, and take this rocking-chair. 7. I wrote to *López* to meet us here at seven o'clock; let us light a cigarette while we are waiting for him. 8. Do you suppose he will come on time? he is always very absent-minded. 9. Whether he comes on time or not, we must wait for him, for he has the copy of *Körting's Dictionary* that we are to *consult*; I told him to bring his, because mine is at the bindery. 10. What did *Professor Gibson* tell the class to *prepare* for to-morrow's *recitation*? 11. He told us to write the exercise on the past tense of the subjunctive mood.—I haven't touched it yet. 12. Nor I either. Let us do it together. You read the sentences, and I will look up the words and write the translation. 13. All right; here goes:

14. “Did you believe that my brother was sick? 15. No sir, I did not believe that he was sick. 16. What was it *necessary* that the servant should put upon your bed? 17. It was *necessary* that he should put on it



a bolster, and two pillows. 18. Did your father approve of your having bought a pencil? 19. Yes sir, he approved of it because it was *necessary* that I should have one. 20. Did your brother not ask you to give him some cake? 21. Yes sir, but I did not give him any, for I feared that he would eat it. 22. When was it *necessary* for you to go to the market? 23. When it will be *necessary*, I will inform you. 24. The kind lady gave the little boy a penny that he might buy himself whatever he needed. 25. The students promised to be industrious provided the teachers should reward them."

26. Confound such stupid nonsense! I say; I wish to Heaven the writers of grammars would make up sentences that had some sense.

NOTES: 4. an apartment, *unas habitaciones*.

8. come: use *llegar*, not *venir*.

9. must = shall have to, *tendremos que*.

11. touched: use *ter*, not *locar*.

12. either: see § 760.

13. here goes, *vamos*.

26. ¡ Mal haya semejante tontería !

## LESSON L.

### THE CONDITIONAL FUTURE.

945. This form of the verb has been variously classed and designated by grammarians; but, as it differs from both the indicative and subjunctive, it will be found most convenient to consider it a sporadic mood, just as the imperative is.

Its tense is future, both in form and usage. When formed regularly, its terminations are added to the full infinitive, just as is the case with the indicative future. Both are regularly future with reference to the leading verb or to the time in the mind of the speaker.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A further similarity between these two futures is their identity of origin. They are not forms descended from classic Latin, but were made by appending popular forms of the auxiliary to an infinitive:—

Dar-he,	dar-has,	dar-ha,	dar-hemos,	dar-heis,	dar-han.
Dar-hia,	dar-hias,	dar-hia,	dar-hiamos,	dar-hiais,	dar-hian.

In Old Spanish, as is still the case in Portuguese, these appended forms

946. The terminations of the conditional future are as follows:—

SING.	1.	-ía,	<i>E.g.:</i> compraría,	vendería,	viviría,
	2.	-ías,	comprarias,	venderías,	vivirías,
	3.	-ia,	compraría,	vendería,	viviría,
PLUR.	1.	-íamos,	compraríamos,	venderíamos,	viviríamos.
	2.	-iais,	comprariais,	venderiais,	viviriais,
	3.	-ían.	comprarian.	venderían.	vivirían.

947. The following twelve verbs have the same irregularity in the conditional as in the future indicative. All others are regular in both moods:—

CABER :	cabr-é	—	cabr-ía.	PONER :	pondr-é	—	pondr-ía.
HABER :	habr-é	—	habr-ía.	SALIR :	saldr-é	—	saldr-ía.
PODER :	podr-é	—	podr-ía.	TENER :	tendr-é	—	tendr-ía.
QUERER :	querr-é	—	querr-ía.	VALER :	vaidr-é	—	vaidr-ía.
SABER :	sabr-é	—	sabr-ía.	VENIR :	vendr-é	—	vendr-ía.
HACER :	har-é	—	har-ía.	DECIR :	dir-é	—	dir-ía.

948. The future conditional always depends upon a past tense, expressed or understood. Its primary value is to express futurity dating from a past time—thus bearing the same relation to a past tense that the future indicative does to the present or future:—

Me aseguran que guardarán silencio.	They assure me they will keep silent.
Me aseguraban que guardarían silencio.	They assured me they would keep silent.
Le preguntaré si tardará en llegar.	I will ask him if he will be long getting there.
Le pregunté si tardaría en llegar.	I asked him if he would be long getting there.
Este desagüe sin duda forma una	This outlet doubtless forms a fall

of the auxiliary were separable to allow an objective personal pronoun to be interpolated:—

OLD SPANISH :	Esforçar-me-he ;	Dir-se hía.
PORTUGUESE :	Esforçar-me-hei ;	Dir-se hía.
OLD SPANISH :	Limitar nos-hemos ;	Escrivir-les-híamos.
PORTUGUESE :	Limitar-nos-hemos ;	Escr-ver lhes-híamos.

cascada cuya fuerza mecánica será posible utilizar.	whose mechanical power it will be possible to utilize.
Aquel desagüe sin duda formaba una cascada cuya fuerza mecánica sería posible utilizar.	That outlet doubtless formed a fall whose mechanical power it would be possible to utilize.

949. In this manner it is extended to apply as a future after any past tense, whether indicative or subjunctive, or an infinitive or gerund applied to a past time:—

He estado pensando que tal vez le encontraría por aquí.	I have been thinking that perhaps I should meet him around here.
Negó que le hubiésemos pregun- tado si asistiría á la función.	He denied that we had asked him if he would attend the perform- ance.
Suponiendo que llegaría en el tren directo de las 7, me dirigí inme- diatamente á la estación.	Supposing that he would arrive on the seven o'clock express, I started at once for the station.
Era natural creer que lo haría después de haberlo prometido.	It was natural to believe that he would do it after having promised.

950. The conditional cannot be used if the meaning of the leading verb or clause requires the subjunctive:—

Temíamos todos que se precipitase ( <i>not</i> precipitaria) al abismo.	We all feared he would fall into the abyss.
Era dudoso que este río proporcionase ( <i>not</i> proporcionaría) á los colonos bastante agua potable.	It was doubtful whether this river would supply the colonists with enough drinking-water.
Dejaron abierto un solo agujero estrecho y sinuoso para que se condujese el humo al exterior y tuviese tiro el hogar.	They left a single narrow and wind- ing hole open so that the smoke would be carried outside and the fireplace would have a draught.
En su carta suplicaba á su padre que no juzgase á su marido por lo que oyese decir á los demás; sino que aguardase á hacerlo cuando le conociere <sup>1</sup> personalmente.	In her letter she entreated her father not to judge her husband by what he might hear others say; but to delay doing so until he should know him personally.

---

<sup>1</sup> The subjunctive is here required by the idea of uncertainty when preceded by a relative.

951. Just as the future and future perfect indicative (§§ 243-4) express conjecture or probability with regard to the present, so these tenses of the conditional convey a similar idea with reference to a past event:—

Su madre tendría entonces treinta años.	Her mother was then probably thirty years old.
Poco le preocuparían á él semejantes amenazas.	Such threats probably disturbed his peace of mind very little.
De joven la madre habría sido una mujer muy linda.	As a girl the mother had probably been a very beautiful woman.
¿Habrían oído nuestra plática?	Could they have overheard our conversation?
¿Nos habrían reconocido?	Was it likely they had recognized us?

#### CONDITIONS WITH IMPLIED NEGATION.

§ 3 The most frequent application of the conditional future is in conditions with an implied negation (frequently termed “conditions contrary to fact”), which are grammatically expressed in a past tense, although relating to either past or present time.

952. It is a function of the aorist and imperfect to suggest a negation with respect to the present. To say that a thing *fué* is to imply that it is not. Hence a negation is implied in conditional clauses by using the past tenses of the subjunctive after *si*, although speaking of the present time. The following are the possible arrangements for conditions:—

#### FUTURE.

Si él tuviere poderosos valedores,	If he gets powerful backers,
conseguirá sin duda el empleo.	he will no doubt get the place.

#### PRESENT.

Si él tiene poderosos valedores,	If he has powerful backers,
conseguirá sin duda el empleo.	he will no doubt get the place.
Si él tuviera poderosos valedores,	If he had powerful backers,
conseguiría sin duda el empleo.	he would no doubt get the place.



## PAST.

Si él tenía poderosos valedores, no les empleó, porque no obtuvo el empleo.	If he had powerful backers, he did not make use of them, for he did not get the place.
Si él hubiera tenido poderosos valedores, sin duda habría conseguido el empleo.	If he had had powerful backers, he would no doubt have got the place.

953. The clause stating the condition supposed is called by grammarians *protasis*; the corresponding clause stating the consequence is called the *apodosis*. The place of the conditional future is in the *apodosis*:—

Si yo fuera rico, no trabajaría.	If I were rich, I should not work.
Si V. le hubiese dado dinero, él habría comprado ron.	If you had given him money, he would have bought rum.

954. By conditions with an implied negation is meant those in which the *protasis* supposes a state of affairs not existing. On account of this implied negation the verb of the *protasis* is subjunctive:—

Si no fuese soldado inválido, le despediría.	If he were not an invalid soldier (but he is), I would discharge him.
Si fuese soldada inválido, le daría el empleo.	If he were an invalid soldier (but he is not), I would give him the place.

955. In the *protasis*, as in the cases stated in the preceding lesson, the imperfect and aorist forms of the subjunctive are interchangeable:—

Si tuviese (or tuviera) tiempo, iría esta noche al teatro.	If I had time, I would go to the theater this evening.
Si hubiésemos (or hubiéramos) sabido eso, no habríamos dicho lo que dijimos.	If we had known that, we would not have said what we did.
Si hubiese (or hubiera) harina, haría pan.	If there were any flour, I would make some bread.

956. It is unimportant whether the *protasis* or *apodosis* be placed first:—

Se lo daría si lo tuviese.

Si lo tuviese, se lo daría.

¿Iría V. al campo si escampase?

Si escampase, ¿iría V. al campo?

I would give it to him if I had it.

If I had it I would give it to him.

Would you go to the country if it stopped raining?

If it stopped raining would you go to the country?

957. The protasis is usually introduced by *si*, *if*, but the result may be obtained by any mode of expression of similar value:—

Aunque viniera (aun si viniera), no le recibiría.

Vd. haría mal en despedirle (si le despidiese).

En otras circunstancias (si las circunstancias fuesen otras), no tendría inconveniente en ello.

No lo habría logrado sin su ayuda (si él no me hubiese ayudado).

Una perdigonada habría producido una hecatombe en aquella volatería, pero por desgracia no teníamos ninguna arma de fuego.

Although he should come (even if he came), I would not receive him

You would do wrong in discharging him (if you discharged him).

Under other circumstances (if the circumstances were different), I should have no objection to it.

I would not have succeeded without his aid (if he had not aided me).

A shower of bird-shot would have killed a hundred of those birds, but unfortunately we had no firearms.

958. The conditional future may appear in sentences without a preceding supposition. Such usages are elliptical, the wanting protasis being easily supplied:—

No colgaría el cuadro ahí (si yo fuese Vd.).

Dice que no haría cavar la bodega tan cerca de la calle (si á él le tocara dirigir el trabajo).

Le razón que V. acaba de dar nunca se me habría ocurrido.

I would not hang the picture there (if I were you).

He says he would not have the cellar dug so near the street (if he had charge of the work).

The reason you have just given would never have occurred to me.

959. The use of the conditional in expressing a wish in a modest manner is explainable by supplying a protasis as follows:—

Desearía hablar dos palabras con Vd. (si eso no le molestase).	I should like to say a few words to you (if it would not inconvenience you).
Yo también gustaría de tener una biblioteca (si las circunstancias me lo permitiesen)	I would like to have a library too (if circumstances would permit me).

960. A single exception to the principles stated with regard to the past tenses of the subjunctive is that the imperfect (but not the aorist) may in all cases take the place of the conditional. The latter, however, cannot be used for the imperfect subjunctive, and cannot, therefore, stand in the protasis:—

Si V. no hubiera acudido generosa- mente á mi ayuda, ya habría (or hubiera) muerto de hambre.	If you had not generously come to my aid, I should have starved to death. ( <i>Lit.</i> I should already have died of hunger).
Si la casualidad permitiese el en- cuentro de esas dos escuadras, habría (or hubiera) probabilidades de un combate naval de propor- ciones formidables.	If chance were to permit the en- counter of those two fleets, there would be a likelihood of a naval battle on a large scale.

961. Therefore a condition with implied negation has the following latitude of expression:—

Si tuviese dinero, } Si tuviera dinero, } lo compraría. Si tuviese dinero, } Si tuviera dinero, } lo comprara.	} If I had money, I would buy it.
---	-----------------------------------

REMARK.—A convenient thumb-rule is to consider that the protasis requires the aorist subjunctive, and the apodosis the future conditional; that these are not interchangeable; but that the imperfect subjunctive may take the place of either:—

Si tuviese (tuviera) dinero, lo com- praría (comprara).	If I had money, I would buy it.
--	---------------------------------

962. The future-perfect conditional, formed by the future conditional of *haber* and a past participle, is used only when the verb of the protasis is pluperfect. That occurs when the

action of both verbs is anterior to the time of uttering the sentence:—

Imagino que si en vez de dos pesetas hubiera tenido ánimo para ofrecerle cinco duros, no me lo habría rehusado.

Si el camino no hubiera estado sombreado por grandes árboles, creo que habríamos sido abrasados.

Si me hubiese dicho tal cosa le habría pegado un puñetazo.

I imagine that if instead of two francs I had had the courage to offer him five dollars, he would not have refused me.

If the road had not been shaded by large trees, I believe we should have been roasted.

If he had said such a thing to me I should have struck him with my fist.

**963.** The future and future perfect conditional may govern a subjunctive, in which case, as with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative, the subjunctive must be in the past tense:—

Sería bueno que V. tuviese tiempo para dar este paseo.

Preferiríamos que lloviese á que hiciese tanto polvo.

Habríamos mandado que se preparase la comida antes, si hubiéramos sabido que Vds. tenían tanta prisa.

It would be nice if you had time to take this outing.

We would rather have it rain than be so dusty.

We would have ordered dinner to be prepared earlier if we had known you were in such a hurry.

**964.** The imperfect subjunctive of *querer*, *quisiera*, is usually substituted for the future conditional *querría*, to prevent confusion with the imperfect indicative *quería*. *Quisiera* is a standard mode of expressing a request politely:—

Quisiera que V. viese mi colección de fotografías.

Quisiéramos visitar la galería de pinturas.

Mi hermano está indispuerto y quisiera pedirle prestado su ejemplar ilustrado del Quijote.

Quisiera que V. me enseñase su biblioteca.

I should like you to see my collection of photographs.

We should like to visit the picture-gallery.

My brother is under the weather and would like to borrow your illustrated copy of "Don Quixote."

I should like you to show me your study.

**REMARK.**—The present indicative, *quiero que V. me enseñe, etc.*, would be tantamount to a peremptory order.



965. *Quisiera* is also equivalent to the present indicative of the English *wish*, which is likewise followed by a past tense:—

Quisiera que viniesen.	I wish they would come.
Quisiera tener un alfiler.	I wish I had a pin.
Quisiéramos que sucediese como V. desea.	We wish it may turn out as you desire.
En cuanto á mí, quisiera que no hubiéramos venido.	As for me I wish we hadn't come.
Quisiera que hubiese medio de ahorrararnos esta pérdida de tiempo.	I wish there were some way of saving ourselves this loss of time.

966. In expressing a wish about a past event, there is a clearer distinction in Spanish than in English, between the future-perfect conditional and the future conditional followed by *haber* and a past participle. The former (the most usual construction) expresses a wish entertained in the past; the latter a wish entertained at present about the past:—

Hubiera querido presenciar aquella escena.	I should have liked (at that time) to witness that scene.
Quisiera haber presenciado aquella escena.	I should like (now) to have witnessed that scene. ( <i>I.e.</i> I wish I had witnessed it.)
Hubiera querido que V. me acompañase.	I should have liked you to accompany me.
Quisiera que V. me hubiese acompañado.	{ I should like you to have accompanied me. I wish you had accompanied me.
Hubiera querido que mi hijo aprendiese el castellano durante su permanencia en California, pero no tenía inclinación para ello.	I should have liked my son to learn Spanish during his stay in California, but he had no inclination towards it.
Hubiéramos querido que los músicos hubiesen llegado un poco antes.	We should have liked the musicians to have come a little earlier.

967. The conditional is inadmissible when the apodosis is governed by a verb or idea of causation, emotion, negation, or uncertainty, requiring a dependent subjunctive:—

No creo que los otros señores de esta aldea, si se hubieran hallado	I do not believe that the other gentlemen of this village, if they had
---	--

en el caso de V., hubiesen (*or* hubieran, *but not* habrían) obrado tan honradamente.

Si el Sr. profesor hubiese sabido que V. había hecho un estudio tan profundo de las lenguas muertas, dudo que se hubiese (*not* habría) atrevido á expresar sus opiniones delante de V., por temor de que V. las confutara (*not* confutaría).

Se le veía sorbiendo su chocolate, sin que nada indicara que aquel hombre de trazas tan pacíficas se convirtiese (*not* convertiría) en tigre furibundo si le contrariase algo.

El criado ocultó las pistolas, no sea que su amo, si las viera, sintiese (*not* sentiría) la tentación de acabar con la vida.

found themselves in your position, would have acted so honestly.

If the professor had known that you had made such a profound study of the dead languages, I doubt whether he would have dared to express his ideas before you, for fear you might disprove them.

He was sipping his chocolate without anything to indicate that that man with such a placid expression would become a raging tiger if anything should cross him.

The servant hid the pistols, lest his master, if he saw them, should feel a temptation to put an end to his life.

968. When the protasis is introduced by *si* (but not otherwise) its verb may be imperfect or pluperfect indicative. This usage, besides savoring of Gallicism, should be avoided for the reason given at § 954:—

El ventor parecía estar cazando por su propia cuenta, y era probable que si alguna pieza de caza le caía entre los dientes, no quedaría á los cazadores la menor parte de ella.

The pointer seemed to be hunting on his own account, and it was probable that if any game got between his teeth, there would not be the least bit of it left for the hunter.

969. In constructions like the following, however, the imperfect indicative is the only form admissible, since it expresses a fact:—

Si este razonamiento no era lógico, parecía sin embargo conformado al genio de sus oyentes, puesto que consiguió el efecto apetecido.

If this reasoning was illogical, it seemed nevertheless suited to the humor of his hearers, since it obtained the desired effect.

Si estaban mojados, atormentados por el hambre y rendidos de la fatiga, al menos tendrían aquí un abrigo donde guarecerse y fuego con que secar su ropa.

If they were wet, famished with hunger and exhausted with fatigue, at least they would have here a shelter to take refuge in and a fire to dry their clothes.

970. The infinitive preceded by *á* often takes the place of the protasis in a conditional sentence,—generally of implied negation:—

Á conocer yo (si hubiese conocido) su carácter, no le hubiera ajustado.	If I had known his character I should not have hired him.
Á no estar tan lejos de la población, me convendría la quinta de todos modos.	If it were not so far from the town, the country-house would suit me in every respect.
Á tomar su genio más elevado vuelo, no dejara de alcanzar algún importante destino.	If he had higher aspirations he would not fail to rise to some important position.

#### EXERCISE L.

a) 1. Dos estudiantes andaban por el camino real, y, al pasar por los portales de la extensa propiedad de un millonario, *exclamó* uno de ellos: “¡Ojalá yo tuviera una propiedad como ésta!” 2. “Y ¿qué haría V. si la tuviese?” dijo su compañero. 3. “¡Qué había de hacer!” contestó el primero, “daría espléndidas fiestas á los pobres como nosotros, y trataría de aliviar los sufrimientos de los desgraciados, en cuanto me fuera *posible*.” 4. “Eso es lo que V. dice ahora,” respondió el otro; “pero si V. tuviera esta propiedad, se portaría *exactamente* como el dueño actual: no le daría un ochavo á un pobre, si pudiera evitarlo, ni comería usted mismo si pudiese vivir sin ello, y obraría en todo como si le fuera *posible* llevarse consigo el dinero al otro mundo.” 5. “¿Cómo se da V. cuenta de eso?” dijo el primero. 6. “Pues porque si ese hombre hubiese gastado su dinero á medida que lo ganaba, nunca habría llegado á ser rico; que si no se hubiese acostumbrado á ahorrar su dinero, no lo habría conservado; y que no le sería *posible* quitarse la costumbre si tuviese todo el dinero del mundo.” 7. El primero siguió andando, sin proferir observación alguna. 8. Después de unos cuantos *momentos*, su compañero rompió el silencio, diciendo: “¿En qué está V. pensando? ¿Cree V. pues, que daría opíparas fiestas á los pobres si la propiedad fuera suya?” 9. “No estoy ya tan seguro de ello,” contestó pausadamente el primero; “tal vez la vergüenza no me permitiera dejar de dar á lo menos una, para despedirme de mis antiguos compañeros pobres.” 10. “V. dice,” añadió, “que todos los ricos son como éste; pues bien, no estaría bien que yo fuera *diferente* de otros de mi clase. 11. Correría gran riesgo de que mis hijos pidieran á la corte que nombrara una comisión para estudiar mi *condición mental*, á fin de que ellos pudiesen disfrutar con seguridad de mis bienes; porque si yo los derrochara en dar fiestas, ellos se verían precisados á trabajar.” 12. “Es V. un gran filósofo,” exclamó el segundo; “yo me creía más valioso como filósofo que V., mas ahora conozco que si V. hubiese nacido allá en la edad de Aristóteles, y hubiese proferido tales razonamientos, no



habrían sido éstos los menos desabridos de aquella época tan fértil en la historia intelectual del mundo."

δ) 1. We arrived at the *station* a little late, and if the train had not been twenty minutes behind time, on account of a slight accident, we should have had to (*que*) postpone our departure until the following day, which would have caused us much annoyance. 2. It was probably eleven o'clock when we reached our destination. 3. If there were a breeze we wouldn't feel the heat so much. 4. Yes indeed; but the wind would raise a dust that would blind us. 5. If tailors and dressmakers did not have the power to change fashions at their will every year, people would wear their old clothes longer, *vanity* would not play such an *important* part, women would have more time for their *domestic* duties, and the husbands would not pay out so much money. 6. If you had had your child vaccinated, I doubt if he would have caught the smallpox. 7. Here is a ring which would suit me perfectly if it were not so expensive. 8. If you realized how much it would grieve your mother for you to accept that position in *China*, I do not believe you would hesitate in refusing it at once. 9. In Europe and North *America* (*f.* 3) the plants and flowers of the *torrid* zone would not be known if they were not *cultivated* with care in greenhouses. 10. If you had wrapped the piece of ice in newspapers or in a woollen cloth, you would have prevented it from melting so quickly. 11. I wish that, if you have time, you would show me the photographs that you took in *Puerto Rico*. 12. I should take great (*mucho*) pleasure in showing them to you, but I have just sent them to my mother in Chicago. 13. The besieged foresaw that their supply of fresh water would not last more than four days. 14. The besieged feared that their supply of fresh water would soon be exhausted. 15. An old peasant-woman told *Mercedes* that if she would eat a spoonful of salt and go to bed without drinking anything, she would infallibly dream of the man who was to be her husband. 16. The young girl tried the recipe; but afterwards she said that she would prefer to die rather than marry the individual she had dreamed of.

NOTES. 3. a breeze : omit article.

7. perfectly, *sobremanoera*.

8. China : supply definite article.

11. take : use *tener*, not *tomar*.

12. them to my mother : use redundant construction (§ 463).  
in Chicago = who is in Chicago.

15. told Mercedes : redundant construction (§ 446).

she would eat : see § 580.

the man who, *el que*.



## REVIEW EXERCISE.

1. There is probably (*tal vez*) no characteristic of the human mind that has been more maligned in *popular literature* than that of *curiosity*.  
 2. And yet it is one of the most *inherent* instincts of (*d*) all living beings.  
 3. The first spark of intelligence that gleams in the mind of a little child is manifested by a growing *curiosity* with regard to surrounding objects.  
 4. Then its mother smiles with delight and exclaims: "Baby is already beginning to take notice!" 5. *Mythology* and *popular legend* are full of anecdotes that tend to discredit *curiosity*. 6. Let it suffice to mention the story of Cupid and Psyche, of *Cephalus* (*m.* 8) and *Procris*, of *Pandora* and *Epimetheus*, or (*ó bien*) the more modern story of Bluebeard and *Futima* (*f.* 8). 7. All these tales exhibit the evils that befall the person who is imbued with the desire to know the why and the wherefore of something. 8. And yet the world would not have *progressed* if inquisitive people had not existed. 9. Many of the greatest discoveries and *inventions* in (*de*) the history of the world would not have been made had it not been for *curiosity*. 10. It was *curiosity* that caused *Marco Polo* to wander eastward through unknown lands to the heart of the realm of *Kublai Khan*; and the (*este*) same feeling impelled *Columbus* to embark upon (*para*) his perilous *expedition* over the *mysterious* wastes of the *Atlantic Ocean*. 11. Without *curiosity* *Fernando de Soto* would not have discovered the *Mississippi*, *Cortés* would not have reached the *capital* (*f.*) of the empire of *Montezuma*, *Núñez de Balboa* would not have crossed the Isthmus of *Darien* and would not have been the first European to gaze in ecstasy upon the unlimited splendor of the *Pacific Ocean*, and *Magellan* would not have discovered the *famous* strait which to-day bears (*ostenta*) the name of that *intrepid* voyager. 12. For thousands of years apples had fallen to the ground and steam had arisen from the spouts of tea-kettles; but only when *Newton* and *Watts* had sufficient *curiosity* to *investigate* the cause of these *simple* phenomena, was the theory of *gravitation established* and the *steam-engine* made *possible*. 13. *Socrates* (*m.* 8) was right in asking questions and leading his disciples to make inquiries.

NOTES. 8. a little child, *una criatura de tierna edad*.

a growing curiosity = the development of curiosity.

surrounding objects = the objects that surround it.

5. legend: plural in Spanish.

8. yet, *sin embargo*.

10. it was . . . which, *fué . . . la que*.

11. The Isthmus of *Darien*, *el Darién*.  
and *Magellan*: see §§ 763-4.

12. for thousands of years: see § 871.

to the ground, *d tierra*.

spouts: singular in Spanish (§ 489).

was the theory, *fué cuando la teoría*.

## LESSON LI.

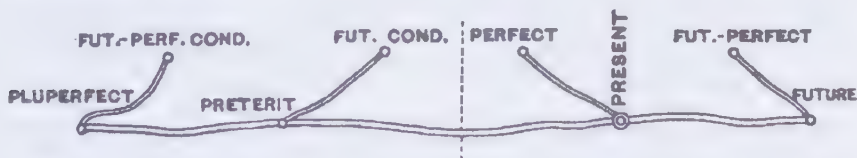
## CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES.

971. The tense of the leading verbs of a sentence depends upon the date of their action with reference to the time of speaking or writing the sentence. The leading verbs may be of any tense whatever; but the tense of a dependent verb is more or less restricted by that of the leading verb. The term *correspondence of tenses* relates to the extent of this control.

REMARK.—The extent of the control exercised by a leading verb often depends upon its lexical meaning. Some verbs have inherently a prospective or a retrospective reference, whatever their tense may be. We *remember* or *regret* the past; *foresee* and *anticipate* the future. All verbs of causing or influencing are prospective, since causes precede their effects.

972. So far as one verb can influence the tense of another, the aorist and imperfect are alike. Whatever influences the one would influence the other in the same way. In this lesson the two will, for the sake of brevity, be called the *preterit*.

973. The order of the tenses with relation to time may be aptly represented by a railroad diagram, in which the present is the central station:—



The roads to the left of the central station are assigned to the past, and those on the right to the future. The branch roads run to the dependent tenses, and the direction in which these lie shows whether they are anterior or subsequent to the tenses on which they depend. The various tenses have intercommunication only through existing lines: thus from the present the pluperfect can be reached only through the preterit, and the future-perfect only through the future.

974. A line may be drawn dividing the whole into two groups,—the past tenses on the left, and the perfect, present and the futures on the right. We may in this case call them collectively the *past* and *non-past* tenses. Very generally the dependent verbs must belong to the same group with the leading verb, and will change their tense when it changes:—

Le preguntaré si ha considerado el asunto.	I will ask him if he has considered the matter.
Le pregunté si había considerado el asunto.	I asked him if he had considered the matter.

REMARK.—In the first sentence, the leading verb being future, the dependent verb is perfect, because it relates to an action prior to the time of *asking*. When the asking is thrown into the past, the considering is thrown still farther back so as to retain its relative priority.

975. The influence of a governing verb is seen in the indicative as well as in the subjunctive mood. The infinitive and gerund, having no distinction of tense, are of the same time as the immediate governing verb. The past participle is necessarily anterior:—

Opinamos que la Comisión no excedió los límites de sus facultades proponiendo que se incluyese en el tratado la cláusula respecto á procedimientos judiciales.	We consider that the Committee did not overstep the limits of its functions in proposing that the clause relative to judicial procedure be included in the treaty.
Apresuraron su marcha, pero tomando más precauciones con el objeto de sorprender y no exponerse á ser sorprendidos.	They quickened their step, taking additional precautions, however, so as to surprise without exposing themselves to being surprised.
El agua estaba excesivamente profunda, pues al sondear cerca de la orilla no se encontró fondo con veinte brazas de sonda.	The water was extremely deep, for on sounding near the shore they did not touch bottom with twenty fathoms of line.

976. The past infinitive and gerund (formed respectively of the infinitive and gerund of *haber* and a past participle), however, always date one tense prior to the governing verb:—

Me alegro de verlo.	I am glad to see it.
Me alegro de haberlo visto.	I am glad to have seen it.
Wilkes, oyendo decir que d'Urville había descubierto la tierra el 19 de enero, pretendió haberla descubierto el día anterior.	Wilkes, hearing that d'Urville had discovered land on the 19th of January, claimed to have discovered it on the day preceding.
La borrasca duró treinta y seis horas; y habiéndonos librado muchas veces de estrellarnos contra las rocas, nos encontramos al fin á 60 millas á sotavento del cabo.	The squall lasted thirty-six hours; and having saved ourselves many times from being dashed to pieces on the rocks, we found ourselves finally 60 miles to leeward of the cape.



**977.** The perfect tense is dependent upon the present, the future-perfect upon the future, the pluperfect on the preterit, and the two conditionals on the preterit and pluperfect respectively. These secondary tenses have always an expressed or implied reference to their respective primary tenses. When the latter change, the dependent verbs, in preserving the same relation, change according to the following proportions:—

Present	:	Non-past	::	Preterit	:	Past.
Future	:	"	::	Future Conditional	:	"
Fut.-Perfect	:	"	::	Fut.-Perf. Conditional	:	"
Perfect	:	"	::	Pluperfect	:	"
Preterit	:	"	::	Pluperfect	:	"

**978.** A governing verb in a non-past tense may be followed by a dependent verb in any one of these tenses or in the preterit, if the meaning of the particular verb admits of such use:—

He sabido que la cosecha de naran- I have learned that the crop of  
jas será abundantísima. oranges will be most abundant.

He sabido que el Sr. tío de V. está I have learned that your uncle is ill.  
enfermo.

He sabido que el banco ha quebrado. I have learned that the bank has  
failed.

He sabido que ustedes llegaron sin I have learned that you reached your  
novedad á su destino. journey's end without mishap.

Es dudoso que logre convencerles It is doubtful whether he will suc-  
de la inocencia de su cliente. ceed in convincing them of his  
client's innocence.

Es dudoso que dicho libro se en- It is doubtful whether the book in  
cuentre en la Biblioteca Nacional. question is in the National Libra-  
ry.

Es dudoso que el buque se haya It is doubtful whether the ship has  
hecho á la mar todavía. put to sea yet.

Es dudoso que Parry llegase más It is doubtful whether Parry went  
allá de los 78° de latitud norte. beyond the 78th degree of north  
latitude.

(These examples might be varied and extended to great length.)

**979.** A past tense cannot govern a non-past tense. Hence when a leading verb is made past, all its dependent tenses become past. This is best shown by taking a sentence whose leading verb is present, and, in changing it to past or future, observing the consequent changes of the dependent verbs:—



Propongo que se manden imprimir las recomendaciones que hemos escuchado, como también las que se presentaren en lo sucesivo.

Propondré que se manden imprimir las recomendaciones que hemos escuchado, como también las que se presentaren en lo sucesivo.

Propuse que se mandaran imprimir las recomendaciones que habíamos escuchado, como también las que se presentaran en lo sucesivo.

I propose that we authorize the printing of the recommendations which we have heard, as well as of those which may be presented in future.

I shall propose that we authorize the printing of the recommendations which we have heard, as well as of those which may be presented in future.

I proposed that we should authorize the printing of the recommendations which we had heard, as well as of those which might be subsequently presented.

980. In cases where a leading verb in a non-past tense would be followed by a future subjunctive, a leading verb in a past tense takes a preterit subjunctive. In like manner a future-perfect subjunctive becomes pluperfect subjunctive:—

El general { mandaré manda ha mandado } que todos	The general { will order orders has ordered } that all
---	--

los que desertaren sean fusilados.

who desert be shot.

El general { mandó  
había mandado } que todos los que desertasen fuesen fusilados.

The general { ordered  
had ordered } that all who deserted should be shot.

El comandante declara que, obtenga ó no condiciones favorables del enemigo, si para mañana no hubiere llegado el socorro que se espera, será preciso capitular la plaza.

The commandant declares that, whether he obtain favorable terms from the enemy or not, if the expected reinforcements have not arrived by to-morrow, it will be necessary to surrender the position.

El comandante declaró que, obtuviese ó no condiciones favorables del enemigo, si para el día siguiente no hubiese llegado el socorro que se esperaba, sería preciso capitular la plaza.

The commandant declared that, whether he obtained favorable terms from the enemy or not, if the expected reinforcements did not arrive by the following day, it would be necessary to surrender the position.

981. The past tenses may govern a dependent present tense when it expresses something that is always true:—

El doctor Kane descubrió que la Groenlandia es una isla. Doctor Kane discovered that Greenland is an island.

El autor del Libro de Job sabía que la tierra está sin apoyo. The author of the Book of Job knew that the earth is unsupported.

982. The future conditional may be followed by a present or a perfect subjunctive expressing something represented as taking place at the time of speaking:—

Podría creerse que esté dormido, mas no lo está. One might think he is asleep, but he is not.

Se supondría por la manera como habla que tenga la oreja del príncipe, pero no es así. One would imagine from the way he talks that he has the ear of the prince, but it is not so.

Parecería que haya profundizado el asunto. It would seem that he has thoroughly investigated the subject.

983. After a leading verb in a past tense, a dependent subjunctive is in the present tense if its action applies to all time or extends beyond the time of speaking:—

Dios nos dió la razón para que distingamos lo bueno de lo malo. God gave us reason in order that we may distinguish good from evil.

Le escribí que esté aquí á las ocho. I wrote to him to be here at eight o'clock. (*It is not yet eight.*)

Le escribí que estuviese aquí á las ocho. I wrote to him to be here at eight o'clock. (*It is now eight or later.*)

El primer día se pasó sin incidentes que merezcan la pena de mencionarse. The first day was passed without any occurrences which are worth being mentioned.

984. So far as dependence of tenses is concerned, a relative clause is excluded, being in effect an independent sentence, having any tense required by the date of the action, irrespective of the tense of the leading verb in the sentence:—

Discutíamos si convendría comprar el cuadro que el artista había pintado, pintaba, está pintando, pintare, está para pintar, etc. We were discussing if it would be desirable to buy the picture which the artist had painted, was painting, is painting, may paint, is about to paint, etc.

No hay rango á que él no aspire, aspirare, haya aspirado, aspirase, hubiese aspirado, etc. There is no rank to which he does not aspire, will not aspire, has not aspired, would not aspire, would not have aspired, etc.

985. The leading time of a sentence may sometimes be indicated and the tenses of dependent verbs determined without a leading verb; still the time must be indicated in some way:—

Había mostrado evidentes indicios	He had shown evident marks of
de talento antes de su décimo-	genius before his fifteenth year.
quinto año.	

Para el fin del mes próximo habré	By the end of next month I shall have
terminado mi novela.	finished my novel.

#### TENSE-EQUIVALENTS.

986. A peculiarity of the subjunctive mood is that each tense, besides covering its own appropriate time, extends to subsequent time.

This will be made clear by taking sentences containing dependent verbs in the various tenses of the indicative, and changing the construction so as to require these verbs to become subjunctives. One tense of the subjunctive will be seen throughout to correspond to two of the indicative:—

1. Present and future indicative become alike present subjunctive:—

Es claro que se engaña.	It is clear that he is mistaken.
Es posible que se engañe.	It is possible that he is mistaken.
Estoy seguro de que vendrá.	I am sure he will come.
No estoy seguro de que venga.	I am not sure he will come.

2. Perfect and future-perfect indicative become perfect subjunctive:—

Afirma que V. lo ha escrito.	He declares you have written it.
Niega que V. lo haya escrito.	He denies that you have written it.
Es probable que para mañana se	It is probable that by morning the
habrá moderado la tempestad.	storm will have moderated.
Es dudoso que para mañana se	It is doubtful whether the storm will
haya moderado la tempestad.	have moderated by morning.

3. Preterit indicative and future conditional become preterit subjunctive:—

El gobernador estaba seguro de que	The governor was certain the news
las noticias eran exactas.	was authentic.
El gobernador dudaba que las noti-	The governor doubted whether the
cias fuesen exactas.	news was authentic.

Los periódicos aseguraban que al día siguiente llegarían las tropas.	The newspapers declared that on the next day the troops would arrive.
La guarnición no creía que al día siguiente llegasen las tropas.	The garrison did not believe that the troops would arrive on the next day.

4. Pluperfect indicative and future-perfect conditional become pluperfect subjunctive:—

Era evidente que por allí había pasado un ejército grande.	It was evident that a large army had passed by there.
Era dudoso que por allí hubiese pasado un ejército grande.	It was doubtful if a large army had passed by there.
Me dijo que para cuando yo volviese, su secretario habría copiado la carta.	He said that by the time I got back, his clerk would have copied the letter.
Dispuso que para cuando yo volviese, su secretario hubiese copiado la carta.	He arranged it so that by the time I got back, his clerk would have copied the letter.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE CONTRASTED WITH THE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

987. It may be seen from the foregoing lessons that the subjunctive depends essentially upon two principles; viz.:—

1. It depends upon a preceding verb (or equivalent word) which influences, or expresses an emotion or opinion about, the action of some person or thing *other than the subject of that preceding verb*.

2. The verb which is put in the subjunctive is dependent upon an idea implying *negation, doubt or future uncertainty*.

(The words italicized show the reason for the subjunctive.)

988. Under the first of these principles, the dependent verb is subjunctive when its subject is different from that of the principal verb; if the subject of both be the same, the dependent verb is *infinitive*.

Under the second principle, the dependent verb is subjunctive when it relates to something unknown, uncertain or future; when it relates to what is regarded by the speaker as certain, it is *indicative*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AND INFINITIVE.

989. Verbs of causation and influence do not apply to the action of the speaker. But verbs expressing a desire or prefer-



ence require a dependent verb to be subjunctive when its subject is different from that of the principal verb; when there is no change of subject, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Quiero borrar una palabra.	I want to rub out a word.
Quiero que se borre esta palabra.	I want this word to be rubbed out.
Preferimos ir al museo.	We prefer to go to the museum.
Preferimos que V. vaya al museo.	We prefer that you go to the museum.
Me permito llamar la atención de V. sobre lo que sigue.	I take the liberty of calling your attention to what follows.
Le permito que juegue en la huerta.	I permit him to play in the orchard.
Me propongo ir á las Bermudas.	I propose to go to the Bermudas.
Propongo que se trate de indagar su paradero.	I propose that some one endeavor to find out his abode.

990. So verbs expressing a feeling or emotion about an occurrence require the subjunctive when there is a change of subject, but the infinitive when there is no change:—

Siento no haberla visto.	I am sorry I did not see her.
Siento que V. no la viese.	I am sorry you did not see her.
Temen no llegar á tiempo.	They are afraid they will not arrive in time.
Temen que no lleguemos á tiempo.	They are afraid we will not arrive in time.
Celebro conocerla á Vd., señora.	I am pleased to make your acquaintance, Madam.
Celebro que V. tenga tan buen semblante.	I am pleased that you are looking so well.

991. After impersonal expressions, when the dependent verb also has no subject, it is infinitive; but if the dependent verb has a subject, it is equivalent to a change of subject, and the dependent verb is subjunctive:—

Es menester ganar la delantera.	It is necessary to gain the advance.
Es menester que los exploradores ganen la delantera.	It is necessary for the scouts to gain the advance.
Convendrá hacer la escalera menos empinada.	It will be advisable to make the staircase less steep.
Convendrá que V. haga la escalera menos empinada.	It will be advisable for you to make the staircase less steep.

Bastaría mandarle una tarjeta postal. It would be sufficient to send him a postal card.

Bastaría que ella le mandase una tarjeta postal. It would be sufficient for her to send him a postal card.

**992.** A verb denying or expressing doubt or disbelief about the action of another, requires the verb expressing that action to be subjunctive. If the negation or doubt applies to the action of the speaker, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Niego haber redactado aquel documento. I deny that I prepared that document.

Niego que mi secretario redactase aquel documento. I deny that my clerk prepared that document.

Dudo poder lograrlo. I doubt whether I will be able to accomplish it.

Dudo que nuestro agente pueda lograrlo. I doubt whether our agent will be able to accomplish it.

¿Cree V. tener los medios? Do you believe you have the means?

¿Cree V. que tenga los medios? Do you believe he has the means?

**993.** Clauses giving the purpose of an action require the subjunctive when there is a change of subject from the principal to the dependent verb. If the subject be the same for both, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Construyeron un puente para pasar el río. They made a bridge to cross the river on.

Construyeron un puente para que el ejército pasase el río. They made a bridge for the army to cross the river on.

He hecho esto á fin de obtener el ascenso. I have done this in order to obtain the promotion.

He hecho esto á fin de que V. obtenga el ascenso. I have done this in order that you may obtain the promotion.

No entablaré el negocio ahora, á menos de recibir informes sobre la condición actual de la mina. I shall not undertake the business unless I receive information of the present status of the mine.

No entablaré el negocio ahora, á menos de que mi agente me dé informes satisfactorios de la condición actual de la mina. I shall not undertake the business now unless my agent gives me a satisfactory account of the present status of the mine.

**REMARK.**—In such connections a mere result is expressed by the indicative:—

Ha encerrado todo el papel de modo que no puedo escribir la esquila. He has locked up all the paper so that I cannot write the note.

Encerró todo el papel de modo que yo no pudiese escribir la esquila. He locked up all the paper so that I should not be able to write the note.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.

**994.** Verbs expressing the action of the perceptive faculties, and those with the value of declaring or affirming, are followed by an indicative when used affirmatively, and by a subjunctive when employed negatively, interrogatively or in a condition:—

Preví que encontraría grandes obstáculos.	I foresaw that I would meet with great obstacles.
No preví que encontrara tan grandes obstáculos.	I did not foresee that I would meet with such great obstacles.
Se vé por sus ojos que ha llorado.	It is apparent from her eyes that she has been weeping.
¿ Se vé por sus ojos que haya llorado?	Is it apparent from her eyes that she has been weeping?
Me imagino que se atreverán á acometerle.	I imagine that they will dare to attack him.
Si V. se imagina que se atrevan á acometerle, yo mismo le escoltaré.	If you imagine that they will dare to attack him I myself will be his escort.
Estoy persuadido de que es su intención el engañarnos.	I am persuaded that it is his intention to deceive us.
No estoy persuadido de que sea su intención el engañarnos.	I am not persuaded that it is his intention to deceive us.

**995.** Nevertheless, when the leading verb is negative, interrogative or in a condition, the dependent verb is indicative if there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker or he wishes to make a fact prominent:—

Ese hombre es un ateísta ; no cree que existe un ser supremo. ( <i>An undoubted fact, hence the indicative.</i> )	That man is an atheist ; he does not believe that there exists a Supreme Being.
No cree que existan aparecidos.	He does not believe that there are ghosts.
¿ Cree V. que su hermano ha jurado matarle?	Do you believe your brother has sworn to kill you? ( <i>I.e.</i> he has sworn to kill you ; do you believe it ?)
¿ Cree V. que su hermano haya jurado matarle?	Do you believe [the absurd story that] your brother has sworn to kill you?
Si nuestro jefe averigua que V. ha hablado así, le reprenderá severamente.	If our chief learns that you have spoken thus, he will censure you severely.
Si averiguo que quiera venir, se lo mandaré decir á V.	If I learn that she wants to come, I will send you word.

996. Some verbs take the subjunctive or indicative according as their meaning directs something to be done or merely makes a statement:—

Diré al mozo que es un borrico.	I will tell the boy that he is an ass.
Diré al mozo que barra el suelo.	I will tell the boy to sweep the floor.
Mi hermano me ha escrito que no lo crea.	My brother has written me that he does not believe it.
Mi hermano me ha escrito que no lo crea.	My brother has written me not to believe it.
Isabel me hizo una mueca para indicarme que no tenía miedo.	Isabel made me a gesture to indicate to me that she was not afraid.
Isabel me hizo una mueca para indicarme que no tuviese miedo.	Isabel made me a gesture to indicate to me not to be afraid.

997. Impersonal expressions bearing upon the certainty, uncertainty, truth or probability of what follows, take the indicative in affirmative sentences, but the subjunctive when used negatively or interrogatively:—

Se sigue que es incorrecto.	It follows that it is incorrect.
¿Se sigue que sea incorrecto?	Does it follow that it is incorrect?
No se sigue que sea incorrecto.	It does not follow that it is incorrect.
Es cierto que volverá.	It is certain he will return.
¿Es cierto que vuelva?	Is it certain that he will return?
No es cierto que vuelva.	It is not certain he will return.

998. A dependent verb in a relative clause is subjunctive when it refers to what is unknown or uncertain; if it refers to what is regarded as certain, it is indicative:—

La próxima vez que la vea.	The next time I see her.
La primera vez que la ví.	The first time I saw her.
Quiero una criada que sepa guisar.	I want a servant who knows how to cook.
Tengo una criada que sabe guisar.	I have a servant who knows how to cook.
Haré lo que V. me diga.	I will do what you may say.
Haré lo que V. me dice.	I will do what you say.
El cuadro se colgará como V. sugiera.	The picture shall be hung as you may suggest.
El cuadro se colgará como V. sugiere.	The picture shall be hung as you suggest.



- Le mandaré á V. alguno de mis batidores que ~~conozca~~ el terreno. I will send you one of my scouts who knows the country.  
*(The man is yet to be found.)*
- Le mandaré á V. uno de mis batidores que conoce el terreno. I will send you one of my scouts who knows the country.  
*(The man is known.)*

999. The indefinite relative expressions made by the addition of *-quiera* to a relative may be followed by the indicative if referring to something known:—

- Dondequiera que iba María, el tal cordero no dejaba de seguirla. Everywhere that Mary went the lamb was sure to go.
- Los tigres se encontraban en gran número dondequiera que la llanura les ofrecía altas yerbas. The tigers were found in great numbers wherever the plain was covered with tall grass.
- Á cualquiera parte que he ido, le he encontrado siempre. Wherever I have gone, I have always met him.

1000. Conjunctional phrases after an idea implying negation or uncertainty are followed by the subjunctive. When the dependent verb expresses a fact or certainty, it is indicative:—

- Aunque me lo jura, no lo creo. Although he swears to it, I do not believe it.
- Aunque me lo jure, no lo creeré. Even if he swears to it, I will not believe it.
- Mientras que estaba en mi empleo era muy laborioso. While he was in my employ he was very industrious.
- Mientras quede en mi empleo será bien pagado. While he remains in my employ he shall be well paid.

1001. The temporal conjunctions already mentioned require the subjunctive when they relate to a subsequent time, since what is future is uncertain. They are followed by the indicative when referring to a past or present time:—

- Nos embarcaremos en cuanto nuestros equipajes estén á bordo. We shall go aboard as soon as our baggage is on board.
- Nos embarcamos en cuanto nuestros equipajes estuvieron á bordo. We went aboard as soon as our baggage was on board.
- Teníamos la intención de embarcarnos en cuanto nuestros equipajes estuviesen á bordo. We intended to go aboard as soon as our baggage was on board.

1002. Verbs expressing a doubt, or something unknown, take the indicative if the dependent verb is introduced by *si*, but the subjunctive if *que* is employed:—

No sé si vendrá.	I do not know whether he will come.
No sé que venga.	I do not know that he will come.
Dudo si lo obtendrá. }	I doubt whether he will obtain it.
Dudo que lo obtenga. }	

#### EXERCISE LI.

a) 1. Deseo que no vacilen Vds. en hacer preguntas sobre lo que no comprendan. 2. Si nunca vacilaren Vds. en hacer preguntas sobre lo que no comprendieren, tendrán más éxito en sus estudios. 3. Nos pidió el cate-drático que no vaciláramos en hacer preguntas sobre lo que no compren-diésemos, porque de ese modo habíamos de tener más éxito en nuestros estudios. 4. No es de extrañar que, con unas lluvias tan fuertes y abrumadoras, el río *Mississippi* haya inundado toda su cuenca. 5. No era de extrañar que, con unas lluvias tan fuertes y abrumadoras, el río *Mississippi* hubiera inundado toda su cuenca. 6. El que hubiere presenciado la in-undación de la cuenca del *Mississippi*, tendrá idea de la tremenda impetu-osidad de aquel caudaloso río. 7. Carlitos, no dispares por aquí los triqui-traques que te regaló tu tío, no sea que el ruido moleste á los vecinos. 8. Mandé á los niños que no disparasen por allí los triquitraques que les había regalado su tío, no fuera que el ruido molestase á los vecinos. 9. Tenga usted ánimo, puesto que estoy seguro de que todo saldrá como usted desea. 10. Le dije que tuviese ánimo, puesto que estaba seguro de que todo saldría como él deseaba. 11. No hay duda de que llegaríamos á nuestro destino antes de anoecer, si por desgracia no estuviere derrum-bado el puente. 12. Sería imposible que llegásemos á nuestro destino antes de anoecer, aun cuando el puente estuviera transitable. 13. Pronto la nieve sepultará las vistosas flores silvestres que ahora pueblan los prados. 14. Ya la nieve sepultaba las vistosas flores silvestres que en otros tiempos poblaban los prados. 15. Si hiciere viento propicio durante el resto de la travesía, avistaremos la tierra el sábado. 16. Dijo el capitán que si hiciere viento propicio durante el resto de la travesía, se avistaría la tierra al siguiente día. 17. No me creo capaz de nadar hasta la ribera opuesta, sea la corriente lo que fuere. 18. El marinero protestó que no se creía capaz de nadar hasta la ribera opuesta, fuese la corriente lo que fuera. 19. Compraré la casa que habita mi familia cuando tuviere los medios. 20. El inquilino de la casa prometió comprármela cuando tuviese los medios.

b) 1. My cousin in (de) *New Orleans* (f.) has written to me telling me not to come until the danger of yellow fever is over. 2. My cousin in (de) *Baltimore* has written to me saying that he will not start for *New Orleans* (f.) until the danger of yellow fever is over. 3. I was sure she would get angry if you told her that. 4. I am afraid she will get angry if you tell

her that. 5. I bet that hammock will break if so many of you sit in it at the same time. 6. I warned them that the hammock would break if so many of them were to sit in it at the same time. 7. Didn't I tell you not to buy that akirt? I was sure that the goods would shrink. 8. I wish I had not drunk that glass of beer; I believe I am hotter now than I was before. 9. Although I had instructed my valet not to wake me on any account before nine o'clock, the idiot called me at a quarter past seven to tell me that the house was on fire. 10. However much money a person has, he never thinks that he has enough. 11. The dew was so heavy that, before we had walked a hundred yards, our shoes were as wet as if we had waded through the brook. 12. I do not believe that the editor would have rejected your *article* if you had followed my advice and made it shorter. 13. *Experience* will teach you the *importance* of reflecting before you speak, and still more before you write; allow me to advise you never to write any thing which you would be afraid to see published in the daily papers. 14. No matter what may be the *special* qualifications that your nephew has for the position, it will be useless for him to apply for it unless he is sure of the support of several members of Congress. 15. *Evidently* you do not remember that you promised me that you would allow me the first vacancy that should occur in your office. 16. I do not believe that I ever made such a promise to anybody. 17. What do you want me to tell your brother when he comes? 18. Tell him to wait for me till I get back from the market; I am sure I shall be back within half an hour.

NOTES.—1. come: use *ir*, not *venir*, as the motion is away from the speaker. (When called, an English-speaking person says "I'm coming;" a Spaniard "*Voy*." is over = has passed.

5. at the same time, *d la ves*.

8. than I was before: do not render "I was."

11. our shoes were: see § 484.

483!

12. and made: repeat the *auxiliary*.

## LESSON LII.

### THE MODAL AUXILIARIES *DEBER* AND *PODER*.

#### *DEBER*.

1003. *Deber* is conjugated regularly throughout. Its primary meaning, which it still has before a noun, is *to owe*:—

Llegó á mi noticia que mi hijo I learned that my son owed large  
debía grandes sumas de dinero. sums of money.

Debe su puesto al favor de Vd. He owes his position to your favor.



**1004.** The infinitive is used as a noun meaning *duty* :—

Es nuestro deber ayudarlos.

It is our duty to aid them.

Ha hecho su deber.

He has done his duty.

**1005.** Placed as an auxiliary verb before an infinitive, *deber* has the two following values :—

1. It expresses the ideas of duty, obligation or undefined necessity which are represented in English by the defective verbals *ought*, *should*, *must* :—

V. debe contestar á su esuela.

You ought to reply to his note.

Este hecho debe tomarse en consideración.

This fact should be taken into consideration.

Debo ir al correo ahora.

I must go to the post-office now.

2. It expresses an inference from circumstantial evidence, represented in English by one acceptation of *must* :—

Debe haber viajado mucho.

He must have travelled a great deal.

Esa gente debe tener ideas muy extrañas acerca de nuestro país

Those people must have very strange ideas about our country.

REMARK.—With the latter meaning it may be connected with the following infinitive by the preposition *de* ; but generally it governs the infinitive directly without a preposition :—

Su casa debe de estar, me parece, en la manzana vecina.

It seems to me their house must be in the next block.

**1006.** When *deber*, expressing an inference or conjecture, is preceded by a negative, it is rendered in English by *cannot* or *ought not*, and not *must not* :—

Este bosque no debe ser interminable ; debemos hallar salida en esta dirección.

This forest cannot be endless ; we must surely find an outlet in this direction.

No debe ser difícil hallar un hombre tal como V. lo necesita.

It ought not to be difficult to find a man such as you need.

**1007.** As the manner in which *deber* is to be rendered in English varies considerably according as it expresses a past, present or future obligation or probability, the various moods and tenses will be illustrated separately.

☞ As the English words *ought*, *should* and *must*, which correspond most nearly to *deber*, are practically invariable, the inflectional forms of *deber* can, in cases of difficulty, be more adequately rendered in English by some expression equally capable of inflection, as *to be obliged to*.



## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1008. Expresses an obligation or probability existing at the present time:—

## OBLIGATION.

La luna <i>debe</i> salir pronto.	The moon ought to be up soon.
Mi hija <i>debe</i> quedarse en Marsella hasta fines del mes de Mayo.	My daughter is to stay in Marseilles till the latter part of May.
Consideraciones de esta especie <i>deben</i> inspirar á los americanos el más vivo presentimiento de la grandeza que les espera.	Considerations of this character should inspire Americans with the liveliest expectations of future grandeur.

## INFERENCE.

<i>Debe</i> haber algún medio de lograrlo.	There must be some way of attaining it.
V. <i>debe</i> estar cansada después de andar tanto.	You must be tired after walking so much.
La extensión de este contrabando <i>no debe</i> ser desconocida á las autoridades fiscales.	The extent of this smuggling cannot be unknown to the fiscal authorities.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1009. Expresses an obligation or a probability which existed during the past:—

## OBLIGATION.

<i>Debían</i> encontrarnos aquí.	They were to meet us here.
Allí se detuvieron para examinar el sitio donde <i>debía</i> construirse el puente.	They halted there to examine the location where the bridge should be built.
Como la cantera estaba expuesta directamente al sol levante, <i>no debía</i> tardar en estar alumbrada por las luces del alba.	As the quarry was exposed directly to the rising sun, it ought soon to be illuminated by the light of the dawn.
Al pasar cerca del farol lo rompió, y todo quedó sumergido en una oscuridad profunda que <i>debía</i> favorecer su fuga.	In passing by the lantern he broke it, and everything was thrown into profound darkness calculated to favor his flight.

## INFERENCE.

Según ese viejo retrato la abuela de V. <i>debía</i> ser hermosa á la edad de veinte años.	According to that old portrait, your grandmother must have been a beauty at the age of twenty.
--	--

El médico era un buen hombre, pero no debía de saber gran cosa.	The doctor was a good man, but it was not likely that he knew much.
Adelantóse con precaución hacia popa para llegar bajo la toldilla del bergantín, donde debía estar la Santa Bárbara.	He advanced carefully towards the stern so as to get under the quarter-deck of the brigantine, where the powder magazine was likely to be.

## AORIST INDICATIVE.

1010. Expresses a past obligation to perform a momentary act, or an inference that something momentary took place:—

## OBLIGATION.

Ocho días después debimos salir para Londres.	Eight days afterwards we were obliged to start for London.
La criada robaba tanto que debí despedirla.	The servant-girl stole so much that I had to discharge her.
Me sentí tan mareado que debí subir sobre cubierta.	I felt so sea-sick that I had to go up on deck.

## INFERENCE.

Imaginé yo que la fuga de las jóvenes debió de ser causada por la indiscreción de D. Nemesio.	I imagined that the flight of the young ladies must have been caused by the indiscretion of Don Nemesio.
Dña. Juana debió de observar mi turbación, porque al levantar los ojos ví una sonrisa en sus labios.	Dofia Juana must have noticed my confusion, for on raising my eyes I saw a smile on her lips.

REMARK.—The line separating the aorist from the imperfect of *deber* is so fine that it is not consistently maintained. In cases of doubt, the preference is for the imperfect.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE.

1011. Expresses an obligation of the past whose effects extend to the present time, or a conjecture about the past judging from evidence of the present time:—

## OBLIGATION.

He debido salir inmediatamente para Londres.	I have been obliged to start at once for London.
He debido sufrir muchos desaires.	I have had to bear many affronts.
Mi General, nuestra ala izquierda ha debido abandonar las obras avanzadas.	General, our left wing has been obliged to abandon the outworks.

## INFERENCE.

<b>Esa señora ha debido ser muy guapa</b> durante su juventud.	That lady must have been very pretty during her youth ( <i>judging from what she is now</i> ).
<b>Ha debido haber un desbordamiento</b> considerable en este punto.	There must have been a considerable overflow at this point ( <i>judging from appearances</i> ).

1012. When any tense of *deber* is followed by a past infinitive (i.e. a past participle preceded by the infinitive *haber*) it expresses merely a conjecture about the past. It cannot express duty because no one can be under obligation *now* to have done anything yesterday:—

<b>El tren debe haber llegado.</b>	The train must have arrived.
<b>Mi hermano creyó que el tren debía haber llegado.</b>	My brother thought the train must have arrived.
<b>La baja de los fondos públicos por aquella época en las principales plazas de Europa debía haberle afectado seriamente.</b>	The fall in state stocks about that time in the principal markets of Europe must have affected him seriously.

1013. The perfect, when used to express a conjecture, nearly approaches in meaning the present followed by a past infinitive. The former construction is, however, more definite:—

<b>Ha debido hacer fortuna en California.</b>	He must have made a fortune in California ( <i>judging from some evidence at hand</i> ).
<b>Debe haber hecho fortuna en California.</b>	He must have made a fortune in California ( <i>merely a conjecture</i> ).
<b>No veo ni gente ni equipajes en el andén; el tren ha debido salir.</b>	I see no people or baggage on the platform; the train must have gone.
<b>Ya son las once; nuestros amigos deben haber llegado á su destino.</b>	It is now eleven; our friends must have arrived at their destination.

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1014. Expresses an obligation that had existed prior to some past event; it does not express a conjecture:—

<b>El marinero había debido renunciar á aquel trabajo que le crispaba horroresamente los nervios.</b>	The sailor had been obliged to give up that work, which made him terribly nervous.
---	--

Al principio ~~habían debido~~ creer que Paco, sorprendido en la garita, había sido muerto.

At first they had been obliged to think that Frank, surprised in the sentry-box, had been killed.

1015. An inference under the same circumstances would be expressed by the imperfect followed by a past infinitive:—

Los fugitivos ~~debían haber sido~~ vistos, porque una lluvia de balas fué dirigida contra la balsa.

The fugitives must have been seen, for a shower of balls was aimed at the raft.

¡Leña en las cimas de los Andes? Cosa imposible.—Puesto que los que construyeron esta choza pusieron en ella una chimenea, ~~debían haber hallado~~ combustible por aquí.

Firewood on the summit of the Andes? Impossible.—Since those who built this cabin put a fireplace in it, they must have found fuel around here somewhere.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1016. Expresses a duty or obligation which will exist in the future, or an inference about a future occurrence:—

#### OBLIGATION.

Deberemos levantarnos muy de mañana.

We shall have to get up very early in the morning.

Se resuelve: Que se nombre una comisión de siete delegados, la cual ~~deberá~~ examinar y presentar informe acerca de . . . .

Resolved, That a committee of seven delegates be appointed, whose duty it shall be to consider and report upon the subject of . . . .

#### INFERENCE.

El proyecto de V. presenta muchas y grandes ventajas, pero los gastos ~~deberán~~ ser inmensos.

Your scheme offers many and great advantages, but the expense will necessarily be enormous.

Sería imposible ahora pasar este canal; pero ~~deberá~~ comenzar el refluo dentro de poco, y teniendo paciencia, en la marea baja será probable<sup>1</sup> que encontremos un paso vadeable.

It would be impossible at present to cross this channel; but the tide will most likely turn within a little, and if we have patience we will probably find a ford at low water.

<sup>1</sup> It would be equally proper to say en la marea baja deberemos encontrar un paso vadeable, were it not that it would allow less variety of expression, in view of the preceding *deberá*.



## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1017. Expresses a future obligation to have done something. It does not express an inference:—

Antes de que los socorros puedan llegar, habremos debido rendirnos por falta de víveres.	Before the reinforcements can arrive, we will have been obliged to sur- render for want of provisions.
--	--

1018. An inference under the same circumstances would be expressed by the future of *deber* followed by a past infinitive:—

La familia deberá haberse acostado antes de que nosotros lleguemos.	The family will probably have gone to bed before we get there.
--	---

## FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

1019. The value of the future conditional of *deber* is further subdivided according as it expresses a future dating from a past time, or stands in the apodosis of a condition of implied negation.

As a past future:—

## OBLIGATION.

Nos previno que deberíamos levanta- rnos muy de mañana.	He informed us that we would have to get up very early in the morning.
Colocóse á un criado en la puerta de la galería, quien debería im- pedir la entrada á las personas que no tuvieran billetes.	A servant was stationed at the door of the gallery, whose duty it was to prevent persons from entering who had not tickets.

## INFERENCE.

Conocimos que el choque debería de ser espantoso.	We knew that the shock would most likely be frightful.
Según los nuevos síntomas que se habían presentado, la calentura no debería durar sino dos días más.	According to the new symptoms which had appeared, the fever ought not to last more than two days longer.
Los isleños creían que de esta manera haciendo fuego en los piratas desde cuatro puntos dife- rentes, deberían éstos pensar que la isla estaba bien defendida.	The islanders thought that by firing on the pirates in this manner from four different points, the latter would naturally think that the island was well defended.

1020. In conditions of implied negation the meaning of probability disappears and only that of obligation remains:—

Si aquella casa quebrase, deberíamos suspender el crédito.	If that house were to fail we should have to suspend payments.
Si llegara su señor tío esta noche, debería V. cederle su aposento.	If your uncle should arrive to-night you would have to give up your room to him.
Si aconteciera que V. descubriese el autor del robo, debería avisar á las autoridades civiles.	If you should happen to discover the author of the robbery, it would be your duty to inform the authorities.

1021. The most frequent use of the future conditional of *deber* is when the protasis is wanting; in which case it expresses an obligation to perform something that is not being done,—or the contrary:—

V. debería manejarse mejor con su hermano.	You ought to behave better towards your brother.
No deberíamos permanecer más tiempo aquí.	We ought not to stay here any longer.
V. debería contentarse con esta suma, porque excede al valor del trabajo.	You ought to be content with this sum, for it is more than the work is worth.


#### FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL

1022. Is employed only to express a past obligation to perform something which was not done,—or the contrary:—

V. habría debido mostrarle más indulgencia.	You ought to have shown him more indulgence.
V. no habría debido romper el sello de una carta dirigida á mí.	You ought not to have broken the seal of a letter addressed to me.
Confieso que no habría debido hacerlo.	I confess I ought not to have done so.

1023. The future conditional followed by a past infinitive expresses a present obligation to have performed, in the past, something which was not done,—or the contrary,—and is scarcely distinguishable from the preceding usage. It is of rare occurrence:—

V. debería haberse preparado para este examen.	You ought to have prepared yourself for this examination.
--	---

 The values of the remaining forms of *deber* follow in such regular sequence those which have been given, that their usages will be sufficiently apparent from the examples without further explanation.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

## OBLIGATION.

Siento que deba V. marcharse tan temprano.	I am sorry you have to go so early.
Este libro no contiene nada que la arita, hija de V. no deba leer.	This book contains nothing which your daughter should not read.

INFERENCE.<sup>1</sup>

No creo que el error de observación deba pasar de unos cuantos segundos en latitud.	I do not think the error of observation ought to exceed a few seconds in latitude.
No me imagino que ella deba divertirse mucho allí.	I don't imagine she can be very much entertained there.

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

## OBLIGATION.

Es lástima que haya debido V. sacrificar su biblioteca.	It is a pity you have had to sacrifice your library.
---	--

## INFERENCE.

No creo que él haya debido aprender gran cosa en el colegio.	I don't believe it likely that he has learned much at college.
--	--

## IMPERFECT AND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE.

## OBLIGATION.

El coronel mandó destruir el puente, de modo que los enemigos, al llegar, debieran hacer un rodeo.	The colonel ordered the bridge to be destroyed, so that the enemy, on coming up, should be obliged to make a detour.
Si hubiéramos sabido que V. debiese venir, habríamos mandado preparar una comida mejor.	If we had known that you were coming we should have had a better dinner prepared.

## INFERENCE.

No creo que debiese de entender lo que yo dije, porque siguió leyendo.	I do not believe he could have heard what I said, for he kept on reading.
No nos imaginábamos que el ruido debiera significar nada.	We did not suppose that the noise meant anything.

---

<sup>1</sup> The value of *deber* as expressing an inference is of extremely limited application in the dependent tenses.

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE AS SUBSTITUTE FOR FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

Si el camino estuviese en buen estado, debiera V. recorrer la distancia en tres horas. If the road were in good condition you ought to walk the distance in three hours.

## FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Dejo este punto para los que debieren resolver los enigmas políticos de lo futuro. I leave this point for those whose duty it may be to solve the political riddles of the future.

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Mira de sentirse que hubiera debido renunciar á su proyecto. It was to be regretted that he had been obliged to give up his project.

## INFINITIVE.

Había cedido á sus deseos sin deber hacerlo. He had yielded to his impulses when he ought not to have done so.  
 Creemos deber añadir que la sociedad que frecuenta estas termas y la belleza de las perspectivas que se presentan á la vista, igualan por completo á las ventajas sanitarias que acaban de exponerse. We think we ought to add that the society and the scenery at these springs are fully equal to the sanitary advantages which have just been set forth.

## PAST INFINITIVE.

Siento haber debido despedirlo. I am sorry to have been obliged to discharge him.  
 Don Ramón se jacta de no haber debido nunca reconocer una derrota. Mr. Ramón boasts that he has never been obliged to acknowledge a defeat.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

(When not employed with *haber* in the formation of the compound tenses, the past participle is used only as an adjective with the original value of *due*.)

Para espantar á los cuervos, se pusieron maniqués grotescos, debidos á la imaginación fantástica de Ruiz. To frighten the crows, grotesque effigies were erected, due to the fantastic imagination of Ruiz.

## GERUND.

Debiendo leer esta noche un ensayo delante de la Sociedad Filológica, suplico á V. se sirva recibir mis. As I am to read an essay before the Philological Society this evening I beg you to accept my regrets with



excusas con la expresión de mi agradecimiento por su atento convite.

the expression of my thanks for your kind invitation.

#### COMPOUND GERUND.

Habiendo debido enviar últimamente una remesa á mi hijo, quien está haciendo sus estudios en Europa, siento deber manifestar que no tengo disponible la suma que V. dice.

Having been lately obliged to send a remittance to my son who is studying in Europe, I am sorry to have to say that I have not at my disposal the sum you name.

#### 1024. CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES OF DEBER.

Necesitábamos tiempo para juzgar lo que debíamos hacer en aquel asunto.

We needed time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.

Necesitamos tiempo para juzgar lo que debemos hacer en este asunto.

We need time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.

Necesitaremos tiempo para juzgar lo que deberemos hacer en este asunto.

We will need time to consider what we will need to do in the matter.

En este caso necesitaríamos tiempo para juzgar lo que deberíamos hacer en este asunto.

In that case we would need time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.

En ese caso habríamos necesitado tiempo para juzgar lo que hubiéramos debido hacer en aquel asunto.

In that case we should have needed time to consider what it would have been our duty to do in the matter.

#### PODER.

~~§ 1025~~ Poder is irregular in its inflection; its complete conjugation is given in § 1093.

1025. The infinitive is used as a noun meaning *power*:—

<sup>1</sup> Mechanical *power* is *fuerza*; *power* in mathematics and when it relates to the authority of states, is *potencia*:—

Fuerza motriz; fuerza de tracción; fuerza hidráulica; fuerza propulsora. Motive power; power of traction, water power; propelling power.

Elevar un guarismo á la décima potencia. To raise a figure to the tenth power.

Estas dos potencias han celebrado un tratado de reciprocidad. These two powers have ratified a treaty of reciprocity.

Las potencias del cielo; las potencias de las tinieblas. The powers on high; the powers of darkness.

Un torno mecánico; un telar mecánico; una prensa mecánica de rotación. A power lathe; a power loom; a rotary power press.

Nos tiene en su poder.

El poder ejecutivo.

El fuego tiene el poder de calcinar  
todos los cuerpos.

He has us in his power.

The executive power.

Fire has the power of calcining all  
bodies.

1026. Poder is a true auxiliary, as it always applies either to a following infinitive, or relates to a foregoing infinitive which does not need to be repeated. It has the following values:—

1. It corresponds to the English *be able*, and expresses physical power or ability, generally represented in English by the defective verb *can*:—

El niño ya puede andar.

Puedo probar que es verdad.

The child can walk now.

I can prove that it is true.

2. By extension of the above, it is used like the English *may* to express permissibility:—

Se puede también emplear la gasa Iodoform gauze may also be em-  
yodoformizada. ployed.

Vds. pueden salir si quieren.

You may go out if you want to.

3. It expresses the liability of an occurrence, or the possibility of the truth of a statement or supposition which the speaker is not prepared to deny; this value is represented in English by *may*, in interrogations by *can*:—

El niño puede caerse.

Puede ser verdad.

¿Puede ser posible que haya descu-  
bierto la clave?

The child may fall.

It may be true.

Can it be possible that he has dis-  
covered the clue?

1027. For the sake of clearness, usage 3 may be distinguished from the others by employing the third person singular of *poder* impersonally before *ser*; the whole being followed by the subjunctive of the dependent verb:—

Puede hacerse.

Puede ser que se haga.

It can be done.

It may be done.

1028. Moreover when *poder* is used in a negation, the negative *no* is placed before *poder* when it denotes power or ability; but when mere liability or possibility is intended, the negative is restricted to the infinitive by being placed between it and *poder*:—

El espejo no puede caerse.

El espejo puede no caerse.

The mirror cannot fall.

The mirror may not fall.

1029. Poder may be used before an indefinite pronoun, expressed or understood, without relating to a previous infinitive, in which case *hacer, to do*, is understood:—

Contra tales adversarios no podemos nada. Against such adversaries we can [do] nothing.

No puede con él. I cannot [do anything] with him.

Estoy agotado ; no puede más. I am exhausted ; I can [do] no more.

As the English auxiliaries *may, might, and can, could*, which correspond most nearly to *poder*, are fragmentary and have but two forms respectively, the full inflectional forms of *poder* can often be better rendered by some expression equally capable of inflection, as *to be able to, to be possible that*.

1030. In the exposition of *deber* the student has seen the effects of the several moods and tenses in expressing an obligation or inference. Their varying effects upon *poder*, in expressing ability or possibility, are precisely similar, and will be sufficiently apparent from the examples without need of further explanation. The various moods and tenses will be treated separately (as was done with *deber*):—

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

[*Puedo, puedes, puede ; podemos, podéis, pueden.*]

Aquellos batidores son gente escogida, hombres disciplinados y diestros, con los cuales se puede contar con seguridad. Those scouts are picked men, expert and well disciplined, who may be safely counted on.

Los buques de mayor calado pueden atracarse á los muelles. Vessels of the largest draught can come alongside of the wharves.

No se puede repicar y andar en la procesión. One cannot be in two places at once.

La exportación anual de productos naturales del Istmo puede estimarse en \$1,200,000. The annual export of natural products from the Isthmus may be estimated at \$1,200,000.

#### FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.

La escuadra todavía no puede haber doblado el cabo de Hornos. The fleet cannot yet have doubled Cape Horn.

La escuadra puede no haber doblado todavía el cabo de Hornos. The fleet may not have doubled Cape Horn yet.

Las corrientes pueden haberlos llevado más lejos de la costa. The currents may have carried them farther from the coast.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Ha, has, ha podido ; hemos, habéis, han podido.*]

La escuadra todavía no ha podido doblar el cabo de Hornos.	The fleet has not yet been able to double Cape Horn.
Le hemos buscado por todas partes, pero no le hemos podido encontrar.	We have looked for him everywhere, but have not been able to find him.
Los jurados no han podido ponerse de acuerdo.	The jurors have not been able to agree.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Podía, podías, podía ; podíamos, podíais, podían.*]

Se preguntaba lo que podía haber de cierto en la noticia, dada la poca confianza que debía tenerse en aquél que la refería.	It was asked what certainty there could be in the report, considering the little confidence to which the narrator was entitled.
Escuchaban ávidamente todos los rumores que podían llegar del exterior.	They listened eagerly to every noise that could reach them from without.
Su proyecto era atrevido, pero podía tener buen éxito gracias á la oscuridad de la noche.	Their project was daring, but might succeed through favor of the darkness of the night.

FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.<sup>1</sup>

Claro era que ninguno de ellos podía haber sido visto, porque ellos mismos no distinguían el buque al través de la niebla.	It was clear that none of them could have been seen, for they themselves did not distinguish the ship through the fog.
El torpedero no podía haberse alejado mucho, por rápida que hubiera sido su marcha.	The torpedo boat could not have got very far away, however great might have been her speed.

## AORIST INDICATIVE.

[*Pudo, pudiste, pudo ; pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron.*]

Cada cual trató de acomodarse para dormir, como mejor pudo.	Each one tried to accommodate himself, as best he could, to sleep.
Hablaban los piratas en alta voz, refiriendo sus proezas mientras bebían desmesuradamente, y Ramírez pudo oír la siguiente relación : . . .	The pirates were talking in a loud voice, recounting their exploits, while they kept on drinking immoderately, and Ramírez was able to hear the following recital : . . .

<sup>1</sup> *Poder* followed by a past infinitive, expresses not power but probability or possibility. It never corresponds to "be able," but to "may" or "can."



Carlos no pudo contener un suspiro de satisfacción al oír aquella respuesta. Charles could not restrain a sigh of relief on hearing this answer.

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Había, habías, había podido ; habíamos, habíais, habían podido.*]

Los pasajeros habían hecho todo lo que habían podido para apagar las llamas. The passengers had done all they could to extinguish the flames.

Los toros habían tratado de romper la empalizada, pero no habían podido lograrlo. The bulls had tried to break through the palisade, but had not been able to effect it.

Estos síntomas no habían podido escapar á la penetración del médico. These symptoms had not been able to escape the doctor's penetration.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

[*Podré, podrás, podrá ; podremos, podréis, podrán.*]

Desde la cima de aquel cerro podremos obtener, sin duda, un conocimiento exacto de la isla. From the top of that ridge we shall no doubt be able to obtain a correct understanding of the island.

Aquel oficial podrá sin duda proporcionar á V. todos los informes que V. desee. That officer will doubtless be able to furnish you with all the information which you may desire.

## FUTURE-PERFECT INDICATIVE.

Para entonces habré podido enterarme de todos los pormenores de la fábrica. By that time I shall have been able to acquaint myself with all the details of the manufacture.

Estoy seguro de que antes del viernes próximo la comisión habré podido terminar sus presupuestos. I am positive that the committee will have been able to complete its estimates before next Friday.

## FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

[*Podría, podrías, podría ; podríamos, podríais, podrían.*]

## AS A PAST FUTURE

Se acordó pasar la noche en la choza abandonada, la cual podría calentarse suficientemente por medio de la provisión de leña que se hallaba en un rincón. It was agreed to pass the night in the deserted hut, which could be sufficiently warmed with the stock of wood that was found in one corner.

Como les separaba media milla de la costa, á tal distancia sus tiros podrían no ser muy dañosos. As they were half a mile from the shore, their shots might not be very dangerous at that distance.

## IN CONDITIONS.

- ¿ Podría V., sin inconveniente, prestarme cinco pesos ? Could you without inconvenience lend me five dollars ?
- Si la brisa no se dirigiese ahora hacia la catarata, creo que podríamos oír el susurro á esta distancia. If the breeze were not now blowing towards the falls, I think we would be able to hear their roaring at this distance.
- Si estuviéramos en uno de los balcones, podríamos ver mejor los fuegos artificiales. If we were in one of the balconies we could see the fireworks better.

## FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.

- Por otra parte, los indígenas podrían haber dificultado mucho la operación proyectada. Besides, the natives might have seriously interfered with the projected operation.
- La joven se quitó la boina, y al sacudir la cabeza á uno y otro lado, comenzaron á desprenderse y esparcirse sobre sus hombros unos cabellos que podrían los del sol haberles tenido envidia. The young girl took off her tam-o'shanter, and shaking her head from side to side, her hair, which the sun's rays might have envied, began to escape and fall down over her shoulders.

## FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL.

[*Habría, habrías, habría podido ; habríamos, habríais, habrían podido.*]

- El centinela habría podido ver que le espían y hasta que era seguido de cerca, pero no habría podido oír los pasos del indio, porque éste, con los pies descalzos, más bien se deslizaba que andaba, y ningún ruido daba indicio de su presencia. The sentinel might have seen that he was watched and even that he was closely followed, but he could not have heard the Indian's footsteps, for the latter, with bare feet, glided rather than walked, and no sound betrayed his presence.
- Los marineros fácilmente habrían podido matar con sus remos algunos de los pingüinos, pero no pensaron en entregarse á aquella matanza inútil. The sailors could easily have killed some of the penguins with their oars, but they did not think of devoting themselves to that useless slaughter.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pueda, puedas, pueda ; podamos, podáis, puedan.*]

- Es dudoso que podamos escaparnos de la tormenta, puesto que las tempestades de los trópicos se declaran con rapidez asombrosa. It is doubtful whether we can escape the storm, for these tropical tornadoes come up with frightful rapidity.

Es imposible predecir lo que se pueda hacer antes de hacer una tentativa.	It is impossible to say what can be done before making an attempt.
¡Ojalá podamos salvar la vida de nuestro compañero!	God grant we may be able to save the life of our companion!
Esta isla no ofrece ni siquiera un puerto que pueda servir de abrigo á buques de calado medio.	This island does not even offer a port which can accommodate vessels of medium draught.

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

[*Haya, hayas, haya podido; hayamos, hayáis, hayan podido.*]

Es de sentir que el asunto no se haya podido arreglar amigablemente.	It is to be regretted that it has not been possible to arrange the matter amicably.
No creo que ninguno de estos tunantes haya podido irse lejos.	I do not believe any of the rascals can have gone far.
Nos alegramos de que haya podido probar su inocencia.	We are delighted that he has been able to prove his innocence.

## IMPERFECT AND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pudiera, pudieras, pudiera; pudiéramos, pudierais, pudieran.*]

[*Pudiese, pudieses, pudiese; pudiésemos, pudieseis, pudiesen.*]

La embarcación fué amarrada sólidamente para que el reflujo no pudiera llevársela.	The boat was firmly moored in order that the ebb-tide might not carry it away.
Tomó un puñado de yerbas secas, y lo puso bajo los leños y astillas dispuestas de manera que el aire pudiese circular fácilmente é inflamarse con rapidez la leña seca.	He took a handful of dry grass and put it under the sticks and twigs arranged so that the air would be able to circulate freely and rapidly ignite the dry wood.
El perro, antes de que su amo pudiese contenerlo, se precipitó sobre la garganta del desconocido.	The dog, before his master could restrain him, leaped at the stranger's throat.

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE FOR FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

Si V. me permitiese emplear el éter, pudiera extraer esta muela sin ocasionarle dolor.	If you would permit me to employ ether I could extract this tooth without causing you pain.
En efecto él supo tan bien fingir la necesidad de su ausencia que nadie pudiera entender que era fingida.	In fact he knew so well how to feign the necessity for his absence that no one could know that it was a pretense.

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Hubiera, hubieras, hubiera podido ; hubiéramos, hubierais, hubieran podido.*]  
 [*Hubiese, hubieses, hubiese podido ; hubiésemos, hubieseis, hubiesen podido.*]

No creo que hubiesen podido evadirse por este lado del muro.	I do not think they could have escaped on this side of the wall.
Si hubiese podido llegar adonde dejé á mi caballo, no me hallaría en el apuro en que me veo.	If I had been able to reach the place where I left my horse, I should not find myself in the fix I am in now.

## AS SUBSTITUTE FOR FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL.

Sin embargo, hubiera podido hacerme el más dichoso de los mortales si me hubiera dirigido una sola palabra cariñosa.	Still, she could have made me the happiest of mortals if she had addressed to me a single affectionate word
La corriente marchaba hacia alta mar, y aun cuando hubiera querido, no hubiera podido volver á tierra.	The current was running out to the open sea, and even if I had wanted to I could not have returned to land.

## FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pudiere, pudieres, pudiere ; pudiéremos, pudierais, pudieren.*]

El que pudiere recojer y almacenar para su uso los recursos no utilizados de la Naturaleza, que los mandare trabajar en su taller, calentar y alumbrar su domicilio y fertilizar sus campos, alcanzará una soberanía desconocida para los Césares y más singular que todas las fábulas del Oriente.	Whoever shall be able to gather and store for his use the waste resources of Nature, who will make them work in his shop, warm and light his dwelling and fertilize his fields, will acquire a sovereignty unknown to the Cæsars and stranger than all the fables of the East.
---	--

## INFINITIVE.

[*Poder.*]

Al mismo tiempo se dispusieron las municiones y las armas para poder utilizarlas en el primer instante en caso de una agresión repentina.	At the same time the arms and ammunition were disposed so as to be available on the first instant in case of a sudden attack.
Sí señor, debo ; pero deber no es poder.	Yes, Sir, I ought ; but ought is not can.
Quisiera poder hacerlo.	I should like to be able to do it.
Espero poder hacerlo mañana.	I hope to be able to do it to-morrow..



## PAST INFINITIVE.

[*Haber podido.*]

Ellos se quedarán sorprendidos de haber podido pensar un solo instante en semejante proyecto.	They will be astonished at having ever been able to think for a single instant of such a scheme.
Napoleón se vanagloriaba de haber podido dictar á la Europa la paz ó la guerra á su albedrío.	Napoleon boasted of having been able to dictate peace or war to Europe at his will.

## GERUND.

[*Pudiendo.*]

Desde esta altura la mirada, pudiendo extenderse sin límites, abarca todos los detalles de un panorama que se extiende por un horizonte de sesenta millas.	The sight being able, from this elevation, to extend itself without limits, takes in all the details of a panorama stretching out to a horizon sixty miles distant.
Me refugié entre las niaras, y pudiendo más la fatiga que el hambre, me dormí.	I crept in among the hay-ricks, and fatigue being more potent than hunger, I fell asleep.

## COMPOUND GERUND.

[*Habiendo podido.*]

No comprendía el buen sacerdote los malos corazones, no habiendo podido nunca despedir á un desgraciado sin darle socorro.	The good priest did not understand hard hearts, never having been able himself to turn away an unfortunate without aiding him.
--	--

## NO PODER MENOS DE.

1031. This expression, in its various moods and tenses, may be rendered by some form of the English *cannot help*, followed by a present participle, or *cannot fail to*, followed by an infinitive:—

No puede menos de temer un desenlace funesto.	I cannot help fearing a disastrous outcome.
No podrá menos de querernos, porque seremos buenos para él.	He cannot fail to like us, for we will be good to him.
No podían menos de sentir grande ansiedad por saber la importancia del nuevo incidente.	They could not help feeling great anxiety to know the importance of the new occurrence.
No pudo menos de sentir una especie de secreta satisfacción.	He could not help feeling a kind of secret satisfaction.
No pudieran menos de advertir que algo extraordinario acontecía.	They could not help noticing that something unusual was going on.

## EXERCISE LII.

a) 1. No creo poder acompañarle á Vd. á la playa esta tarde, pues me temo se desate en breve una tempestad. 2. Por más amenazador que esté el cielo, no tema Vd. al tiempo; puede ser que no pase de un chaparrón, que servirá beneficiosamente para asentar el polvo de los caminos, que ya se va haciendo insoportable, y al mismo tiempo para refrescar la atmósfera. 3. Si hubiésemos podido prever que las propiedades de este barrio habían de menguar tanto en valor, no hubiéramos mandado construir esta hilera de casas. 4. Vds. hubieran debido pensar en eso antes de haber entrado en el negocio. 5. Si tuviese yo una llave inglesa, podría fácilmente destornillar esta tuerca. 6. "Creo poder hacerlo fácilmente con una horquilla de cabello, si me lo permitiésemos," me dijo mi cara mitad. 7. El deber me obliga á no aceptar remuneración alguna de una persona á quien debo tantas atenciones; pues Vd. ha podido ayudarme en muchas ocasiones de un modo que jamás deberé olvidar. 8. Cuando la marea baja, los barcos de mucho calado no pueden hacerse á la mar. 9. Sólo podrá usted lograr que el paquete llegue con seguridad á su poder, enviándoselo bajo pliego certificado. 10. Deberíamos cifrar todos nuestros esfuerzos en terminar la obra á tiempo. 11. Dejemos este punto para los que debieren resolver los enigmas políticos de lo venidero. 12. La embarcación fué amarrada sólidamente para que el reflujo no pudiese llevársela. 13. No puede concebirse hasta dónde promete llegar el desarrollo de la *electricidad*. 14. Quisiera poder encontrar mi navaja; no he podido afeitarme desde hace dos días. 15. Puede haberse caído por detrás del tocador de Vd. 16. Si pudiese cobrar todo el dinero que se me debe, no debería vivir con tanta parsimonia. 17. Ruégole á Vd. me dispense por haberle hecho esperar tanto; hubiera debido llegar más antes, pero no he podido deshacerme de algunas visitas, que no debía desairar. 18. ¡Vaya! hubiera debido comprender que había de llover si saliese yo sin paraguas. 19. Entramos en esta botica; puede ser que el aguacero sea corto.

20.

Quando esté yo en la agonía,  
 Siéntate á mi cabecera,  
 Fija tu vista en la mía,  
 Y así puede que no muera.

*Copla popular.*

b) 1. A few evenings ago *Don Felipe* was talking to me about the ghost that he had seen in one of the windows of the old mill; and I told him that nothing could make me believe in ghosts. 2. Last night I could not get to sleep, and I went out into (á) the garden to get the fresh air, when I suddenly met a tall *figure* draped in a white robe, and which was walking slowly, uttering *sepulchral* moans. 3. I grabbed the would-be ghost by the collar and I gave him a caning with my walking-stick that he will not be likely to forget for some time. 4. You ought not to have beaten him; you would have been kinder if you had called him by his name and made fun of him.

5. Not at all; suppose that he had been seen by one of those persons who are afraid of ghosts; no one could *calculate* what might have been the *consequences* of his foolish masquerading. 6. Whatever may be the outcome, we cannot turn back now; after having embarked in the enterprise, we must do our best to bring (*llevar*) it to a successful conclusion. 7. Somebody must have hidden the tongs, for I cannot find them anywhere. 8. You must be blind; there they are, on the left-hand side of the hearth, behind the screen. 9. This is not my hat; I must have taken your brother's. 10. Forty years ago I could lift a barrel of flour with ease; but now I could not roll one (*lo*) any *distance* without getting out of breath. 11. Joe, this inkstand ought to be emptied and washed; the ink is so thick and full of dust that I cannot use it any more. 12. You ought to be able to finish this translation within an hour; it cannot be very difficult. 13. I wish I could afford to buy a new carpet; this one is so worn-out that everybody who comes to see me must notice it. 14. You ought not to be ashamed of being poor; poverty is a disagreeable *condition* but not an unworthy one. 15. You must bear in mind that *Don Marcelo* lives more than two miles from here; so that whether (*ya sea que*) he takes the *electric* car, or a public automobile, he cannot get here much before eight o'clock. 16. I do not believe there can be anything more interesting than a little child who is beginning to learn to talk. 17. I wish to Heaven I could find those scoundrels! they cannot be far from here. 18. I could not help smiling on hearing that reply, *apparently* so ingenuous, which seemed to say so much and really said nothing.

19. "Of all sad words of tongue or pen,  
The saddest are these, 'It might have been.'"

- NOTES. 4. if you had called . . . made fun: use *gerunda*.  
6. our best, *los mayores esfuerzos*.  
to a successful conclusion, *a feliz término*.  
8. on the left-hand side, *a la izquierda*.  
13. everybody, *todas las personas*; put object and verb before subject.  
14. an unworthy one = unworthy.  
15. lives more than, *vive a más de*.  
public, *de alquiler* = for hire.  
16. anything: see § 525. 6  
18. on hearing, *al oír*.  
19. of tongue or pen, *ya escritas ya pronunciadas*.

## PART IV.

### SYNOPSIS OF FORMS.

#### CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERBS. :

**1032.** Spanish verbs are inflected by means of a series of terminations, expressing distinctions of person, number, tense and mood, added to a basis, called the *stem*, which embodies the meaning of the verb.

a. We have seen that all Spanish verbs in the infinitive end in *-ar*, *-er* or *-ir*, and are classified into conjugations according to these terminations :—

- ar* : 1st conjugation ;
- er* : 2nd conjugation ;
- ir* : 3rd conjugation.

b. By removing the infinitive ending of a verb we obtain the *stem*.

c. In regular verbs, the terminations of the future indicative and conditional are added to the full infinitive ; all other terminations are applied to the unchanged *stem*.

**1033.** With the exception of the infinitive and those forms constructed upon it, the inflections of the second and third conjugations differ only in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the indicative present and in the 2nd person singular of the imperative. The two conjugations are combined in the following table when their terminations are identical :—

#### INFLECTIONAL ENDINGS OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS.

INFINITIVE.			PAST PARTICIPLE.		GERUND.	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2 and 3.	1.	2 and 3.
<i>-ar</i> ,	<i>-er</i> ,	<i>-ir</i> .	<i>-ado</i> ,	<i>-ido</i> .	<i>-ando</i> ,	<i>-iendo</i> .



INDICATIVE MOOD.			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.			PRESENT.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2 and 3.	
-o,	-o,	-o.	-e,	-a.	
-as,	-es,	-es.	-es,	-as.	
-a,	-e,	-e.	-e,	-a.	
-amos,	-emos,	-imos.	-emos,	-amos.	
-áis,	-éis,	-ís.	-éis,	-áis.	
-an,	-en,	-en.	-en,	-an.	
IMPERFECT.			IMPERFECT.		
1.	2 and 3.		1.	2 and 3.	
-aba,	-ía.		-ara,	-iera.	
-abas,	-ías.		-aras,	-ieras.	
-aba,	-ía.		-ara,	-iera.	
-ábamos,	-íamos.		-áramos,	-iéramos.	
-abais,	-íais.		-arais,	-ierais.	
-aban,	-ían.		-aran,	-ieran.	
AORIST.			AORIST.		
1.	2 and 3.		1.	2 and 3.	
-é,	-í.		-ase,	-iese.	
-aste,	-iste.		-ases,	-ieses.	
-ó,	-ió.		-ase,	-iese.	
-amos,	-imos.		-ásemos,	-iésemos.	
-asteis,	-isteis.		-aseis,	-iescis.	
-aron,	-ieron.		-asen,	-iesen.	
FUTURE.			FUTURE.		
1, 2 and 3.			1.	2 and 3.	
-é.			-are,	-iere.	
-ás.			-ares,	-ieres.	
-á.			-are,	-iere.	
-emos.			-áremos,	-iéremos.	
-éis.			-areis,	-iereis.	
-án.			-aren,	-ieren.	
CONDITIONAL FUTURE.			IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
1, 2 and 3.			1.	2.	3.
-ía.			—	—	—
-ías.			-a,	-e,	-e.
-ía.			—	—	—
-íamos.			—	—	—
-íais.			-ad,	-ed,	-id.
-ían.			—	—	—

1034. These terminations are applied as follows to the three model verbs, like which all other regular verbs are to be inflected, according to conjugation:—

## PARADIGMS OF THE THREE MODEL VERBS.

	1ST CONJUGATION.	2ND CONJUGATION.	3RD CONJUGATION.
Infinitive. Gerund. P. Participle.	compr-ar. compr-ando. compr-ado.	vend-er. vend-iendo. vend-ido.	viv-ir. viv-iendo. viv-ido.
	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.	compr-o, compr-as, compr-a, compr-amos, compr-áis, compr-an.	vend-o, vend-es, vend-e, vend-emos, vend-éis, vend-en.	viv-o, viv-es, viv-e, viv-imos, viv-ís, viv-en.
IMPERFECT.	compr-aba, compr-abas, compr-aba, compr-ábamos, compr-abais, compr-aban.	vend-ía, vend-ías, vend-ía, vend-íamos, vend-fais, vend-ían.	viv-ía, viv-ías, viv-ía, viv-íamos, viv-íais, viv-ían.
AORIST.	compr-é, compr-aste, compr-ó, compr-amos, compr-asteis, compr-arón.	vend-í, vend-iste, vend-ió, vend-imos, vend-isteis, vend-ieron.	viv-í, viv-iste, viv-ió, viv-imos, viv-isteis, viv-ieron.
FUTURE.	compr-ar-é, compr-ar-ás, compr-ar-á, compr-ar-emos, compr-ar-éis, compr-ar-án.	vend-er-é, vend-er-ás, vend-er-á, vend-er-emos, vend-er-éis, vend-er-án.	viv-ir-é, viv-ir-ás, viv-ir-á, viv-ir-emos, viv-ir-éis, viv-ir-án.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.	compr-e, compr-es, compr-e, compr-emos, compr-éis, compr-en.	vend-a, vend-as, vend-a, vend-amos, vend-áis, vend-an.	viv-a, viv-as, viv-a, viv-amos, viv-áis, viv-an.

IMPERFECT.	compr-ara, compr-aras, compr-ara, compr-áramos, compr-arais, compr-aran.	vend-iera, vend-ieras, vend-iera, vend-iéramos, vend-ierais, vend-ieran.	viv-iera, viv-ieras, viv-iera, viv-iéramos, viv-ierais, viv-ieran.
AORIST.	compr-ase, compr-ases, compr-ase, compr-ásemos, compr-aseis, compr-asen.	vend-iese, vend-ieses, vend-iese, vend-iésemos, vend-ieseis, vend-iesen.	viv-iese, viv-ieses, viv-iese, viv-iésemos, viv-ieseis, viv-iesen.
FUTURE.	compr-are, compr-ares, compr-are, compr-áremos, compr-areis, compr-aren.	vend-iere, vend-ieres, vend-iere, vend-iéremos, vend-iereis, vend-ieren.	viv-iere, viv-ieres, viv-iere, viv-iéremos, viv-iereis, viv-ieren.
	CONDITIONAL MOOD.		
FUTURE.	compr-ar-ía, compr-ar-ías, compr-ar-ía, compr-ar-íamos, compr-ar-íais, compr-ar-ían.	vend-er-ía, vend-er-ías, vend-er-ía, vend-er-íamos, vend-er-íais, vend-er-ían.	viv-ir-ía, viv-ir-ías, viv-ir-ía, viv-ir-íamos, viv-ir-íais, viv-ir-ían.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.	compr-a, compr-ad.	vend-e, vend-ed.	viv-e, viv-id.

1035. When an inflectional ending is unlike any other, or when it is not likely to be mistaken for another of the same form, it may serve the purpose of a personal pronoun as subject; in that case the personal pronoun is dispensed with unless required by way of emphasis or contrast.

1035. It will be seen by the paradigms that the endings of the first and third persons singular are alike in the conditional, the imperfect indicative and all the tenses of the subjunctive; with these the pronoun-subject is to be expressed when ambiguity would result from its omission:—

IMPERFECT INDIC.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compraba, vendía, vivía.
PRESENT SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compre, venda, viva.
IMPERFECT SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprara, vendiera, viviera.
AORIST SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprase, vendiese, viviese.
FUTURE SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprare, vendiere, viviere.
FUTURE COND'L:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compraría, vendería, viviría.

These persons became identical by the dropping of the original Latin terminations *m* and *t*, since no Spanish words end in these letters. It may be interesting to note the simplification undergone by the Latin inflectional endings, as exemplified by the imperfect indicative:—

LATIN.	SPANISH.
ama-ba- <i>m</i> ,	ama-ba-
ama-ba- <i>s</i> ,	ama-ba- <i>s</i> ,
ama-ba- <i>t</i> ,	ama-ba-
ama-ba- <i>mus</i> ,	amá-ba- <i>mos</i> ,
ama-ba- <i>tis</i> ,	ama-ba- <i>is</i> ,
ama-ba- <i>nt</i> ,	ama-ba- <i>n-</i> .

1036. The first person plural is the same in the present and aorist indicative of the first and third conjugations, and is only distinguishable by the context:—

Compramos, vendemos, vivimos.	We buy, we sell, we live.
Compramos, vendimos, vivimos.	We bought, we sold, we lived.

1037. The singular of the imperative is identical with the third person singular of the indicative present in all three conjugations:—

Compra, vende, vive.	Buy, sell, live.
Compra, vende, vive.	Buys, sells, lives.

1038. All other forms that are composed of the same letters are distinguished by the accent both in pronunciation and writing:—

Compre,	compré.	Compro,	compró.
Comprare,	compraré.	Comprara,	compraré.
Compraras,	comprarás.	Comprareis,	compraréis.
Compráremos,	compraremos.	Compraran,	comprarán.

REMARK.—There are no such pairs of homonymous forms in the second and third conjugations.

In popular language the aorist terminations of the second person—*aste*, *asteis* and *iste*, *isteis*—are very generally assimilated into the forms *astes* and *istes*:—

Tú, or vos	{ comprastes, vendistes, vivistes, }	for	{ tú compraste, or vos comprasteis; tú vendiste, " vos vendisteis; tú viviste, " vos vivisteis.
------------	--	-----	---



In familiar style the *d* of the past participle of the first conjugation is very generally omitted in pronunciation ; it is pronounced in careful speaking :—

He *comprao, negao, tomao*, for *he comprado, negado, tomado*.

#### ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1039. An irregular verb is, strictly speaking, one which in its inflection varies in any way from that of the model verb of its conjugation. If this definition were rigorously adhered to, the number of irregular verbs in Spanish would be very large ; but in the greater number the deviations are so uniform as to constitute a kind of secondary regularity, and may be grouped into several general classes.

1040. The majority of the deviations are purely orthographic, and should not be considered as irregularities, as they are mere changes of spelling for the sake of preserving the sound of the stem as pronounced in the infinitive.

In stamping a verb as irregular, we are not to consider the letters with which it is written, but the sound it has when pronounced. As the spoken word is the original of which the written is but a copy, there is no irregularity in changes of letters necessary to maintain uniformity of sound.

1041. The inflectional endings of verbs begin only with *a, o, e* and *i* (or its substitute *y*). Therefore, since certain consonantal sounds are variously expressed according to the vowel which follows (§ 37), the following changes are necessary for uniformity in pronunciation :—

*a.* Verbs whose infinitives end in *-car* and *-gar*, change the *c* and *g* to *qu* and *gu* respectively before *e*:—

#### *Tocar*, to touch.

AOR. INDIC.	toqué	tocaste	tocó	tocamos	tocasteis	tocaron.
PRÉS. SUBJ.	toque	toques	toque	toquemos	toquéis	toquen.

#### *Pagar*, to pay.

AOR. INDIC.	pagué	pagaste	pagó	pagamos	pagasteis	pagaron.
PRÉS. SUBJ.	pague	pagues	pague	paguemos	paguéis	paguen.

*b.* Verbs in *-guar* require the diæresis over the *u* (*gu*) before *e*, in order to prevent it from becoming mute:—

**Averiguar, to ascertain.**

AOR. IND. averigüé averiguaste averiguó -guamos -guasteis -guara  
 PR. SUBJ. averigüe averigües averigüe -güemos -güéis -güera

c. Verbs in -ger and -gir change the g into j before o and a:—

**Escoger, to choose, select.**

PR. INDIC. escojo escoges escoge escogemos escogéis escogea  
 PR. SUBJ. escoja escojas escoja escojamos escojáis escojan

d. Verbs in -guir and -quir discard the orthographic u and revert to simple g and c before o and a:—

**Distinguir, to distinguish.**

PR. IND. distingo distingues distingue -tinguimos -tinguís -tingua  
 PR. SJ. distinga distingas distinga -tingamos -tingáis -tingan

**Delinquir, to transgress.**

PR. IND. delinco delinques delinque delinquimos delinquís delinqua  
 PR. SUBJ. delinca delincas delinca delincamos delincáis delinca

REMARK.—There are no infinitives in -guer, -quer; and delinquir is the only example in -quir.

e. Verbs ending in -cer or -cir preceded by a consonant, change the c to z before o and a:—

**Vencer, to conquer.**

PR. INDIC. venzo vences vence vencemos vencéis vencea  
 PR. SUBJ. venza venzas venza vencamos vencáis venzan

**Esparrar, to scatter.**

PR. IND. esparzo esparces esparce esparcemos esparcéis esparcen  
 PR. SUBJ. esparza esparzas esparza esparzamos esparzáis esparzan

f. Verbs ending in -cer or -cir preceded by a vowel, interpolate z before the c, when followed by o or a:—

**Crecer, to grow.**

PR. INDIC. crezco creces crece crecemos crecéis crecen  
 PR. SUBJ. crezca crezcas crezca crezcamos crezcáis crezcan

**Lucir, to shine.**

PR. INDIC. luzco luces luce lucimos lucís lucea  
 PR. SUBJ. luzca luzcas luzca luzcamos luzcáis luzcan

REMARK.—The latter change is not to preserve the value of the consonant, but is required for ideas of harmony. It must therefore

**Delinquir, to transgress.**

<b>GERUND.</b>	delinquiendo.					
<b>AOR. IND.</b>	delinquí	-quiste	-quió	-quimos	-quistéis	-quieron.
<b>IMP. SUBJ.</b>	delinquiera	-quieras	-quiera	-quiéramos	-quierais	-quieran.
<b>AOR. SUBJ.</b>	delinquiese	-quieses	-quiese	-quiésemos	-quieséis	-quiesen.
<b>FUT. SUBJ.</b>	delinquiere	-quieres	-quiere	-quiéremos	-quiereis	-quieren.

1045. When the stem of a verb of the first conjugation ends in a weak vowel, this vowel bears the written accent before unaccented terminations beginning with a vowel:—

**Variar, to vary.**

<b>PRES. INDIC.</b>	varío	varías	varía	variarnos	variáis	varían.
<b>PRES. SUBJ.</b>	varie	varies	varie	variemos	variéis	varien.
<b>IMPERAT.</b>	—	varía	—	—	variad	—

**Continuar, to continue.**

<b>PR. IND.</b>	continúo	continúas	continúa	continuamos	continuáis	continúan.
<b>PR. SUBJ.</b>	continúa	continúes	continúe	continuemos	continuéis	continúen.
<b>IMPERAT.</b>	—	continúa	—	—	continúad	—

NOTE.—There are a few exceptions to this last class, and also some verbs regarding which authorities are not agreed.

**CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.**

**[35]** In irregular verbs, with a few isolated exceptions, the irregularity is entirely in the stem, which may change several times in the conjugation.

1046. Irregular verbs, primarily, are inflected on three stems—present, aorist and future—as bases. The groups of tenses formed from these stems are as follows:—

**I. PRESENT STEM:**

Infinitive,  
Past Participle,  
Gerund (*usually*),  
Present Indicative,  
Imperfect Indicative,  
Present Subjunctive,  
Imperative.

**II. AORIST STEM:**

Gerund (*occasionally*),  
Aorist Indicative,  
Imperfect Subjunctive,  
Aorist Subjunctive,  
Future Subjunctive.

**III. FUTURE STEM:**

Future Indicative,  
Future Conditional.

REMARK.—Some one or two of these may be regular. The present and aorist stems may contain internal irregularities which depend upon the form or accent of the termination. The future stem, when irregular, retains the same irregularity throughout.

## PRESENT STEM.

1047. The present stem of irregular verbs is never irregular throughout; its regular and irregular forms are distributed according to the following conditions:—

1. The stem is either accented or unaccented ;
2. The termination begins either with a strong vowel (a, o) or a weak vowel (e, i).

1048. One of each of these alternatives is present in every verbal form. The combinations are therefore limited to four; viz.:—

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| a. accented stem, weak termination ;     | e.g.: dices, sienten. |
| b. accented stem, strong termination ;   | " digo, sientas.      |
| c. unaccented stem, weak termination ;   | " decimos, sentís.    |
| d. unaccented stem, strong termination ; | " digáis, sintamos.   |

1049. The unaccented stem followed by a weak termination is always regular; any or all of the remaining combinations may be irregular.

NOTE.—The form of the stem that is peculiar to any of the above combinations is always the same wherever that combination occurs.

## IRREGULARITIES.

1050. The irregularities of the present stem are methods of strengthening it either when accented or followed by a strong vowel. This strengthening is effected by adding to or changing either the stem vowel, stem consonant, or both:—

PERDER :	piérd-a,	piérd-as,	piérd-a,	perd-amos,	perd-áis,	piérd-an.
VESTIR :	vist-a,	vist-as,	vist-a,	vist-amos,	vist-áis,	vist-an.
SALIR :	salg-a,	salg-as,	salg-a,	salg-amos,	salg-áis,	salg-an.
ASIR :	asg-a,	asg-as,	asg-a,	asg-amos,	asg-áis,	asg-an.
CAER :	caig-a,	caig-as,	caig-a,	caig-amos,	caig-áis,	caig-an.
HACER :	hag-a,	hag-as,	hag-a,	hag-amos,	hag-áis,	hag-an.

1051. Four verbs add y to the original o of the first person singular of the present indicative:—

SER,	to be :	ancient so,	modern soy,	I am.
ESTAR,	to be :	" está,	" estoy,	I am.
DAR,	to give :	" do,	" doy,	I give.
IR,	to go :	" va,	" voy,	I go.



1052. The imperfect indicative is irregular only in the three following verbs:—

IR :	iba,	ibas,	iba,	íbamos,	ibais,	iban.
VER :	veía,	veías,	veía,	veíamos,	veíais,	veían.
SER :	era,	eras,	era,	éramos,	erais,	eran.

#### AORIST STEM.

1053. The aorist stem may be irregular throughout or only in part.

1054. When only *partially* irregular, it is irregular only when followed by a diphthong:—

SENTIR :	senti,	sentiste,	sintió,	sentimos,	sentisteis,	sintieron.
DORMIR :	dormí,	dormiste,	dormió,	dormimos,	dormisteis,	durmieron.

1055. The verbs whose aorist stems are irregular *throughout* are seventeen in number, which have retained more or less distinctly the form of the Latin irregular perfects as they must have been popularly used in the Iberian peninsula.

a. Fourteen of these, in addition to the stem irregularity, agree in having the first and third persons singular of the aorist indicative end in *e* and *o* respectively, the accent falling on the penultimate instead of the final vowel:—

HABER.					
hube,	hub-iste,	hubo,	hub-imos,	hub-isteis,	hub-ieron.
TENER.					
tuve,	tuv-iste,	tuvo,	tuv-imos,	tuv-isteis,	tuv-ieron.
ESTAR.					
estuve,	estuv-iste,	estuvo,	estuv-imos,	estuv-isteis,	estuv-ieron.
ANDAR.					
anduve,	anduv-iste,	anduvo,	anduv-imos,	anduv-isteis,	anduv-ieron.
CABER.					
cupe,	cup-iste,	cupo,	cup-imos,	cup-isteis,	cup-ieron.
SABER.					
supe,	sup-iste,	supo,	sup-imos,	sup-isteis,	sup-ieron.
PODER.					
pude,	pud-iste,	pudo,	pud-imos,	pud-isteis,	pud-ieron.
PONER.					
puse,	pus-iste,	puso,	pus-imos,	pus-isteis,	pus-ieron.
VENIR.					
vine,	vin-iste,	vino,	vin-imos,	vin-isteis,	vin-ieron.
HACER.					
hice,	hic-iste,	hizo,	hic-imos,	hic-isteis,	hic-ieron.

<b>QUERER.</b>					
quise,	quis-iste,	quiso,	quis-imos,	quis-isteis,	quis-ieron.
<b>DECIR.</b>					
dije,	dij-isto,	dijo,	dij-imos,	dij-isteis,	dij-eron. <sup>1</sup>
<b>TRAER.</b>					
traje,	traj-iste,	trajo,	traj-imos,	traj-isteis,	traj-eron. <sup>1</sup>

Compounds in -DUCIR.

deduje, deduj-iste, dedujo, deduj-imos, deduj-isteis, deduj-eron.<sup>1</sup>

*b.* In the remaining three, *ser* and *ir* form the aorist upon the Latin root *fu*, while *dar*, though of the first conjugation, takes the terminations of the second conjugation in all the tenses made from the aorist stem:—

SER :	fu-í,	fu-iste,	fué,	fu-imos,	fu-isteis,	fu-eron.
IR :	fu-í,	fu-iste,	fué,	fu-imos,	fu-isteis,	fu-eron.
DAR :	d-í,	d-iste,	d-íó,	d-imos,	d-isteis,	d-ieron.

#### FUTURE STEM.

1056. Five verbs form the future stem by eliding the vowel of the infinitive ending; five others replace this vowel by a phonetic *d*:—

CABER :	cabr-é,	cabr-ía.	PONER :	pondr-é,	pondr-ía.
HABER :	habr-é,	habr-ía.	SALIR :	saldr-é,	saldr-ía.
PODER :	podr-é,	podr-ía.	TENER :	tendr-é,	tendr-ía.
QUERER :	querr-é,	querr-ía.	VALER :	valdr-é,	valdr-ía.
SABER :	sabr-é,	sabr-ía.	VENIR :	vendr-é,	vendr-ía.

1057. Finally, two verbs form the future stem from older infinitives which are now obsolete:—

DECIR ( <i>dir</i> ) :	dir-é,	dir-ía.	HACER ( <i>far</i> ) :	har-é,	har-ía.
------------------------	--------	---------	------------------------	--------	---------

#### PARADIGMS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

1058. The addition of a prefix to a verb rarely alters the manner of its inflection; hence derivatives will be understood to be inflected like their primitives. The few exceptions to this will be noted in each case.

1059. It usually happens that the irregularities of a given verb are also found in other verbs which present the same conditions. Consequently most of the irregular verbs may be

---

<sup>1</sup> The *i* of the termination is omitted after *j*. Cf. § 1043 *b*.

grouped into classes, a representative verb then sufficing to exhibit the irregularities of its class.

a. The majority of irregular verbs belong to two or three classes so regular in their departure from the normal models as to present no difficulty. The other classes, although more irregular, are smaller; and finally a few are so erratic that they have to be treated singly.

b. There are irregularities affecting only the past participle that will be treated of separately.

**137** In the following paradigms the irregularities are printed in bold-faced type:—

#### FIRST CLASS.

**1060.** This is composed of verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations only. Their irregularity consists in the expansion of the stem vowels *e* and *o* into *ie* and *ue* respectively whenever they receive the accent in pronunciation. When the accent is transferred to another syllable, the original vowel resumes its place.

This irregularity occurs only in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd persons singular and the 3rd person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and in the 2nd person singular of the imperative, for in all other forms of the verbs the accent falls on the inflectional ending and not on the stem.

#### *E* STEM. FIRST CONJUGATION.

**1061.** *Cerrar, cerrando, cerrado, to shut.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented, cierr; unaccented, cerr.*

PRES. IND.	cierr-o	cierr-as	cierr-a	cerr-amos	cerr-áis	cierr-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	cierr-e	cierr-es	cierr-e	cerr-emos	cerr-éis	cierr-en.
IMPERAT.	—	cierr-a	—	—	cerr-ad	—
IMPERF.	cerr-aba	-abas	-aba	-ábamos	-abais	-aban.

#### AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	cerr-é	-aste	-ó	-amos	-asteis	-aron.
IMP. SUBJ.	cerr-ara	-aras	-ara	-áramos	-arais	-aran.
AOR. SUBJ.	cerr-ase	-ases	-ase	-ásemos	-aseis	-asen.
FUT. SUBJ.	cerr-are	-ares	-are	-áremos	-areis	-aren.

#### FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	cerrar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	cerrar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## E STEM. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1062. *Perder*, perdiendo, perdido, *to lose*.PRESENT STEM : *accented*, pierd ; *unaccented*, perd.

PRES. IND.	pierd-o	pierd-es	pierd-e	perd-emos	perd-éis	pierd-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	pierd-a	pierd-as	pierd-a	perd-amos	perd-áis	pierd-an.
IMPERAT.	—	pierd-e	—	—	perd-id	—
IMPERF.	perd-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	perd-f	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	perd-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	perd-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	perd-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéramos	-iereis	-ieren.

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	perder-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	perder-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## O STEM. FIRST CONJUGATION.

1063. *Costar*, costando, costado, *to cost*.PRESENT STEM : *accented*, cuest ; *unaccented*, cost.

PRES. IND.	cuest-o	cuest-as	cuest-a	cost-amos	cost-áis	cuest-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	cuest-e	cuest-es	cuest-e	cost-emos	cost-éis	cuest-en.
IMPERAT.	—	cuest-a	—	—	cost-ad	—.
IMPERF.	cost-aba	-abas	-aba	-ábamos	-abais	-aban.

## AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	cost-é	-aste	-ó	-amos	-asteis	-aron.
IMP. SUBJ.	cost-ara	-aras	-ara	-áramos	-arais	-aran.
AOR. SUBJ.	cost-ase	-ases	-ase	-ásemos	-aseis	-asen.
FUT. SUBJ.	cost-are	-ares	-are	-áremos	-areis	-aren.

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	costar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	costar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## O STEM. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1064. *Morder*, mordiendo, mordido, *to bite*.PRESENT STEM : *accented*, muerd ; *unaccented*, mord.

PRES. IND.	muerd-o	muerd-es	muerd-e	mord-emos	mord-éis	muerd-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	muerd-a	muerd-as	muerd-a	mord-amos	mord-áis	muerd-an.
IMPERAT.	—	muerd-e	—	—	mord-ed	—.
IMPERF.	mord-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.



## AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	mord-f	-iste	-ió	-imos	-istéis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	mord-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	mord-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	mord-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

## FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	morder-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	morder-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-iais	-ían.

## EUPHONIC AND ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1065. When the expansion of *e* takes place at the beginning of a verb, the initial *i* of the diphthong *ie* is changed to *y*, since no word may begin with *ie* (§ 10):—

*Errar, errando, errado, to err.*

PRES. IND.	yerro	yerras	yerra	erramos	erráis	yerran.
PRES. SUBJ.	yerre	yerres	yerre	erremos	erréis	yerren.
IMPERAT.	—	yerra	—	—	errad	—.

erraba; erré, errara, errase, errare; erraré, erraría.

1066. In like manner when the stem vowel *o* is initial, the resultant diphthong *ue* is preceded by *h*, since no word may begin with *ue* (§ 10):—

*Olar, oliendo, olido, to emit a smell.*

PRES. IND.	huelo	huelas	huele	olemos	oléis	huelen.
PRES. SUBJ.	huela	huelas	huela	olamos	oláis	huelan.
IMPERAT.	—	huele	—	—	oled	—.

olía; olí, oliera, oliese, oliere; oleré, olería.

1067. *Desosar, to bone (remove the bones from meat), and desovar, to spawn*, introduce an *h* before the diphthong *ue*, as they are derived from *hueso, bone*, and *huevo, egg*, respectively:—

*Desosar, desosando, desosado, to bone.*

PR. IND.	deshueso	deshuesas	deshuesa	-osamos	-osáis	deshuesan.
PR. SUBJ.	deshuese	deshueses	deshuese	-osemos	-oséis	deshuesen.
IMPERAT.	—	deshuesa	—	—	-osad	—.

desosaba; desosé, desosara, -ase, -are; desosaré, -ía.

1068. The orthographic changes laid down in § 1041 are also to be observed:—

**Plegar**, plegando, plegado, *to fold*.

PRES. IND.	pliego	pliegas	pliega	plegamos	plegáis	pliegan.
PRES. SUBJ.	pliegue	pliegues	pliegue	pleguemos	pleguéis	plieguen.
IMPERAT.	—	pliega	—	—	plegad	—.
		plegaba ;	plegué,	plegara,	-ase, -are ;	plegaré, -ía.

**Empezar**, empezando, empezado, *to begin*.

PR. IND.	empiezo	empiezas	empieza	-pezamos	-pezáis	-piezan.
PR. SUBJ.	empiece	empieces	empiece	-pecemos	-pecéis	-piecen.
IMPERAT.	—	empieza	—	—	-pezad	—.
		empezaba ;	empecé,	empezara,	-ase, -are ;	empezaré, -ía.

**Trocar**, trocando, trocado, *to barter*.

PRES. IND.	trueco	truecas	trueca	trocamos	trocáis	truecan.
PRES. SUBJ.	trueque	trueques	trueque	troquemos	troquéis	truequen.
IMPERAT.	—	trueca	—	—	trocad	—.
		trocaba ;	troqué,	trocara,	-ase, -are ;	trocáré, -ía.

**Colgar**, colgando, colgado, *to hang*.

PRES. IND.	cuelgo	cuelgas	cuelga	colgamos	colgáis	cuelgan.
PRES. SUBJ.	cuelgue	cuelgues	cuelgue	colguemos	colguéis	cuelguen.
IMPERAT.	—	cuelga	—	—	colgad	—.
		colgaba ;	colgué,	colgara,	-ase, -are ;	colgaré, -ía.

In this place belongs the verb *jugar* (Lat. *jocari*), as its stem vowel was originally *o*, but has degenerated to *u* when not accented:—

**Jugar**, jugando, jugado, *to play, gamble*.

PRES. IND.	juego	juegas	juega	jugamos	jugáis	juegan.
PRES. SUBJ.	juegue	juegues	juegue	juguemos	juguéis	jueguen.
IMPERAT.	—	juega	—	—	jugad	—.
		jugaba ;	jugué,	jugara,	-ase, -are ;	jugaré, jugaría.

**Forzar**, forzando, forzado, *to force*.

PRES. IND.	fuerzo	fuerzas	fuerza	forzamos	forzáis	fuerzan.
PRES. SUBJ.	fuere	fuere	fuere	forcemos	forcéis	fuercen.
IMPERAT.	—	fuerza	—	—	forzad	—.
		forzaba ;	forcé,	forzara,	-ase, -are ;	forzaré, -ía.

**Agorar**, agorando, agorado, *to divine, augur*.

PRES. IND.	agüero	agüeras	agüera	agoramos	agoráis	agüeran.
PRES. SUBJ.	agüere	agüeres	agüere	agoremos	agoréis	agüeren.
IMPERAT.	—	agüera	—	—	agorad	—.
		agoraba ;	agoré,	agorara,	-ase, -are ;	agoraré, -ía.

**Torcer**, torciendo, torcido, *to twist*.

PRES. IND.	tuerzo	tuerces	tuerce	torcemos	torcéis	tuercen.
PRES. SUBJ.	tuerza	tuerzas	tuerza	torzamos	torzáis	tuerzan.
IMPERAT.	—	tuerce	—	—	torced	—.
		torcía ;	torcí,	torciera,	-iese, -lere ;	torcaré, -ía.

1069. One verb of the third conjugation, *discernir*<sup>1</sup> (originally *discerner*), belongs to this class. Although the change of the last vowel has placed it in the third conjugation, it still retains the irregularities of its primitive *cerner*:—

*Discernir*, *discerniendo*, *discernido*, to *discern*.

PRES. IND. *discierno* -*ciernes* -*cierne* *discernimos* -*cernís* -*ciernen*.

PRES. SUBJ. *discierna* -*ciernas* -*cierna* *discernamos* -*cernáis* -*ciernan*.

IMPERAT. — *discierne* — — *discernid* —.

*discernía* ; -*cerní*, -*cerniera*, -*iese*, -*iere* ; *cerniré*, -*ía*.

#### SECOND CLASS.

1070. This class is composed of verbs of the third conjugation only whose stem vowels are *e* or *o*. In the present stem these vowels are expanded to *ie* and *ue* respectively in the same places as the verbs of the preceding class, and in addition are raised to *i* and *u* respectively when unaccented and followed by a strong termination.

In the aorist stem the vowels *e* and *o* become *i* and *u* respectively when the termination begins with a diphthong.

The gerund in this class belongs to the aorist system.

#### I STEM.

1071. *Sentir*, *sentido*, to *feel*, *perceive*.

PRESENT STEM : *accented*, *siént* ; *unac. weak*, *sent* ; *unac. strong*, *sint*.

PRES. IND. *siént-o* *siént-es* *siént-e* *siént-imos* *siént-ís* *siént-en*.

PRES. SUBJ. *siént-a* *siént-as* *siént-a* *sint-amos* *sint-áis* *sient-an*.

IMPERAT. — *siént-e* — — *sent-id* —.

IMPERF. *sent-ía* *sent-ías* *sent-ía* *sent-íamos* *sent-íais* *sent-ían*.

AORIST STEM : *before diphthongs*, *sint* ; *otherwise*, *sent*.

AOR. IND. *sent-i* -*iste* *sint-ió* *sent-imos* -*isteis* *sint-ieron*.

IMP. SUBJ. *sint-iera* -*ieras* -*iera* -*iéramos* -*ierais* -*ieran*.

AOR. SUBJ. *sint-iese* -*ieses* -*iese* -*iésemos* -*ieseis* -*iesen*.

FUT. SUBJ. *sint-iere* -*ieres* -*iere* -*iéremos* -*ieréis* -*ieren*.

GERUND. *sint-iendo*.

#### FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>sentir-é</i>	- <i>ás</i>	- <i>á</i>	- <i>amos</i>	- <i>áis</i>	- <i>án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>sentir-ía</i>	- <i>ias</i>	- <i>ia</i>	- <i>íamos</i>	- <i>iais</i>	- <i>ían</i> .

<sup>1</sup> So also the defective verb *concernir* (§ 1116).

## O STEM.

1072. *Dormir*, dormido, *to sleep*.

PRESENT STEM : *accented, duerm* ; *unac. weak, dorm* ;  
*unac. strong, durm*.

PR. IND. *duerm-o duerm-es duerm-e dorm-imos dorm-ís duerm-en.*  
 PR. SJ. *duerm-a duerm-as duerm-a durm-amos durm-áis duerm-an.*  
 IMP'VE. — *duerm-e* — — *dorm-id* —.  
 IMPERF. *dorm-ía dorm-ías dorm-ía dorm-íamos dorm-íais dorm-ían.*

AORIST STEM : *before diphthongs, durm* ; *otherwise, dorm*.

AOR. IND. *dorm-í -iste durm-ió dorm-imos -isteis durm-ieron.*  
 IMP. SUBJ. *durm-iera -ieras -iera -iéramos -ierais -ieran.*  
 AOR. SUBJ. *durm-iese -ieses -iese -iésemos -ieseis -iesen.*  
 FUT. SUBJ. *durm-iere -ieres -iere -iéremos -iereis -ieren.*  
 GERUND. *durm-iendo.*

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND. *dormir-é -ás -á -emos -éis -án.*  
 FUT. COND. *dormir-ía -ías -ia -íamos -íais -ían.*

1073. *Adquirir* and *inquirir*, being derived from a primitive root *quer* (Lat. *quærere*), still have the diphthong *ie* in the present stem when accented; otherwise the stem is *i* throughout:—

*Adquirir*, *adquiriendo*, *adquirido*, *to acquire*.

PR. IND. *adquiereo adquieres adquiere -quirimos -quirís -quieren.*  
 PR. SUBJ. *adquiera adquieras adquiera -quiramos -quiráis -quieran.*  
 IMPERAT. — *adquiere* — — *adquirid* —.  
*adquiría ; adquirí, adquiriera, -iese, -iere ; adquiriré, -ía.*

1074. *Podrir* or *pudrir*, *podriendo*, *podrido*, *to decay*. The stem vowel of this verb formerly changed to *u* when accented or followed by a strong vowel or diphthong; it has now been fixed as *u* throughout, except in the past participle (and the infinitive, where it is optional).

## THIRD CLASS.

1075. This class is composed exclusively of verbs of the third conjugation with the stem vowel *e*.

In the present stem the stem vowel *e* becomes *i* where in the



two preceding classes it became a diphthong, namely when accented. In addition to this it becomes *i* whenever the termination begins with a strong vowel. Consequently it is regular only when the stem is unaccented and the termination begins with a weak vowel.

In the aorist stem (as in the preceding class) the stem vowel becomes *i* whenever the termination begins with a diphthong.

The gerund in this class belongs to the aorist stem.

**1076. Servir, servido, to serve.**

PRESENT STEM: *accented, sirv; unac. strong, sirv; unac. weak, serv.*

PRES. IND.	sirv-o	sirv-es	sirv-e	serv-imos	serv-ís	sirv-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	sirv-a	sirv-as	sirv-a	sirv-amos	sirv-áis	sirv-an.
IMPERAT.	—	sirv-e	—	—	serv-id	—.
IMPERF.	serv-ía	serv-ías	serv-ía	serv-íamos	serv-íais	serv-ían.

AORIST STEM: *before diphthongs, sirv; otherwise, serv.*

AOR. IND.	serv-í	-iste	sirv-ió	serv-imos	-isteis	sirv-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	sirv-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	sirv-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	sirv-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-ieréis	-ieren.
GERUND.	sirv-iendo.					

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	servir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-áis	-án.
FUT. COND.	servir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1077. The verb *erguir* is conjugated either as of the third class or of the second; in the latter case the diphthong *ie*, being initial, is changed to *ye*. The two styles are united below.

The *u* following the *g* is merely orthographic and disappears before a strong vowel.

**Erguir, erguido, to raise erect.**

PRES. IND.	{ <i>ergo</i> <i>irgo</i>	<i>yergues</i> <i>irgues</i>	<i>yergue</i> <i>irgue</i>	<i>erguimos</i>	<i>erguís</i>	<i>yerguen.</i> <i>irguen.</i>
PRES. SUBJ.	{ <i>yerga</i> <i>irga</i>	<i>yergas</i> <i>irgas</i>	<i>yerga</i> <i>irga</i>	<i>irgamos</i>	<i>irgáis</i>	<i>yergan.</i> <i>irgan.</i>
IMPERAT.	{ —	<i>yergue</i> <i>irgue</i>	—	—	<i>erguid</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>erguía</i>	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.
GERUND.	<i>irguiendo.</i>					

AOR. IND.	erguí	erguiste	irguíó	erguimos	erguisteis	irguieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	irguiera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	irguiese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	irguiere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT. IND.	erguiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	erguiría	-ias	-ia	-íamos	-iais	-ían.

1078. Five verbs ending in *-eír*, on changing the stem vowel *e* to *i*, lose the *i* of terminations beginning with the diphthongs *ie* and *io* throughout the aorist stem:—

*Reír, reído, to laugh.*

PRES. IND.	rí-o	rí-es	rí-e	re-ímos	re-ís	rien.
PRES. SUBJ.	rí-a	rí-as	rí-a	ri-amos	ri-ais	ri-an.
IMPERAT.	—	rí-e	—	—	reíd	—.
IMPERF.	re-ía	re-ías	re-ía	re-íamos	re-iais	re-ían.
GERUND.	ri-endo ( <i>not</i> ri-iendo).					
AOR. IND.	re-í	re-iste	ri-ó	re-ímos	re-ísteis	ri-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	ri-era	ri-eras	ri-era	ri-éramos	ri-eráis	ri-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	ri-ese	ri-eses	ri-ese	ri-ésemos	ri-ecéis	ri-ecan.
FUT. SUBJ.	ri-ere	ri-eres	ri-ere	ri-éremos	ri-ereis	ri-eren.
FUT. IND.	reír-é	reír-ás	reír-á	reír-emos	reír-éis	reír-án.
FUT. COND.	reír-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-iais	-ían.

#### ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1079. The orthographic changes laid down in § 1041 are also to be observed:—

*Regir, rigiendo, regido, to rule.*

PRES. IND.	rijo	riges	rige	regimos	regís	rigen.
PRES. SUBJ.	rija	rijas	rija	rijamos	rijáis	rijan.
IMPERAT.	—	rige	—	—	regid	—.
IMPERF.	regía	regias	regía	regíamos	regiais	regían.

regí; rigiera; rigiese; rigiere; regiré; regiría.

*Seguir, siguiendo, seguido, to follow.*

PRES. IND.	sigo	sigues	sigue	seguimos	seguís	siguen.
PRES. SUBJ.	siga	sigas	siga	sigamos	sigáis	sigan.
IMPERAT.	—	sigue	—	—	seguid	—.
IMPERF.	seguía	seguías	seguía	seguíamos	seguiais	seguían.

seguí; siguiera; siguese; siguiere; seguiré; seguiría.

Verbs of this class ending in *-uir*, in addition to modifying

the stem vowel *e* into *i*, absorb the initial *i* of the diphthongal endings *ie*, *io*, as prescribed in § 1042 *b* :—

*Bañar, refido, to quarrel.*

PRES. IND.	riño	riñes	riñe	riñimos	riñís	riñen.
PRES. SUBJ.	riña	riñas	riña	riñamos	riñáis	riñan.
IMPERAT.	—	riñe	—	—	refid	—
IMPERF.	refía	refías	refía	refíamos	refíais	refían.
GERUND.	rifiendo ( <i>not</i> rificiendo).					
AOR. IND.	refí	refiste	riñó	refimos	refisteis	refieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	riñera	riñeras	riñera	riñéramos	riñerais	riñeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	riñese	riñeses	riñese	riñésemos	riñeseis	riñesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	riñere	riñeres	riñere	riñéremos	riñereis	riñeren.
FUT. IND.	refiré	refirás	refirá	refiremos	refiréis	refirán.
FUT. COND.	refiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

#### FOURTH CLASS.

1080. This class is composed of verbs of the second and third conjugations ending in *-cer* or *-cir* preceded by a vowel. Their irregularity consists in strengthening the stem by interpolating *z* before the *c* when followed by a strong termination.

Verbs of this class generally are what are called *inceptives*, which have been treated of in Lesson XLVII. The Latin pattern upon which these are formed was characterized by an intruded *sc*, which becomes *zc* in Spanish:—

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

1081. *Crecer, creciendo, crecido, to grow.*

PRESENT STEM : *weak*, *crec* ; *strong*, *crezo*.

PRES. IND.	crezo-o	crec-es	crec-e	crec-emos	crec-éis	crec-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	crezc-a	crezc-as	crezc-a	crezc-amos	crezc-áis	crezc-an.
IMPERAT.	—	crec-e	—	—	crec-ed	—
IMPERF.	crec-ía	crec-ías	crec-ía	crec-íamos	crec-íais	crec-ían.

#### AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	crec-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	crec-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	crec-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	crec-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

#### FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	crecer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	crecer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

1082. *Luzir*, *luciendo*, *lucido*, *to shine*.

PRES. IND.	luzc-o	luc-es	luc-e	luc-imos	luc-is	luc-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	luzc-a	luzc-as	luzc-a	luzc-amos	luzc-áis	luzc-an.
IMPERAT.	—	luc-e	—	—	luc-id	—.
IMPERF.	luc-fa	luc-fas	luc-fa	luc-famos	luc-fais	luc-ían.

☞ The aorist and future stems are regular (as above).

## FIFTH CLASS.

1083. This class is composed of those verbs terminating in *-uir* in which both vowels are sounded (excluding therefore those in *-guir*, *-quir*, but including *-güir*). Their irregularity consists in strengthening the stem by the addition of *y* when accented or followed by a strong vowel.

The aorist stem is regular, but the initial *i* of the diphthongal terminations *ie*, *io*, is changed to *y* since it comes between two vowels (§ 1043).

The gerund in this class belongs to the aorist system.

1084. *Huir*, *huido*, *to flee*.

PRESENT STEM : *accented, huy* ; *unac. strong, huy* ; *unac. weak, hu*.

PRES. IND.	huy-o	huy-es	huy-e	hu-imos	hu-is	huy-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	huy-a	huy-as	huy-a	huy-amos	huy-áis	huy-an.
IMPERAT.	—	huy-e	—	—	hu-id	—.
IMPERF.	hu-fa	hu-fas	hu-fa	hu-famos	hu-fais	hu-ían.

AORIST STEM : REGULAR (*i* of diphthongs becomes *y*).

AOR. IND.	hu-í	hu-iste	hu-yó	hu-imos	hu-isteis	-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	hu-yera	hu-yeras	hu-yera	-yéramos	-yerais	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	hu-yese	hu-yeses	hu-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yescen.
FUT. SUBJ.	hu-yere	hu-yeres	hu-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.
GERUND.	hu-yendo.					

FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	huir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	huir-fa	-fas	-fa	-famos	-fais	-ían.

1085. Verbs in *-güir* necessarily discard the diæresis upon the insertion of the *y* :—



*Argüir, argüido, to argue.*

PRES. IND.	arguyo	arguyes	arguye	argüimos	argüís	-guyen.
PRES. SUBJ.	arguya	arguyas	arguya	-guyamos	-guyáis	-guyan.
IMPERAT.	—	arguye	—	—	argüid	—.
IMPERF.	argüía	argüías	argüía	-güíamos	-güíais	-güían.
GERUND.	arguyendo					
AOR. IND.	argüí	argüiste	arguyó	argüimos	-isteis	-guyeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	arguyera	-yeras	-yera	-yéramos	-yeráis	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	arguyese	-yeses	-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	arguyere	-yeres	-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.
FUT. IND.	argüiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	argüiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

#### SIXTH CLASS.

1086. This class is composed of verbs that have irregular aorist systems which are more or less close derivatives of the Latin and have the spoken accent on the stem in the first and third persons singular of the aorist indicative.

As the present and future stems present various irregularities, each verb of the class will be given separately and in full.

1087.

**HABER** (Lat. *habere*), *to have*.

INFIN. haber.                      GER. hablando.                      PAST PART. habido.

PRESENT STEM: *strong, hay; weak, hab, he and h.*

PRES. IND.	he	has	ha	hemos	hab-éis	han.
PRES. SUBJ.	hay-a	hay-as	hay-a	hay-amos	hay-áis	hay-an.
IMPERAT.	—	hé	—	—	hab-ed	—.
IMPERF.	hab-ía	hab-ías	hab-ía	hab-íamos	hab-íais	hab-ían.

AORIST STEM: *hub.*

AOR. IND.	hube	hub-iste	hubo	ub-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	hub-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	hub-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	hub-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : *habr.*

FUT. IND.	habr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	habr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1088.

ANDAR (origin doubtful), *to go.*

INFIN. andar.	GER. andando.	PAST PART. andado
---------------	---------------	-------------------

## PRESENT STEM : REGULAR.

PRES. IND.	and-o	and-as	and-a	and-amos	and-áis	and-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	and-e	and-es	and-e	and-emos	and-éis	and-en.
IMPERAT.	—	anda	—	—	and-ad	—.
IMPERF.	and-aba	and-abas	and-aba	and-ábamos	and-ábais	and-aban.

AORIST STEM : *anduv.*

AOR. IND.	anduve	anduv-iste	anduvo	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	anduv-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	anduv-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	anduv-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	andar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	andar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1089.

TENER (Lat. *tenero*), *to have, possess.*

INFIN. tener.	GER. teniendo.	PAST PART. tenido.
---------------	----------------	--------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong, teng* ; *accented weak, tien* ; *unac. weak, ten.*

PRES. IND.	teng-o	tien-es	tien e	ten-emos	ten-éis	tien-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	teng-a	teng-as	teng-a	teng-amos	teng-áis	teng-an.
IMPERAT.	—	ten	—	—	ten-ed	—.
IMPERF.	ten-ía	ten-ías	ten-ía	ten-íamos	ten-íais	ten-ían.

AORIST STEM : *tuv.*

AOR. IND.	tuve	tuv-iste	tuvo	tuv-imos	tuv-isteis	tuv-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	tuv-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	tuv-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	tuv-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : *tendr.*

FUT. IND.	tendr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	tendr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1090.

ESTAR (Lat. *stare*), *to be*.INFIN. *estar*.GER. *estando*.PAST PART. *estado*.PRESENT STEM : *est*.

PRES. IND.	<i>estoy</i>	<i>est-ás</i>	<i>est-á</i>	<i>est-amos</i>	<i>est-áis</i>	<i>est-án</i> .
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>est-é</i>	<i>est-és</i>	<i>est-é</i>	<i>est-emos</i>	<i>est-éis</i>	<i>est-én</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>est-á</i>	—	—	<i>est-ad</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>est-aba</i>	<i>est-abas</i>	<i>est-aba</i>	<i>est-ábamos</i>	<i>est-abais</i>	<i>est-aban</i> .

AORIST STEM : *estuv*.

AOR. IND.	<i>estuve</i>	<i>estuv-iste</i>	<i>estuvo</i>	<i>estuv-imos</i>	<i>-isteis</i>	<i>estuv-ieron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>estuv-iera</i>	<i>-ieras</i>	<i>-iera</i>	<i>-iéramos</i>	<i>-ierais</i>	<i>-ieran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>estuv-iese</i>	<i>-ieses</i>	<i>-iese</i>	<i>-iésemos</i>	<i>-ieseis</i>	<i>-iesen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>estuv-iere</i>	<i>-ieres</i>	<i>-iere</i>	<i>-iéremos</i>	<i>-iereis</i>	<i>-ieren</i> .

FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>estar-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>estar-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

## 1091.

CABER (Lat. *cupere*), *to be contained in*.INFIN. *caber*.GER. *cabiendo*.PAST PART. *cabido*.PRESENT STEM : *strong, quep ; weak, cab*.

PRES. IND.	<i>quep-o</i>	<i>cab-es</i>	<i>cab-e</i>	<i>cab-emos</i>	<i>cab-éis</i>	<i>cab-en</i> .
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>quep-a</i>	<i>quep-as</i>	<i>quep-a</i>	<i>quep-amos</i>	<i>quep-áis</i>	<i>quep-an</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>cab-e</i>	—	—	<i>cab-ed</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>cab-ía</i>	<i>cab-ías</i>	<i>cab-ía</i>	<i>cab-íamos</i>	<i>cab-íais</i>	<i>cab-ían</i> .

AORIST STEM : *cup*.

AOR. IND.	<i>cupe</i>	<i>cup-iste</i>	<i>cupo</i>	<i>cup-imos</i>	<i>cup-isteis</i>	<i>cup-ieron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>cup-iera</i>	<i>-ieras</i>	<i>-iera</i>	<i>-iéramos</i>	<i>-ierais</i>	<i>-ieran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>cup-iese</i>	<i>-ieses</i>	<i>-iese</i>	<i>-iésemos</i>	<i>-ieseis</i>	<i>-iesen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>cup-iere</i>	<i>-ieres</i>	<i>-iere</i>	<i>-iéremos</i>	<i>-iereis</i>	<i>-ieren</i> .

FUTURE STEM : *cabr*.

FUT. IND.	<i>cabr-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>cabr-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

## 1092.

SABER (Lat. *sapere*), *to know*.INFIN. *saber*.GER. *sabiendo*.PAST PART. *sabido*.PRESENT STEM : *strong, sep ; weak, sab*.

PRES. IND.	<i>sé</i>	<i>sab-es</i>	<i>sab-e</i>	<i>sab-emos</i>	<i>sab-éis</i>	<i>sab-en</i> .
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>sep-a</i>	<i>sep-as</i>	<i>sep-a</i>	<i>sep-amos</i>	<i>sep-áis</i>	<i>sep-an</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>sab-e</i>	—	—	<i>sab-ed</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>sab-ía</i>	<i>sab-ías</i>	<i>sab-ía</i>	<i>sab-íamos</i>	<i>sab-íais</i>	<i>sab-ían</i> .

AORIST STEM : *sup.*

AOR. IND.	<i>supē</i>	<i>sup-iste</i>	<i>supo</i>	<i>sup-imos</i>	<i>sup-isteis</i>	<i>sup-ieron.</i>
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>sup-iera</i>	<i>-ieras</i>	<i>-iera</i>	<i>-iéramos</i>	<i>-ierais</i>	<i>-ieran.</i>
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>sup-iesse</i>	<i>-ieses</i>	<i>-iesse</i>	<i>-iésemos</i>	<i>-ieseis</i>	<i>-iesen.</i>
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>sup-iere</i>	<i>-ieres</i>	<i>-iere</i>	<i>-iéremos</i>	<i>-iereis</i>	<i>-ieren.</i>

FUTURE STEM : *sabr.*

FUT. IND.	<i>sabr-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-áis</i>	<i>-án.</i>
FUT. COND.	<i>sabr-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían.</i>

## 1093.

PODER (Lat. *posse* [ *pot-esse* ]), *to be able.*INFIN. *poder.*GER. *pudiviendo.*PAST PART. *podido.*PRESENT STEM : *accented, pued ; unaccented, pod.*

PRES. IND.	<i>pued-o</i>	<i>pued-es</i>	<i>pued-e</i>	<i>pod-emos</i>	<i>pod-éis</i>	<i>pued-en.</i>
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>pued-a</i>	<i>pued-as</i>	<i>pued-a</i>	<i>pod-amos</i>	<i>pod-áis</i>	<i>pued-an.</i>
IMPERAT.	—	—	—	—	—	—
IMPERF.	<i>pod-ía</i>	<i>pod-ías</i>	<i>pod-ía</i>	<i>pod-íamos</i>	<i>pod-íais</i>	<i>pod-ían.</i>

AORIST STEM : *pud.*

GERUND.	<i>pudiviendo.</i>					
AOR. IND.	<i>pude</i>	<i>pud-iste</i>	<i>pudo</i>	<i>pud-imos</i>	<i>pud-isteis</i>	<i>pud-ieron.</i>
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>pud-iera</i>	<i>-ieras</i>	<i>-iera</i>	<i>-iéramos</i>	<i>-ierais</i>	<i>-ieran.</i>
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>pud-iesse</i>	<i>-ieses</i>	<i>-iesse</i>	<i>-iésemos</i>	<i>-ieseis</i>	<i>-iesen.</i>
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>pud-iere</i>	<i>-ieres</i>	<i>-iere</i>	<i>-iéremos</i>	<i>-iereis</i>	<i>-ieren.</i>

FUTURE STEM : *podr.*

FUT. IND.	<i>podr-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-áis</i>	<i>-án.</i>
FUT. COND.	<i>podr-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían.</i>

## 1094.

PONER (Lat. *ponere*), *to put, place.*INFIN. *poner.*GER. *poniendo.*PAST PART. *puesto.*PRESENT STEM : *strong, pong ; weak, pon.*

PRES. IND.	<i>pong-o</i>	<i>pon-es</i>	<i>pon-e</i>	<i>pon-emos</i>	<i>pon-éis</i>	<i>pon-en.</i>
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>pong-a</i>	<i>pong-as</i>	<i>pong-a</i>	<i>pong-amos</i>	<i>pong-áis</i>	<i>pong-an.</i>
IMPERAT.	—	<i>pon</i>	—	—	<i>pon-ed</i>	—
IMPERF.	<i>pon-ía</i>	<i>pon-ías</i>	<i>pon-ía</i>	<i>pon-íamos</i>	<i>pon-íais</i>	<i>pon-ían.</i>

AORIST STEM : *pus.*

AOR. IND.	<i>puse</i>	<i>pus-iste</i>	<i>puso</i>	<i>pus-imos</i>	<i>pus-isteis</i>	<i>pus-ieron.</i>
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>pus-iera</i>	<i>-ieras</i>	<i>-iera</i>	<i>-iéramos</i>	<i>-ierais</i>	<i>-ieran.</i>
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>pus-iesse</i>	<i>-ieses</i>	<i>-iesse</i>	<i>-lésemos</i>	<i>-ieseis</i>	<i>-iesen.</i>
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>pus-iere</i>	<i>-ieres</i>	<i>-iere</i>	<i>-iéremos</i>	<i>-iereis</i>	<i>-ieren.</i>



FUTURE STEM : *pondr.*

FUT. IND.	pondr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	pondr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1095.

VENIR (Lat. *venire*), to come.

INFIN. venir.	GER. viniendo.	PAST PART. venido.
---------------	----------------	--------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong, veng ; accented weak, vien ; unac. weak, ven.*

PRES. IND.	veng-o	vien-es	vien-e	ven-imos	ven-ís	vien-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	veng-a	veng-as	veng-a	veng-amos	veng-áis	veng-an.
IMPERAT.	—	ven	—	—	ven-id.	—.
IMPERF.	ven-ía	ven-ías	ven-ía	ven-íamos	ven-íais	ven-ían.

AORIST STEM : *vin.*

GERUND.	vin-lendo.					
AOR. IND.	vine	vin-iste	vino	vin-imos	vin-istéis	vin-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	vin-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	vin-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieséis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	vin-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : *vendr.*

FUT. IND.	vendr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	vendr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1096.

HACER (Lat. *facere*), to do, make.

INFIN. hacer.	GER. haciendo.	PAST PART. hecho.
---------------	----------------	-------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong, hag ; weak, hac.*

PRES. IND.	hag-o	hac-es	hac-e	hac-emos	hac-éis	hac-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	hag-a	hag-as	hag-a	hag-amos	hag-áis	hag-an.
IMPERAT.	—	haz	—	—	hac-ed	—.
IMPERF.	hac-ía	hac-ías	hac-ía	hac-íamos	hac-íais	hac-ían.

AORIST STEM : *hic.*

AOR. IND.	hice	hic-iste	hizo	hic-imos	hic-istéis	hic-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	hic-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	hic-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieséis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	hic-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : *har.*

FUT. IND.	har-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	har-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

NOTE.—Three of the compounds of *hacer*, *liquefacere*, *rarefacere* and *satisfacer*, have not changed the original Latin *f* to *h*. *Satisfacer* has the duplicate imperative forms *satisfaz* and *satisface*.

*Satisfacer*, *satisfaciendo*, *satisfecho*, to satisfy.

	<i>satis-</i>	<i>satis-</i>	<i>satis-</i>	<i>satis-</i>	<i>satis-</i>	<i>satis-</i>
PRES. IND.	fago	faces	face	facemos	facéis	facen.
PRES. SUBJ.	faga	fagas	faga	fagamos	fagáis	fagan.
IMPERAT.	—	faz or face	—	—	faced	—
IMPERF.	facía	facías	facía	facíamos	facíais	facían.
AOR. IND.	fice	ficiste	fizo	ficimos	ficisteis	ficieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	ficiera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	ficiese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	ficiere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT. IND.	faré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	faría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1097.

QUERER (Lat. *querere*), to want, wish.INFIN. *querer*.GER. *queriendo*.PAST PART. *querido*.PRESENT STEM : *accented*, *quier* ; *unaccented*, *quer*.

PRES. IND.	quier-o	quier-es	quier-e	quer-emos	quer-éis	quier-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	quiera	quier-as	quiera	quer-amos	quer-áis	quier-an.
IMPERAT.	—	quier-e	—	—	quer-ed	—
IMPERF.	quer-ía	quer-ías	quer-ía	quer-íamos	quer-íais	quer-ían.

AORIST STEM : *quis*.

AOR. IND.	quise	quis-iste	quiso	quis-imos	quis-isteis	quis-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	quis-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	quis-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	quis-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : *querr*.

FUT. IND.	querr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	querr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1098.

DECIR (Lat. *dicere*), to say, tell.INFIN. *decir*.GER. *diciendo*.PAST PART. *dicho*.PRESENT STEM : *strong*, *dig* ; *accented weak*, *dic* ; *unac. weak*, *dec*.

PRES. IND.	dig-o	dic-es	dic-e	dec-imos	dec-ís	dic-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	dig-a	dig-as	dig-a	dig-amos	dig-áis	dig-an.
IMPERAT.	—	dí	—	—	dec-id	—
IMPERF.	dec-ía	dec-ías	dec-ía	dec-íamos	dec-íais	dec-ían.

AORIST STEM : *dij*.

AOR. IND.	<i>dije</i>	<i>dij-iste</i>	<i>dijo</i>	<i>dij-imos</i>	<i>dij-istéis</i>	<i>dij-eron.</i>
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>dij-era</i>	<i>-eras</i>	<i>-era</i>	<i>-éramos</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-eran.</i>
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>dij-ese</i>	<i>-eses</i>	<i>-ese</i>	<i>-ésemos</i>	<i>-eseis</i>	<i>-esen.</i>
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>dij-ere</i>	<i>-eres</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-éremos</i>	<i>-ereis</i>	<i>-eren.</i>

FUTURE STEM : *dir*.

FUT. IND.	<i>dir-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án.</i>
FUT. COND.	<i>dir-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-íais</i>	<i>-ían.</i>

☞ There is a special form *dis*, used occasionally and familiarly as the equivalent of *se dice* (Lat. *dicitur*), *they say*.

1099. The compounds of *decir* are inflected like their primitive except in the following particulars:—

- a. All the compounds have the singular imperative *dice* instead of *di*.
- b. *Bendecir*, *to bless*, and *maldecir*, *to curse*, have the future stem regular, *decir* instead of *dir*. The Academy is in favor of this form for all the compounds.
- c. The archaic participles *bendito* and *maldito* are now employed only adjectively.

*Bendecir*, *bendiciendo*, *bendecido* or *bendito*, *to bless*.

	<i>ben-</i>	<i>ben-</i>	<i>ben-</i>	<i>ben-</i>	<i>ben-</i>	<i>ben-</i>
PRES. IND.	<i>digo</i>	<i>dices</i>	<i>dice</i>	<i>decimos</i>	<i>decís</i>	<i>dicen.</i>
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>diga</i>	<i>digas</i>	<i>diga</i>	<i>digamos</i>	<i>digáis</i>	<i>digan.</i>
IMPERAT.	—	<i>dice</i>	—	—	<i>decid</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>decía</i>	<i>decías</i>	<i>decía</i>	<i>decíamos</i>	<i>decíais</i>	<i>decían.</i>
AOR. IND.	<i>dije</i>	<i>dijiste</i>	<i>dijo</i>	<i>dijimos</i>	<i>dijistéis</i>	<i>dijeron.</i>
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>dijera</i>	<i>-eras</i>	<i>-era</i>	<i>-éramos</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-eran.</i>
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>dijese</i>	<i>-eses</i>	<i>-ese</i>	<i>-ésemos</i>	<i>-eseis</i>	<i>-esen.</i>
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>dijere</i>	<i>-eres</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-éremos</i>	<i>-ereis</i>	<i>-eren.</i>
FUT. IND.	<i>decir-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án.</i>
FUT. COND.	<i>decir-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-íais</i>	<i>-ían.</i>

1100. *TRAER* (Lat. *trahere*,—compare Eug. *drag*), *to bring*.

INFIN. <i>traer</i> .	GER. <i>trayendo</i> .	PAST PART. <i>traído</i> .
-----------------------	------------------------	----------------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong*, *traig*; *weak*, *tra*.

PRES. IND.	<i>traig-o</i>	<i>tra-es</i>	<i>tra-e</i>	<i>tra-emos</i>	<i>tra-éis</i>	<i>tra-en.</i>
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>traig-a</i>	<i>traig-as</i>	<i>traig-a</i>	<i>traig-amos</i>	<i>traig-áis</i>	<i>traig-an.</i>
IMPERAT.	—	<i>tra-e</i>	—	—	<i>tra-ed</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>tra-ía</i>	<i>tra-ías</i>	<i>tra-ía</i>	<i>tra-íamos</i>	<i>tra-íais</i>	<i>tra-ían.</i>

AORIST STEM : *traj*.

AOR. IND.	<i>traje</i>	<i>traj-iste</i>	<i>trajo</i>	<i>traj-imos</i>	<i>traj-isteis</i>	<i>traj-eron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>traj-era</i>	<i>-eras</i>	<i>-era</i>	<i>-éramos</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-eran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>traj-ese</i>	<i>-eses</i>	<i>-ese</i>	<i>-ésemos</i>	<i>-eseis</i>	<i>-esen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>traj-ere</i>	<i>-eres</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-éremos</i>	<i>-ereis</i>	<i>-eren</i> .

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>traer-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>traer-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

1101. COMPOUNDS OF *DUOIR* (Lat. *ducere*), *to lead*.

*Ducir* is now obsolete; its compounds have the following features in common:—

- The present stem becomes *duzo* before a strong vowel.
- The aorist stem is *duj* (Lat. *dux*), after which the *i* of the diphthongs *ie* and *io* is absorbed, as shown under *decir*.
- The future stem is regular.

INFIN. <i>deducir</i> .	GER. <i>deduciendo</i> .	PAST PART. <i>deducido</i> .
-------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong, deduzc* ; *weak, deduc*.

PRES. IND.	<i>deduzc-o</i>	<i>-duc-es</i>	<i>-duce</i>	<i>-duc-imos</i>	<i>-duc-is</i>	<i>-duc-en</i> .
PRES. SB.	<i>deduzc-a</i>	<i>-duzc-as</i>	<i>-duzo-a</i>	<i>-duzc-amos</i>	<i>-duzo-áis</i>	<i>-duzc-an</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>-duc-e</i>	—	—	<i>-duc-id</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>deduc-ía</i>	<i>-duc-ías</i>	<i>-duc-ía</i>	<i>-duc-íamos</i>	<i>-duc-iais</i>	<i>-duc-ían</i> .

AORIST STEM : *deduj*.

AOR. IND.	<i>deduje</i>	<i>deduj-iste</i>	<i>dedujo</i>	<i>deduj-imos</i>	<i>-isteis</i>	<i>deduj-eron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>deduj-era</i>	<i>-eras</i>	<i>-era</i>	<i>-éramos</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-eran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>deduj-ese</i>	<i>-eses</i>	<i>-ese</i>	<i>-ésemos</i>	<i>-eseis</i>	<i>-esen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>deduj-ere</i>	<i>-eres</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-éremos</i>	<i>-ereis</i>	<i>-eren</i> .

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>deducir-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>deducir-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

## SEVENTH CLASS.

 This class is composed of miscellaneous verbs whose irregularities are not reducible to any of the previous classes.

## 1102.

*DAR* (Lat. *clare*), *to give*.

INFIN. *dar*.

GER. *dando*.

PAST PART. *dado*.



PRESENT STEM : *d* (1st Conj.).

PRES. IND.	doy	d-as	d-a	d-amos	d-ais	d-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	d-é	d-es	d-é	d-emos	d-eis	d-en.
IMPERAT.	—	d-a	—	—	d-ad	—.
IMPERF.	d-aba	d-abas	d-aba	d-ábamos	d-abais	d-aban.

AORIST STEM : *d* (2nd Conj.).

AOR. IND.	d-f	d-iste	d-í	d-imos	d-istéis	d-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	d-iera	d-ieras	d-iera	d-iéramos	d-ierais	d-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	d-iese	d-ieses	d-iese	d-iésemos	d-ieséis	d-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	d-iere	d-ieres	d-iere	d-iéremos	d-ieréis	d-ieren.

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	dar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	dar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-iais	-ían.

1103.

SER<sup>1</sup> (Lat. *sedere*), to be.

INFIN. ser.

GER. siendo.

PAST PART. sido.

PRESENT STEM : *phases of ea*.

PRES. IND.	soy	eres	es	somos	sois	son.
PRES. SUBJ.	se-a	se-as	se-a	se-amos	se-áis	se-an.
IMPERAT.	—	sé	—	—	s-ed	—.
IMPERF.	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran.

AORIST STEM : *fu*.

AOR. IND.	fu-í	fu-iste	fué	fu-imos	fu-istéis	fu-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	fu-era	fu-eras	fu-era	fu-éramos	fu-erais	fu-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	fu-ese	fu-eses	fu-ese	fu-ésemos	fu-eséis	fu-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	fu-ere	fu-eres	fu-ere	fu-éremos	fu-ereis	fu-eren.

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	ser-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	ser-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-iais	-ían.

1104.

IR (Lat. *ire*), to go.

INFIN. ir.

GER. yendo.

PAST PART. ido.

PRESENT STEMS : *strong, vay* ; *weak, v*, and *phases of i*.

PRES. IND.	voy	vas	va	vamos	vais	van.
PRES. SUBJ.	vay-a	vay-as	vay-a	vay-amos	vay-áis	vay-an.
IMPERAT.	—	v-e	—	vamos	id	—.
IMPERF.	iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban.

<sup>1</sup> Dar, ser, ir and ver are the only monosyllabic infinitives in Spanish.

AORIST STEM : *fu*.

AOR. IND.	<i>fu-í</i>	<i>fu-iste</i>	<i>fué</i>	<i>fu-imos</i>	<i>fu-isteis</i>	<i>fu-eron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>fu-era</i>	<i>fu-eras</i>	<i>fu-era</i>	<i>fu-éramos</i>	<i>fu-erais</i>	<i>fu-eran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>fu-ese</i>	<i>fu-eses</i>	<i>fu-ese</i>	<i>fu-ésemos</i>	<i>fu-eséis</i>	<i>fu-esen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>fu-ere</i>	<i>fu-eres</i>	<i>fu-ere</i>	<i>fu-éremos</i>	<i>fu-ereis</i>	<i>fu-eren</i> .

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>ir-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>ir-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

1105.

VER (Lat. *videre*), *to see*.

INFIN. ver.	GER. <i>viendo</i> .	PAST PART. <i>visto</i> .
-------------	----------------------	---------------------------

PRESENT STEM : *strong, ve ; weak, v*.

PRES. IND.	<i>ve-o</i>	<i>v-es</i>	<i>v-e</i>	<i>v-amos</i>	<i>v-eis</i>	<i>v-en</i> .
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>ve-a</i>	<i>ve-as</i>	<i>ve-a</i>	<i>ve-amos</i>	<i>ve-áis</i>	<i>ve-an</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>v-e</i>	—	—	<i>v-ed</i>	—.
IMPERF.	<i>ve-ía</i>	<i>ve-ías</i>	<i>ve-ía</i>	<i>ve-íamos</i>	<i>ve-íais</i>	<i>ve-ían</i> .

## AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	<i>v-í</i>	<i>v-iste</i>	<i>v-ió</i>	<i>v-imos</i>	<i>v-isteis</i>	<i>v-ieron</i> .
IMP. SUBJ.	<i>v-iera</i>	<i>v-ieras</i>	<i>v-iera</i>	<i>v-iéramos</i>	<i>v-ierais</i>	<i>v-ieran</i> .
AOR. SUBJ.	<i>v-iese</i>	<i>v-ieses</i>	<i>v-iese</i>	<i>v-iésemos</i>	<i>v-ieseis</i>	<i>v-iesen</i> .
FUT. SUBJ.	<i>v-iere</i>	<i>v-ieres</i>	<i>v-iere</i>	<i>v-iéremos</i>	<i>v-iereis</i>	<i>v-ieren</i> .

## FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	<i>ver-é</i>	<i>-ás</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-emos</i>	<i>-éis</i>	<i>-án</i> .
FUT. COND.	<i>ver-ía</i>	<i>-ías</i>	<i>-ía</i>	<i>-íamos</i>	<i>-iais</i>	<i>-ían</i> .

1106. Authorities are not agreed, in conjugating the compounds of this verb, whether the original vowel should, as above, be omitted in most places, or should be retained throughout. The preference is for the latter mode, in which case the *i* of the diphthongs *ie* and *io*, in the terminations of the gerund and the aorist stem, is changed to *y*, as required by the laws of Spanish orthography.

Proveer, *proveyendo*, *proveído* or *provisto*, *to provide*.

PRES. IND.	<i>proveo</i>	<i>provees</i>	<i>provee</i>	<i>proveemos</i>	<i>proveéis</i>	<i>proveen</i> .
PRES. SUBJ.	<i>provea</i>	<i>proveas</i>	<i>provea</i>	<i>proveamos</i>	<i>proveáis</i>	<i>provean</i> .
IMPERAT.	—	<i>provee</i>	—	—	<i>proved</i>	—
IMPERF.	<i>proveía</i>	<i>proveías</i>	<i>proveía</i>	<i>proveíamos</i>	<i>proveíais</i>	<i>proveían</i> .
AOR. IND.	<i>prove-í</i>	<i>-iste</i>	<i>-yó</i>	<i>-imos</i>	<i>-isteis</i>	<i>-yeron</i> .

*prove-yera*, *prove-yese*, *prove-yere* ; *proveer-é*, *proveer-ía*.

## 1107.

CAER (Lat. *cadere*), to fall.

INFIN. caer.	GER. cayendo.				PAST PART. caído.	
PRESENT STEM : <i>strong, caig ; weak, ca.</i>						
PRES. IND.	caig-o	ca-es	ca-e	ca-emos	ca-éis	ca-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	caig-a	caig-as	caig-a	caig-amos	caig-áis	caig-an.
IMPERAT.	—	ca-e	—	—	ca-ed	—.
IMPERF.	ca-ía	ca-ías	ca-ía	ca-íamos	ca-íais	ca-ían.
AORIST STEM : REGULAR.						
AOR. IND.	ca-í	ca-íste	ca-yó	ca-ímos	ca-ísteis	ca-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	ca-yera	-yeras	-yera	-yéramos	-yerais	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	ca-yese	-yeses	-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	ca-yere	-yeres	-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.
FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.						
FUT. IND.	caer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	caer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1108.

OÍR (Lat. *audire*), to hear.

INFIN. oír.	GER. oyendo.				PAST PART. oído.	
PRESENT STEM : <i>strong, oig ; accented weak, oy ; unac. weak, o.</i>						
PRES. IND.	oig-o	oy-es	oy-e	o-ímos	o-ís	oy-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	oig a	oig-as	oig-a	oig-amos	oig-áis	oig-an.
IMPERAT.	—	oy-e	—	—	o-íd	—.
IMPERF.	o-ía	o-ías	o-ía	o-íamos	o-íais	o-ían.
AORIST STEM : REGULAR.						
AOR. IND.	o-í	o-íste	o-yó	o-ímos	o-ísteis	o-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	o-yera	o-yeras	o-yera	o-yéramos	o-yerais	o-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	o-yese	o-yeses	o-yese	o-yésemos	o-yeseis	o-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	o-yere	o-yeres	o-yere	o-yéremos	o-yereis	o-yeren.
FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.						
FUT. IND.	oír-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	oír-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

## 1109.

ASIR<sup>1</sup> (Lat. *asciscere*), to seize, grasp.

INFIN. asir.	GER. asiendo.				PAST PART. asido.	
PRESENT STEM : <i>strong, asg ; weak, as.</i>						
PRES. IND.	asg-o	as-es	as-e	as-imos	as-ís	as-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	asg-a	asg-as	asg-a	asg-amos	asg-áis	asg-an.
IMPERAT.	—	as-e	—	—	as-id.	—.
IMPERF.	as-ía	as-ías	as-ía	as-íamos	as-íais	as-ían.

<sup>1</sup> The irregular forms are rarely used.

PRES. IND.	salg-o	sal-es	sal-e	sal-imos	sal-ís	sal-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	salg-a	salg-as	salg-a	salg-amos	salg-áis	salg-an.
IMPERAT.	—	sal	—	—	sal-id	—.

salía; salí, saliera, saliese, saliere; **saldre, saldría.**



## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *defective* when they are employed only in certain tenses or persons. This limited use may be to avoid cacophony, or it may result from the meaning of the respective verbs. The latter class comprises the impersonal verbs, which have been already considered in Lesson XLVII.

1111. Of the following ten verbs the only forms in use are those in which the inflectional endings begin with *i*, including, however, the forms made from the future stem:—

Abolir, to abolish.	Reg.	Despavorir, to take fright.	Reg.
Aguerrir, to inure to war.	Cl. III.	Embair, to impose upon.	"
Arredirse, to grow numb.	" "	Empedernir, <sup>1</sup> to harden.	Cl. III.
Aterirse, " " "	" "	Garantir, <sup>2</sup> to guarantee.	Reg.
Desmarrirse, to grow sad.	Reg.	Manir, to become tender.	"

1112. The following paradigm will serve as a model:—

PRES. IND.	—	—	—	abolimos	abolís	—
PRES. SUBJ.	—	—	—	—	—	—
IMPERAT.	—	—	—	—	abolid	—
IMPERF.	abol-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.
AORIST.	abol-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	abol-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	abol-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	abol-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUTURE.	abolir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	abolir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

REMARK.—Blandir originally belonged to this class, but the forms *blande*, *blanden* are now coming into use.

1113. *Antojarse*, to long for, is limited to the third persons, singular and plural, of the several tenses.

1114. *Aplacer*, to please, and *atañer*, to appertain, are nearly obsolete, and appear only in the infinitive and the third persons, singular and plural, of the present and imperfect indicative:—

PRES. IND.	aplace, aplacen.	PRES. IND.	atañe, atañen.
IMPERF. IND.	aplacía, aplacían.	IMPERF. IND.	atañía, atañían.

<sup>1</sup> The missing forms may be supplied from *empedernecer*.

<sup>2</sup> The missing forms may be supplied from *garantizar*.

1115. *Balbucir*, *to stammer*, is not used where irregular verbs of Class IV strengthen the stem by adding *z* before *c*.

1116. *Cocer*, *to boil*, is rarely used in those forms whose termination begins with a strong vowel: *cuezo*; *cueza*, *cuezaa*, etc.

1117. *Concernir* *to concern*, is little used, and is limited to the third persons, singular and plural, of the several tenses:—

PRES. IND.	concierne, -ciernen.	IMP. SUBJ.	concerniera, -cernieran.
PRES. SUBJ.	concierna, -ciernan.	AOR. SUBJ.	concerniese, -cerniesen.
IMP. IND.	concernía, -cernían.	FUT. SUBJ.	concerniere, -cernieren.
AOR. IND.	concernió, -cernieron.	FUT. COND.	concerniría, -cernirían.
FUT. IND.	concernirá, -cernirán.	GERUND.	concerniendo.

1118. *Nacer*, *to be born*, on account of its meaning is not employed in the first person singular<sup>1</sup> of the present indicative or in the singular of the imperative.

1119. *Pacer*, *to graze*, is not used in those forms where irregular verbs of Class IV strengthen the stem.

1120. *Placer*, *to please*, (impersonal, Lat. *placet*,) is now rarely used except in certain exclamations. Besides being impersonal, it is restricted to the following persons and tenses:—

PRES. IND.	place,	AOR. IND.	plugo,
PRES. SUBJ.	plegue, or plazca,	IMP. SUBJ.	pluguiera,
IMPERAT.	plegue,	AOR. SUBJ.	pluguliese,
IMP. IND.	placía,	FUT. SUBJ.	pluguliere.

REMARK.—The compounds of *placer*, *complacer*, *desplacer*, are conjugated throughout like irregular verbs of Class IV.

1121. *Raer*, *to erase*, is in a great measure replaced by *borrar* and *raspar*; but when found, it is generally inflected like *caer*:—

PRES. IND.	{	raigo,	raes,	rae,	raemos,	raéis,	raen.
		rayo,					
PRES. SUBJ.	{	raigas,	raigas,	raigas,	raigamos,	raigáis,	raigán.
		raya,	rayas,	raya,	rayamos,	rayáis,	rayan.
IMP. IND.		raía,	raías,	raía,	raíamos,	raíais,	raían.
AOR. IND.		raí,	raíste,	rayó,	raímos,	raísteis,	rayeron.
							rayera, rayese, rayere; raeré, raería; rayendo.

1122. *Reponer*, when it has the meaning of *to reply*, is restricted to the aorist indicative; *repuse*, *repusiste*, *repuso*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> There are many verbs which, on account of their meaning, do not take a personal object, and therefore occur only in the third person. These need not be enumerated, since the circumstance in question will be evident from their meaning.

1123. *Roer, to gnaw*, has three forms of the present stem before a strong vowel:—

PRES. IND.	{ ro-o					
	{ roig-o	roes	roe	roemos	roéis	roen.
	{ roy-o					
PRES. SUBJ.	{ ro-a	ro-as	ro-a	ro-amos	ro-áis	ro-an.
	{ roig-a	roig-as	roig-a	roig-amos	roig-áis	roig-an.
	{ roy-a	roy-as	roy-a	roy-amos	roy-áis	roy-an.

REMARK.—*Corroer, to corrode*, makes *corree*, *correen*, in the present indicative, and *correea*, *correena*, in the subjunctive.

1124. *Soler, to be in the habit of*, is used only in the two following tenses:—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	
suelo,	I am wont (or accustomed).	solía,	I was wont (or I used to).
sueles,	thou art wont.	solías,	thou wast wont.
suele,	he is wont.	solía,	he was wont.
solemos,	we are wont.	solíamos,	we were wont.
soléis,	you are wont.	solíais,	you were wont.
suelen,	they are wont.	solían,	they were wont.

1125. *Yacer, to lie*, (Lat. *jacere*), is now rarely used except in epitaphs, for which only the third persons, singular and plural, of the present and imperfect indicative are required:—

Aquí yace, or yacen.	Here lieth, or lie.
Aquí yacía, or yacían.	Here lay.

#### IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES.

Participles in the first conjugation end in *ado*, in the other two conjugations in *ido*. Those having any other endings are said to be irregular, and have been in part exhibited among the irregular verbs. The irregularities are generally due to a closer adherence to the original Latin forms.

1126. The following verbs, which are otherwise regular, have an irregular past participle:—

Abrir, to open.	pp. abierto.	LATIN, <i>apertus</i> .
Cubrir, to cover.	cubierto.	<i>co-opertus</i> .
Escribir, to write.	escrito.	<i>scriptus</i> .
Imprimir, to impress, print.	impreso.	<i>impressus</i> .

REMARK.—The compounds of *abrir*, *cubrir* and *escribir* form their past participles in the same manner.

1127. The following irregular verbs, together with their compounds, have an irregular past participle:—

Decir, to say, tell.	<i>pp. dicho.</i>	LATIN, <i>dictus.</i>
Hacer ( <i>facere</i> ), to do, make.	hecho.	<i>factus.</i>
Morir, to die.	muerto.	<i>mortuus.</i>
Poner, to put, place.	puesto.	<i>positus.</i>
Solver, to loosen.	suelto.	<i>solutus.</i>
Ver, to see.	visto.	<i>visus.</i>
Volver, to turn, return.	vuelto.	<i>volutus.</i>

1128. In the cases given above, the irregular past participle is the only one in use. There are, however, a considerable number of verbs which have two past participles: one regular in form and usage; and the other, a closer adherence to the Latin, irregular. The list need not be given in full, since the irregular forms are restricted to use as adjectives, and are to be found as such in dictionaries. The following will serve as examples:—

INFINITIVE.	REGULAR.	IRREGULAR.	LATIN.
Abstraer	abstraído	abstracto	<i>abstractus.</i>
Atender	atendido	atento	<i>attentus.</i>
Bendecir	bendecido	bendito	<i>benedictus.</i>
Confundir	confundido	confuso	<i>confusus.</i>
Desertar	desertado	desierto	<i>desertus.</i>
Distinguir	distinguido	distinto	<i>distinctus.</i>
Excluir	excluido	excluso	<i>exclusus.</i>
Fijar	fijado	fijo	<i>fixus.</i>
Invertir	invertido	inverso	<i>inversus.</i>
Juntar	juntado	junto	<i>junctus.</i>
Manifestar	manifestado	manifiesto	<i>manifestus.</i>
Ocultar	ocultado	oculto	<i>occultus.</i>
Pervertir	pervertido	perverso	<i>perversus.</i>
Requerir	requerido	requisito	<i>requiritus.</i>
Soltar	soltado	suelto	<i>solutus.</i>
Torcer	torcido	tuerto	<i>tortus.</i>

1129. There are a few verbs, having two participial forms, which require more particular notice:—

INFINITIVE.	REGULAR.	IRREGULAR.	LATIN.
Bienquerer	bienquerido	bienquisto	<i>frictus.</i>
Freír	freado	frito	
Malquerer	malquerido	malquisto	



Prender	prendido	preso	<i>prensus.</i>
Romper	rompido	roto	<i>ruptus.</i>
Suprimir	suprimido	supreso	<i>suppressus.</i>

1130. *Bienquerer* and *malquerer* preserve the usual distinction between the regular forms in *-querido* and the irregular in *-quisto*.<sup>1</sup> Except in the past participles, these two verbs are oftener used as separable:—

Queremos bien á todo el mundo.	We wish well to everybody.
Me dijo que me quería bien, que no me quería mal.	He told me 'he wished me well, that he did not wish me ill.
Mi madre era bienquista de cuantos la conocían.	My mother was liked by all who knew her.
Es un hombre malquisto de todos.	He is a man disliked by everybody.

1131. Both participles of *freir*, *to fry*, may be used with *haber*; with *ser* and *estar*, as an adjective, *frito* alone is admissible:—

¿ Han freído (or frito) ó asado el escombros?	Have they fried or baked the mackerel?
Ya está frito.	It is already fried.
Media docena de ostiones fritos.	Half a dozen fried oysters.

1132. *Muerto*, although from *morir*, an entirely different word, is used as a euphemism for *matado*, past participle of *matar*, *to kill, slaughter*. *Matado* is confined to the killing of animals, suicide, and figurative uses. *Muerto*, when intransitive, has its primary meaning—*to die*:—

El herido ha muerto.	The wounded man is dead ( <i>lit.</i> has died).
Hemos muerto al salteador.	We have killed the robber.
Se ha muerto de tristeza.	He died broken-hearted.
Se ha matado.	He has killed himself.
El aguacero ha matado el polvo.	The shower has laid the dust.
Este caballo está matado.	This horse is saddle-galled.
Este caballo está muerto.	This horse is dead.
Hay tan grande escasez de forraje que los hacendados han matado gran parte de su ganado.	Fodder is so scarce that the farmers have killed many of their cattle.
Me ha matado con su palabrería.	He has worn me out with his long talk.

<sup>1</sup> See, also, § 1097.

**REMARK.**—In speaking of the casualties of battles and accidents it is customary to use the active *morir* instead of the passive *ser muerto* (contrary to the English usage):—

De los nuestros 43 murieron y 152 fueron heridos. On our side 43 were killed and 152 were wounded.

Trece obreras murieron debajo de los escombros. Thirteen work girls were killed under the ruins.

1133. With *prender* the usual distinction holds good generally between *prendido* and *preso*; but in the sense of *to arrest*, either may be used after *haber*:—

Dos de los ladrones han sido presos. Two of the robbers have been arrested.

Los civiles han prendido (*or preso*) otros dos. The police have arrested two others.

El fuego ha prendido en la bodega de popa. Fire has broken out in the afterhold.

**REMARK.**—The participles of the compound of *prender*—*aprender, to learn, comprender, to understand, emprender, to undertake*—are regular.

1134. *Romper, to break*, has *rompido* and *roto*; but the latter is preferred even after *haber* whenever the meaning is transitive:—

La granizada ha roto muchos vidrios del invernadero. The hail has broken many panes of glass in the greenhouse.

La cuerda de mi reloj está rota. The mainspring of my watch is broken.

Ella ha rompido con su novio. She has broken with her lover.

Ha rompido un día de principios nuevos. A day of new dispensation has dawned.

**REMARK.**—The compounds of *romper* form their past participles regularly: *corrompido, corrupted; interrumpido, interrupted*; etc.

1135. There are a few participles which, although passive in form, are employed as designations of the person who manifests (generally in an active manner) the action of the verb. They are then to all intents true adjectives:—

*Agradecido, grateful.*

*Almorsado, who has breakfasted.*

*Atrevido, daring.*

*Bebido, having drunk plenty; bien bebido, drunk.*

*Callado, silent.*

*Cansado, tiresome.*

*Cenado, who has eaten supper.*

*Comedido, polite.*

*Comido, having eaten enough.*

*Considerado, considerate, prudent.*

*Desconfiado, distrustful.*

*Descreído, unbelieving.*

*Desesperado, hopeless, desperate.*

Disimulado, dissembling.  
 Emigrado, an emigrant.  
 Encogido, spiritless, timid.  
 Esforzado, stout, brave.  
 Fingido, dissembling.  
 Leído, well-read.  
 Medido, cautious, moderate.  
 Mirado, circumspect, precise.  
 Moderado, moderate.  
 Osado, fearless, bold.

[Bien] parecido, [good-]looking.  
 Porfiado, opinionated, disputations.  
 Precavido, cautious.  
 Preciado, self-important.  
 Presumido, presuming, boastful.  
 Recatado, modest, circumspect.  
 Sabido, knowing.  
 Sacudido, a rough customer.  
 Sentido, sensitive.  
 Valido, influential.

#### INDEX OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1136. In the following list those verbs compounded with prefixes are "indented" (i.e. *set in* from the margin) when their primary verbs are conjugated in the same manner. When the primary verb is inflected differently, the first compound, reckoned alphabetically, is "flush" with the margin.

[35] The verbs belonging to the first five classes are indexed accordingly. Of those remaining, each is followed by the number of the section in which that particular verb, or the model upon which it is conjugated, is to be found. Obsolete and very unusual verbs have been omitted.

Abastecer.....	IV	Adquirir.....	§ 1078
Abnegar.....	I	Aducir.....	§ 1101
Abolir.....	§ 1111	Advertir.....	II
Aborrecer.....	IV	Aforar <sup>1</sup> .....	I
Absolver.....	I	Agorar.....	I
Abstenerse.....	§ 1089	Agradecer.....	IV
Abstractar.....	§ 1100	Aguerrir.....	§ 1111
Acaecer.....	IV	Alebrarse.....	I
Acertar.....	I	Alentar.....	I
Acollar.....	I	Aliquebrar.....	I
Acontecer.....	IV	Almorzar.....	I
Acordar <sup>1</sup> .....	I	Amanecer.....	IV
Acostar.....	I	Amoblar.....	I
Acrecentar.....	I	Amolar.....	I
Adecantar.....	I	Amollecere.....	IV
Adestrar.....	I	Amortecerse.....	IV
Adherir.....	II	Amover.....	I
Adolecer.....	IV	Andar.....	§ 1088
Adormecer.....	IV	Anochecer.....	IV

<sup>1</sup> Regular when meaning to *tune* a musical instrument.

<sup>2</sup> Regular when meaning to *gauge* or *appraise*.

Antedecir.....	§ 1098	Bendecir.....	§ 1099
Anteponer.....	§ 1094	Bienquerer.....	§ 1097
Antever.....	§ 1105	Blanquecer.....	IV
Apacentar.....	I	Bregar.....	I
Aparecer.....	IV	Caber.....	§ 1091
Apercollar.....	I	Caer.....	§ 1107
Apetecer.....	IV	Calentar.....	I
Aplacer.....	§ 1114	Canecer.....	IV
Apostar <sup>1</sup> .....	I	Carecer.....	IV
Apretar.....	I	Cegar.....	I
Aprobar.....	I	Cefir.....	III
Argüir.....	V	Cerner.....	I
Arrecirse.....	§ 1111	Cerrar.....	I
Arrendar.....	I	Cimentar.....	I
Arrepentirse.....	II	Circuir.....	V
Ascender.....	I	Clarecer.....	IV
Asentir.....	II	Clocar.....	I
Aserrar.....	I	Cocer (§ 1116).....	I
Asir.....	§ 1109	Colar.....	I
Asolar.....	I	Colegir.....	III
Asonar.....	I	Colgar.....	I
Asosegar.....	I	Comedir.....	III
Atañer.....	§ 1112	Comenzar.....	I
Atender.....	I	Compadecer.....	IV
Atenerse.....	§ 1089	Comparecer.....	IV
Atentar <sup>2</sup> .....	I	Competir.....	III
Aterirse.....	§ 1111	Complacer.....	III
Aterrar <sup>3</sup> .....	I	Componer.....	§ 1098
Atestar <sup>4</sup> .....	I	Comprobar.....	I
Atraer.....	§ 1114	Concebir.....	III
Atravesar.....	I	Concernir (§ 1117).....	II
Atribuir.....	V	Concertar.....	I
Atronar.....	I	Concluir.....	V
Avalemtar.....	I	Concordar.....	I
Avenir.....	§ 1095	Condescender.....	I
Aventar.....	I	Condolerse.....	I
Avergonzar.....	I	Conducir.....	§ 1101
Azolar.....	I	Conferir.....	II
Balbucir.....	§ 1115	Confesar.....	I

<sup>1</sup> Regular when meaning to *post* troops, guards, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Regular with the more usual modern meaning of to *attempt* a crime.

<sup>3</sup> *Aterrar* (from *terror*), to *terrify*, is regular; *ateerrar* (from *tierra*), to *fall to the ground*, is irregular.

<sup>4</sup> Regular when meaning to *testify*.



Confluir.....	V	Deponer.....	§ 1094
Conmover .....	I	Derrengar.....	I
Conocer .....	IV	Derretir.....	III
Conseguir.....	III	Derrocar.....	I
Consentir.....	II	Derruir.....	V
Consolar.....	I	Desacertar.....	I
Consonar.....	I	Desacordar.....	I
Constituir.....	V	Desadvertir.....	II
Constreñir.....	III	Desaferrar.....	I
Construir.....	V	Desaforar.....	I
Contar.....	I	Desagradecer.....	IV
Contender.....	I	Desalentar.....	I
Contener.....	§ 1089	Desamoblar.....	I
Contorcerse.....	I	Desandar.....	§ 1088
Contracordar.....	I	Desaparecer.....	IV
Contradecir.....	§ 1098	Dasapretar.....	I
Contraer.....	§ 1100	Desaprobar... ..	I
Contrahacer.....	§ 1096	Desarrendar.....	I
Contraponer.....	§ 1094	Desasir.....	§ 1109
Contravenir.....	§ 1095	Desasosegar.....	I
Contribuir .....	V	Desatender.....	I
Controvertir.....	II	Desatentar.....	I
Convalecer.....	IV	Desaterrar.....	I
Convenir.....	§ 1095	Desavenir.....	§ 1095
Convertir.....	II	Desaventar.....	I
Corregir.....	III	Descaecer.....	IV
Corroer .....	§ 1128	Descender.....	I
Costar.....	I	Desceñir.....	III
Crecer.....	IV	Descolgar.....	I
Dar.....	§ 1102	Descollar.....	I
Decaer.....	§ 1107	Descomedirse.....	III
Decir .....	§ 1098	Descomponer.....	§ 1094
Decrecer .....	IV	Desconcertar.....	I
Deducir.....	§ 1101	Desconocer.....	IV
Defender.....	I	Desconsentir.....	II
Deferir.....	II	Desconsolar.....	I
Degollar.....	I	Descontar.....	I
Demoler.....	I	Desconvenir.....	§ 1095
Demostrar.....	I	Descordar.....	I
Denegar.....	I	Desdecir.....	§ 1098
Denegrecer.....	IV	Desembebecerse.....	IV
Denostar .....	I	Desembellecer.....	IV
Dentar.....	I	Desembravecer.....	IV

Desempedrar.....	I	Desobedecer.....	IV
Desencarecer.....	IV	Desoír....	§ 1108
Desencerrar.....	I	Desolar.....	I
Desencordar.....	I	Desoldar.....	I
Desencrudecer.....	IV	Desollar.....	I
Desenfurecerse.....	IV	Desobstruir.....	V
Desengrosar.....	I	Desosar <sup>1</sup> (p. 465).....	I
Desenmohecer.....	IV	Desovar (p. 465).....	I
Desenmudecer.....	IV	Desparecer.....	IV
Desentenderse.....	I	Despavorir.....	§ 1111
Desenterrar.....	I	Despedir.....	III
Desentorpecer.....	IV	Desperecer.....	IV
Desentristecer.....	IV	Despertar.....	I
Desentumecer.....	IV	Desplacer.....	III
Desenvolver.....	I	Desplegar.....	I
Deservir.....	III	Despoblar.....	I
Desfallecer.....	IV	Desproveer.....	§ 1106
Desfavorecer.....	IV	Destefnir.....	III
Desferrar.....	I	Desterrar.....	I
Desfiocar.....	I	Destituir.....	V
Desflorecer.....	IV	Destorcer.....	I
Desfortalecer.....	IV	Destruir.....	V
Desgobernar.....	I	Desvanecer.....	IV
Desguarnecer.....	IV	Desventar.....	I
Deshacer.....	§ 1096	Desvergonzarse.....	I
Deshelar.....	I	Detener.....	§ 1089
Desherbar.....	I	Detraer.....	§ 1100
Desherrar.....	I	Devolver.....	I
Desimponer.....	§ 1094	Dezmar.....	I
Desinvernar.....	I	Diferir.....	II
Desleír.....	III	Difluir.....	V
Deslendar.....	I	Digerir.....	II
Deslucir.....	IV	Diluir.....	V
Desmarrirse.....	§ 1111	Discernir (p. 467).....	II
Desmedirse.....	III	Discordar.....	I
Desmelar.....	I	Disentir.....	II
Desmembrar.....	I	Disminuir.....	V
Desmentir.....	II	Disolver.....	I
Desmerecer.....	IV	Disonar.....	I
Desnegar.....	I	Disponer.....	§ 1094
Desnevar.....	I	Distraer.....	§ 1100

<sup>1</sup> Desosar, *not to dare* (derived from osar), is regular. When irregular desosar is from hueso.

Distribuir.....	V	Endentecer.....	IV
Divertir.....	II	Endurecer.....	V
Doler.....	I	Enfierecerse.....	IV
Dormir.....	II	Enflaquecer.....	IV
Elegir.....	III	Enfranquecer.....	IV
Embaír.....	§ 1111	Enfurecer.....	IV
Embarbecer.....	IV	Engorar.....	I
Embebecer.....	IV	Engrandecer.....	IV
Embellecer.....	IV	Engreír.....	III
Embestir.....	III	Engrosar.....	I
Emblandecer.....	IV	Engrumecerse.....	IV
Emblanquecer.....	IV	Enhestar.....	I
Embobecer.....	IV	Enlénzar.....	I
Embravecer.....	IV	Enloquecer.....	IV
Embrutecer.....	IV	Enlucir.....	IV
Emparentar.....	I	Enmagrecer.....	IV
Empedernir.....	§ 1111	Enmalecer.....	IV
Empedrar.....	I	Enmarillicerse.....	IV
Empellar.....	I	Enmelar.....	I
Empequeñecer.....	IV	Enmendar.....	I
Empezar.....	I	Enmohecer.....	IV
Emplastecer.....	IV	Enmudecer.....	IV
Emplumecer.....	IV	Ennegrecer.....	IV
Empobrecer.....	IV	Ennoblecer.....	IV
Enaltecer.....	IV	Ennudecer.....	IV
Enardecer.....	IV	Enorgullecer.....	IV
Encabellecerse.....	IV	Enrarecer.....	IV
Encalvecer.....	IV	Enriquecer.....	IV
Encallecer.....	IV	Enrobustecer.....	IV
Encanecer.....	IV	Enrodar.....	I
Encarecer.....	IV	Enrojecer.....	IV
Encarnecer.....	IV	Enronquecer.....	IV
Encender.....	I	Enroñecer.....	IV
Encentar.....	I	Ensalmorar.....	I
Encerrar.....	I	Ensangrentar.....	I
Encomendar.....	I	Ensobarbecer.....	IV
Encontrar.....	I	Ensoñar.....	I
Encordar.....	I	Ensordecer.....	IV
Encorecer.....	IV	Entallecer.....	IV
Encrudecer.....	IV	Entender.....	I
Encruelecer.....	IV	Entenebreecer.....	IV
Encubertar.....	I	Enternecer.....	IV
Endentar.....	I	Enterrar.....	I

Entigrecerse.....	IV	Fortalecer... ..	IV
Entontecer.....	IV	Forzar.....	I
Entorpecer.....	IV	Fregar.....	I
Entredecir.....	§ 1098	Freir.....	III
Entrelucir.....	VI	Garantir.....	§ 1111
Entremorir.....	II	Gemir.....	III
Entreoír.....	§ 1106	Gobernar.....	I
Entrepareserse.....	IV	Guarecer.....	IV
Entreponer.....	§ 1094	Guarnecer.....	IV
Entretener.....	§ 1089	Haber.....	§ 1087
Entrever.....	§ 1105	Hacendar.....	I
Enristecer.....	IV	Hacer.....	§ 1096
Entullecera.....	IV	Heder.....	I
Entumecer.....	IV	Helar.....	I
Envanecer.....	IV	Henchir.....	III
Envejecer.....	IV	Hender.....	I
Enverdecer.....	IV	Hefir.....	III
Envestir.....	III	Herbar.....	I
Envilecer.....	IV	Herir.....	II
Envolver.....	I	Herrar... ..	I
Equivaler.....	§ 1110	Hervir.....	II
Erguir.....	II	Holgar.....	I
Errar (p. 465).....	I	Hollar.....	I
Escandecer.....	IV	Huir.....	V
Escarmentar.....	I	Humedecer.....	IV
Escarnecer.....	IV	Imbuir.....	V
Esclarecer.....	IV	Impedir.....	III
Escocer.....	I	Imponer.....	§ 1094
Esforzar.....	I	Improbar.....	I
Establecer.....	IV	Incensar.....	I
Estar.....	§ 1090	Incluir.....	V
Estatuir.....	V	Indisponer.....	§ 1094
Estremecer.....	IV	Inducir.....	§ 1101
Estreñir.....	III	Inferir.....	II
Excluir.....	V	Influir.....	V
Expedir.....	III	Ingerir (or injerir) .....	II
Exponer.....	§ 1094	Inquirir.....	§ 1073
Extender.....	I	Instituir.....	V
Extraer.....	§ 1100	Instruir.....	V
Fallecer.....	IV	Interdecir.....	§ 1096
Favorecer.....	IV	Interponer.....	§ 1094
Fenecer.....	IV	Intervenir.....	§ 1095
Florecer.....	IV	Introducir.....	§ 1101
Fluir.....	V	Invernar.....	I



Invertir.....	II	Palidecer.....	IV
Investir.....	III	Parecer.....	IV
Ir.....	§ 1104	Pedir.....	III
Jugar.....	I	Pensar <sup>1</sup> .....	I
Languidecer.....	IV	Perder.....	I
Liquefacer.....	§ 1096	Perecer.....	IV
Lobreguecer.....	IV	Permanecer.....	IV
Lucir.....	IV	Perseguir.....	III
Luir.....	V	Pertenecer.....	IV
Llover.....	I	Pervertir.....	II
Maldecir....	§ 1099	Placer... ..	§ 1120
Malherir.....	II	Plastecer.....	IV
Malquerer.....	§ 1097	Plegar.....	I
Malsonar.....	I	Poblar.....	I
Maltraer.....	§ 1100	Poder.....	§ 1093
Manifestar.....	I	Podrir ( <i>or</i> pudrir).....	II
Manir.....	§ 1111	Poner.....	§ 1094
Mantener.....	§ 1089	Posponer.....	§ 1094
Medir.....	III	Preconocer.....	IV
Melar.....	I	Predecir.....	§ 1098
Mentar <sup>1</sup> .....	I	Predisponer.....	§ 1094
Mentir.....	II	Preferir.....	II
Merecer.....	IV	Prelucir.....	IV
Merendar.....	I	Preponer.....	§ 1094
Moler... ..	I	Presentir.....	II
Morder.....	I	Presuponer.....	§ 1094
Morir.....	II	Prevalecer.....	IV
Mostrar.....	I	Prevenir.....	§ 1095
Mover.....	I	Prever.....	§ 1106
Nacer (§ 1118).....	IV	Probar.....	I
Negar.....	I	Producir.....	§ 1101
Nevar.....	I	Proferir.....	II
Obedecer.....	IV	Promover.....	I
Obscurecer ( <i>or</i> oscurecer)....	IV	Proponer.....	§ 1094
Obstruir.....	V	Proseguir.....	III
Obtener.....	§ 1089	Proveer.....	§ 1106
Ofrecer.....	IV	Provenir.....	§ 1095
Oír.....	§ 1108	Quebrar.....	I
Oler (§ 1066).....	I	Querer.....	§ 1097
Oponer.....	§ 1094	Raer.....	§ 1121
Pacer (§ 1119).....	IV	Rarefacer.....	§ 1096
Padecer.....	IV	Reagradecer.....	IV

<sup>1</sup> The derivatives *comentar* and *dementar* are regular.<sup>2</sup> The derivatives *compensar*, *recompensar*, are regular.

Reaparecer.....	IV	Rehollar.....	I
Reapretar.....	I	Rehuir.....	V
Reaventar.....	I	Rehumedecer.....	IV
Rebendecir.....	§ 1099	Reír.....	III
Reblandecer.....	IV	Rejuvenecer.....	IV
Recaer.....	§ 1107	Relentecer.....	IV
Recalentar.....	I	Relucir.....	IV
Recentar.....	I	Remendar.....	I
Receñir.....	III	Remoler.....	I
Recluir.....	V	Remorder.....	I
Recocer.....	I	Remover.....	I
Recolar.....	I	Renacer.....	IV
Recolegir.....	III	Render.....	III
Recomendar.....	I	Renegar.....	I
Recomponer.....	§ 1094	Renovar.....	I
Reconducir.....	§ 1101	Refir.....	III
Reconocer.....	IV	Repacer.....	IV
Reconstruir.....	V	Repadecer.....	IV
Recontar.....	I	Repedir.....	III
Reconvalecer.....	IV	Repensar.....	II
Reconvenir.....	§ 1095	Repetir.....	III
Recordar.....	I	Replegar.....	I
Recostar.....	I	Repoblar.....	I
Recrecer.....	IV	Repodrir.....	II
Recrudecer.....	IV	Reponer.....	§ 1094
Reducir.....	§ 1101	Reprobar.....	I
Reelegir.....	III	Reproducir.....	§ 1101
Reencomendar.....	I	Repudrir.....	II
Referir.....	II	Requebrar.....	I
Reflorecer.....	IV	Requerer.....	§ 1097
Refluir.....	V	Requerir.....	II
Reforzar.....	I	Rosaber.....	§ 1093
Refregar.....	I	Rosallir.....	§ 1110
Refreír.....	III	Resegar.....	I
Regar.....	I	Resembrar.....	I
Regimentar.....	I	Resentirse.....	II
Regir.....	III	Resolver.....	I
Regoldar.....	I	Resollar.....	I
Rehacer.....	§ 1096	Resonar.....	I
Rehenchir.....	III	Resplandecer.....	IV
Reherir.....	II	Resquebrar.....	I
Reherrar.....	I	Restablecer.....	IV
Rehervir.....	II	Restituir.....	V

Restregar.....	I	Sobresolar.....	I
Retemblar.....	I	Sobrevenir.....	§ 1095
Retener.....	§ 1089	Sobreventar.....	I
Retentar.....	I	Sobrevertirse.....	I
Retefñir.....	III	Sobrevestir.....	II
Retoflecer.....	IV	Sofreír.....	III
Retorcer.....	I	Solar.....	I
Retostar.....	I	Soldar.....	I
Retraer.....	§ 1100	Soler (§ 1125).....	II
Retribuir.....	V	Soltar.....	I
Retronar.....	I	Solver.....	I
Revenirse.....	§ 1095	Soller.....	I
Reventar.....	I	Somover.....	I
Rever.....	§ 1105	Sonar.....	I
Reverdecer.....	IV	Sonreír.....	III
Reverter.....	I	Sonrodarse.....	I
Revestir.....	III	Sofiar.....	I
Revolcarse.....	I	Sorregar.....	I
Revolver.....	II	Sosegar.....	I
Robustecer.....	IV	Sostener.....	§ 1089
Rodar.....	I	Soterrar.....	I
Roer.....	§ 1128	Subarrendar.....	I
Rogar <sup>1</sup> .....	I	Subentender.....	I
Saber.....	§ 1092	Subseguir.....	III
Salir.....	§ 1110	Subtender.....	I
Salpimentar.....	I	Subvenir.....	§ 1095
Sarmentar.....	I	Subvertir.....	II
Satisfacer.....	§ 1096	Sugerir.....	II
Segar.....	I	Superponer.....	§ 1094
Seguir.....	III	Supervenir.....	§ 1095
Sembrar.....	I	Suponer.....	§ 1094
Sementar.....	I	Sustituir.....	V
Sentar.....	I	Sustraer.....	§ 1100
Sentir.....	II	Tallecer.....	IV
Ser.....	§ 1108	Temblar.....	I
Serrar.....	I	Tender <sup>2</sup> .....	I
Servir.....	III	Tener.....	§ 1089
Sobrecrecer.....	IV	Tentar <sup>3</sup> .....	I
Sobrentender.....	I	Tefñir.....	III
Sobreponer.....	§ 1094	Torcer.....	I
Sobresalir.....	§ 1110	Tostar.....	I
Sobresembrar.....	I	Traducir.....	§ 1101

<sup>1</sup> All the derivatives of rogar are regular.<sup>2</sup> The derivative pretender is regular.<sup>3</sup> The derivatives contentar, detentar, intentar are regular.

Tracer.....	§ 1100	Trocar.....	I
Trascender.....	I	Tronar.....	I
Trascolar.....	I	Tropezar.....	I
Trascordarse.....	I	Valer.....	§ 1110
Trasegar.....	I	Venir.....	§ 1095
Trasferir.....	II	Ver.....	§ 1105
Trasfregar.....	I	Verdecer.....	IV
Traslucirse.....	IV	Verter.....	I
Trasoir.....	§ 1108	Vestir.....	III
Trasofiar.....	I	Volar.....	I
Trasponer.....	§ 1094	Volcar.....	I
Trastrocar.....	I	Volver.....	I
Trasverter.....	I	Yacer.....	§ 1125
Trasvolar.....	I	Yuxtaponer.....	§ 1094
Travesar.....	I	Zaherir.....	II

## PREPOSITIONS.

1137. The simplest use of prepositions is to express the relations of things to each other in respect to time or place: *before, after, in, upon, under*. They extend, however, to many other relations, and especially to the relations between adjectives or verbs and the nouns or pronouns to which they apply.

NOTE.—When the pronoun following a preposition admits of case inflection it assumes what is called the prepositional case (§ 228).

1138. The simple prepositions are:—

<b>Á</b> , at, to.	<b>Hacia</b> , towards.
<b>Ante</b> , before.	<b>Hasta</b> , until, to, up to.
<b>Bajo</b> , under.	<b>Mediante</b> , by means of.
<b>Con</b> , with.	<b>Para</b> (§§ 867-76), for.
<b>Contra</b> , against.	<b>Por</b> (§§ 353-66), for, by.
<b>De</b> , of, from.	<b>Salvo</b> , except, save.
<b>Desde</b> , from, since.	<b>Según</b> , according to.
<b>Durante</b> , during.	<b>Sin</b> , without.
<b>En</b> , in, into, at, on.	<b>So</b> , under.
<b>Entre</b> , among, between.	<b>Sobre</b> , on, about.
<b>Excepto</b> , except.	<b>Tras</b> , after.

1139. Compound prepositions, or prepositional phrases, are formed in several ways:—

a. A word, most frequently an adjective, used adverbially and followed by **á**:—



Adversamente á, adversely to.  
 Conforme á, according to.  
 Contrario á, contrary to.  
 Correspondiente á, corresponding to.  
 Frente á, opposite to.

Junto á, close to.  
 Relativamente á, in relation to.  
 Respetto á, with respect to.  
 Tosante á, in (*or* with) regard to.  
 Concerniente á, concerning.

b. Simple adverbs followed by *de*:—

Acerca de, about, concerning.  
 Además de, besides, in addition to.  
 Alrededor de, around.  
 Antes de, before (*time, order*).  
 Cerca de, near, about.  
 Debajo de, under.  
 Delante de, before (*place*).

Dentro de, within.  
 Después de, after (*time, order*).  
 Detrás de, behind, after (*time, order*).  
 Encima de, over, on top of.  
 Fuera de, outside of.  
 Lejos de, far from.

REMARK.—*Con* may be used after an adverb in the same manner as *á* and *de*; but its use is limited by its small range of signification:—  
 Juntamente con los otros estudiantes. Jointly with the other students.

c. Either of the above classes preceded by another preposition:—

En cuanto á, as for.  
 Á causa de, on account of.  
 Á excepción de, with the exception of.  
 Á fuerza de, by dint of.  
 Al través de, across.  
 Á pesar de, in spite of.

En frente de, in front of.  
 En vez de, instead of.  
 En virtud de, by virtue of.  
 Por causa de, on account of.  
 Por razón de, by reason of.  
 Sin embargo de, notwithstanding.

1140. *De á* are combined to express rate or denomination:—

Tabacos de á diez centavos, de á tres por veinticinco.	Ten-cent cigars, three-for-a-quarter cigars.
Diez sellos de á quince céntimos y cuatro de á veinte y cinco.	Ten three-cent stamps and four fives.
Clavos de á ochavo.	Tenpenny nails.
Un guardia civil de á caballo.	A mounted policeman.
Los de á pie.	The infantry.
El portero de al lado.	The porter of the next house.
Billetes de á cinco pesos.	Five-dollar bills.
Bonos nacionales de á tres por ciento.	Three per cent. government bonds.

1141. Prepositional compounds may be formed by placing *de* or *por* before other prepositions, each member retaining its own value:—

El fuente salía de entre dos cerros elevados y roqueños.	The spring issued from between two high, rocky hills.
Las luciérnagas revoloteaban por entre las ramas.	The fireflies were dancing among the boughs.
Al pasar por delante del teatro . . .	On passing in front of the theater . . .
Un arroyuelo serpenteaba por entre las malezas.	A brook wound through among the underbrush.
Saltó una liebre de entre las matas.	A hare jumped out from among the bushes.
La bala pasó por encima de su cabeza.	The ball passed over his head.
Saltó por encima de la zanja, por encima del seto.	He jumped across the ditch, over the hedge.

#### 1142 Para con signifies moral direction toward:—

Su conducta para con sus hijos.	His behavior towards his children.
Ha sido muy amable para conmigo.	He has been very kind toward me.
Noté que él era muy respetuoso para con su madre.	I noticed that he was very respectful towards his mother.
Este hombre es muy duro para con sus criados.	This man is very severe towards his servants.
Es afable y caritativo para con todos.	He is affable and charitable to all.
Me parece que su padre es injusto para con él.	It seems to me that his father is unjust towards him.
Es ingrato para con sus padres.	He is ungrateful towards his parents.
Se mostró cruel para con los prisioneros.	He showed himself cruel to the prisoners.
Es liberal para con sus empleados.	He is liberal towards his employée.

#### ADVERBS.

1143. Adverbs are all words that cannot properly be included in any other class. They therefore form a residuary class whose limits are not easily defined.\* In general, they express time, place, manner, degree, doubt, affirmation and negation; but these subdivisions melt insensibly into each other.

It would be impracticable to present a complete list of all the adverbs of the language in a work of this compass; only enough, therefore, will be given to illustrate the several classes.

1144. In point of form it will be convenient to distinguish them as:—

a. Those that may be regarded as simple and original:—

Ahí, thus, so.	Hoy, to-day.
Aun (§ 89), yet, still.	Luego, soon.

Bien, well.  
Casi, almost.

Muy, very.  
Nunca, never.

*b.* Other words used adverbially without change:—

Alto, aloud.  
Claro, clearly.  
Mañana, to-morrow.

Quedo, softly, gently.  
Roco, vehemently.  
Temprano, early.

*c.* Adverbs derived from pronouns: —

Algo, rather, somewhat.

Nada, not at all.

*d.* Adverbs formed from adjectives by adding *-mente*:—

Ciertamente, certainly.  
Lentamente, slowly.

Recientemente, recently.  
Últimamente, lately.

REMARK.—It is obvious that adverbs formed by the addition of *-mente* may be almost as numerous as adjectives of quality. The class has been treated of in Lesson XV.

*e.* Those formed from other words by the help of prepositions. This class may be subdivided as follows:—

PREPOSITION & JOINED TO A FOLLOWING WORD.

Abajo, down.  
Acaso, perhaps.  
Adelante, forwards.  
Afuera, abroad.  
Ahora, now.

Anoche, last night.  
Apenas, scarcely, hardly.  
Aprisa, aprisa, quickly.  
Arriba, up, aloft.  
Atrás, backwards.

WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Á la ligera, expeditiously.  
Á la moda, in style.  
Á la verdad, in truth.  
Á la vista, in sight.  
Al contado, in cash.  
Al momento, instantly.

Al raso, in the open air.  
En el acto, instantly.  
En lo sucesivo, henceforth.  
Por lo pronto, for the time being.  
Por lo regular, ordinarily.  
Por lo tanto, consequently.

WITHOUT THE ARTICLE, SINGULAR.

Á porfía, persistently.  
Con ligereza, superficially.  
Con todo, notwithstanding.  
De balde, gratis.  
De lado, incidentally.  
De mala gana, unwillingly.  
De nuevo, anew.  
De raíz, radically.

De relance, fortuitously.  
De sopetón, suddenly.  
En resumen, in short.  
En revancha, in return.  
En seguida, at once.  
Por consiguiente, consequently.  
Por supuesto, of course.  
Por último, finally.

## WITHOUT THE ARTICLE, PLURAL.

Á cargas, abundantly.	De burlas, in jest.
Á ciegas, blindly.	De espaldas, on one's back.
Á dentelladas, snappishly.	De oídas, by hearsay.
Á escondidas, secretly.	De rodillas, on one's knees.
Á gatas, on all fours.	En ayunas, agog, uninformed.
Á medias, by halves.	En cueros, naked.
Á solas, alone, privately.	Por adarmes, very sparingly.

## f. Adverbial phrases:—

Á largo andar, in the course of time.	De par en par, wide open ( <i>doors</i> ).
Á manco llenas, liberally.	De vez en cuando, from time to time.
Á más no poder, with all one's might.	Gota á gota, drop by drop.
Á más tardar, at the latest.	Luego á luego, little by little ( <i>time</i> ).
Á ojos vistos, openly.	Mal de su grado, unwillingly.
Á sus anchas, at one's ease.	Poco á poco, little by little ( <i>degrees</i> ).
Cuanto antes, as soon as possible.	

Many of these adverbial phrases are restricted to certain verbs:—

Le miró de hito en hito.	He looked him through and through.
Le disparé el fusil á quemarropa.	I fired the gun at him point blank.
Saber una cosa de buena tinta.	To know a thing definitely, reliably.
Gritar á gansate tendido.	To shout at the top of one's lungs.

REMARK.—Many of these adverbial expressions may be further extended by the addition of other adverbs:—

Muy de golpe.	Very suddenly.
Demasiado á la ligera.	Too superficially.
Bastante de raíz.	Radically enough.

1145. In point of meaning adverbs may be classed as:—

## a. Adverbs of time:—

Ahora, now.	Jamás, never.
Á menudo, often.	Luego, soon.
De noche, at night.	Raras veces, seldom.
Después, afterwards.	Siempre, always.
Entonces, then.	Últimamente, lately

## b. Adverbs of place:—

Acá, hither.	Enfrente, opposite.
Á izquierda, on the left.	En otra parte, elsewhere.
Al rededor, around.	En todas partes, everywhere.
Dentro, within.	Lejos, far.
Detrás, behind.	Por aquí, near here.

## c. Adverbs of manner:—



The adverbs of manner are much more numerous than all the others. The greater part of them are adverbial phrases, or adverbs formed from adjectives by the addition of *-mente*:—

*Al por mayor*, by wholesale.  
*Á sabiendas*, wittingly.  
*Así*, so, thus.  
*Á tientas*, tentatively, groping.  
*Bien*, well.

*De antemano*, beforehand.  
*De improviso*, unexpectedly.  
*De propósito*, on purpose.  
*Despacio*, slowly.  
*Pasito á paso*, gently.

*d.* Adverbs of degree:—

*Algo*, somewhat, rather.  
*Apenas*, scarcely.  
*Bastante*, enough, tolerably.  
*Casi*, almost.  
*Demasiado*, too, too much.

*Harto*, enough.  
*Más bien*, rather.  
*Menos*, less.  
*Muy*, very.  
*Sobradamente*, excessively.

*e.* Adverbs of dubitation:—

*Acaso*, perhaps, forsooth.  
*Apenas*, hardly, scarcely.  
*Diffícilmente*, hardly, improbably.

*Por ventura*, peradventure.  
*Quizás, quizá*, } perhaps.  
*Tal vez*,

*f.* Adverbs of affirmation and negation:—

*Claro*, just, of course, just so.  
*Eso no*, not that.  
*Eso sí*, that indeed.  
*Jamás*, nunca, never.  
*Nada*, not at all.

*Ni—ni*, neither—nor.  
*Por cierto*, certainly.  
*Por supuesto*, of course.  
*Sin duda*, undoubtedly.  
*Tampoco*, just as little.

1146. Adverbs do not in themselves admit of inflection or require it in other words; but a few have an appearance of inflection, being either old comparatives of Latin origin or formed upon superlatives of that character:—

*Fidelísimamente*, most faithfully.  
*Máximo, máximamente*, especially.  
*Mejor*, better.

*Óptimamente*, in the best manner.  
*Pecor*, worse.  
*Pésimamente*, very badly.

REMARK.—Adverbs, however, admit of comparison in the same manner as adjectives, by means of *más* and *menos* (Lesson XXXIX).

1147. Adverbs expressing time or the direction of a movement, may be placed after nouns, thus forming adverbial phrases of time or place:—

*Años ántes*, years before.  
*Camino adelante*, onward.  
*Ciudad abajo*, down town.  
*Cuesta arriba*, up hill.  
*Escalera abajo*, down stairs.

*Mar afuera*, out to sea, seaward.  
*Meses después*, months afterwards.  
*Río abajo*, down stream.  
*Siglos atrás*, centuries ago.  
*Tierra adentro*, inland.

1148. The use of an adjective as an adverb is rare in Spanish, and is generally restricted in its application to a few verbs:—

Vivían felices, infelices.	They lived happily, unhappily.
Lo ataron firme á un poste.	They tied him firmly to a post.
La cordillera corre paralela con la costa.	The mountain chain runs parallel to the coast.
Diáfano y brillante está el cielo, por donde la luna vaga silenciosa.	The sky is clear and bright, across which the moon moves silently.
Uno que otro pájaro atraviesa el firmamento, volando perezoso.	Occasionally a bird crosses the sky, flying lazily.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

1149. A conjunction is a word that conjoins or connects. In general it connects two propositions, each complete in itself. The usual division into copulative, disjunctive, causal, etc., is without practical value. Pure and original conjunctions are few, while conjunctive phrases formed of prepositions or adverbs followed by *que*, *that*, are very numerous. In a few instances the *que* has dropped out of use, as *that* often has in English.

1150. The original conjunctions are:—

Ó ( <i>before o or ho, á</i> ), or.	Ni, nor, neither.
Y ( <i>before i or hi, é</i> ), and.	Que, that.
Pero, mas, sino, but.	Si, if, whether.

REMARK.—The uses and distinctions of these words have been shown in previous lessons, and may be found by consulting the index.

1151. Of the conjunctive phrases it is often more difficult than important to decide whether to call them conjunctions or relative adverbs. The following are the most usual:—

Á condición que, on condition that.	En caso que, in case that.
Á fin de que, in order that.	En tanto que, while, in case that.
Á medida que, according as.	En vez de que, instead of.
Á menos que, } unless.	Entre tanto que, while.
Á no ser que, }	Excepto que, excepting.
Ahora que, now that.	Hasta que, until.
Antes que, before.	Luego que, as soon as.
Así que, so that, so.	Mientras que, while.
Aunque, } although.	No obstante que, notwithstanding.
Bien que, }	Para que, in order that.
Como quiera que, however.	Por . . . que, however (§ 899).
Con que, so, therefore, so then.	Porque, because, in order that.

Con motivo que, so that.  
 Con tal que, so that.  
 Cuanto más que, the more since.  
 Dado que, in case that.  
 Dado caso que, supposing that.  
 De manera que, }  
 De modo que, } so that.  
 De suerte que, }  
 Desde que, since.  
 Después que, after.

Pues que, } since.  
 Puesto que, }  
 Sea que, whether, while.  
 Según que, according as.  
 Siempre que, whenever.  
 Sin que, without.  
 Supuesto que, granting that, since.  
 Tanto que, so that.  
 Ya que, since.

1152. Some conjunctions consist of pairs of words, separated by other and intervening words. These pairs are called correlatives:—

Apenas—cuando.

Así—como.

Así como—así también.

Aunque— { sin embargo [de eso].  
                   { no obstante [eso].  
                   { con todo [eso].

Ni—ni.

No bien—cuando.

No sólo—sino.

No solamente—sino.

No tan sólo—sino que. }

Ó—ó.

Ora—ora.

Sea—sea.

Ya—ya.

Scarcely—when.

Both—and.

Just as—so too.

Although—nevertheless.

Neither—nor.

Scarcely—when.

Not only—but.

Either—or.

Now—now.

Whether—or.

Whether—or, sometimes—sometimes.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

1153. True interjections are words, otherwise without meaning, used as exclamations denoting any strong emotion. They are:—

¡ Oh ! ¡ ah !

¡ Ay !

¡ Ha ! (*exultation.*)

¡ Hé ! (*shock, start.*)

¡ Ea ! (*encouragement.*)

¡ Ea, ea ! (*impatience.*)

¡ Huy ! (*pain, shock.*)

¡ Ola ! or ¡ hola ! (*recognition or discovery.*)

Oh ! ah !

Oh ! alas ! ah !

Ha ! eh !

Eh !

Come !

Come, come !

Ouch ! Phew !

Ah ! oh ! hello !

Ole ! ( <i>approval.</i> )	Bully ! Bravo !
Puf ! ( <i>aversion.</i> )	Ugh !
Uf ! ( <i>weariness.</i> )	Oh !
Ca ! and   quia ! ( <i>indignant denial or doubt.</i> )	
Bah ! ( <i>incredulity or contempt.</i> )	Pshaw !

REMARK.—Of these *ay* is the most common. It is peculiarly Spanish, as distinguished from the rest of Europe, and indicates joy or delight, as well as surprise or pain.

1154. Spanish abounds in exclamatory words, which are used as evasions of more profane terms:—

Caramba !	} And others begin- ning with ca-, ex- pressing surprise.	} These correspond to such English ex- clamations as <i>gracious ! the dickens ! great Scot ! by jingo ! etc.</i>
Carái !		
Caracoles !		
Canasto !		
Canario !		
Cáspita !	} And many other idle terms.	
Córcholis !		
Fuego !		
Zapatazos !		
Diabre ! (to avoid diablo, demonio).		
The deuce !		

1155. The names *Dios, Jesús, María*, etc., in exclamations, are not held to be profane or improper in Spanish. The priesthood called them “the instinctive elevation of the soul to its maker.” Be that as it may, they are employed profusely and upon the slightest provocation, and are to be rendered in English by some euphemism like *dear me !* (which is really *Dio mio*):—

Dios ! Gracious !	Cielos ! Heavens !
Por Dios ! For goodness' sake !	Jesús ! Oh heavens !
Dios mío ! Dear me !	Válgame Dios ! Bless me !
Ay Dios mío ! Oh dear me !	Virgen santa ! Oh mercy !

REMARK.—The exclamations | *Jesús !* | *Ave María !* or | *Ave María purísima !* are often uttered on seeing or hearing anything heretical, startling or incredible. | *Jesús !* alone, or | *Jesús, María, José !* used when another sneezes or yawns, is a relic of an old form of exorcism for preventing evil spirits from entering the mouth of the individual.

1156. Some interjections are restricted, in their application, to certain animals:—

Arre !	} (To draft-animals.)	Get up ! come up !
Alza !		
Anda !		
Vamos !		



¡ So ! ¡ jo ! ¡ cho !	(To draft-animals.)	Whoa !
¡ Miz miz !	{ (To cats.) }	Puss, puss ! Kitty, kitty !
¡ Zape !		Scat !
¡ Tus tus !	{ (To dogs.) }	Here, sir ! here, here !
¡ Toma !		

REMARK.—Some of the above have the effect of imperatives.

1157. Imperatives of verbs are sometimes regarded as interjections:—

¡ Anda !	{ (incredulity.) (importunity.) }	Pahaw ! go away ! Come ! do !
¡ Calla ! ¡ calle !	{ (command.) (incredulity.) }	Shut up ! keep still ! Nonsense !
¡ Diga !		Say ! do tell !
¡ Oye ! ¡ oiga !		Hullo ! hear, hear !
¡ Miren !		Look !
¡ Quita !	{ }	Let me alone ! go away ! get out !
¡ Quítese V. !		
¡ Toma !		Indeed ! really !
¡ Vamos !		Come ! well !
¡ Vaya !		Indeed ! well ! really ! of course !

1158. Some nouns and adjectives are used as interjections:—

¡ Al asesino !	Murder !
¡ Al ladrón !	Stop thief !
¡ Bravo ! (to a woman, ¡ brava !)	Bravo ! good ! bully !
¡ Caballero !	Sir ! (in indignation.)
¡ Cuidado !	Look out ! take care !
¡ Fuego !	Fire !
¡ Socorro !	Help !
¡ Alerta !	Watch out ! be ready !
¡ Firme !	Steady, there !
¡ Alto !	Halt !

1159. When adjectives are used as interjections before personal pronouns *de* is interposed:—

¡ Triste de mí !	Woe is me !
¡ Pobre de mí !	Poor me !
¡ Desgraciado de tí !	Unfortunate that thou art !
¡ Necios de nosotros !	Fools that we are (or were) !

1160. The same holds good of the interjection *¡ ay !* before nouns or pronouns:—

¡ Ay de mí !—de tí !	Alas for me !—for thee !
¡ Ay de los vencidos !	Woe to the vanquished !
¡ Ay de mi Alhama !	Alas for my Alhama !

(Not " Ay de mí, Alhama ! " as Byron has it.)

1161. In conversation the words *hombre*, *man*, and *mujer*,

*woman*, are often introduced by way of emphasis or remonstrance:—

Pero hombre, si eso es demasiado.      Why, man alive, that is too much.  
 ¿Empiezo yo?—Sí, hombre, ande V.      Shall I begin?—Yes indeed, go ahead.  
 Pues mujer, he hecho lo posible.      Well, I assure you I did what I could.

#### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

**1162.** Augmentatives and diminutives are seldom admissible in the graver styles of writing, but are employed profusely in familiar conversation and in light literature. They abound in greater variety in Spanish than in either Portuguese or Italian, although in these languages they are frequent, while in French and English they are comparatively rare.

Augmentatives and diminutives are formed upon ascertainable principles, so that the learner may become able to form and apply the majority of them at pleasure. They all vary in number, and have a feminine form obtained either by adding *a* to the final consonant of the termination, or by changing the final vowel (*o* or *e*) to *a*:—

-ón, -ona;	-ito, -ita;	-uelo, -uela;
-acho, -acha;	-illo, -illa;	-ín, -ina;
-oto, -ota; etc.	-ejo, -eja; etc.	-ete, -eta; etc.

**1163.** Augmentative and diminutive terminations are added to the full form of words ending in a consonant or accented vowel:—

Mujer, mujer-ota, mujer-ona.      Animal, animal-ejo, animal-ucho.  
 Papá, papa-ito.

**1164.** A final unaccented vowel is removed before the termination is added:—

Pequeño, pequen-uelo, pequen-ito.      Libro, libr-illo, libr-ote.  
 Isla, isl-illa, isl-ote.      Hombre, hombr-ón, hombr-ecillo.

**REMARK.**—If, in removing the final vowel of a diphthong, the remaining vowel is identical with the initial vowel of the termination, one of them is elided:—

Rubio, rub-ito.      Rosario, rosar-ito.      Historia, histor-illa.

**1165.** The diphthongs *ie* and *ue*, in the accented syllable of certain words, change to *e* and *o* respectively when the accent is removed by reason of the addition of a termination. But in the case of augmentatives and diminutives modern usage generally

retains the diphthong except when the primary word contains more than two syllables:—

Encuentro, encontrón.  
Caliente, calentito.

Valiente, valentón.  
Cuébane, cobanillo.

1166. With regard to words of one or two syllables containing such diphthongs, the following revert to the primitive vowel; in others the usage varies, but the learner will be safe in retaining the diphthong:—

Bueno, bonazo, bonachón.  
Luengo, longazo.  
Pueblo, poblachón.  
Cueva, covacha.  
Ciego, ceguezuelo.

Buey, boyazo.  
Cuerpo, corpanchón.  
Puerta, portezuela.  
Tierno, ternezuelo.  
Viejo, vejexuelo, vejete.

1167. When terminations beginning with *e* or *i* are attached to a word-stem ending in *c*, *g*, *gu*, *z*, these change to *qu*, *gu*, *gü*, *c*, respectively, in order to preserve the sound:—

Chico, chiquillo, chiquito.  
Frac, fraquecito.  
Pedazo, pedacito.

Mozo, mocete, mocico.  
Lengua, lengüecita.  
Nuez, nuececita.

#### DIMINUTIVES.

1168. Certain diminutive terminations vary in form to suit the word to which they are to be attached. The changes being uniform in each case, they will be denoted by letters:—

A.	B.	C.	D.
-ito,	-cito,	-ecito,	-ececito.
-ico,	-cico,	-ecico,	-ececico.
-illo,	-cillo,	-ecillo,	-ececillo.
-uelo,	-zuelo,	-ezuelo,	-ecezuelo.
-ete,	-cete,	-ecete.	

1169. Terminations of column *D* are taken only by monosyllables ending in a vowel (excluding *y*):—

Pie, pi-ececito, pi-ececico, pi-ecezuelo, pi-ececillo.

1170. Terminations of column *C* are taken by:—

1. Monosyllables ending in a consonant or *y*:—

Red, red-ecilla.  
Flor, flor-ecita.  
Pan, pan-ezuelo.

Voz, voz-ecita.  
Rey, rey-ezuelo.  
Buey, buey-ecito.

EXCEPTION: ruin-cillo.

2. Words of two syllables whose first syllable contains one of the diphthongs *ei*, *ie*, *ue*, and whose last syllable ends in *a* or *o*:—

Ciego, *ciegu-ecito*.  
Cuerda, *cuerd-ecilla*.  
Cuero, *cuer-ezuelo*.  
Cuerpo, *cuerp-ecito*.  
Cuesta, *cuest-ecilla*.  
Flueco, *fluequ-ecillo*.  
Grieta, *griet-ecilla*.  
Hueso, *hues-ecillo*.  
Huevo, *huev-ezuelo*.

Llenzo, *lienc-ecito*.  
Nieto, *niet-ecico*.  
Nuevo, *nuev-ecito*.  
Piedra, *piedr-ecita*.  
Pueblo, *puebl-ezuelo*.  
Rueca, *ruequ-ecilla*.  
Tiempo, *tiemp-ecillo*.  
Viejo, *viej-ecito*.  
Yerba, *yerb-ecilla*.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Cuesco, *cuesqu-illo*.

Juego, *juegu-ito*.

REMARK.—*Guerra*, *guerr-illa*, and *bueno*, *bon-ito*, can hardly be called exceptions, since the *u* of the former is merely orthographic, and the latter changes its stem.

3. Words of two syllables whose last syllable ends in any of the diphthongs *ia*, *io*, *ua*:—

Bestia, *besti-ecita*.  
Fragua, *fragü-ecilla*.  
Genio, *geni-ecillo*.

Gracia, *graci-ecita*.  
Lengua, *lengü-ecita*.  
Gloria, *glori-ecilla*.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Agua, *agü-ita*.  
Pascua, *pascu-ita*.

Rubio, *rub-ita*.  
Agrío, *agr-illo*.

4. Polysyllables ending in *e*:—

Conde, *cond-ecito*.  
Pobre, *pobr-ecillo*.  
Duende, *duend-ecico*.

Madre, *madr-ecita*.  
Viaje, *viaj-ecillo*.  
Aire, *air-ecillo*.

1171. Terminations of column *B* are taken by polysyllables ending in *n* or *r*:—

Autor, *autor-cillo*.  
Doctor, *doctor-zuelo*.  
Salón, *salon-cito*.

Joven, *joven-ceto*.  
Ladrón, *ladron-zuelo*.  
Gabán, *gaban-zuelo*.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Jardín, *jardin-cito*, *or -ito*.  
Altar, *altar-illo*, *or -cillo*.  
Pilar, *pilar-illo*, *or -cillo*.  
Jazmín, *jazmin-illo*, *or -cillo*.  
Sarten, *sarten-illo*, *or -cillo*.

Señor, *señor-ito*.  
Almacén, *almacen-illo*.  
Alfiler, *alfiler-ito*.  
Vasar, *vasar-illo*.  
Serafin, *serafin-ito*.

1172. Terminations in column *A* are applied to all other words:—



Silla, sill-ita.  
 Almohada, almohad-illa.  
 Farol, farol-illo.  
 Abuelo, abuel-ito.  
 Raíz, raic-illa.

Pollo, poll-uelo.  
 Cuchara, cuchar-ita.  
 Pájaro, pajar-ico.  
 Cuaderno, cuaderñ-illo.  
 Baúl, baul-ito.

## EXCEPTIONS :—

Mano, man-ita, *or* -ecita.  
 Prado, prad-ecito *and* prad-illo.

Piel, piel-ecita.  
 Llano, llan-ecillo *and* llan-ito.

The leading diminutive terminations and their uses are as follows:—

-ito, -cito, -ecito.

1173. These diminutives greatly exceed in frequency all the others put together. They form pet names and phrases, and are especially frequent in the intercourse of women and children. They convey the idea of *pretty, sweet, dear, nice*, etc., as well as *little*; indeed size is often left out of account. They are therefore not to be applied to anything of an offensive or displeasing nature; but they are sometimes used ironically:—

Molino de viento; molinito de viento.	Windmill; toy windwheel.
Un viejecito; una mujercita.	Nice little old man; pleasant little woman.
Unas tajaditas de jamón frío	Some nice thin slices of cold ham.
Ya entiendo su guasita.	Now I understand his little game.
Me siento un poquito mejor.	I feel a little bit better.
¿Me hace V. el favor de un vasito de agua fresca?	Will you give me a glass of cool water? ( <i>Modest request.</i> )
De vuelta te daré una gratificacioncita.	When you come back I will give you a gratuity.

1174. This series of terminations applies to all baptismal names to indicate affection (whether or not connected with smallness), and corresponds to the English ending -ie or -y:—

Carlitos; Juanito; Dieguito.	Charley; Johnnie; Jimmie.
Anita; Juanita; Pepita.	Annie; Jennie; Josie.
Inesita; Paquita; Mariquita.	Aggie; Fannie; Mamie.

REMARK.—It may be observed that if the original name ends in *a*, that letter is added to the diminutive form :—

Carlos, Carlitos.

Dolores, Dolorcitas.

1175. These terminations are not confined to nouns, but may be added to adjectives, participles, adverbs, and indeed almost any kind of words, usually with a favorably intensive effect translatable by *quite, nice and, etc.* :—

Ahorita ; lueguito ; prontito.  
Cerquita ; lejitos ; juntito.

Right now ; right away ; quite soon.  
Quite near ; some distance off ; real close.

Ahora mismito.

This very minute.

¡ Adiosito ! (*South American.*)

Bye-bye !

Es una joven tan graciosa.

She is such a charming girl.

¡ Qué simpaticuita es la prima de Vd. !

How pleasant your cousin is !

¡ Belita !—Sí papá, enseguidita.

Belle.—Yes, papa, in a minute.

La joven entró callandito.

The girl came in very softly.

Lo mismito me sucede á mí.

The very same thing happens to me.

Poquito á poco ; pasito á paso.

Little by little ; step by step.

Hablemos bajito para que no se enteren esos señores.

Let us speak quite low so that those gentlemen may not overhear us.

-ico, -cico, -ecico.

1176. This series of forms was originally an Aragonese equivalent for the foregoing. They are little used, and then rather sarcastically or ironically; otherwise they have the same value as those preceding:—

Un angelico.

An angel, oh yes !

Inocentico.

Innocent, over the left.

Allí escuchará Vd. con éxtasi los gorriónicos, que no le dejan á uno meter baza con su piada semiplterna.

You will listen with rapture to the sweet little sparrows, which won't let a person get in a word edgewise for their interminable chirping.

-illo, -cillo, -ecillo.

1177. Forms in -illo in general belittle everything they touch, without implying affection or malice. Things indifferent in quality are merely made smaller; evils are mitigated as of little importance, and virtues depreciated. They indicate a light, careless feeling about persons and things, good or bad, sometimes mingling a little of pity. They apply to nouns, adjectives and participles, but rarely to other parts of speech:—

Cigarro ; cigarrillo.

Cigar ; cigarette.

Boveda, bovedilla.

Vault ; small vault.

Agudo ; agudillo.	Sharp ; slightly sharp.
Campana ; campanilla.	Bell ; hand bell.
Nube ; nubecilla.	Cloud ; cloudlet.
Guerra ; guerrilla.	War ; partisan strife.
Vara ; varilla.	Rod ; small rod.
Deme V. una muestrecilla de ese raso.	Give me a small sample of that satin.
Su hermana de V. es una coquetilla.	Your sister is a little coquette.
En cierto lugarcillo de la provincia de Granada.	In a certain small village of the province of Granada.
El picarillo se escapó riendo.	The young rascal ran off laughing.
Estando apuradillo, tuve que soli- citar un préstamo.	Being slightly embarrassed, I had to solicit a loan.

-uelo, -zuelo, -ezuelo.

1178. Forms in -uelo express contempt, either jestingly or in downright earnest, with or without the idea of smallness. They are but little used and apply almost exclusively to nouns:—

Una coquetuela.	A vain coquette.
La plazuela de San Miguel.	St. Michael's square.
Arroyuelo ; riachuelo.	Brooklet ; rivulet.
Puerta ; portezuela.	Door ; carriage door.
Plancha ; planchuela.	Smoothing-iron ; fluting-iron.
Pintorzuelo.	Wretchedly bad artist.
Sentía posarse sobre mí sus ojos pequeñuelos y malignos.	I felt his small, malicious eyes fixed upon me.
Gastaba una mantilla de tafetán con lentejuelas.	She wore a dotted silk veil.
Sus ojuelos, siempre vivos, parecían bailar ahora arrebatadamente.	His small eyes, always bright, seemed now to dance unrestrainedly.

REMARK.—When applied to words of more than one syllable which end in two vowels, the letter *h* or *g* is inserted after removing the final one ; when, however, the words ends in *nio*, the *i* of the diphthong is absorbed by changing the *n* to *ñ* :—

Aldea, a hamlet.	Judio, a Jew.
Aldehuela, } a wretched hamlet.	Judiñuelo, } a despicable Jew.
Aldegüela, }	Judigüelo, }
Correa, a strap.	Fea, }
Corre-huela, } a small strap.	Fehuela, } ugly.
Corre-güela, }	Antonie, Antofuelo.
	Demonio, demofuelo.

-ete, -cete, -ecete.

1179. These forms are applied to a few nouns in a diminutive, and sometimes depreciative, sense:—

Burleta, a little trick.

Luneta, a lunette.

Lugarete, a small village.

Caballerete, a dude, dandy.

Placeta, small [public] square.

Clavete, a little nail, tack.

Historieta, short story.

Manteleta, a small cape.

Pichelete, a small pitcher.

Gloria gozaba en hacer jugarretas á Gloria enjoyed playing practical  
todo el mundo. jokes on everybody.

-ejo.

1180. This form is usually applied to nouns ending in *l* or *n*, and denotes decided contempt, sometimes indicating smallness also:—

Caballejo, nag.

Papelejo, scrap of paper.

Camellejo, small camel.

Regalejo, mean gift.

El oficialejo, el alguacilejo.

This officer, this constable (in contempt).

#### AUGMENTATIVES.

The principal augmentatives and their applications are the following:—

-ón, fem. -ona.

1181. Denotes large size, or an increased degree of a quality, and sometimes adds the idea of clumsiness or grotesqueness. Feminine nouns generally assume the masculine termination unless *sex* is to be indicated:—

Silla; sillón.

Cuchara; cucharón.

Zagal; zagalón.

Hombre; hombrón.

Salchicha; salchichón.

Soltero; solterón.

Soltera; solterona.

Embustero; embusterón.

Zapatos; zapatones.

Chair; easy-chair.

Spoon; ladle.

Lad; strapping young fellow.

Man; big man.

Sausage; pudding.

Single man; old bachelor.

Unmarried woman; old maid.

Liar; great liar, "Ananias."

Shoes; big shoes, "gunboats."



REMARK.—In a few words, -ón has a diminutive value:—

Ala ; alón.	Wing ; wing deprived of feathers.
Carreta ; carretón.	Cart ; small cart.
Calle ; callejón.	Street ; narrow passage.
Pluma ; plumón.	Feather ; down.
Torre ; torreón, torrejón.	Tower ; turret.
Cerro ; cerrejón.	Hill ; hillock.
Cascara ; cascarón.	Husk ; rind, egg-shell.
Planta ; plantón.	Plant ; scion, shoot.
Rata ; ratón.	Rat ; mouse.
Volantón.	Fledgling, young bird just able to fly.

-azo, -aza.

1182. Has a value similar to -ón, but is less frequent. The gender of the termination corresponds to that of the primitive:—

Buey ; boyazo.	Ox ; large ox.
Hombre ; hombraso.	Man ; large man.
Libro ; librazo.	Book ; big book.
Luengo ; longazo.	Long ; "awfully" long.
Pícaro ; pizarazo.	Rogue ; great rogue.
Perro ; perrazo.	Dog ; big dog.

-ote, fem. -ota.

1183. Ote is at times merely augmentative, but usually depreciative:—

Calabaza ; calabazota.	Pumpkin ; large pumpkin.
Palabra ; palabrota.	Word ; "cuss word."
Franco ; francote.	Frank ; plain, ingenuous.
Manga ; mangote.	Sleeve ; large sleeve.
Feo ; feote.	Ugly ; "perfect fright."
Libro ; librote.	Book ; ponderous old tome.
Pícaro ; pícrote.	Rascal ; notorious rascal.
Discurso ; discursote.	Speech ; long-winded speech.

REMARK.—In a few words -ote has a diminutive value:—

Isla ; islote.	Island ; islet.
Cámara ; camarote.	Chamber ; [ship's] cabin.
Ancla ; anclote.	Anchor ; kedge-anchor.
Palo ; palote.	Stick, timber ; drumstick.
Pipa ; pipote.	Cask ; firkin.

-ajo.

1184. A termination of contempt, indicating meanness or extravagance in the quality of the primitive noun:—

Beblstrajo, extravagant mixture of drinks.	Espantajo, scarecrow.
Colgajo, tatters.	Latinaje, dog-Latin.
Comistraje, extravagant mixture of viands.	Terminaje, low expression.
Escobajo, stump of a broom.	Pintarraje, "daub."
	Trapaje, dirty rag.

## -acho and -ucho.

1185. These are purely depreciative, expressing poor quality of what is represented by the noun, or contempt or disdain felt for it:—

Cuarto ; cuartucho.	Room ; miserable, close room.
Vine ; vinacho.	Wine ; poor wine, slops.
Pico ; picacho.	Peak ; sharp point.
Rico ; ricacho.	Rich ; very rich.
Caldo ; calducho.	Broth ; weak broth.
Casa ; casucha.	House ; shanty.
Sierra ; serrucha.	Saw ; dull, worthless saw.
Blanco ; blancucho.	White ; dirty white.
Animal ; animalucho.	Animal ; ugly animal.
Flaco ; flacucho.	Thin ; flabby.
Papel ; papelucho.	Paper ; a contemptible paper or writing.
Término ; terminacho.	Term ; low term.
Vulgo ; vulgacho.	Populace ; dregs of the people.
El populacho ; un mamarracho.	The masses ; a botch.
Cogucho ; meladucha.	Inferior sugar ; a poor variety of apple.

## -uco, -uca.

1186. This termination is also purely depreciative ; it is applied to a few nouns only:—

Carro ; carruco.	Cart ; a kind of small cart.
Casa ; casuca.	House ; hovel.
Fraille ; frailuco.	Friar ; despicable friar.
Beata ; beatuca.	Woman who wears a religious habit ; vile hypocrite.
Hermano ; hermanuco.	Brother ; contemptuous term for a member of a religious order.

1187. Combinations of augmentative and diminutive terminations are not uncommon, the value being cumulative:—

## -ito with -lito.

Chico ; chiquitito.	Little ; teeny-weeny.
Poco ; poquitito.	A little ; a tiny bit.

**-illo with -ón.**

Grande ; grandillón.	Big ; quite biggish.
Pícaro ; picarillón.	Rascal ; large man who is somewhat of a rascal.

**-ón with -illo.**

Pícaro ; picaroncillo.	Rascal ; small person who is a great rascal.
------------------------	--

**-ete with -ón.**

Guapo ; guapetón.	Good-looking ; very good-looking.
Mozo ; mocetón.	Lad ; corpulent, overgrown boy.
Pobre ; pobretón.	Poor ; poor old duffer.

**-ejo with -ón.**

Calle ; callejón.	Street ; passage between walls.
Piedra ; pedrejón.	Stone ; large, loose stone.


**-acho with -ón.**

Fresco ; frescachón.	Fresh ; florid, healthy (applied to person).
Bueno ; bonachón.	Good ; good-humored, easy-going.
Fuerte ; fortachón.	Strong ; powerful.
Pueblo ; poblachón.	Village ; large village.

**-ón with -azo.**

Borracho ; borrachonazo.	Drunkard ; inveterate drunkard.
Hombre ; hombronazo.	Man ; big, hulking, lubberly man.
Bergante ; bergantonazo.	Scoundrel ; villain of the deepest dye.

## SOCIAL AND EPISTOLARY USAGES.

 The many polite phrases employed in conversation and correspondence do not come within the province of Grammar, but still are indispensable to the practical use of any language. Especially is this the case in Spanish, a language abounding in courtly expressions and complimentary phrases, which are not to be neglected even in the intercourse of the most intimate acquaintances. A complete exhibition of the language of Spanish courtesy and etiquette is beyond the scope of the present work; still there are many peculiarities, differing from English usage, which the student cannot afford to ignore.

1188. The following are the usual forms of salutation among gentlemen:—

Beso á V. la mano.	I kiss your hand.
Servidor de V., caballero.	Your servant, sir.
Á la orden de V.	At your orders.
Tenga V. muy buenos días.	Good day to you.
¡ Adiós !	How do ?

REMARK.—A gentleman, in greeting a lady, usually says *á los pies de V.*, *señora* or *señorita*, literally *at your feet, madam, or miss*. The lady's reply is, *beso á V. la mano, caballero, I kiss your hand, sir*.

1189. The following expressions are usual in inquiring after another's health:—

¿ Cómo lo pasa V. ? or ¿ cómo está V. ?	How do you do ?
¿ Cómo se halla V. ?	How are you ?
¿ Cómo sigue V. ?	How are you getting along ?
¡ Hola ! ¿ Qué tal ?	Hullo ! How are you ?

1190. The following expressions are employed in replying to the above:—

Medianamente bien.	Middling well. Tolerably well.
Así así. Tal cual.	So so.
Perfectamente bien, para servir á V.	Perfectly well, thank you.
Muy bien, gracias, ¿ y V. ?	Very well, thank you ; how are you ?
Así así, or tal cual ; y Vd., ¿ cómo lo pasa ?	So so ; and how do you do ?
Sin novedad.	Always well.

REMARK.—The expression *sin novedad*, literally *without novelty*, is of universal usage, and can be best rendered in English by *as usual*.

1191. The following are the commonest expressions of leave-taking:—

¡ Vaya V. con Dios ! ( <i>said to one who is going away.</i> )	} Good-bye! —
¡ Quede V. con Dios ! ( <i>to one who remains behind.</i> )	
¡ Que V. lo pase bien !	

REMARK.—A common, short leave-taking is *agur*, occurring in the forms *ahur*, *abur* and *abul* (said to be from the Latin *bonum augurium*, *good luck*.) It is used principally to shopkeepers upon leaving, and in any case where a more formal expression is unnecessary.

1192. The following will serve as samples of introduction:—

Señor Don A., tengo el honor de presentarle al Señor Don B.	Mr. A., I have the honor of introducing you to Mr. B.
---	---



Permítaseme tener el gusto de pre- Let me have the pleasure of introduc-  
sentar á V. mi amigo Don X. ing to you my friend Mr. X.  
Permítame V. que le presente á mi Let me introduce you to my wife.  
esposa.

**1193.** The following are employed in acknowledgment:—

Caballero, celebro la ocasión de I am glad to make your acquaintance.  
conocer á V.  
Me considero muy feliz en hacer su I am very happy to make your ac-  
conocimiento, caballero. quaintance.  
Reconózcame V. por un servidor Consider me at your service.  
suyo.

**1194.** In asking or requesting:—

Tenga V. la bondad de decirme . . . Have the goodness to tell me . . .  
Hágame V. el favor de darme . . . Do me the favor to give me . . .  
Tenga V. la complacencia de in- Have the kindness to show me . . .  
dicarme . . .  
Se lo agradecería mucho si V. me I should be much obliged if you would  
diese . . . give me . . .  
Sírvase V. tomar un ejemplar. Please take a copy.

**1195.** In returning thanks:—

Muchísimas gracias. Many thanks.  
Mil gracias, or un millón de gracias. A thousand thanks.  
Se lo agradezco á V. infinito. I am very much obliged to you.  
No hay de qué. (*Lit.* there is no You are welcome, or don't mention it,  
cause why.)

**1196.** It is the custom in Spanish, when any one admires something which we possess, to politely make him a present of it—an offer which is not expected to be accepted. The other must decline, not by saying that he does not care to have it, but by intimating that it is better under its present ownership:—

Tiene V. un reloj muy precioso. You have a very handsome watch.  
Está á la disposición de V. } It is at your service.  
Á la disposición de V. }  
Un millón de gracias ; no podría me- A thousand thanks ; but it couldn't  
jorar de dueño. have a better owner.  
Es un alfiler muy bonito el que tiene That is a very pretty pin you have  
Vd. puesto. on.  
Permítame que se lo ofrezca á Vd. }  
Permítame que lo ponga á la dis- } Permit me to offer it to you.  
posición de Vd. }  
Es V. muy buena, pero á nadie po- You are very kind, but it would be-  
dría sentarle tanto. come no one else so well.

1197. So, when asked by any one where we live, in alluding to our residence, we should call it *his*, or else tell him he is welcome there—which does not amount to an invitation to call:—

¿Dónde reside V. ahora?

Where do you live now?

Su casa de V. está número 19, Calle de las Fresnas.

"Your" house is No. 19 Ash Street.

Resido número 19, Calle de las Fresnas, donde tiene V. su casa, or donde será V. el bienvenido.

I live at No. 19 Ash Street, where you will be welcome, or where you must consider yourself at home.

Aquí tiene V. su casa; ¿no quiere V. entrar y descansar un rato?

Here is my house; won't you come in and rest a while?

a. It is not polite to begin a meal, to take a drink, or even to eat an orange without inviting those who are near by to partake, whether we are acquainted with them or not. They are expected to decline unless pressed more urgently.<sup>1</sup> The shortest invitation is ¿V. quiere? ¿Vds. quieren? or ¿á V. le gusta? ¿á Vds. les gusta? The stereotype reply is: muchas gracias, que aproveche, *thanks, may it benefit you*, or buen provecho le haga á V.

b. On entering the dining-room, before taking our seat, we should salute those who are already at table with buenos días or buenas noches as may be required. In leaving before the others, we should say: con permiso de Vds., *by your leave*, or que aproveche á Vds., as above.

#### EPISTOLARY USAGES.

1198. The only epistolary forms which can be given here are the complimentary expressions usual in beginning and terminating a letter, and a few miscellaneous phrases of frequent occurrence.

The opening phrase is usually one of the following:—

Muy estimado Señor Calvo:

Dear Mr. Calvo:

Muy Señor mío:

Muy Señor nuestro: (*from a firm.*)

} Dear Sir:

Muy Señores míos:

Muy Señores nuestros: (*from a firm.*)

} Gentlemen:

Muy Señora mía:

Madam:

---

<sup>1</sup> Foreigners must bear in mind that if they do not press their offer, it will be understood to be a mere empty compliment. The author has known cases where Spanish visitors, who were invited to stay to dinner, went away disappointed because the invitation was not repeated. And, *per contra*, instances are known where foreigners unwittingly caused Spaniards much inconvenience by accepting an invitation which they were expected to decline.

In more familiar style:—

Muy Señor mío y amigo :

Mi querido amigo:

Querido González :

Mi General :

Dear Sir and Friend :

My dear Friend :

Dear González :

General :

a. The letter of one's correspondent is referred to as *la favorecida*, *apreciable*, or *estimada de V.*, *your favor*, or *your esteemed communication* (carta being understood). These are often abbreviated to *la favor<sup>da</sup>*, *la ap<sup>ble</sup>*, *la est<sup>da</sup> de V.*

b. Other common abbreviations are *f<sup>da</sup>* for *fecha*, *dated*; *pp<sup>do</sup>* for *próximo pasado*, *ultimo*; *cor<sup>te</sup>* for *corriente*, *instant*; *af<sup>mo</sup>* for *afectísimo*, *very devoted*.

The following are miscellaneous phrases usual at the commencement of a letter:—

Tengo el honor de acusar á V. el recibo de su ap<sup>ble</sup> carta f<sup>da</sup> el 31 del pp<sup>do</sup>.

He tenido el gusto de recibir la apreciable de V. fecha de ayer, y en contestación me apresuro á manifestarle que . . .

En contestación á la ap<sup>ble</sup> de V., fecha del 8, me apresuro á manifestarle que . . .

Me permito llamar la atención de V. sobre el circular incluso.

Incluyo á V. mi tarifa.

Hemos recibido la atenta carta que nos ha hecho V. el honor de dirigirnos con fecha del 30 del pp<sup>do</sup>.

Es en nuestro poder la est<sup>da</sup> de V. f<sup>da</sup> el dos del actual, en la que manifiesta V. que . . .

Confirmando á V. nuestra última, fecha del 15, tenemos el honor de anunciarle que . . .

Me apresuro á acusar á V. competente recibo de la remesa que me ha hecho de \$210.

a. Immediately before the signature of a letter addressed to a gentleman, the initials Q.B.S.M. or Q.S.M.B. are usual. These stand for *que sus manos besa*, *who kisses your hand*. If the letter be to a lady, the initials are Q.B.S.P. or Q.S.P.B., *que sus pies besa*, *who kisses your feet*.

b. The expression *su seguro servidor*, *your obedient servant*, is invariably abbreviated S.S.S.

I beg to acknowledge the receipt of your letter dated the 31st ultimo.

I have received your favor dated yesterday, and hasten to say in reply that . . .

In reply to your esteemed letter of the 8th, I hasten to inform you that . . .

I beg to call your attention to the enclosed circular.

I enclose herewith my price-list.

We have received the obliging letter which you did us the honor of addressing to us under date of the 30th ult.

We have your favor of the 2nd inst. in which you state that . . .

Referring to our last letter, dated the 15th inst., we beg to announce that . . .

I hasten to acknowledge the receipt in due time, of the remittance of \$210 forwarded by you.

1199. The following will serve as examples of complimentary terminations:—

Soy de Vd.

af<sup>mo</sup> atento y S.S.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Se repite á las órdenes de V.

S.S.S.

Q.S.M.B.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Soy, excelentísimo Señor,

con el más profundo respeto,

Su más humilde y atento

servidor,

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Reciba V., Señora, la profunda expresión de mi afecto respetuoso.

B.S.P.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Tengo el honor de reiterarle el sincero afecto con que soy

de V. atento y S.S.

Q.S.M.B.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Se repite de V.

Af<sup>mo</sup> atento y S.S.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Con este motivo tengo el honor de repetirme

de V. atento y S.S.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Quedan de Vds. af<sup>mos</sup> seguros servidores,

J. BLANCO Y Cía.

Permítanos Vd. le ofrezcamos los más sinceros votos por su felicidad, juntamente con la seguridad de nuestro sincero afecto y la consideración más perfecta de sus atentos servidores

Q.B.S.M.

JOSÉ BLANCO Y Cía.

Saludan á Vd. sus af<sup>mos</sup> seguros servidores,

JOSÉ BLANCO Y Cía.

I am

Very sincerely yours,

JOSEPH WHITE.

I am, Sir,

Very respectfully,

JOSEPH WHITE.

I am, Sir,

Very respectfully,

Your obedient servant,

JOSEPH WHITE.

Accept, Madam, the expression of my deep devotion.

Very respectfully,

JOSEPH WHITE.

I have the honor to be, with profound esteem,

Yours very respectfully,

JOSEPH WHITE.

I remain

Very truly yours,

JOSEPH WHITE.

I have the honor to subscribe myself

Yours very respectfully,

JOSEPH WHITE.

Very truly yours,

Jos. WHITE & Co.

Allow us to offer you our best wishes for your success, together with the assurances of our highest esteem.

Very respectfully,

Your ob'd't s'v'ts,

JOSEPH WHITE & Co.

Believe us to remain

Very cordially yours,

JOSEPH WHITE & Co.



Entretanto disponga V. de su In the meantime, awaiting your com-  
 atento y S.S. mands, I am

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Yours, etc.,

JOSEPH WHITE.

Dándole mis anticipadas gracias por Thanking you in advance for the  
 este favor, me repito de Vd. favor, I remain

Afmo atento y S.S.

Very sincerely yours,

JOSÉ BLANCO.

JOSEPH WHITE.

Mande V. con entera libertad (or Do not hesitate to command me.  
 con toda franqueza)

á su afmo S.S.

Yours very truly,

JOSEPH WHITE.

Q.S.M.B.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Deseando á V. mucha salud y fe- Wishing you health and happiness  
 licidades durante el año nuevo, during the New Year, I remain  
 me repito, Very sincerely yours,

su afmo atento y S.S.

JOSEPH WHITE.

JOSÉ BLANCO.

Con motivo de la entrada de año, On the occasion of the New Year we  
 formamos los votos más sinceros beg to offer you our best wishes for  
 por su prosperidad, y le reite- your prosperity, and remain  
 ramos la expresión de nuestro Very cordially yours,  
 afecto. JOSEPH WHITE & Co.

Sus muy atentos servidores,

JOSÉ BLANCO Y CIA.

1200. Letters sent by mail are addressed in the same manner  
 as in English. Local letters sent by a messenger are usually  
 addressed thus:—

TO A GENTLEMAN.

TO A LADY.

B.L.M.

B.L.P.

Al Sr. D. Juan Calvo.

Á la Sra. Da. Juana Calvo.

S.S.S.

S.S.S.

JOSÉ F. BLANCO.

JOSÉ F. BLANCO.



## VOCABULARY

## ABBREVIATIONS

---

<i>adj.</i>	adjective.	<i>neg.</i>	negative.
<i>adv.</i>	adverb.	<i>neut.</i>	neuter.
<i>coll.</i>	colloquial usage.	<i>num.</i>	numeral.
<i>compar.</i>	comparative.	<i>pers.</i>	person, -al.
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction.	<i>pl.</i>	plural.
<i>demonst.</i>	demonstrative.	<i>poet.</i>	poetical.
<i>excl.</i>	exclamation.	<i>poss.</i>	possessive.
<i>f.</i>	feminine noun.	<i>pp.</i>	past participle.
<i>fig.</i>	figurative.	<i>prep.</i>	preposition.
<i>fut.</i>	future.	<i>pres.</i>	present.
<i>ger.</i>	gerund.	<i>pron.</i>	pronoun.
<i>imperat.</i>	imperative.	<i>rel.</i>	relative.
<i>imperf.</i>	imperfect.	<i>sing.</i>	singular.
<i>indic.</i>	indicative.	<i>subjunct.</i>	subjunctive.
<i>infin.</i>	infinitive.	<i>superl.</i>	superlative.
<i>interrog.</i>	interrogative.	<i>va.</i>	active (transitive) verb.
<i>m.</i>	masculine noun.	<i>vn.</i>	neuter (intransitive) verb.
<i>naut.</i>	nautical.		

A dash (—) indicates the repetition of a Spanish word; English words, when repeated, are indicated by the initial letter.

In designating the tenses of verbs, *past* is used to represent the historical tense, variously known as "past definite," "preterite definite," and "aorist."

As almost any Spanish adjective may be changed to an adverb by adding *-mente* to the feminine form, such adverbs are not given separately, except where they present some peculiarity of meaning.

Exceptional renderings are followed by the numbers (in parenthesis) of the exercise and sentence in which the word occurs. An R following the lesson number denotes a Review Exercise.

The student should bear in mind that *ch*, *ll*, *ñ*, and *rr* are separate consonants in Spanish, following, respectively, *c*, *l*, *n*, and *r*. Hence *chico* will be found after *cumbre*, *allá* after *alumbrar*, *peña* after *penoso*, *carro* after *carta*, etc., etc.



## SPANISH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY



- á, prep.**, at, to.  
**abajo, adv.**, down, below; downstairs.  
**abandonado, adj.**, deserted.  
**abedul, m.**, birch, birch-tree.  
**abeja, f.**, bee.  
**aberración, f.**, craziness, folly, nonsense.  
**abierto, adj.**, open.  
**abierto (pp. of abrir)**.  
**abra, f.**, chasm.  
**abrasador, adj.**, burning.  
**abrazar, va.**, to embrace, to include.  
**abrigar, va.**, to shelter; (*fig.*) to harbor, to cherish, to entertain.  
**abrigo, m.**, shelter (any protection against cold); overcoat.  
**abrir, va.**, to open. —**se, vn.**, to open.  
**abrumador, adj.**, crushing; oppressive; (*fig.*) violent.  
**absoluto, adj.**, absolute; total.  
**abultar, va.**, to amount to.  
**abundantísimo, adj.**, plenteous.  
**abundar, vn.**, to abound.  
**abuso, m.**, abuse, misuse.  
**acá, adv.**, here, hither.  
**acabar, va., vn.**, to end, to finish; — **con**, to use up, to exhaust; — **de (+ infin.)**, to have just (+ *pp.*); **acabo de ver**, I have just seen.  
**academia, f.**, academy.  
**acaecer, vn.**, to occur.  
**acaso, m.**, chance; **por —**, by chance.  
**acaso, adv.**, perhaps.  
**acelerar, va.**, to hasten, to hurry. — **vn.**, to gain speed.  
**aceptar, va.**, to accept.  
**ácer, m.**, maple.  
**acerca de, prep.**, about, concerning, regarding.  
**acertado, adj.**, accurate.  
**acertar, va.**, to hit (a mark); to guess. — **vn.**, to manage, to succeed.  
**acierto, m.**, accuracy; **con —**, accurately.  
**acierto, -as, -a, etc. (pres. indic. of acertar)**.  
**aclarar, va.**, to clarify. —**se, vn.**, to clear up.  
**acoger, va.**, to receive, to greet.  
**acomodar, va.**, to suit.  
**acompañar, va.**, to accompany, to go with; **sin ir acompañado**, without an escort.  
**aconsejar, va.**, to advise.  
**acontecer, vn.**, to occur, to happen.

- acontecimiento**, *m.*, occurrence, happening.  
**acostumbrar**, *va.*, to accustom.  
   —*se* [á], *vn.*, to get into the habit [of].  
**acrecentar**, *va.*, to increase.  
**actual**, *adj.*, present.  
**actualmente**, *adv.*, at present.  
**acudir**, *vn.*, to betake one's self, to repair; to visit.  
**acuoso**, *adj.*, watery.  
**achispado**, *adj.*, tipsy.  
**adelante**, *adv.*, forward; **en derecha** —, straight ahead.  
**adelgazar**, *va.*, to taper. —*se*, *vn.*, to taper; to diminish.  
**ademán**, *m.*, mien; gesture.  
**además**, *adv.*, besides, in addition. — *de*, *prep.*, besides, in addition to.  
**adjetivo**, *m.*, adjective.  
**adonde** (< á donde), *adv.*, wither.  
**adornar** [de], *va.*, to ornament [with].  
**admirable**, *adj.*, wonderful, marvellous.  
**adquiero**, —*es*, —*e*, etc. (*pres. indic. of adquirir*).  
**adquirir**, *va.*, to acquire.  
**adulto**, *adj.*, full-grown.  
**advertir**, *va.*, to notice, to observe; to notify, to inform.  
**advierto**, —*es*, —*e*, etc. (*pres. indic. of advertir*).  
**afeitar**, *va.*, to shave.  
**aficionado** [á], *adj.*, fond [of].  
**afluente**, *m.*, tributary.  
**afortunado**, *adj.*, fortunate.  
**agarrar**, *va.*, to grab; —*se* á, to grasp.  
**agasajo**, *m.*, treat, collation; —*s*, (*pl.*), feasting, festivities.  
**agitar**, *va.*, to wave.  
**aglomeración**, *f.*, pile, accumulation.  
**agonía**, *f.*, death-agony; **estar en la —**, to be at the point of death.  
**agosto**, *m.*, August. [death].  
**agotar**, *va.*, to exhaust.  
**agradecer**, *va.*, to thank.  
**agradezco** (*1st sing. pres. indic. of agradecer*).  
**agregar**, *va.*, to add.  
**agua**, *f.*, water; —*s* (*pl.*), water, waves.  
**aguacero**, *m.*, shower.  
**aguantar**, *va.*, to endure, to stand, to put up with.  
**aguardar**, *va.*, to wait for.  
**agudo**, *adj.*, sharp.  
**agujero**, *m.*, hole.  
**agüero**, *m.*, sign, omen.  
**aguinaldo**, *m.*, Christmas present.  
**ahora**, *adv.*, now.  
**ahorrar**, *va.*, to save, to lay up.  
**ahuyentar**, *va.*, to frighten away, to drive away.  
**aire**, *m.*, air.  
**ala**, *f.*, wing.  
**alabanza**, *f.*, praise.  
**alargar**, *va.*, to lengthen. —*se*, *vn.*, to lengthen; (*naut.*) to pay out.  
**alba**, *f.*, dawn.  
**albergue**, *m.*, shelter.  
**Alberto**, Albert.  
**alboroto**, *m.*, confusion, rumpus.  
**alcachofa**, *f.*, artichoke.  
**alcanzar**, *va.*, to reach.  
**aldea**, *f.*, village.  
**aldeano**, *m.*, peasant.  
**alegrar**, *va.*, to gladden. —*se*, *vn.*, to be glad.  
**alegre**, *adj.*, merry, happy; pleasant.

**alejar, va.**, to remove. —**se, vn.**, to recede, to get farther away; to swim away (45, 4).  
**alemán, adj.**, German.  
**alentar, va.**, to encourage.  
**alfombra, f.**, carpet.  
**alfombrar, va.**, to carpet.  
**algo, pron.**, something, anything.  
 —, **adv.**, somewhat, rather.  
**algodón, m.**, cotton.  
**alguno (algún), adj.**, some, any.  
 —, **pron.**, some one, any one.  
**alimentar, va.**, to nourish, to feed.  
**alimento, m.**, food, nourishment.  
**aliviar, va.**, to relieve, to alleviate.  
**almacén, m.**, warehouse, storehouse.  
**almacenar, va.**, to store up, to house.  
**almirante, m.**, admiral.  
**almorzar, va.**, to breakfast.  
**almuerzo, m.**, breakfast.  
**alrededor de, prep.**, around.  
**alto, adj.**, high; **más** —, higher, upper.  
**altura, f.**, height; attitude.  
**alumbrar, vn.**, to give light.  
**alumno, m.**, student.  
**alza, f.**, rise.  
**alzaprima, f.**, crowbar.  
**alzar, va.**, to raise.  
**allá, allí, adv.**, there; **por allí**, along there, thereabouts.  
**amenazador, adj.**, threatening.  
**amanecer, vn.**, to dawn.  
**amar, va.**, to love.  
**amarillo, m. and adj.**, yellow.  
**amarra, f.**, hawser, cable.  
**amarrar, va.**, to moor.  
**Amazonas, m.**, Amazon.  
**ambiente, m.**, air.  
**ameno, adj.**, pleasant, beautiful.

**amigo, m.**, friend.  
**amontonar, va.**, to heap up; (*fig.*) to accumulate.  
**amor, m.**, love; —**es (pl.)**, love affairs.  
**anaquel, m.**, cupboard; bookcase.  
**anciana, f.**, old lady.  
**anciano, m.**, old gentleman.  
**anciano, adj.**, old, aged.  
**ancho, adj.**, broad, wide.  
**anchova, f.**, anchovy.  
**andar, vn.**, to go; to walk; to go about (26, 8).  
**anfiteatro, m.**, amphitheater.  
**angosto, adj.**, narrow.  
**anidar, vn.**, to nest.  
**ánimo, m.**, courage; **tener** —, to be of good cheer, to cheer up.  
**anoche, adv.**, last night.  
**anochecer, m.**, nightfall; **al** —, at n.  
**ansia, f.**, eagerness; **tener** — [**de**], to be anxious [to].  
**ansiar, va.**, to desire. —, **vn.**, to be anxious to.  
**ante, prep.**, before.  
**antes, adv.**, before; first; ahead; previously; **más** —, sooner, earlier. — **de, prep.**, before.  
**antemano: de** —, **adv.**, before.  
**antigüedad, f.**, antiquity. [*hand.*]  
**antiguo, adj.**, ancient; old (of long standing); former.  
**antojo, m.**, whim, will.  
**antónimo, m.**, antonym.  
**antorcha, f.**, torch.  
**anual, adj.**, annual.  
**anunciar, va.**, to announce.  
**añadir, va., vn.**, to add.  
**año, m.**, year; — **bisiesto**, leap-year.  
**aparecer, vn.**, to appear.

aparejos, *m. pl.*, [fishing] tackle.  
 aparentar, *vn.*, to seem.  
 apartar, *va.*, to separate.  
 apearse, *vn.*, to gain a footing.  
 apenas, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.  
 apertura, *f.*, opening.  
 apesadumbrado, *adj.*, care-worn.  
 aplazar, *va.*, to postpone.  
 apoyo, *m.*, support.  
 apreciar, *va.*, to measure.  
 apresurar, *va.*, to hasten; — *el*  
     *paso*, to h. one's steps.  
 apretar, *va.*, to press, to squeeze.  
 apretón, *m.*, squeeze.  
 aprovechar, *va.*, to profit by.  
 aproximarse á, *va.*, to approach.  
 aquel (-lla, -llo, -llos, -llas),  
     *pron.*, that, those; éste... aquél,  
     the former... the latter.  
 aquí, *adv.*, here.  
 aragas, *f. pl.*, oyster-tongs.  
 araña, *f.*, spider.  
 árbol, *m.*, tree.  
 arbusto, *m.*, bush, shrub.  
 arco, *m.*, arch.  
 ardiente, *adj.*, burning.  
 área, *f.*, (metric system) are.  
 arena, *f.*, sand.  
 Aristóteles, Aristotle.  
 arma, *f.*, arm, weapon.  
 armar, *va.*, to arm; — *un alboroto*,  
     to raise a racket.  
 aroma, *f.*, perfume.  
 arpón, *m.*, harpoon.  
 arqueólogo, *m.*, archeologist.  
 arte, *f.*, art.  
 artefacto, *m.*, article.  
 arrancar, *va.*, to pull out.  
 arrastrar, *va.*, to carry along.  
 arbol, *m.*, cloud-wisp.  
 arremeter, *va.*, to assault, to at-  
     tack; (*fig.*) to beat.

arriesgado, *adj.*, risky.  
 arrojar, *va.*, to throw, to cast; to  
     hurl (30, 1); to throw away  
     (34, 2); to cast up (30, 6); to  
     pour out (30, 2); to eject (30,  
     5).  
 arroyo, *m.*, brook.  
 arrufar, *vn.*, to growl.  
 arrullar, *vn.*, to coo.  
 asar, *va.*, to roast; to broil (44,  
     16).  
 ascensión, *f.*, ascent.  
 aseado, *adj.*, tidy, neat.  
 asegurar, *va.*, to assure.  
 asentar, *va.*, to lay.  
 así, *adv.*, so, thus; — *pues*, so, so  
     then.  
 asir, *va.*, to grasp, to hold.  
 asomar, *va.*, to show. —, *vn.*, to  
     appear; to look from (*or* out  
     of).  
 aspecto, *m.*, appearance.  
 astro, *m.*, star.  
 astrólogo, *m.*, astrologer.  
 astrónomo, *m.*, astronomer.  
 Asturias, Asturia (a mountainous  
     district of northern Spain).  
 astuto, *adj.*, cunning.  
 asustar, *va.*, to frighten, to ter-  
     rify.  
 atención, *f.*, favor.  
 aterrador, *adj.*, terrifying.  
 atmósfera, *f.*, atmosphere, air.  
 atravesar, *va.*, to cross, to pass  
     through.  
 aullar, *vn.*, to howl.  
 aumentar, *va.*, to increase.  
 aumento, *m.*, increase; continuar  
     *en* —, to continue increasing.  
 aun, *adv.*, even; still; — *no*, *no*...  
     —, not yet.  
 aunque, *conj.*, although, though.



ausencia, *f.*, absence.  
 avance, *m.*, advance, progress.  
 avanzar, *vn.*, to advance.  
 ave, *f.*, bird.  
 avecilla, *f.*, little bird.  
 avería, *f.*, damage, injury.  
 averiguar, *va., vn.*, to ascertain, to find out.  
 ayudar, *va.*, to aid, to help.  
 ayuntamiento, *m.*, [municipal] government.  
 azabache, *m.*, jet.  
 azúcar, *m.*, sugar.  
 azul, *m. and adj.*, blue.  
 azteca, *adj.*, Aztec.

## B

baile, *m.*, ball; — *de máscaras*, masked b.  
 bajar, *vn.*, to go down, to descend; *no baja de*, is no less than (30, 4).  
 bajo, *adj.*, low.  
 bajo, *prep.*, below, under; — *este concepto*, in that event.  
 bala, *f.*, ball, bullet.  
 ballena, *f.*, whale.  
 ballenero, *adj.*, whaling.  
 banco, *m.*, bank.  
 bandolero, *m.*, brigand.  
 banquero, *m.*, banker.  
 bañar, *va.*, to bathe.  
 barco, *m.*, boat, craft, vessel.  
 barra, *f.*, rod.  
 barrenar, *va.*, (*naut.*) to scuttle.  
 barrio, *m.*, [municipal] district, ward, section; *los —s*, the outskirts (of a city).  
 base, *f.*, basis.  
 bastante, *adj.*, enough; (*fig.*)

considerable. —, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough.  
 bastar, *vn.*, to suffice, to be enough.  
 batidor, *m.*, scout.  
 baya, *f.*, berry.  
 beber, *va., vn.*, to drink.  
 belicoso, *adj.*, warlike.  
 belleza, *f.*, beauty.  
 bello, *adj.*, beautiful.  
 beneficioso, *adj.*, advantageous, beneficial.  
 benigno, *adj.*, benign, favorable; (weather) pleasant; (climate) mild.  
 bestia, *f.*, beast, animal.  
 biblioteca, *f.*, library.  
 bicicleta, *f.*, bicycle.  
 bien, *adv.*, well; ó —, or else; *comer —*, to eat heartily; *pues —*, now then.  
 bienes, *m. pl.*, goods, property; — *raíces*, real estate.  
 billete, *m.*, note.  
 bisiesto, *adj.*, bissextile; *año —*, leap-year.  
 blanco, *m. and adj.*, white.  
 blando, *adj.*, soft, mild.  
 boca, *f.*, mouth.  
 bolsa, *f.*, purse.  
 bolsillo, *m.*, pocket.  
 borbollar, *vn.*, to ripple.  
 bordo, *m.*, ship's side; á — *de*, on board of.  
 borriquillo, *m.*, foal (of donkey).  
 botánico, *m.*, botanist.  
 botica, *f.*, drug-store.  
 bramar, *vn.*, rage.  
 brazo, *m.*, arm.  
 breve, *adj.*, brief, short; *en —*, shortly, in a little while.  
 brisa, *f.*, breeze.

brotar, *vn.*, to arise; to issue; to spring or come forth.

bruma, *f.*, haze, mist.

buen, bueno (-a, -os, -as), *adj.*, good; buen tiempo, fine weather; buenos días, good-day (salutation); estar bueno, to be well.

buho, *m.*, owl.

bulto, *m.*, bulk, mass.

bullicioso, *adj.*, noisy.

buque, *m.*, vessel, ship.

burra, *f.*, [she-]donkey.

burro, *m.*, donkey.

busca, *f.*, search.

buscar, *va.*, to seek, to look for.

### C

cabalgar, *vn.*, to ride.

caballero, *m.*, gentleman; (direct address) sir.

caballete, *m.*, trestle.

caballo, *m.*, horse; á —, on horseback.

cabecera, *f.*, head of a bed; á la — de alguien, by the side of one's bed.

cabellera, *f.*, head of hair; (*fig.*) tuft.

cabello, *m.*, hair (single hair of the head); —s (*pl.*), hair.

caber, *vn.*, to be containable in.

cabeza, *f.*, head.

cabo, *m.*, end.

cabra, *f.*, [she-]goat.

cabrito, cabritillo, *m.*, kid.

cacarear, *vn.*, to cackle.

cachorro, *m.*, pup; cub.

cada, each; — cual, — uno, each, each one; — vez, gradually.

caer, *vn.*, to fall; —se, to fall down, to tumble.

café, *m.*, coffee.

cafetal, *m.*, coffee plantation.

cafeto, *m.*, coffee-tree.

caído, *adj.*, depressed.

caja, *f.*, box; case; reloj de doble —, hunting-case watch.

calado, *m.*, (*naut.*) draught, draft.

calar, *va.*, to drench.

calcáreo, *adj.*, calcareous.

calendario, *m.*, calendar.

calentar, *va.*, to warm.

cálido, *adj.*, hot.

caliente, *adj.*, hot, warm.

calma, *f.*, calm, calmness.

calor, *m.*, heat; hace —, it is hot.

calle, *f.*, street.

cámara, *f.*, camera.

cambiar, *vn.*, to change; — de ropa, to c. one's clothes.

caminar, *vn.*, to walk; to proceed; to go.

camino, *m.*, road; — real, highway.

campana, *f.*, bell.

campanario, *m.*, steeple.

campo, *m.*, field; country.

Canarias, *f. pl.*, Canaries (islands).

canario, *m.*, canary.

cangrejo, *m.*, crab.

canoa, *f.*, canoe.

canor, *adj.*, singing; pájaro —, ave —a, song-bird.

cansar, *va.*, to tire, to fatigue.

cantar, *va.*, *vn.*, to sing.

cantidad, *f.*, quantity.

cañada, *f.*, ravine.

caoba, *f.*, mahogany.

capa, *f.*, cloak, mantle; layer, stratum; coating.

capaz [de], *adj.*, capable [of], able  
capitán, *m.*, captain. [to].

caprichoso, *adj.*, fanciful.

cara, *f.*, face.

carabela, *f.*, caravel.

¡caracoles! *excl.*, gracious! my!

carbón, *m.*, coal.

carbón, *m.*, carbon.

cárcel, *f.*, jail.

carecer [de], *vn.*, to lack, to be  
wanting [in], to be devoid [of];  
to be in need [of].

cargado [de], *adj.*, thick [with].

cariacontecido, *adj.*, crestfallen.

carilargo, *adj.*, long-faced; *estar*  
—, to pull a long face.

Carlitos, Charley.

Carlos, Charles.

carmesí, *m. and adj.*, crimson.

carne, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carnero, *m.*, sheep.

carnicero, *adj.*, carnivorous.

caro, *adj.*, dear; *mi cara mitad*,  
my better half (= wife).

carrera, *f.*, course.

carreta, *f.*, wagon.

carretería, *f.*, wagon-building.

casa, *f.*, house; — *de huéspedes*,  
boarding-h.; — *de ayuntamiento*,  
city hall; *en* — *de*, at the  
home of; *poner* —, to go to (or  
set up) housekeeping.

casar, *va.*, to marry. —*se*, *vn.*, to  
get married.

casco, *m.*, (*naut.*) hull.

casi, *adv.*, almost; — *nunca*, hard-  
ly ever.

caso, *m.*, case; — *que, en el* — *de*  
*que, dado* — *que, conj.*, in case.

castaña, *f.*, (nut) chestnut.

castaño, *m.*, (tree) chestnut;  
(color) brown, chestnut-brown.

castellano, *adj.*, Castilian; (lan-  
guage) Spanish.

castigar, *va.*, to punish.

casualidad, *f.*, chance.

cátedra, *f.*, chair (professorship).

catedrático, *m.*, professor.

catorce, *num.*, fourteen.

caudal, *m.*, property, wealth; vol-  
ume (of rivers).

caudaloso, *adj.*, (river) large,  
mighty.

causa, *f.*, cause; á — *de*, on ac-  
count of.

causar, *va.*, to cause; — *mal efec-*  
*to* [en], to have a bad effect

cauto, *adj.*, cautious. [upon].

caverna, *f.*, den.

cayado, *m.*, crook.

caza, *f.*, hunting.

cazador, *m.*, hunter.

cazar, *va., vn.*, to hunt.

cebolla, *f.*, onion, bulb.

cefirillo, *m.*, light breeze.

céfiro, *m.*, zephyr; western breeze.

celebrar, *va.*, to perform; to hold.

célebre, *adj.*, celebrated.

celeste, *adj.*, heavenly.

celtsibero, *adj.*, Celtiberian.

ceniza, *f.*, ash, ashes.

centavo, *m.*, cent.

centella, *f.*, spark.

centellear, *vn.*, to gleam, to flash.

céntimo, *m.*, centime (100 cénti-  
mos = 1 peseta = 20 cents).

cercos, *m.*, hoop.

cerdo, *m.*, pig.

cereza, *f.*, cherry.

cereso, *m.*, cherry-tree.

cero, *m.*, zero.

cerrar, *va.*, to shut, to close.

cerro, *m.*, hill; slope (39, 10);  
ridge (44, 15).

certificar, *va.*, to register (mail matter).

cervatillo, *m.*, fawn.

cesar, *vn.*, to cease, to end.

cetáceo, *m.*, cetacean.

cielo, *m.*, sky.

cien, ciento, *num.*, hundred.

ciencia, *f.*, science.

científico, *adj.*, scientific.

cierro, -as, -a, etc. (*pres. indic. of cerrar*).

cierva, *f.*, doe.

cifrar, *va.*, to sum up; (efforts) to devote, to concentrate.

cinco, *num.*, five.

ciprés, *m.*, cypress.

circulo, *m.*, club.

ciruela, *f.*, plum.

cita, *f.*, appointment, engagement.

ciudad, *f.*, city.

claro, *adj.*, clear; light; ¡—! to be sure!

clase, *f.*, class, kind.

clavero, *m.*, clove-tree.

clavo, *m.*, nail; clove.

clima, *m.*, climate.

clocar, *vn.*, to cluck.

cobarde, *adj.*, cowardly.

cobrar, *va.*, to collect (money due).

cobre, *m.*, copper.

cocer, *va.*, to boil.

cocina, *f.*, kitchen; cooking, cookery.

cocinero, *m.*, (*f. cocinera*), cook.

coche, *m.*, carriage.

cochero, *m.*, coachman.

coger *va.*, to catch; (flowers, fruit) to pick.

col, *m.*, cabbage.

cola, *f.*, tail.

colaga, *m.*, colleague.

colibrí, *m.*, humming-bird.

colmena, *f.*, [bee-]hive.

Colón, Columbus.

colonia, *f.*, colony.

colorado, *m. and adj.*, red.

comarca, *f.*, region, tract.

comer, *va., vn.*, to eat; to dine.

cometa, *m.*, comet. —, *f.*, kite:

levantar una —, to fly a k

cometer, *va.*, to commit; to make.

comida, *f.*, dinner; meal, food.

comisión, *f.*, committee.

como, *adv.*, as; like; as if.

compañero, *m.*, companion, comrade; — de clase, classmate.

compartir, *va.*, to share.

completo, *adj.*, complete, entire; por —, completely.

componer, *va.*, to compose; to mend, to repair.

comprar, *va.*, to buy.

comprender, *va.*, to understand, to realize; to comprise, to include.

comprimido, *adj.*, flattened down.

compromiso, *m.*, engagement.

compuesto (*pp. of componer*).

común, *adj.*, common; no tener nada de — con, to have nothing in c. with.

con, *prep.*, with.

concebir, *va.*, to conceive.

concierto, *m.*, concert.

concha, *f.*, shell.

conducción, *f.*, guidance.

conducir, *va.*, to lead; (draft-animals) to drive.

conduje, -iste, -o, etc. (*past of conducir*).

conejo, *m.*, rabbit.

conferencia, *f.*, lecture.

confesar, *va.*, to confess.

confiar, *va.*, to confide, to entrust.



- conformar, va.,** to conform. —**es** [con], **vn.,** to yield [to].  
**confundir, va.,** to confuse. —**es, vn.,** to become confused, to make a mistake.  
**confuso, adj.,** confused, commingled.  
**conjunto, m.,** combination.  
**conocer, va.,** to know, to be acquainted with; to make the acquaintance of (36, 2).  
**conozco** (1st *pres. indic.* of **conocer**).  
**conquistador, m.,** conqueror.  
**conquistar, va.,** to conquer.  
**conseguir, va.,** to get, to procure.  
**conservar, va.,** to preserve, to keep.  
**considerar, va.,** to gaze upon.  
**conigo, prep. + pron.,** with him (her, or it).  
**consiguiente, adj.,** consequent; por —, consequently, hence, therefore.  
**consistir [en], vn.,** to consist [of].  
**consolidar, va.,** to solidify.  
**consonancia, f.,** rhyme.  
**Constantinopla, f.,** Constantinople.  
**constituir, va.,** to constitute, to form, to comprise.  
**constituyo, -es, -e, etc.** (*pres. indic.* of **constituir**).  
**construir, va.,** to build, to construct.  
**construyo, -es, -e, etc.** (*pres. indic.* of **construir**).  
**contar, va.,** to tell, to relate.  
**contemplar, va.,** to watch, to observe.  
**contener, va.,** to contain.  
**contento, adj.,** satisfied; happy (23, 8).  
**contestación, f.,** reply.  
**contestar, vn.,** to answer, to reply.  
**contra, prep.,** against.  
**contrabandista, m.,** smuggler.  
**contrario, adj.,** contrary; opposite (in meaning); por lo —, on the c., on the other hand.  
**contraste, m.,** contrast.  
**contratiempo, m.,** mishap.  
**contribuir, vn.,** to contribute.  
**contribuyo, -es, -e, etc.** (*pres. indic.* of **contribuir**).  
**convenir, vn.,** to suit, to behoove; to be proper or becoming.  
**convertir, va.,** to convert, to change.  
**convidar, va.,** to invite.  
**conviene** (3d *sing. pres. indic.* of **convenir**).  
**convierto, -es, -e, etc.** (*pres. indic.* of **convertir**).  
**copiar, va.,** to copy.  
**copla, f.,** quatrain.  
**cordero, m.,** lamb.  
**cordillera, f.,** mountain-chain.  
**coronel, m.,** colonel.  
**cortar, va.,** to cut.  
**cortés, adj.,** courteous.  
**corteza, f.,** bark; husk.  
**corto, adj.,** short.  
**corredor, m.,** hall, passage.  
**corregir, va.,** to correct.  
**correr, vn.,** to run; (water) to flow.  
**corriente, f.,** current; stream; — del Golfo, Gulf S.  
**cosa, f.,** thing; matter.  
**cosecha, f.,** harvest.  
**cosechero, m.,** gatherer; harvester.  
**costa, f.,** coast.  
**costado, m.,** side.  
**costar, va.,** to cost.  
**costear, va.,** to defray, to pay.

*costumbre, f.,* custom.  
*crascitar, vn.,* to caw.  
*crear, va.,* to create.  
*crecer, vn.,* to grow.  
*crecida, f.,* flood.  
*creer, va.,* to believe; (to be of a certain opinion) to think; ¡ya lo creo! yes indeed!  
*creyendo (ger. of creer).*  
*crisántemo, m.,* chrysanthemum.  
*cristalino, adj.,* clear, limpid.  
*cruzar, va.,* to pass; to cross.  
*cuadra, f.,* stable.  
*cuadrado, m. and adj.,* square.  
*cuadro, m.,* picture.  
*cuando, adv.,* when; *de — en —, de vez en —,* from time to time.  
*cuanto, adj.,* how much; (*pl.*) how many; *cuantas veces,* every time that, as often as; *en —,* when, as soon as, in as far as; *unos (-as) cuantos (-as),* a few.  
*cuatro, num.,* four.  
*cubierto (pp. of cubrir).*  
*cubil, m.,* lair.  
*cubo, m.,* cube.  
*cubrir [de, con], va.,* to cover [with].  
*cuchillo, m.,* knife.  
*cuenca, f.,* hollow; bed (of stream), basin (of river).  
*cuenta, f.,* account; *darse — de,* to bear in mind; to get [something] into one's head.  
*cuento, -as, -a, etc. (pres. indic. of contar).*  
*cuerda, f.,* cord, line.  
*cuerpo, m.,* body.  
*cuervo, m.,* crow.  
*cueva, f.,* cave.  
*cuidado, m.,* care; *con —,* carefully.

*cuidar, va.,* to take care of; — *bien,* to take good care of.  
*cumbre, f.,* summit.  
*cumplir, va.,* to fulfil — [*con*], *vn.,* to comply [with].  
*cuna, f.,* cradle.  
*cunear, vn.,* to rock.  
*cuñada, f.,* sister-in-law.  
*cuñado, m.,* brother-in-law.  
*custodia, f.,* custody, guardianship.  
*cuyo (-a, -os, -as), rel. pron.,* whose, of which.

## CH

*chacharear, vn.,* to chatter.  
*chaparrón, m.,* shower.  
*chasqueado, adj.,* disappointed.  
*chícharo, m.,* pea.  
*chico, adj.,* little.  
*chileno, adj.,* Chilean.  
*chiquillo, m.,* little boy, child.  
*chino, adj.,* Chinese.  
*choza, f.,* hut, cabin.  
*chubasco, m.,* shower.

## D

*dama, f.,* lady.  
*danzar, vn.,* to dance.  
*dañar, vn.,* to injure.  
*daño, m.,* harm.  
*dar, va.,* to give; to produce; — *á luz,* to publish; — *por resultado,* to result in.  
*de, prep.,* of; from; with.  
*debajo, adv.,* underneath; — *de, prep.,* under; (motion) below.  
*deber, m.,* duty.

*deber, va.*, to owe. —, *vn.*, (*phases of must, ought, should*; *cf. §§* *débil, adj.*, weak. [1003-24].

*decidir, va.*, to decide.

*décimo, adj.*, tenth.

*decir, va.*, to say, to tell; *es* —, that is to say.

*degollar, va.*, to kill, to slaughter.

*dejar, va.*, to leave; to cause, to let; — *se caer sobre*, to pounce upon (33, 5); — *se ver*, to be seen, to appear. —, *vn.*, to cease, to leave off; — *de*, to fail to, to omit to.

*delante, adv.*, before, in front; — *de, prep.*, before, in front of.

*deleitar, va.*, to delight, to charm.

*delgado, adj.*, thin; 'delicate; fine.

*delicioso, adj.*, delightful.

*demasiado, adj. and adv.*, too; too much. (*pl.*) too many.

*demostrar, va.*, to show; to evidence.

*denominar, va.*, to name, to call.

*denso, adj.*, dense, heavy.

*dentro, adv.*, within, inside; — *de, prep.*, inside [of].

*departamento, m.*, (railway) compartment.

*dependiente, m.*, clerk; — principal, chief (*or* head) *c.*

*depósito, m.*, deposit.

*derecho, m.*, right.

*derecho, adj.*, straight; right; *á la derecha*, to (*or* on) the *r.*

*derechura: en* — *adelante*, straight ahead.

*derrochar, va.*, to squander.

*derrota, f.*, defeat.

*derrotar, va.*, to defeat.

*derrumbar, va.*, to overthrow, to break down, to demolish.

*desabrido, adj.*, unsavory, unpalatable; (*fig.*) weak, insipid.

*desagradable, adj.*, disagreeable.

*desairar, va.*, to disappoint; to offend.

*desalojar, va.*, to dislodge; to tear up (33, 13).

*desaparecer, vn.*, to disappear, to get out of sight.

*desarrollar, va.*, to develop.

*desarrollo, m.*, development.

*desatar, va.*, to untie, to unloose. — *se, vn.*, to come untied, to get loose; (storm) to come up.

*desayunar, desayunarse, vn.*, to breakfast.

*desayuno, m.*, breakfast.

*desazonado, adj.*, dejected, disheartened.

*descansar, vn.*, to rest.

*descanso, m.*, rest.

*descender, va.*, to descend.

*descolgar, va.*, to unhook, to get (*or* take) down.

*descomunal, adj.*, uncommon.

*desconocido, adj.*, unknown.

*descontento, m.*, malcontent.

*describir, va.*, to describe.

*descrito, (pp. of describir).*

*descubierto, (pp. of descubrir).*

*descubrir, va.*, to discover.

*descuelga (imperat. of descolgar).*

*desde, prep.*, from, since; — *que (+ verb)*, since.

*desear, va.*, to desire, to wish.

*desembarcar, vn.*, to land.

*desencadenado, adj.*, (*fig.*) unbridled, unrestrained, furious.

*desencadenar, va.*, to unchain.

*deseo, m.*, wish, desire.

*desesperación, f.*, despair.

*desfavorable, adj.*, unfavorable.

*desgracia*, *f.*, misfortune; *por* —, unfortunately.

*desgraciado*, *adj.*, unfortunate.

*desahacer*, *va.*, to undo; —*se de*, to get rid of, get away from.

*desierto*, *adj.*, desert, deserted.

*deslizarse*, *vn.*, to creep.

*desmelenado*, *adj.*, disheveled.

*desnudo*, *adj.*, bare, naked.

*despedazar*, *va.*, to tear to pieces.

*despedida*, *f.*, farewell, leave-taking; wedding-party (34, 4).

*despedir*, *va.*, to dismiss; to send forth. —*se*, *vn.*, to take leave.

*despegar*, *va.*, to detach.

*despejado*, *adj.*, (sky) clear.

*despeñadero*, *m.*, precipice, cliff.

*despertar*, *va.*, to wake, to awaken.

*despidiendo* (*ger.* of *despedir*).

*desplegado*, *adj.*, outspread.

*desprender*, *va.*, to disengage, to free. —*se*, *vn.*, to become detached; to grow out from (46, 7).

*después*, *adv.*, afterwards; — *de*, *prep.*, after.

*destacarse*, *vn.*, to loom up.

*destilar*, *va.*, to distil.

*destinado* [á], *adj.*, intended [to].

*destino*, *m.*, fate. [made [for].

*destino*, *m.*, destination, journey's end.

*destornillar*, *va.*, to unscrew.

*destrozo*, *m.*, damage, havoc.

*destructor*, *adj.*, destructive.

*destruir*, *va.*, to destroy.

*desvanecer*, *va.*, to quell, to put a stop to.

*desventajoso*, *adj.*, disadvantageous.

*detener*, *va.*, to detain. —*se*, *vn.*, to stop.

*detonación*, *f.*, report, explosion.

*detrás*, *adv.*, behind; — *de*, *prep.*, behind, after.

*devolver*, *va.*, to return (give or send back).

*devorar*, *va.*, to devour, to eat up.

*día*, *m.*, day; *al* —, a day (per diem); *de* —, by day, in the daytime; *hasta el* —, so far, up to this (or the present) time; *hoy* —, nowadays.

*dicho*, (*pp.* of *decir*); the said (43, 2); *mejor* —, more correctly speaking.

*diez*, *num.*, ten.

*diferir*, *va.*, to defer. —, *vn.*, to *difícil*, *adj.*, difficult. [differ.

*dificultad*, *f.*, difficulty.

*dije*, *dijiste*, *dijo*, etc. (*past* of *decir*).

*diminuto*, *adj.*, diminutive.

*dinamita*, *f.*, dynamite.

*dinero*, *m.*, money.

*dios*, *m.*, god; — *fluvial*, river-god.

*diputación*, *f.*, delegation.

*dirigir*, *va.*, to direct. —*se*, *vn.*, to betake one's self, to go.

*disfrutar*, *va.*, to enjoy.

*disipar*, *va.*, to dispel.

*disminuir*, *va.*, to diminish.

*disminuyo*, -*es*, -*e*, etc. (*pres. indic.* of *disminuir*).

*disparar*, *va.*, to fire; (*coll.*) to fire off.

*dispensar*, *va.*, to pardon, to excuse.

*disponer*, *va.*, to arrange; — *de*, to control, to have at one's disposal.

*dispuesto* (*pp.* of *disponer*). —, *adj.*, ready.



*distante, adj.*, distant, far.  
*distinguir, va.*, to distinguish, to make out.  
*diverso, adj.*, different; (*pl.*) *varidir, va.*, to divide. [*ous.*]  
*divisar, va.*, to espy, to descry, to discover.  
*divulgar, va.*, to disclose.  
*doble, m. and adj.*, double; *reloj de — caja*, hunting-case watch.  
*dolor, m.*, grief.  
*domicilio, m.*, dwelling.  
*Don, Doña* (see Lesson XXI).  
*dorado, adj.*, golden; (*cooking*) browned.  
*dorar, va.*, to gild; (*cooking*) to brown.  
*dormido, adj.*, asleep.  
*dormir, vn.*, to sleep.  
*dos, num.*, two.  
*duda, f.*, doubt; *sin —*, doubtless. no doubt.  
*dueño, m.*, (*f. -a*), owner.  
*duque, m.*, duke.  
*duradero, adj.*, durable.  
*durante, prep.*, during.  
*durar, vn.*, to last.

## E

*é* (form assumed by *y* before initial *i-* or *hi-*).  
*ebanista, m.*, cabinet-maker.  
*ébano, m.*, ebony.  
*echa, va.*, to throw; to put forth; — *á pique*, to sink (a ship); — *al vuelo*, to fly (a kite); — *de ver*, to notice; — *se de ver*, to be visible.  
*edad, f.*, age.  
*edificio, m.*, building; structure.

*Eduardo, Edward.*  
*efectivamente, adv.*, in fact.  
*egipcio, adj.*, Egyptian.  
*Egipto, m.*, Egypt.  
*egiptólogo, m.*, Egyptologist.  
*ejemplo, m.*, example; copy (of a book); *por —*, for instance.  
*elevado, adj.*, high, lofty.  
*embajador, m.*, ambassador.  
*embarcación, f.*, vessel, craft.  
*embarcar, va.*, to ship. — *se, vn.*, to embark, to get into (a boat).  
*embargo, m.*, restriction; *sin —*, nevertheless.  
*embravecido, adj.*, furious.  
*empajar, va.*, to stuff (zoölogical specimens).  
*empeño, m.*, desire; effort.  
*emperador, m.*, emperor.  
*empezar, va., vn.*, to begin, to commence.  
*empinado, adj.*, lofty, towering.  
*empleado, m.*, employé.  
*emplear, va.*, to employ; to use.  
*empleo, m.*, employment; use.  
*empujar, va.*, to push; to drive, to force.  
*emprender, va.*, to undertake; to begin.  
*enamorado [de], adj.*, in love [with].  
*encaminado [para], adj.*, on the road [to].  
*encampamento, m.*, camp.  
*encauzar, va.*, to channel; to cut [into the earth].  
*encender, va.*, to kindle.  
*encerrar, va.*, to shut in; to imprison.  
*enciendo, -es, -e, etc. (pres. indic. of encender).*  
*encima (en + cima), adv.*, on top,

- up above; — *de*, *prep.*, on top of, over; *por* — *de*, (motion) over, above.
- encontrar, *va.*, to find; to meet.  
—*se*, *vn.*, to be.
- encuentro, *m.*, encounter.
- encuentro, -as, -a, etc. (*pres. indic.* of encontrar).
- encumbrado, *adj.*, lofty.
- enfrente, *adv.*, opposite; — *de*, *prep.*, opposite.
- enfriamiento, *m.*, cooling, chilling.
- enfriar, *va.*, to chill. —*se*, *vn.*, to become cold.
- engancha, *va.*, to hook.
- enojado, *adj.*, angry.
- enojar, *va.*, to anger.
- enorme, *adj.*, enormous.
- Enrique, Henry.
- enroscar, *va.*, to ruffle.
- ensalada, *f.*, salad.
- ensayo, *m.*, essay.
- enseñar, *va.*, to teach; to show.
- ensimismado (< *en sí mismo*), *adj.*, absent-minded, absorbed in one's own thoughts.
- ensordecedor, *adj.*, deafening.
- entero, *adj.*, whole, entire.
- entonces, *adv.*, then.
- entrar, *vn.*, to get to enter, to get in; — *en*, to go (*or* get) into.
- entre, *prep.*, between; among; in.
- entreabierto, *adj.*, half-open; ajar.
- enviar, *va.*, to send.
- envolver, *va.*, to envelope; to surround.
- envuelto (*pp.* of *envolver*).
- envuelto, -es, -e, etc. (*pres. indic.* of *envolver*).
- época, *f.*, epoch; age; time (30, 9.)
- equivaler, *va.*, to be equivalent (*or* equal) to.
- equivocación, *f.*, mistake.
- era, *f.*, barn-floor, threshing-floor.
- erigir, *va.*, to erect.
- errante, *adj.*, wandering.
- escabroso, *adj.*, rough, rugged.
- escala, *f.*, (*naut.*) landing; *hacer* —, to land.
- escalera, *f.*, ladder.
- escampar, *vn.*, to stop raining.
- escarpado, *adj.*, steep.
- esconder, *va.*, to hide.
- escondite, *m.*, covert.
- escopeta, *f.*, gun, shotgun.
- escorias, *f. pl.*, scoriae.
- escribir, *va.*, to write.
- escrito (*pp.* of *escribir*).
- escritor, *m.*, writer, author.
- escuadra, *f.*, fleet.
- escuálido, *adj.*, haggard.
- escuchar, *va.*, to listen to; to hear.
- escudo, *m.*, shield.
- escuela, *f.*, school.
- ese (-a, -o; -os, -as), *pron.*, that; eso *ea*, that's it.
- esfuerzo, *m.*, effort.
- Esmirna, *f.*, Smyrna.
- espacio, *m.*, space.
- espalda, *f.*, back.
- espanto, *m.*, fright.
- España, *f.*, Spain.
- español, *m.*, Spaniard. —, *adj.*, Spanish.
- esparcir, *va.*, to spread; to scatter. —*se*, *vn.*, to spread.
- espárragos, *m. pl.*, asparagus.
- especial, *adj.*, special; *en* —, especially.
- especie, *f.*, kind, species.
- espectáculo, *m.*, sight.
- espectro, *m.*, ghost.
- esperanza, *f.*, hope.

*esperar, va.*, to await, to expect;  
to hope for. —, *vn.*, to hope.

*espeso, adj.*, thick; dense, heavy.

*espíritu, m.*, spirit; sprite.

*espléndido, adj.*, magnificent.

*espolique, m.*, guide.

*esposo, m.*, husband.

*espumoso, adj.*, foaming.

*esqueleto, m.*, skeleton.

*establecer, va.*, to establish.

*establo, m.*, cowshed, byre.

*estación, f.*, season.

*estado, m.*, state; condition; *los*

—s *Unidos*, the United States.

*estallar, vn.*, to burst.

*estanque, m.*, pond; pool.

*estante, m.*, shelf; set of shelves;

— *para libros*, bookcase.

*estar, vn.*, to be.

*estatua, f.*, statue.

*este, m. and adj.*, east.

*este (-a, -o; -os, -as)*, *pron.*, this;

— . . . *aquél*, the later . . . the  
former.

*esterio, m.*, (metric syst.) stere.

*estimar, va.*, to prize, to esteem.

*estirón, m.*, (*coll.*) pull, pulling.

*estival, adj.*, summer.

*estrella, f.*, star.

*estrellar, va.*, to dash to pieces.

—*se, vn.*, to dash.

*estruendo, m.*, deafening noise.

*estudiante, m.*, student. (N. B.—

The Spanish *estudiante* is pro-  
verbially "hard-up.")

*estudiar, va.*, to study; to investi-  
gate.

*estudio, m.*, study

*estuve, -iste, -o, etc.* (*past of*  
*estar*).

*etcétera*, and so forth, and the  
like.

*Europa, f.*, Europe.

*europeo, adj.*, European

*evitar, va.*, to avoid.

*examen, m.*, examination.

*examinar, va.*, to examine; to  
look, to see.

*exceder, va.*, to surpass; — *de*, to  
exceed.

*excelente, adj.*, excellent.

*excepto, adv.*, except, excepting.

*excusa, f.*, excuse.

*exento, adj.*, exempt.

*exhausto, adj.*, exhausted.

*existente, adj.*, existing.

*existir, vn.*, to exist, to be.

*éxito, m.*, outcome; success.

*expansión, f.*, recreation.

*expedicionario, m.*, member of an  
expedition.

*experimentar, va.*, to experience.

*explorador, m.*, explorer.

*exponer, va.*, to expose; to re-  
veal.

*expreso, m.*, express.

*expuesto (pp. of exponer)*.

*expulsar, va.*, to expel.

*extender, va.*, to extend. —*se, vn.*,  
to extend, to stretch.

*extensamente, adv.*, widely.

*extensión, f.*, extent.

*extenso, adj.*, extensive, large.

*exterior, adj.*, external, outward,  
outer; *la parte* —, the out-  
side.

*extranjero, m.*, foreigner.

*extrañar, va.*, to surprise; *es de* —,  
it is surprising. —*se, vn.*, to be  
surprised.

*extremado, adj.*, extreme.

*extremo, m.*, extremity; *en* —,  
extremely.

*extremo, adj.*, extreme.

## F

fabricación, *f.*, manufacture.  
 fábrica, *f.*, factory.  
 fácil, *adj.*, easy; (*fig.*) docile.  
 facultativo, *m.*, physician.  
 faisán, *m.*, pheasant.  
 falda, *f.*, skirt.  
 falta, *f.*, fault; hacer —, to be lacking.  
 faltar, *vn.*, to be lacking.  
 familia, *f.*, family.  
 faro, *m.*, lighthouse.  
 fatiga, *f.*, hardship; exertion.  
 favorecer, *va.*, to favor.  
 faz, *f.*, face; visage.  
 fe, *f.*, faith; poner — en, to put f. in.  
 fecha, *f.*, date; hasta la —, until now, thus far.  
 fécula, *f.*, starchy matter.  
 felicidad, *f.*, happiness.  
 felicitar, *m.*, to congratulate.  
 feroz, *adj.*, fierce.  
 férreo, *adj.*, iron.  
 ferrocarril, *m.*, railway, railroad.  
 ferrocarrilero, *adj.*, railway, railroad.  
 fiesta, *f.*, feast; festivity, merry-making.  
 fijar, *va.*, to fix; —se en, to notice.  
 fijo, *adj.*, fixed; de —, for a certainty.  
 fila, *f.*, row; file.  
 filósofo, *m.*, philosopher.  
 fin, *m.*, end; á — de que, in order that; al —, por —, at last, finally.  
 firmamento, *m.*, sky.  
 flan, *m.*, custard.  
 flanquear, *va.*, to border.

flecha, *f.*, arrow.  
 flor, *f.*, flower.  
 flotante, *adj.*, floating.  
 flotar, *vn.*, to float.  
 flotilla, *f.*, little fleet.  
 fluvial, *adj.*, [pertaining to a] river; dios —, river god.  
 foca, *f.*, seal.  
 follaje, *m.*, foliage.  
 fonda, *f.*, hotel.  
 forastero, *m.*, stranger (from another section of the country).  
 forma, *f.*, form, shape; en — de, in the f. of; en — de oreja, ear-like (33, 2).  
 formidable, *adj.*, tremendous.  
 fórmula, *f.*, formula.  
 fortalecer, *va.*, to fortify.  
 fracasar, *vn.*, to fail.  
 fragata, *f.*, frigate-bird.  
 francés, *m. and adj.*, French.  
 franco, *adj.*, frank.  
 frecuencia, *f.*, frequency; con —, frequently.  
 frente, *f.*, forehead.  
 fresco, *adj.*, cool.  
 frescura, *f.*, coolness.  
 fresno, *m.*, ash [tree].  
 frío, *m. and adj.*, cold.  
 fruto, *m.*, fruit.  
 fuego, *m.*, fire.  
 fuente, *f.*, spring; water-source.  
 fuera, *adv.*, outside, out. — de, *prep.*, outside of.  
 fuera, *fuese* (*past subjunct.* of *ser* and of *ir*).  
 fuerte, *adj.*, strong; (noise) loud; (rain, dew) heavy; (cold) severe.  
 fugaz, *adj.*, fleeting; unstable.  
 fulano, *m.*, So-and-So.  
 fulgor, *m.*, gleam.



*fulminante, m.*, primer.  
*fumar, va., vn.*, to smoke; *á medio* —, half-smoked (34, 2).  
*fundar, va.*, to found.  
*funesto, adj.*, evil, baleful; unto-ward, deplorable.  
*furioso, adj.*, terrific (47, 3).  
*furor, m.*, fury.  
*fusiiforme, adj.*, fusiform, spindle-shaped.  
*fusión, f.*, melting.

## G

*gafas, f. pl.*, spectacles.  
*gallina, f.*, hen.  
*gallinero, m.*, hennery, hen-house, coop.  
*ganar, va.*, to earn; — *un obstáculo*, to overcome an obstacle.  
*gafir, vn.*, to yelp.  
*garbanzo, m.*, "garbanzo" (a kind of large pea).  
*garganta, f.*, throat; (*geog.*) gorge (39, 1).  
*garita, f.*, sentry-box.  
*garra, f.*, claw.  
*gastar, va.*, to spend.  
*gasto, m.*, expense.  
*gastrónomo, m.*, epicure, gourmet.  
*gata, f.*, [she-] cat.  
*gatito, m.*, kitten.  
*gato, m.*, cat.  
*gavilla, f.*, sheaf.  
*gazapera, f.*, burrow.  
*gazar, vn.*, to quack.  
*gente, f.*, people.  
*gira, f.*, trip, outing.  
*girar, vn.*, to turn; to revolve.  
*girasol, m.*, sunflower.  
*glacial, adj.*, (*fig.*) icy, frozen.  
*globo, m.*, globe.

*gloria, f.*, glory.  
*gobernante, m.*, governor.  
*gobernar, va.*, to govern.  
*goce, m.*, enjoyment.  
*goleta, f.*, schooner.  
*golondrina, f.*, swallow.  
*goloso, adj.*, greedy.  
*gordo, adj.*, fat.  
*gorjear, vn.*, to warble.  
*gorrión, m.*, sparrow.  
*gota, f.*, drop.  
*Gotardo, m.*, Gothard.  
*gotita, f.*, droplet, little drop.  
*gozar de, va.*, to enjoy.  
*gracias, f. pl.*, thanks, thank you.  
*gracioso, adj.*, graceful; ¡qué —! how fine!  
*grado, m.*, degree.  
*gramo, m.*, (metric syst.) gramme.  
*grana, f.*, crimson.  
*gran, grande, adj.*, large; great.  
*grandioso, adj.*, grand, magnificent.  
*granizar, vn.*, to hail.  
*grano, m.*, grain; (of coffee) bean.  
*grasa, f.*, fat; (of whale) blubber.  
*grato, adj.*, pleasing.  
*grave, adj.*, serious.  
*griego, adj.*, Greek, Grecian.  
*grieta, f.*, cleft, crevice.  
*grito, m.*, cry.  
*grosella, f.*, currant.  
*gruir, vn.*, to scream.  
*grueso, adj.*, bulky, large.  
*grulla, f.*, crane.  
*grupo, m.*, group.  
*guardar, va.*, to keep.  
*guardia, m.*, guard; — *civil*, policeman, gendarme; — *rural*, mounted police (for patrol of rural districts).  
*guarida, f.*, lair.

guerra, *f.*, war.  
 guía, *m.* and *f.*, guide.  
 guisante, *m.*, pea.  
 gustar, *va.*, to please; me gusta, I like him; me gustan, I like  
 gusto, *m.*, taste; pleasure. [them.]

## H

habitación, *f.*, room, apartment.  
 habitante, *m.*, inhabitant.  
 habitar, *va.*, to inhabit, to live in;  
 —, *vn.*, to dwell, to live.  
 hablar, *va.*, *vn.*, to speak.  
 hacendado, *m.*, farmer (owner of an hacienda).  
 hacer, *va.*, to make; to do; — de, to go as (ar, 12); — escala, to land; — un papel, to play a part; — provisión, to lay in a supply; — que(+ *subjunct.*), to cause; — se á la mar, to put to sea; irse haciendo, to get to be.  
 hacia, *prep.*, towards.  
 hacienda, *f.*, farm; rural estate.  
 haga, (*pres. subjunct.* of hacer).  
 hallar, *va.*, to find.  
 hartó, *adv.*, quite, pretty; extremely.  
 hasta, *prep.*, as far as; until, till; even; — el día, up to the present time; — qué hora, how late; — tanto que, to such an extent that, so much so that.  
 hebra, *f.*, thread; fiber.  
 hecho (*pp.* of hacer); regular  
 helada, *f.*, frost. [(25, 8).  
 helar, *va.*, to freeze; (impersonal) to freeze. — se, *vn.*, to freeze, to become frozen.  
 helecho, *m.*, fern.  
 hélice, *f.*, screw (of steamship).

hembra, *f.*, female.  
 herbáceo, *adj.*, weedy.  
 heredar, *va.*, to inherit.  
 herida, *f.*, wound.  
 herir, *va.*, to wound.  
 hermana, *f.*, sister.  
 hermanito, *m.*, little brother.  
 hermano, *m.*, brother.  
 hermoso, *adj.*, beautiful; (*fig.*)  
 hermosura, *f.*, beauty. [fine.  
 herramienta, *f.*, tool.  
 hiele (*subjunct.* of helar).  
 hiero, — es, — e, etc. (*pres. indic.* of  
 hierro, *m.*, iron. [herir].  
 hija, *f.*, daughter.  
 hijo, *m.*, son; — s, children (sons and daughters).  
 hilera, *f.*, row; line.  
 hinchar, *va.*, to swell. — se [de],  
*vn.*, to swell, to become filled  
 historia, *f.*, history. [with].  
 hombre, *m.*, man.  
 hombro, *m.*, shoulder.  
 horno, *m.*, furnace.  
 hondo, *adj.*, deep.  
 hora, *f.*, hour; hasta qué —, how  
 horizonte, *m.*, horizon. [late.  
 hormiga, *f.*, ant.  
 hormiguero, *m.*, ant-hill.  
 horquilla, *f.*, fork; — de cabello, hairpin.  
 hospedar, *va.*, to entertain.  
 hoy, *adv.*, to-day; — día, now-  
 adays.  
 hueco, *m.* and *adj.*, hollow.  
 huerta, *f.*, orchard.  
 huerto, *m.*, vegetable-garden.  
 huésped, *m.*, guest; la casa de — es, boarding-house.  
 huésped, *f.*, guest.  
 hueso, *m.*, bone; (of fruit) stone.  
 huevo, *m.*, egg.

*humedad, f.*, moisture.  
*humedecer, va.*, to moisten.  
*húmedo, adj.*, moist; damp; wet.  
*humor, m.*, humor; *de mal —*,  
 vexed, in a bad h.  
*huracán, m.*, hurricane.  
*humear, va.*, to scent.

## I

*iglesia, f.*, church.  
*ignorante, adj.*, stupid, ignorant.  
*ignorar, va.*, to be unaware (*or*  
 ignorant) of, not to know.  
*impetuosidad, f.*, violence; *con —*,  
 violently, furiously.  
*impido, -es, -e, etc. (pres. indic. of*  
*impedir)*.  
*imponente, adj.*, imposing.  
*importar, vn.*, to be important, to  
 matter.  
*impregnado [de], adj.*, laden  
 [with].  
*imprensa, f.*, press; *mandar á*  
*la —*, to send to p.  
*indefinido, adj.*, indefinite.  
*indicar, va.*, to point out, to tell;  
 to mean, to imply.  
*indicio, m.*, indication.  
*indígena, m.*, native.  
*indígena, adj.*, native.  
*indio, m. and adj.*, Indian.  
*indole, f.*, nature.  
*indudable, adj.*, unquestionable.  
*informe, m.*, report. [undoubted.  
*ingeniero, m.*, engineer.  
*ingerto, m.*, grafting.  
*inglés, adj.*, English.  
*inmediato, adj.*, immediate.  
*inmensidad, f.*, immensity; *—es*,  
 wastes (43, 4).

*inmovilidad, f.*, immobility; mo-  
 tionlessness.  
*inocente, adj.*, innocent; *el Día de*  
*los —s*, the Spanish "All Fools'  
 Day" (Dec. 28).  
*inquieto, adj.*, restless.  
*inquilino, m.*, inmate, tenant.  
*insinuar, vn.*, to suggest, to imply.  
*insistir [en], vn.*, to insist [upon].  
*insoportable, adj.*, unbearable.  
*instrumento, m.*, implement.  
*íntegro, adj.*, whole.  
*intemperie, f.*, weather (*i. e.*, at-  
 mospheric inclemency).  
*interesante, adj.*, interesting.  
*interesar, va.*, to interest.  
*interior, m.*, inner part; *en el —*,  
 inside, *adv.*  
*interrumpir, va.*, to interrupt.  
*íntimo, m.*, intimate friend.  
*introducir, va.*, to introduce. *—se*,  
*vn.*, to penetrate, find one's way.  
*invencible, adj.*, unconquerable.  
*invernal, adj.*, winter, wintry.  
*ínvrosímil, adj.*, improbable, un-  
 likely.  
*invierno, m.*, winter.  
*inundar, va.*, to overflow.  
*ir, vn.*, to go; *—se*, to go away.  
*isla, f.*, island.  
*Italia, f.*, Italy.  
*izquierdo, adj.*, left; *la izquierda*  
*(mano, understood)*, the left  
 [-hand side].

## J

*jabalí, m.*, wild boar.  
*jabalina, f.*, wild sow.  
*jabato, m.*, [wild] pig.  
*jactancia, f.*, boasting, ostentation.

*jamás, adv., never; ever.*  
*jardín, m., garden.*  
*jardinero, m., gardener.*  
*jaula, f., cage.*  
*jefe, m., chief; leader.*  
*Jesucristo, Jesus Christ; después*  
*de —, A. D. (anno Domini).*  
*jilguero, m., linnet.*  
*jinete, m., horseman, rider.*  
*Jorge, George.*  
*jornada, f., day; day's work; day's*  
*journey.*  
*José, Joseph.*  
*joven, m., young man. —, f.,*  
*young girl.*  
*joven, adj., young.*  
*Juan, John; —ito, Johnnie.*  
*juez, m., judge.*  
*jugador de bolsa, m., stock specu-*  
*lator.*  
*jugar, va., vn., to play; — á la*  
*alza, to bull the market; — á la*  
*baja, to bear the market.*  
*jugo, m., juice.*  
*Junta Directiva, f., Board of Di-*  
*rectors.*

## K

*kilo, (common abbreviation of*  
*kilogramo), m., kilogram.*

## L

*labrador, m., farmer (tiller of the*  
*soil).*  
*labrar, va., to till, to cultivate.*  
*lado, m., side; al otro — de, on the*  
*other s. of.*  
*ladrar, vn., to bark.*  
*lagarto, m., lizard.*

*lago, m., lake.*  
*laguna, f., pool.*  
*lanzar, va., to hurl, to throw.*  
*lancha, f., boat.*  
*Laponia, f., Lapland.*  
*largo, adj., long; á lo — de, along,*  
*prep.; — tiempo, long (time),*  
*adv.*  
*larguísimo (abs. superl. of largo),*  
*very long.*  
*lastima, f., pity; es —, it is a p.*  
*lastimar, va., to hurt.*  
*lastimero, adj., lamentable.*  
*laúd, m., lute.*  
*lebrato, m., leveret.*  
*lección, f., lesson.*  
*lectura, f., reading.*  
*leche, f., milk.*  
*lechoncillo, m., pig.*  
*lechuga, f., lettuce.*  
*leer, va., vn., to read.*  
*legar, va., to bequeath, to leave.*  
*legumbre, f., vegetable.*  
*lejano, adj., distant.*  
*lejos, adv., far.*  
*leña, f., wood (for fuel).*  
*león, m., lion.*  
*leona, f., lioness.*  
*letargo, m., lethargy.*  
*letra, f., letter (of alphabet);*  
*handwriting; tener buena —, to*  
*write a good hand.*  
*levantar, va., to lift, to raise; to*  
*erect; — una cometa, to fly a*  
*kite. —se, vn., to arise; to get*  
*leve, adj., light, slight. [up.*  
*libertad, f., liberty.*  
*libertar, va., to free.*  
*libra, f., pound.*  
*libre, adj., free; —cambista, m.,*  
*free-trader.*  
*librería, f., bookstore.*



*libro, m., book.*  
*licencia, f., leave of absence.*  
*licito, adj., lawful.*  
*liebre, f., hare.*  
*ligero, adj., thin, light (in weight or force); slight, gentle.*  
*lindo, adj., pretty.*  
*línea, f., line, row.*  
*lío, m., bundle.*  
*listo, adj., ready; handy.*  
*loba, f., [she-]wolf.*  
*lobezno, m., cub (of wolf).*  
*lobina, f., bass.*  
*lobo, m., wolf.*  
*locución, f., expression.*  
*lodo, m., mud.*  
*lograr, va., to attain. —, vn., to succeed [in].*  
*lomo, m., back; sirloin.*  
*Londres, m., London.*  
*longitud, f., length.*  
*lonja, f., exchange; Produce Exchange.*  
*lozano, adj., flourishing, luxuriant.*  
*luego, adv., soon; then (next in a series); muy —, pretty soon; soon; — que, when, as soon as.*  
*lugar, m., place; village; dar — á, to give rise to, to cause.*  
*lugarero, m., peasant, country-lumbro, f., fire. [man.]*  
*luna, f., moon.*  
*luto, m., mourning.*  
*luz, f., light; dar á —, to publish.*

## LL

*llama, f., flame.*  
*llamar, va., to call.*  
*llamativo, adj., striking, showy.*

*llanta, f., tire.*  
*llave, f., key; — inglesa, monkey-wrench.*  
*llegada, f., arrival.*  
*llegar, vn., to arrive, to come; — á, to get to (a place), to arrive at, to reach; — á contener, to get to contain, to eventually contain; — á ser, to get to be, to become.*  
*llenar [de], va., to fill [with].*  
*lleno, adj., full.*  
*llevar, va., to carry, to bear; to bring; —se (dat. reflex.), to carry off (or away).*  
*llorar, vn., to cry, to weep.*  
*llover, vn., to rain.*  
*llueve (pres. indic. of llover).*  
*lluvia, f., rain.*

## M

*macizo, adj., massive.*  
*madera, f., wood (material); —s, lumber.*  
*madero, m., plank.*  
*madrugada, f., morning (from midnight to sunrise); de —, early in the morning.*  
*madrugar, vn., to rise (or get up) early; — mucho, to get up very early.*  
*maduro, adj., ripe.*  
*magnífico, adj., magnificent.*  
*majestuoso, adj., majestic.*  
*maíz, m., corn (maize).*  
*malhumorado, adj., vexed.*  
*mal, malo, adj., bad.*  
*mamífera, f., mamífero, m., mammal.*  
*manantial, m., spring; (fig.) source.*

**mandar, va.**, to send to order; to tell (meaning "to command"); — **hacer algo**, to have something done; — **pintar**, to have painted; — **á la imprenta**, to send to press.

**mango, m.**, handle.

**mangoneo, m.**, (*coll.*) manipulation, operation.

**maniobrar, va.**, to drill, to parade (31, 5). — **vn.**, to manœuvre.

**manjar, m.**, food, article of food.

**manta, f.**, wrap.

**mantener, va.**, to keep; to uphold.

**mantequilla, f.**, butter.

**manto, m.**, cloak; mantle, covering.

**mamut, m.**, mammoth.

**manutención, f.**, living, "keep."

**manzana, f.**, apple.

**manzano, m.**, apple tree.

**mañana, f.**, morning; **de —**, in the m.; **por la — temprano**, early in the m.

**mañana, adv.**, to-morrow.

**máquina, f.**, engine.

**mar, m. and f.**, **hacerse á la —**, to put to sea.

**maravilla, f.**, marvel, wonder.

**marcar, va.**, to register.

**marcha, f.**, course; **seguir su —**, to pursue one's way.

**marchar, vn.**, to walk.

**marea, f.**, tide.

**margen, f.**, bank.

**marido, m.**, husband.

**marinero, marino, m.**, sailor.

**marítimo, adj.**, marine.

**marrana, f.**, sow.

**marrano, m.**, shoat.

**más, adv.**, more; **los (las) — de**, the majority of; **no estará de —**,

it will not be amiss; **sín — ni —**, without further delay.

**mas, conj.**, but.

**masa, f.**, mass.

**máscara, f.**, mask.

**máscara, m. and f.**, masker; **el baile de —**, masked ball.

**mástil, m.**, mast.

**matar, va.**, to kill.

**materia, f.**, material; matter.

**materno, adj.**, motherly.

**matiz, m.**, shade, tinge.

**matorral, m.**, thicket; undergrowth (in a forest).

**maullar, vn.**, to meow.

**máxima, f.**, maxim.

**mayar, vn.**, to mew.

**mayor, adj.**, larger; (persons) elder, older.

**mayoría, f.**, majority, most.

**Meca, f.**, Mecca.

**mecedora, f.**, rocking-chair.

**mecer, va.**, to stir; to rock, to swing.

**mechón, m.**, bunch, hank.

**medianoche, f.**, midnight.

**médico, m.**, doctor.

**medida, f.**, measure; **á — que**, according as, as fast as.

**medio, m.**, middle; **—s**, means; **tener los —s [de]**, to afford [to]; **por — de**, through.

**medio, adj.**, half; mean, average; **á — fumar**, half-smoked; **por término —**, on an average.

**mediodía, m.**, noon; midday; **al —**, at noon.

**Mediterráneo, m.**, Mediterranean.

**mejor, adj. and adv.**, better; — **dicho**, more correctly speaking.

**melancólico, adj.**, melancholy.

**melocotón, m.**, peach.

*memoria, f.*, memory.  
*menguar, vn.*, to decrease.  
*menos, adv.*, less, least; *á lo —*, at least.  
*menudo, adj.*, fine; minute; *á —*, often.  
*mercado, m.*, market.  
*merced, f.*, reward, wages; mercy; — *á*, thanks to; *á — de*, at the mercy of.  
*meridional, adj.*, southern.  
*mero, adj.*, mere.  
*mes, m.*, month  
*mesa, f.*, table.  
*meter, va.*, to put; —*se, vn.*, to penetrate; —*se á, vn.*, to begin to, to set about.  
*mezquino, adj.*, poor, meager.  
*mido, -es, -e, etc. (pres. indic. of medir)*.  
*mientras [que], conj.*, while; whereas.  
*mil; num.*, thousand.  
*milla, f.*, mile.  
*millar, m.*, thousand.  
*millonario, m.*, millionaire.  
*ministro, m.*, cabinet officer, "Secretary."  
*minuto, m.*, minute.  
*mirar, va.*, to look at, to gaze (or into), to view. —, *vn.*, to gaze, to look.  
*misimo, adj.*, same, very; *él —*, he himself.  
*mitad, f.*, half; *mi cara —*, my better half.  
*moderarse, vn.*, to moderate.  
*moderno, adj.*, modern.  
*modo, m.*, manner; *de — que*, so that; *de este —*, thus, in this way; *de ningún —*, by no means.  
*mojado, adj.*, wet, damp.

*mojar, va.*, to wet, to moisten.  
*mole, f.*, mass.  
*moler, va.*, to grind.  
*molestar, va.*, to annoy, to trouble, to worry.  
*Molucca, f.*, Molucca.  
*monarca, m.*, monarch, ruler.  
*moneda, f.*, coin.  
*monótono, adj.*, monotonous.  
*monta, f.*, amount; *no ha de ser de mucha —*, is not likely to amount to much.  
*montaña, f.*, mountain.  
*morada, f.*, dwelling.  
*moreno, adj.*, brown.  
*morir, vn.*, to die.  
*morsa, f.*, walrus.  
*moscado, m.*, nutmeg tree.  
*mostacera, f.*, mustard-pot.  
*mostaza, f.*, mustard.  
*mostrar, va.*, to show.  
*Moteczuma* (abbrev. Span. form of *Motecuhsoma*), Montezuma.  
*motivo, m.*, motive; *por qué —*, for what reason.  
*movedizo, adj.*, loose, movable.  
*mover, va.*, to move. [shifting.  
*movimiento, m.*, motion.  
*muchísimo (abs. superl. of mucho), adj. and adv.*, very much; *muchísimas gracias*, many thanks.  
*mucho (-a), adj.*, much, a great deal of; (*pl. -os, -as*), many; — *tiempo*, a long time.  
*mucho, adv.*, much; a great deal.  
*muebles, m. pl.*, furniture, articles of furniture.  
*muela, f.*, tooth (especially jaw-tooth).  
*muero, -es, -e, etc. (pres. indic. of morir)*.

muerte, *f.*, death.  
 muerto (*pp.* of morir and of matar).  
 mujer, *f.*, woman, wife.  
 mundo, *m.*, world; society.  
 muralla, *f.*, wall.  
 murciélago, *m.*, bat.  
 murmurar, *vn.*, to grumble, to complain.  
 muy, *adv.*, very; — luego, pretty soon.

## N

nacer, *vn.*, to be born; (rivers) to rise.  
 naciente, *adj.*, (sun)rising.  
 nacimiento, *m.*, birth; (rivers) source.  
 nadar, *vn.*, to swim.  
 nadie, *pron.*, no one, nobody.  
 natural, *m. and f.*, native.  
 naturaleza, *m.*, nature.  
 naufrago, *m.*, shipwrecked person, castaway.  
 navaja, *f.*, clasp-knife; razor.  
 nave, *f.*, ship, vessel.  
 navegación, *f.*, navigation.  
 necesitar, *va.*, to need.  
 necio, *m.*, fool.  
 negocio, *m.*, business; affair.  
 negro, *m. and adj.*, black.  
 negrura, *f.*, blackness.  
 negruzco, *m.*, blacking; inky (46, 4).  
 nevado, *adj.*, snowy; snow-covered; (*fig.*) frozen (63, 7).  
 nevera, *f.*, snow-field.  
 nido, *m.*, nest.  
 niebla, *f.*, fog.  
 nieto, *m.*, grandson.  
 nieve, *f.*, snow.

Nilo, *m.*, Nile.  
 niña, *f.*, girl.  
 niño, *m.*, child.  
 nivel, *m.*, level.  
 nocturno, *adj.*, nightly, of the night.  
 noche, *f.*, night; de —, at (*or* by) n., in the night time; esta —, to-night.  
 nombrar, *va.*, to appoint, to nominate.  
 nombre, *m.*, name.  
 nada, *f.*, nothing, mere nothing.  
 noroeste, *m.*, and *adj.*, northwest.  
 norte, *m. and adj.*, north; — americano, N. American.  
 nos, *pron.*, us.  
 nosotros (-as), *pron.*, we; us.  
 nota, *f.*, note.  
 notable, *adj.*, noteworthy, remarkable; (*fig.*) marked, considerable.  
 notar, *va.*, to notice, to observe.  
 noticia, *f.*, news (single item); information; —s, news (collectively).  
 novedad, *f.*, novelty; sin —, as usual.  
 novela, *f.*, novel.  
 novia, *f.*, bride.  
 novio, *m.*, bridegroom.  
 nubarrón, *m.*, black cloud.  
 nube, *f.*, cloud.  
 nublado, *adj.*, cloudy.  
 nuecesita (*dimin.* of nuez), *f.*, kernel.  
 nuestro (-a; -os, -as), *adj. pron.*, our.  
 nueve, *num.*, nine.  
 nuevo, *adj.*, new.  
 nuez, *f.*, nut; — moscada, nutmeg.  
 número, *m.*, number.



*nunca, adv.*, never; *casi* —, hardly ever.

*nupcial, adj.*, wedding, marriage.

*nupcias, f. pl.*, nuptials; *casarse en segundas* —, to get married a second time.

*nutritivo, adj.*, nutritious.

## D

*obelisco, m.*, obelisk.

*objeto, m.*, object; *con el — de*, for the purpose of.

*obligar, va.*, to force, to oblige, to compel.

*obra, f.*, work (literary or artistic); *obrar, vn.*, to act. [tic].

*observación, f.*, remark.

*observador, m.*, observer.

*observar, va.*, notice.

*obstante: no* —, *adv.*, nevertheless.

*obstruir, va.*, to obstruct.

*obtener, va.*, to obtain, to procure.

*ocasión, f.*, opportunity, chance.

*occidental, adj.*, western.

*occidente, m.*, west; *hacia el* —, westward.

*océano, m.*, ocean.

*ocio, m.*, leisure.

*ocultar, va.*, to hide.

*ocupar, va.*, to occupy.

*ocurrente, adj.*, apt, appropriate.

*ocurrir, vn.*, to occur.

*ochavo, m.*, farthing.

*ocho, num.*, eight.

*oeste, m. and adj.*, west; *con dirección al* —, in a westerly direction; *hacia el* —, westward.

*oficial, m.*, officer.

*ofrecer, va.*, to offer.

*oído, m.*, ear; hearing.

*oír, va.*, to hear.

*ojalá, excl.*, would to Heaven, I wish that.

*ojo, m.*, eye.

*ola, f.*, wave.

*olor [á], m.*, odor [of].

*olvidar, va.*, to forget.

*opíparo, adj.*, sumptuous.

*oponer, va.*, to place as an obstacle;

—*se á*, to oppose, to object to.

*opuesto, adj.*, opposite.

*ora, adv.* (used only as correlative): — . . . —, now . . . now.

*órbita, f.*, orbit.

*orden, m. and f.*, order.

*ordenanza, m.*, orderly.

*ordenar, va.*, to order.

*órgano, m.*, organ.

*oriental, adj.*, eastern, east.

*oriente, m.*, east.

*origen, m.*, origin, source; *dar — á*, to give rise to.

*onza, f.*, ounce.

*osadía, f.*, boldness, daring.

*oscilar, va.*, to move; to waver.

*oscuro, adj.*, dark.

*oso, m.*, bear.

*ostra, f.*, oyster.

*otoñal, adj.*, autumnal, autumn.

*otoño, m.*, autumn, fall.

*otro, adj.*, other, another; *por otra parte*, on the other hand.

*oveja, f.*, ewe; sheep.

*oye, -en* (3d *p. pres. indic. of oír*).

## P

*paciencia, f.*, patience.

*pacífico, adj.*, peaceful.

*padecer, vn.*, to suffer.

padre, *m.*, father; —s, parents.  
 pagar, *va.*, to pay.  
 país, *m.*, country; land.  
 paisaje, *m.*, landscape.  
 pajarillo, *m.*, small bird.  
 pájaro, *m.*, bird.  
 palabra, *f.*, word.  
 paloma, *f.*, dove; pigeon.  
 palomar, *m.*, dove-cot; pigeon-  
 paño, *m.*, cloth; stuff. [house.  
 pañuelo, *m.*, handkerchief.  
 papa, *f.*, potato.  
 papel, *m.*, paper; rôle; hacer un  
 —, to play a part, take a char-  
 acter.  
 paquete, *m.*, package; bunch.  
 Paquito (*dimin.* of Paco), Frank.  
 para, *prep.*, for, in order to; — sí  
 mismo, to himself (34, 8).  
 paradero, *m.*, whereabouts.  
 paraguas, *m.*, umbrella.  
 paraíso, *m.*, paradise.  
 parar, *vn.*, to stand.  
 pardo, *adj.*, grey.  
 parecer, *vn.*, to appear, to seem;  
 to resemble, to look like; —se  
 á, to resemble.  
 parezca (*subjunct.* of parecer).  
 pariente, *m. and f.*, relative, kin-  
 man (*or* kinswoman).  
 parsimonia, *f.*, frugality.  
 parte, *f.*, part; — exterior, out-  
 side; de — de, from, on behalf  
 of; por otra —, moreover, on  
 the other hand.  
 participar, *va.*, to communicate; to  
 let know, to inform.  
 particular, *adj.*, private.  
 partida, *f.*, departure; start; pun-  
 to de —, starting-point.  
 partir, *vn.*, to start (on a journey).  
 to set out.

pasable, *adj.*, tolerable; una renta  
 —, a comfortable income.  
 pasado, *adj.*, past; (period of  
 time) last.  
 pasajero, *m.*, passenger.  
 pasajero, *adj.*, transitory.  
 pasar, *va.*, to pass; to spend; to  
 overcome. —, *vn.*, to pass; to  
 go along; to happen; — de, to  
 be more than, to exceed; — por,  
 to pass by.  
 pasillo, *m.*, passage.  
 paso, *m.*, passage; way; opening;  
 step, footstep; pace; apresurar  
 el —, to hasten one's steps; al —  
 que, while, whereas; á este —,  
 at this rate.  
 pastel, *m.*, pie.  
 pastelillo, *m.*, pâté.  
 pastinaca, *f.*, parsnip.  
 pastito, *m.*, grass (fine pasture  
 grass).  
 pastora, *f.*, shepherdess.  
 patata, *f.*, potato.  
 patilla, *f.*, side-whisker, "sider."  
 pato, *m.*, duck.  
 pausado, *adj.*, slow, deliberate.  
 pavo, *m.*, turkey.  
 peces (*pl.* of pez).  
 pechina, *f.*, shell (32, 12).  
 pecho, *m.*, breast, bosom.  
 pedir, *va.*, to ask, to beg; — pre-  
 tado [algo] á [alguien], to bor-  
 row [something] from [some-  
 body].  
 Pedro, Peter.  
 pegar, *va.*, to beat; to fasten, to  
 paste, to stick. —se, *vn.*, to ad-  
 here.  
 pelegrino, *m.*, pilgrim.  
 peligro, *m.*, danger.  
 peligroso, *adj.*, dangerous.

pena, *f.*, trouble; valer la —, to be worth while.  
 penalidad, *f.*, tribulation.  
 pendiente, *f.*, slope.  
 penetrar, *va., vn.*, to penetrate, to get into.  
 pensamiento, *m.*, thought.  
 pensar [en], *vn.*, to think [of, about]; (+ *infin.*) to think of, to intend to.  
 peña, *f.*, rock.  
 peñascoso, *adj.*, precipitous.  
 pequeño, *adj.*, small, little.  
 percance, *m.*, accident.  
 percibir, *va.*, to perceive.  
 perder, *va.*, to lose.  
 pérdida, *f.*, loss.  
 perdiz, *f.*, partridge.  
 perdón, *m.*, pardon.  
 perdonar, *va.*, to pardon; to spare, to give quarter to (31, II).  
 perdurable, *adj.*, lasting.  
 perecedero, *adj.*, perishable.  
 período, *m.*, period.  
 perjudicar, *va.*, to damage, to deteriorate, to be detrimental to.  
 permanecer, *vn.*, to remain, to stay.  
 permanente, *adj.*, perpetual.  
 permitir, *va.*, to allow, to permit.  
 pero, *conj.*, but.  
 perseguidor, *m.*, pursuer.  
 persistir, *vn.*, to insist; to persist.  
 persona, *f.*, person; —s, people, persons.  
 perspectiva, *f.*, view, outlook.  
 pertenecer, *vn.*, to belong.  
 perra, *f.*, bitch, female dog.  
 perrera, *f.*, kennel.  
 perro, *m.*, dog.  
 pesantes, *f.*, weight.  
 pesar, *m.*, sorrow; á — de, in spite

of; á — de que, notwithstanding that.  
 pesar, *va.*, to weigh; to cause sorrow; me pesa [mucho], I am [very] sorry.  
 pesca, *f.*, fishing, fishery.  
 pescado, *m.*, fish (after it is caught).  
 pescador, *m.*, fisherman; — de ballenas, whaler.  
 pescar, *va.*, to fish for.  
 peseta, *f.*, twenty cents.  
 peso, *m.*, weight; (coin) dollar.  
 pez, *m.*, fish (in the water).  
 piar, *vn.*, to peep.  
 picada, *f.*, bite (in fishing).  
 pico, *m.*, peak; beak, bill (of bird).  
 picotazo, *m.*, blow of the beak.  
 pidió (3d *pers. sing. past* of *pedir*).  
 pidiera, *pidiese*, etc. (*past subjunct. of pedir*).  
 pie, *m.*, foot; lower end; á —, on foot.  
 piedra, *f.*, stone.  
 pierdo, —s, —e, etc. (*pres. indic. of perder*).  
 pieza, *f.*, piece.  
 pimentero, *m.*, pepper-tree.  
 pimienta, *f.*, pepper.  
 pino, *m.*, pine.  
 pintar, *va.*, to paint.  
 pintoresco, *adj.*, picturesque.  
 pique, *m.*, bottom (of sea); echar á —, to sink, *va.*; irse á —, to sink, *vn.*  
 pirámide, *f.*, pyramid.  
 piscívoro, *adj.*, piscivorous, fish-eating.  
 placer, *m.*, pleasure.  
 planeta, *m.*, planet.

planta, *f.*, plant.  
 plantío, *m.*, plantation.  
 platear, *va.*, to silver.  
 playa, *f.*, beach, shore; margin.  
 plaza, *f.*, square.  
 pliego, *m.*, wrapper; bajo — certificado, by registered mail.  
 pluma, *f.*, feather; pen.  
 población, *f.*, town.  
 poblado [de], *adj.*, covered [with]; overgrown [with].  
 poblar, *va.*, to people, to populate; to cover, to deck.  
 pobre, *adj.*, poor.  
 pocilga, *f.*, sty.  
 poco, *adj.*, little; (*pl.*) few; á —, in a short while; á los —s días, after a few days; poquito á —, little by little.  
 poder, *m.*, power.  
 poder, *vn.*, to be able.  
 polo, *m.*, (*geogr.*) pole.  
 polvo, *m.*, powder; dust.  
 pollo, *m.*, chicken.  
 polluelo, *m.*, chick; young bird.  
 Pompeya, *f.*, Pompeii.  
 poner, *va.*, to put, to place; to station; to lay (33, 11); — casa, to set up (*or go to*) housekeeping.  
 ponga (*subjunct.* of poner).  
 poniente, *m.*, west; al —, west.  
 poniente, *adj.*, setting. [ward.  
 poquito (*dimin.* of poco); — á poco, little by little.  
 por, *by, for, through*; — allí, along there, thereabouts; — aquí, around here; — completo, completely; — debajo, (motion) below; — ejemplo, for instance; — fin, at last; — qué, why; — supuesto, of course.

porque, *conj.*, because.  
 portal, *m.*, gate, gateway.  
 portamonedas, *f.*, pocket-book.  
 portar, *va.*, to carry. — *se, vn.*, to behave, to conduct one's self.  
 portero, *m.*, porter, janitor.  
 portezuela, *f.*, door.  
 poste, *m.*, pole.  
 potro, *m.*, colt.  
 poyo, *m.*, sill.  
 práctico, *m.*, pilot.  
 pradera, *f.*, meadow.  
 prado, *m.*, meadow.  
 precaución, *f.*, caution; con —, cautiously.  
 preceder, *vn.*, precede; — á, precede, *va.*  
 preceptora, *f.*, teacher.  
 precioso, *adj.*, delightful.  
 precisar, *va.*, to oblige, to force.  
 preciso, *adj.*, necessary.  
 predilecto, *adj.*, favorite.  
 preferible, *adj.*, preferable.  
 preferir, *va.*, to prefer.  
 pregunta, *f.*, question; hacer una —, to ask a q.  
 preguntar, *vn.*, to ask.  
 prenda, *f.*, ornament.  
 presa, *f.*, prey, quarry.  
 presagio, *m.*, omen.  
 presenciar, *va.*, to witness, be present at; to offer; to introduce, make acquainted with. — *se, vn.*, to appear.  
 presente, *m.*, present, gift.  
 preso, *m.*, prisoner; arrest (47, 9).  
 préstamo, *m.*, loan.  
 prestar, *va.*, to lend; pedir prestado [algo] á [alguien], to borrow [something] from [somebody].  
 preveer, *va.*, foresee.



previo, *adj.*, previous.  
 primer, primero, *adj.*, first; por primera vez, for the first time.  
 primitivo, *adj.*, earliest.  
 primo, *m.*, cousin.  
 príncipe, *m.*, prince.  
 principio, *m.*, beginning, outset; al —, at first.  
 prisa, *f.*, haste; darse —, to make haste, to hurry up.  
 prisionero, *m.*, prisoner.  
 proa, *f.*, bow (of a boat).  
 probar, *va.*, to prove.  
 proceder, *vn.*, to issue.  
 prodigar, *va.*, to give [bountifully].  
 prodigioso, *adj.*, (*fig.*) tremendous.  
 producir, *va.*, to produce.  
 produjo, -jiste, -jo, etc. (*past* of producir).  
 proferir, *va.*, to utter; — una observación, to make a remark.  
 profundidad, *f.*, depth.  
 profundo, *adj.*, deep.  
 prólogo, *m.*, preface; (*fig.*) prelude.  
 prometer, *va.*, to promise.  
 pronostigar, *va.*, to prognosticate.  
 pronto, *adv.*, soon.  
 pronunciado, *adj.*, (slope, grade) very steep.  
 pronunciar, *va.*, to utter; (a speech) to deliver.  
 propicio, *adj.*, favorable.  
 propiedad, *f.*, estate; las —es, property (collectively).  
 proposición, *f.*, proposal.  
 propósito, *m.*, topic, theme; á — de, speaking of (*cf.* French *à propos de*); á — para, suitable for.  
 prosperar, *vn.*, to thrive.

protesta, *f.*, protest.  
 provecho, *m.*, advantage, benefit; de —, beneficial, advantageous.  
 provechoso, *adj.*, advantageous, beneficial.  
 proveer [de], *va.*, to provide [with]; to supply [with].  
 provenir, *vn.*, to issue, to come.  
 proverbio, *m.*, proverb.  
 provisión, *f.*, supply; hacer — de, to lay in a s. of.  
 provisto (*pp.* of proveer).  
 proximo, *adj.*, near.  
 proyecto, *m.*, plan, scheme.  
 prueba, *f.*, proof.  
 publicar, *va.*, to publish.  
 pudiera, pudiese, etc. (*past subjunct.* of poder).  
 pueblo, *m.*, village.  
 pueblo, -as, -a, etc. (*pres. indic.* of poblar).  
 puedo, -es, -e, etc. (*pres. indic.* of poder); puede, puede ser, maybe, perhaps.  
 puente, *m.*, bridge; — de caballete, trestle-bridge.  
 puerta, *f.*, door.  
 puerto, *m.*, port, harbor.  
 pues, *conj.*, since, for, as, then; así —, so then; so; — bien, well then; now then; — entonces, well then.  
 puesta, *f.*, setting; la — del sol, sunset.  
 puesto, *m.*, position. [*sun.*]  
 puesto (*pp.* of poner); — que, since, inasmuch as, because.  
 punta, *f.*, point, tip.  
 punto, *m.*, point; al — de, at the moment of; — de partida, starting-p.; hasta tal —, to such an extent; — por —, item by item, in every detail.

puro, *m.*, cigar.  
 pure, *adj.*, pure.  
 puse, *pusiste*, *puse*, etc. (*past* of *poner*).

## Q

quebradizo, *adj.*, brittle.  
 quebrado, *adj.*, broken, irregular.  
 quedar, *vn.*, to remain. —*se*, *vn.*, to remain.  
 queja, *f.*, complaint.  
 querella, *f.*, quarrel.  
 querer, *va.*, to want, to wish.  
 quien, *rel. pron.*, who.  
 quieto, *adj.*, quiet.  
 quilla, *f.*, keel.  
 quinto, *num.*, fifth.  
 quitar, *va.*, to remove; to rob, to take from; —*se* la costumbre, to get rid of the habit; ¡quita allá! oh hush!  
 quizá, quizás, *adv.*, perhaps.

## R

racimito, *m.*, bunch.  
 raer, *va.*, to grate.  
 raíz, *f.*, root.  
 ralla, *f.*, grater.  
 rama, *f.*, branch; bough.  
 ramificarse, *vn.*, to branch.  
 ramillete, *m.*, bouquet, bunch (of flowers); tuft (33, 2, 3).  
 ramita, *f.*, twig.  
 rapidez, *f.*, rapidity.  
 rasgo, *m.*, trait.  
 raso, *adj.*, smooth, plain; campo —, open (or level) country; soldado —, private, common soldier.

rastrero, *adj.*, running, creeping.  
 rata, *f.*, rat.  
 rato, *m.*, time, period.  
 ratón, *m.*, mouse.  
 raudo, *adj.*, swift.  
 rayo, *m.*, ray; thunder, thunderbolt.  
 razonamiento, *m.*, reasoning, ratiocination.  
 real, *adj.*, royal; camino —, highway.  
 realce, *m.*, enhancement; dar — á, to enhance, to set off.  
 reanimar, *va.*, to reassure.  
 reaparecer, *vn.*, to reappear.  
 recibir, *va.*, to receive.  
 recién nacido, *adj.*, new born; (used substantively) infant.  
 recto, *adj.*, (rain) heavy; (wind) high.  
 recoger, *va.*, to gather.  
 reconocer, *va.*, to recognize.  
 reconocimiento, *m.*, recognizing.  
 reconvención, *f.*, reprimand.  
 recorrer, *va.*, to traverse.  
 recrear, *va.*, to delight, to entertain.  
 recto, *adj.*, straight.  
 recuerdo, *m.*, recollection; souvenir.  
 recuerdo, —*as*, —*a*, etc. (*pres. indic.* of *recordar*).  
 rechazar, *va.*, to refuse.  
 redil, *m.*, fold.  
 redondo, *adj.*, round.  
 referir, *va.*, to tell, to relate, to narrate.  
 refiero, —*es*, —*e*, etc. (*pres. indic.* of *referir*).  
 reflujo, *m.*, ebb-tide.  
 refrán, *m.*, adage, proverb.  
 refrescar, *va.*, to cool.

- refugiarse, *vn.*, to take refuge, to seek shelter.  
 refugio, *m.*, security.  
 regalar, *va.*, to give, make a present of.  
 regale, *m.*, gift.  
 regresar, *vn.*, to return.  
 reinar, *vn.*, to reign; (*fig.*) to prevail; (storm) to rage.  
 reino, *m.*, kingdom.  
 rejilla, *f.*, rack.  
 relacionar, *va.*, to relate.  
 relámpago, *m.*, lightning, lightning flash.  
 relampaguear, *vn.*, to lighten.  
 relato, *m.*, account, narrative.  
 reloj, *m.*, watch; — *de doble caja*, hunting-case w.  
 reluciente, *adj.*, glistening, shining.  
 rellenar, *va.*, to stuff (in cookery).  
 remanso, *m.*, still place (in a stream).  
 remediar, *va.*, to compensate for.  
 remolacha, *f.*, beet.  
 remolcar, *va.*, to tow.  
 renombre, *m.*, repute, renown; *de* —, well-known.  
 renta, *f.*, income.  
 reñir, *va.*, to scold. —, *vn.*, to quarrel.  
 repetir, *va.*, to repeat.  
 replagar, *va.*, to bend.  
 replicar, *vn.*, to retort.  
 reponer, *vn.*, to reply.  
 repuse, -ista, -o, etc. (*past* of *reponer*).  
 residir, *vn.*, to reside.  
 resina, *f.*, resin; *un olor á* —, a resinous odor.  
 resolver, *va.*, to solve. —, *vn.*, to decide.  
 respecto, *m.*, relation; — *á*, *con* — *á*, with reference to, with regard to.  
 respeto, *m.*, respect.  
 respirar, *va.*, *vn.*, to breathe.  
 responder, *vn.*, to reply.  
 resto, *m.*, remainder, rest.  
 resultado, *m.*, result, outcome; *dar por* —, to result in.  
 resultar, *vn.*, to occur.  
 retemblar, *vn.*, to throb.  
 retener, *va.*, to retain.  
 retumbar, *vn.*, to rumble.  
 revés, *m.*, reverse; *al* —, to the contrary; upside down.  
 revestir, *va.*, to clothe.  
 revista, *f.*, review, magazine.  
 rey, *m.*, king.  
 ribetear [*de*], *va.*, to border [with].  
 rico, *adj.*, rich.  
 riel, *m.*, rail.  
 riesgo, *m.*, risk.  
 riguroso, *adj.*, severe.  
 rifa, *f.*, quarrel.  
 ríño, -ea, -e, etc. (*pres. indic.* of *reñir*).  
 río, *m.*, river.  
 riquezas, *f. pl.*, riches.  
 risible, *adj.*, laughable.  
 robar, *va.*, to steal, to rob.  
 roble, *m.*, oak.  
 robo, *m.*, robbery.  
 roca, *f.*, rock.  
 rocío, *m.*, dew.  
 rodear, *va.*, to surround.  
 roedor, *m.*, rodent.  
 rogar, *vn.*, to beg, to entreat.  
 rojizo, *adj.*, reddish.  
 rojo, *adj.*, red.  
 rombo, *m.*, turbot.  
 rompecabezas, *m.*, sand-bag.

romper, *va.*, to break.  
 rompientea, *m. pl.*, breakers.  
 ronco, *adj.*, hoarse.  
 roto (*pp.* of romper).  
 rotura, *f.*, breaking.  
 rueda, *f.*, paddle-wheel.  
 ruego, -aa, -a, etc. (*pres. indic.* of rogar).  
 rugido, *m.*, roar.  
 ruibarbo *m.*, rhubarb.  
 ruido, *m.*, noise.  
 ruin, *adj.*, inferior, poor (of a poor quality).  
 ruina, *f.*, ruin.  
 rumbo, *m.*, course.

## S

sábado, *m.*, Saturday.  
 saber, *va.*, to know; (+ *infin.*) to know how to; bien sabido ea, it is well known.  
 sabio, *m.*, wise man; learned man, scientist.  
 sabio, *adj.*, learned, wise.  
 sacar, *va.*, to extract, to take out; to derive.  
 saco, *m.*, bag; satchel.  
 sacudir, *va.*, to shake.  
 sal, *f.*, salt.  
 sala, *f.*, hall.  
 saldo, *m.*, settlement (financial); — de cuentas, balance-sheet.  
 salida, *f.*, exit; — del sol, sunrise.  
 salir, to go (*or* come) out; to turn out; to come to the surface (45, 5).  
 salobre, *adj.*, salty.  
 salpicado [de], *adj.*, strewn [with].  
 salpicar [de], *va.*, to cover, spatter, dot [with].

salsa, *f.*, sauce.  
 salto, *m.*, waterfall, cataract.  
 sangre, *f.*, blood.  
 San, Santo, *m.*, saint.  
 sarga, *f.*, serge.  
 satisfecho, *adj.*, satisfied, pleased.  
 sazonar, *va.*, to season.  
 sea, seas, etc. (*subjunct.* of ser); no — que, lest; ó sea, or, or in other words.  
 secar, *va.*, to dry.  
 seco, *adj.*, dry; dried.  
 secreto, *m. and adj.*, secret.  
 seda, *f.*, silk.  
 seguida, *f.*, continuation; en —, then, next; at once, immediately.  
 seguir, *va.*, to follow; to pursue. —, *vm.*, to continue; — andando, to keep on walking.  
 según, *prep.*, according; as, according as (*or* to); judging from.  
 segundo, *m. and adj.*, second.  
 seguridad, certainty, safety; con —, with certainty.  
 seguro, *adj.*, sure, certain; de —, surely; estar — de que, to be sure that.  
 seis, *num.*, six.  
 selva, *f.*, forest, woods.  
 semana, *f.*, week.  
 semblante, *m.*, features, countenance.  
 sembrado [de], *pp.*, studded [with].  
 sembrar, *va.*, to sow.  
 semejante á, *prep.*, resembling.  
 semilla, *f.*, seed.  
 senda, *f.*, path.  
 sentado, *adj.*, seated, sitting.  
 sentar, *va.*, to seat; to suit (21,



- 17). —*se, vn.*, to sit down, to sit; to perch (33, 4).  
*sentido, m.*, direction.  
*sentimiento, m.*, feeling.  
*señalar, va.*, to mark, indicate.  
*señor, m.*, sir.  
*señora, f.*, wife; lady.  
*separar, va.*, to remove.  
*septentrional, adj.*, north, northern.  
*septiembre, m.*, September.  
*sepultar, va.*, to bury. —*se, vn.*, to sink.  
*sér, m.*, being.  
*ser, vn.*, to be.  
*serenar, va.*, to calm, to soothe.  
*serenidad, f.*, sereneness, composure, equanimity.  
*sereno, adj.*, (weather) fair.  
*serpiente, f.*, serpent.  
*servir, va.*, to serve.  
*servir [de], vn.*, to serve [as]; — *para (+ infin.)*, to serve to.  
*serranía, f.*, mountain-range.  
*seta, f.*, mushroom.  
*setenta, num.*, seventy.  
*setiembre, m.*, September.  
*si, conj.*, if.  
*sí, adv.*, yes.  
*siega, f.*, reaping, cutting.  
*siempre, adv.*, always, ever; — *que*, whenever.  
*siemprevivo, adj.*, evergreen.  
*siendo (ger. of ser)*.  
*siento, -as, -a, etc. (pres. indic. of sentar)*.  
*significado, m.*, meaning.  
*significar, vn.*, to mean.  
*siguiendo (ger. of seguir)*.  
*siguiente, adj.*, following, next.  
*siguió (third pers. past of seguir)*.  
*silbar, vn.*, to whistle.  
*silencio, m.*, silence.  
*silencioso, adj.*, silent.  
*silvestre, adj.*, wild.  
*silla, f.*, chair, saddle.  
*simplemente, adv.*, simply, merely.  
*sin, prep.*, without; — *embargo*, nevertheless.  
*sino, conj.*, but; no... —, only.  
*siquiera, adv.*, even.  
*sirvienta, f.*, maid.  
*sirvo, -es, -e, etc. (pres. indic. of servir)*.  
*sistema, m.*, system.  
*sitio, m.*, place, spot.  
*situación, f.*, location.  
*soberbio, adj.*, proud; (*fig.*) stately.  
*sobrar, vn.*, to remain over; *nos sobra tiempo*, we have more than enough time.  
*sobre, prep.*, on, upon, above; — *todo*, above all, especially.  
*sobrenatural, adj.*, supernatural.  
*sobrepuesto [á], adj.*, lying [on].  
*sobresalir, vn.*, excel.  
*socio, m.*, member, partner.  
*socorro, m.*, help.  
*sofocante, adj.*, stifling, suffocating.  
*sol, m.*, sun.  
*solamente, adv.*, only.  
*soldado, m.*, soldier; — *raso*, private, common soldier.  
*soler, vn.*, to be accustomed to.  
*sólido, adj.*, solid; (*fig.*) firm, secure.  
*solo, adj.*, single, alone; *un* —, one, a single.  
*sólo, adv.*, only; no — . . . *sino también*, not only... but also; *tan* —, only.

sombra, *f.*, shadow.  
 son, *m.*, sound.  
 sonar, *vn.*, to sound.  
 soneto, *m.*, sonnet.  
 sonido, *m.*, sound.  
 sonoro, *adj.*, loud.  
 sonreírse, *vn.*, to smile.  
 sopa, *f.*, soup.  
 soplar, *vn.*, to blow.  
 soplido, *m.*, blast.  
 sorprendente, *adj.*, surprising.  
 sospechoso, *adj.*, suspicious.  
 suavizar, *va.*, to moderate.  
 subir, *va.*, *vn.*, to ascend, to go up;  
     to rise.  
 suceder, *vn.*, to happen.  
 suceso, *m.*, occurrence.  
 sueldo, *m.*, salary.  
 suelo, *m.*, ground.  
 suelto, *adj.*, loose, loosened.  
 sueno, -as, -a, etc. (*pres. indic.* of  
     sonar).  
 sueño, *m.*, sleep.  
 suficiente, *adj.*, enough; lo —, suf-  
     ficiently.  
 sufrimiento, *m.*, suffering.  
 sufrir, *va.*, suffer.  
 Suiza, *f.*, Switzerland.  
 sujetar, *va.*, to fasten, to hold.  
 sumergir, *va.*, to submerge; —se,  
     *vn.*, to plunge (45, 4).  
 suministrar, *va.*, provide, furnish.  
 superficie, *f.*, surface, area.  
 supuesto, *adj.*, supposed; por —, of  
     course.  
 sur, *m.* and *adj.*, south.  
 surcar, *va.*, to furrow, to plow.  
 surgir, *vn.*, to emerge, to rise.  
 surtido, *m.*, assortment.  
 sustancia, *f.*, substance.  
 sustantivo, *m.*, substantive, noun.  
 sustento, *m.*, sustenance (33, 12).

sustituir, *va.*, to supplant.  
 susurrar, *vn.*, to whisper; (cat)  
     to purr.

## T

tabaco, *m.*, tobacco, cigar.  
 tabla, *f.*, board.  
 tal, *adj.*, such; — vez, perhaps.  
 tallo, *m.*, stalk, stem.  
 tallo, *m.*, waist.  
 tamaño, *m.*, size, bulk (30, 6).  
 también, *adv.*, also.  
 tampoco, *adv.*, nor, neither.  
 tan, tanto, *adv.*, so; — más cuanto  
     que, all the more [so] because;  
     hasta — que, to such an extent  
     that, so much that.  
 tanto, *adj.*, as much, so much;  
     (*pl.*) as many, so many.  
 tapete, *m.*, rug.  
 taquígrafo, *m.*, stenographer.  
 tardar, [en], *vn.*, to delay, to be  
     long [in]; [no] — en (hacer  
     algo), [not] to be long in (do-  
     ing something).  
 taza, *f.*, cup.  
 Tebas, *f.*, Thebes.  
 tela, *f.*, web; stuff, cloth.  
 telégrafo, *m.*, telegraph.  
 tema, *m.*, theme.  
 temblar, *vn.*, to tremble.  
 temblor, *m.*, tremor; — de tierra,  
     earthquake.  
 temer, *va.*, *vn.*, to fear, to be  
     afraid.  
 temor, *m.*, fear.  
 tempestad, *f.*, storm.  
 templo, *m.*, temple.  
 temprano, *adj.* and *adv.*, early.  
 tenazas, *f. pl.*, tongs.  
 tender, *va.*, to stretch out.

- tenedor de libros, m.**, book-keeper.  
**tener, va.**, to have; to hold;  
 — **ansia [de]**, to be anxious [to]; — **intención [de]**, to intend [to]; — **miedo [de]**, to be afraid [of].  
**teniente, m.**, lieutenant.  
**terciopelo, m.**, velvet.  
**terminar, va.**, to end; to finish, conclude.  
**término, m.**, term; period; por — medio, on an average.  
**ternera, f.**, calf.  
**terno, m.**, suit (i. e., of three, Lat. *ter*, pieces: coat, vest and trousers).  
**terreno, m.**, ground; land.  
**terrestre, adj.**, terrestrial.  
**terror, m.**, dread.  
**tesis, f.**, thesis.  
**testigo, m. and f.**, witness.  
**techumbre, f.**, roof.  
**tiempo, m.**, time; weather; á —, on time; mucho —, a long time.  
**tienda, f.**, store, shop.  
**tierno, adj.**, tender.  
**tierra, f.**, earth; land; ground (30, 4); entre dos —s, along under the surface of the ground; temblor de —, earthquake.  
**tigre, m.**, tiger.  
**timón, m.**, rudder, helm.  
**timonel, m.**, helmsman.  
**tinieblas, f. pl.**, darkness.  
**tío, m.**, uncle.  
**tocador, m.**, dressing-case, bureau.  
**tocar, va.**, to touch; (fig.) to behoove.  
**todavía, adv.**, still; (with neg.) yet.  
**todo (-a, -os, -as), adj.**, all, every; —s los años, every year; todas partes, everywhere; sobre —, above all, especially.  
**tolteca, m.**, Toltec.  
**tomar, va.**, to take; to take on, to assume.  
**tomate, m.**, tomato.  
**tonillo, m.**, [dialectic] accent.  
**tope, m.**, (naut.) top.  
**tormenta, f.**, storm.  
**torno, m.**, lathe; en — de, prep., around.  
**torre, f.**, tower.  
**tórtola, f.**, turtle-dove.  
**tosco, adj.**, rude, rough.  
**tostar, va.**, to toast (bread); to roast (coffee).  
**trabajar, vn.**, to work.  
**trabajo, m.**, work.  
**traer, va.**, to bring; to carry.  
**traicionero, adj.**, treacherous.  
**traje, m.**, costume; dress, gown.  
**trampa, f.**, trap.  
**transitable, adj.**, passable.  
**transitar, vn.**, to go.  
**tras, prep.**, after; behind.  
**trasegar, va.**, to rack.  
**trasformar, va.**, transform.  
**trasparente, adj.**, transparent.  
**trasplantar, va.**, to transplant.  
**tratar [de], vn.**, to try [to]; se trata de, it is a question of; el asunto de que se trata, the business in question.  
**través, m.**, bias; á — de, al — de, prep., across.  
**travesía, f.**, passage, voyage.  
**trayendo (ger. of traer).**  
**treinta, num.**, thirty.  
**tremendo, adj.**, tremendous.  
**tren, m.**, train.  
**tres, num.**, three.  
**trigo, m.**, wheat.

trilla, *f.*, threshing.  
 tripulación, *f.*, crew.  
 triquitraque, *m.*, firecracker.  
 triste, *adj.*, sad, melancholy.  
 trompa, *f.*, trunk (proboscis).  
 tronar, *vn.*, to thunder.  
 trueno, *m.*, thunder.  
 tuerca, *f.*, nut.  
 tuétano, *m.*, marrow; calado á los  
 —s, drenched to the skin.  
 turca, *f.*, spree, "jag."

## U

ú (form assumed by *o* before  
 initial *o*- or *ho*-).  
 Uksor, *el*, *m.*, Luxor.  
 últimamente, *adv.*, lately, recently.  
 último, *adj.*, late; last, latest.  
 ulular, *vn.*, to hoot.  
 único, *adj.*, sole, only.  
 unidad, *f.*, unit.  
 uniformar, *va.*, to equalize.  
 uniforme, *adj.*, uniform, even.  
 unir, *va.*, to unite, to join; mal  
 unido, badly joined.  
 universo, *m.*, universe.  
 urraca, *f.*, magpie.  
 usar, *va.*, to use; to wear.  
 útil, *adj.*, useful.  
 uva, *f.*, grape.

## V

vaca, *f.*, cow; beef.  
 vacilar, *vn.*, to hesitate.  
 vaina, *f.*, sheath.  
 valer, *vn.*, to be worth, to be val-  
 uable; — la pena [de], to be  
 worth while [to].

valiente, *adj.*, brave.  
 valioso, *adj.*, valuable, of worth.  
 valor, *m.*, value; bravery.  
 valle, *m.*, valley.  
 vallecillo, *m.*, vale, dale.  
 vapor, *m.*, steam; steamer, steam-  
 boat.  
 vara, *f.*, yard.  
 variado, *adj.*, varied.  
 variar [de], *vn.*, to vary [in].  
 varios (-as), *adj.*, several, various.  
 vaso, *m.*, [drinking-]glass.  
 vasto, *adj.*, vast.  
 vaya (*pres. subjunct.* of *ir*).  
 vaya, *excl.*, there!  
 vecindario, *m.*, surroundings.  
 vecino, *m.*, neighbor.  
 veda, *f.*, closed season (in hunt-  
 ing).  
 vegetal, *m.*, plant, vegetable.  
 vegetal, *adj.*, vegetable.  
 vela, *adj.*, sail.  
 veleta, *f.*, weathercock.  
 velocidad, *f.*, rapidity, speed.  
 veloz, *adj.*, swift.  
 vencer, *va.*, *vn.*, to conquer.  
 vendimia, *f.*, vintage.  
 vender, *va.*, to sell.  
 venida, *f.*, coming, approach.  
 venir, *vn.*, to come; el mes que  
 viene, next month.  
 ventaja, *f.*, advantage.  
 ventajoso, *adj.*, advantageous.  
 ventana, *f.*, window.  
 ventanilla, *f.*, window (of ve-  
 hicle).  
 ventear, *vn.*, to blow.  
 ver, *va.*, *vn.*, to see.  
 verano, *m.*, summer.  
 verdadero, *adj.*, true, real; regular.  
 verde, *m.* and *adj.*, green.  
 verdor, *m.*, verdure, green.



vergel, *m.*, orchard.  
 vergüenza, *f.*, shame.  
 verosímil, *adj.*, likely.  
 vertiginoso, *adj.*, dizzying.  
 vestir, *va.*, to wear; to clothe.  
 vez, *f.*, time, á la —, at the same  
 t.; á veces, at times, sometime;  
 á su —, in turn, in his turn;  
 cada —, gradually; cada — que,  
 whenever, every time that;  
 cuantas veces, every time that,  
 as often as; de — en cuando,  
 from t. to t.; en — de, instead  
 of; otras veces, at other times;  
 por primera —, for the first  
 time; tal —, perhaps.  
 vi, visto, vió, etc. (*past* of *ver*).  
 vía, *f.*, way; — férrea, railway.  
 viajar, *vn.*, to travel.  
 viaje, *m.*, voyage; journey.  
 viajero, *m.*, traveler.  
 vicio, *m.*, vice.  
 vid, *f.*, vine, grapevine.  
 vida, *f.*, life.  
 viendo (*ger.* of *ver*).  
 viento, *m.*, wind.  
 vigía, *m.*, look-out.  
 vino, *m.*, wine.  
 viña, *f.*, vineyard.  
 víveres, *m. pl.*, provisions; prod-  
 uce (26, 8).  
 visita, *f.*, visit; —, *m.*, visitor.  
 vista, *f.*, sight, eyesight; gaze; á  
 la — de, in sight of.  
 vistoso, *adj.*, showy, bright, gaudy.  
 viviente, *adj.*, living.  
 vivir, *vn.*, to live.  
 vivo, *adj.*, live; (colors) bright;  
 (*fig.*) keen, lively.  
 volar, *vn.*, to fly.  
 volcán, *m.*, volcano.  
 volumen, *m.*, volume, bulk.

volver, *va.*, to turn. —, *vn.*, to  
 return; — á hacer algo, to do  
 something again; — á ver, to  
 see again.  
 vomitar, *va.*, (*fig.*) to pour out  
 (30, 4), to expel (30, 6).  
 voz, *f.*, voice.  
 vuelo, *m.*, flight; echar al —, to  
 fly (a kite).  
 vuelto (*pp.* of *volver*).

## W

wagón, *m.*, (railway) coach, car  
 (for passengers).

## Y

ya, *adv.*, already; — lo creo, yes  
 indeed; — no, no longer, not  
 any more; — que, now that,  
 since; —...—, either...or.  
 yate, *m.*, yacht.  
 yegua, *f.*, mare.  
 yelmo, *m.*, helmet.  
 yema, *f.*, bud.  
 yerba, *f.*, grass; weed.

## Z

zambullirse, *vn.*, to dive.  
 zanahoria, *f.*, carrot.  
 zanja, *f.*, cutting; trench.  
 zarpar, *vn.*, to sail, to set sail, to  
 put to sea.  
 Zelandia, *f.*, Zealand.  
 zorra, *f.*, zorro, *m.*, fox.

## ABBREVIATIONS

---

ADJ.	adjective, or word used adjectively.	<i>m.</i>	masculine.
ADV.	adverb.	<i>neg.</i>	negative.
<i>coll.</i>	colloquial usage.	<i>pl.</i>	plural.
<i>com.</i>	commercial expression.	PP.	past participle.
CONJ.	conjunction.	PREP.	preposition.
<i>f.</i>	feminine.	<i>S. A.</i>	Spanish-American.
<i>fig.</i>	figurative.	<i>sing.</i>	singular.
<i>lit.</i>	literal or literally.	VA.	active or transitive verb.
		VN.	neuter or intransitive verb.

(These are used only in cases where there is danger of ambiguity.)

A dash (—) denotes the repetition of the English word; an initial letter, the repetition of a Spanish word.

Exceptional renderings are followed by the numbers (in parenthesis) of the exercise and sentence in which the word occurs. An R following the lesson-number denotes a Review Exercise.

Irregular verbs are preceded by an asterisk (\*). Roman numerals in parenthesis following such a verb indicate the class to which it belongs. Exceptionally irregular verbs are referred to their appropriate sections.

## ENGLISH-SPANISH VOCABULARY

12

a, an, un (*f. una*).  
 abbey, la abadía.  
 able, hábil; *to be* — *to*, \*poder (§ 1093).  
 abolish, VA., abolir.  
 about, PREP., acerca de, respecto de, sobre; (*followed by numeral*) cerca de.  
 above, PREP., sobre, encima de (§ 212).  
 abroad, ADV., en el extranjero; *from* —, del extranjero.  
 absence, la ausencia.  
 absent, ausente.  
 absent-minded, distraído.  
 absolute, absoluto.  
 absorb, VA., absorber.  
 absorption, la absorción.  
 accelerate, VA., acelerar.  
 accept, VA., aceptar.  
 accident, el percance.  
 according to, según.  
 account, la cuenta; *on* — *of*, á causa de, por motivo de; *not on any* —, bajo ningún pretexto.  
 accurate, acertado.  
 acquainted: *to be* — *with*, \*conocer (IV).  
 acquiescence [*to*, *in*], el acuerdo [con].

across, PREP., á través de, al través de; (*on the other side of*) al otro lado de.  
 add, VA., añadir.  
 address, (*of a letter*) la dirección; (*speech*) el discurso.  
 admiral, el almirante.  
 admit, VA., admitir; declarar (39, 18).  
 advance, VN., avanzar; (*fig.*) adelantar.  
 advantage, la ventaja.  
 advantageous, ventajoso.  
 adventurer, el aventurero.  
 advice, el consejo.  
 advise, VA., aconsejar.  
 affair, el asunto.  
 afford, VA., (*offer*) proporcionar; (*preceded by "can"*) \*tener (§ 1089) los medios de; *I cannot* — *to buy it*, no tengo los medios de comprarlo.  
 afraid: *to be* —, \*tener (§ 1089) miedo; (*followed by infin.*) temer.  
 after, PREP., (*position*) tras, detrás de; (*time*) después de.  
 afternoon, la tarde.  
 afterwards, después.  
 against, PREP., contra.  
 age, la edad.  
 ago, há, hace (§§ 873-4).

agreeable, simpático.  
 aid, la ayuda.  
 air, el aire; el ambiente (41, 2);  
   *the city* —, el ambiente de la  
   ciudad; *to get the fresh* —,  
   tomar el fresco.  
 alike, ADV., igualmente.  
 all, todo (§§ 660-75); *not at* —,  
   de ningún modo.  
 allay, VA., menguar.  
 allow, VA., permitir; (*grant*) con-  
   ceder (51, 15).  
 almost, casi.  
 alone, ADJ., solo.  
 alone, ADV., sólo; (*in solitude*) á  
   solas.  
 along, PREP., á lo largo de.  
 already, ya.  
 also, también; (*in neg. clause*)  
   tampoco.  
 although, aunque.  
 always, siempre.  
 ambulance dog, el perro de sani-  
   dad militar.  
 among, PREP., entre; *in* —, entre.  
 amuse, VA., \*divertir (11).  
 analogous, análogo.  
 and, y (*é before i- and hi-*);  
   (*connecting neg. clauses*) ni.  
 Andrew, Andrés.  
 anecdote, la anécdota.  
 anger, la cólera; *in* — (= *angry*),  
   enfadado.  
 angry, enojado; *to get* —, enfa-  
 ankle, el tobillo. [darse.  
 annoy, VA., molestar.  
 annoyance, la molestia.  
 annul, VA., anular.  
 another, otro; *one* —, uno á o.  
 answer, la contestación; la res-  
   puesta (32, 17).  
 ant, la hormiga.

Anthony, Antonio.  
 anxiously, con ansia.  
 any, alguno; (*with neg.*) nin-  
   guno; — *one*, alguien, alguno  
   (§ 521).  
 anybody, alguien, alguno (§ 521);  
   (*with neg.*) nadie, ninguno.  
 anything, algo; (*with neg.*) nada.  
 anywhere, en alguna parte; (*with*  
   *neg.*) en ninguna parte.  
 apartment, (*suite of rooms*) unas  
   habitaciones; —s, el aposento  
   (35, 31).  
 appear, VN., \*parecer (IV).  
 appetite, el apetito.  
 apple, la manzana.  
 applicant, el suplicante.  
 application, la demanda.  
 apply for, solicitar.  
 approach, VN., acercarse. —, VA.,  
   acercarse á, aproximarse á.  
 approve of, \*aprobar (1).  
 apt, acertado.  
 aquiline, aguileño.  
 arabesque, arabesco.  
 arduous, arduo.  
 arise, VN., levantarse; despen-  
   derse (50 R, 12).  
 arm, el brazo.  
 army, el ejército.  
 around, PREP., alrededor de; —  
   *here*, por aquí.  
 arouse, VA., suscitar.  
 arrange, VA., arreglar.  
 arrive, VN., llegar.  
 art, el arte (*f.*); — *gallery*, la ga-  
   lería de arte.  
 article, el objeto.  
 artisan, el operario.  
 as, como; (*like*) cual; — *if*, cual  
   si; —...—, tan...como; —  
   *well* —, lo mismo que.



ascend, VA., subir.  
 ashamed, avergonzado; *to be* — [of], \*avergonzarse (I) [de].  
 aside from, aparte (27, 5).  
 ask, VA., \*pedir (III); interrogar (45, 25); — *questions*, \*hacer (§ 1096) preguntas.  
 asparagus, el espárrago.  
 ass, (*quadruped*) el asno; (*person*) el borrico.  
 assassinate, VA., asesinar.  
 assembly, la asamblea; — *room*, la sala de descanso.  
 assistance, la ayuda.  
 assortment, el surtido.  
 assume, VA., tomar.  
 assure, VA., asegurar.  
 astonish, VA., asombrar.  
 astounding, asombroso.  
 at, en; á; — *last*, al fin; — *once*, en el acto.  
 atmosphere, la atmósfera.  
 attaché, el agregado.  
 attack, VA., atacar.  
 attempt [*to*], VN., tratar [de].  
 attend, VN., asistir. —, VA., asistir á.  
 Attorney General, el Procurador General.  
 attract, \*atraer (§ 1100); — *the attention of*, llamar la atención de.  
 auction, la subasta.  
 aunt, la tía.  
 automobile, el automóvil.  
 autumn, el otoño.  
 available, disponible.  
 avert, VA., alejar.  
 avoid, VA., evitar.  
 await, VA., aguardar; (*expect*) esperar.  
 axle, el eje.

B

baby, el nene (*requires the article*).  
 back, la espalda; (*of a chair*) el respaldo; (*of a comb*) el lomo; *lying on one's* —, tendido de espaldas.  
 back, ADV., de vuelta; *to be* —, \*estar (§ 1090) de vuelta; *to come or get* —, \*volver (I).  
 background, el fondo.  
 bad, malo (*apocopated to mal before masc. sing. noun*).  
 bag, VA., recoger.  
 bald, calvo.  
 band, la facha.  
 bank, (*com.*) el banco; (*of stream*) la orilla; la ribera (42, 13).  
 bargain, la ganga.  
 bark, VN., ladrar.  
 barn, el granero; (*S. A.*) la troje.  
 barrel, el barril.  
 basket, la cesta.  
 bat, el murciélago.  
 battered, desvencijado.  
 battle, la batalla.  
 bay, la bahía.  
 bay, ADJ., bayo.  
 be, \*ser (§ 1103), \*estar (§ 1090), (*see also* §§ 151-68); — *afraid of*, temer; — *ashamed of*, \*avergonzarse (I) de.  
 beach, la playa.  
 bead, la cuenta.  
 bear, VA., llevar; — *in mind*, \*tener (§ 1089) presente.  
 beard, la barba; *to wear a full* —, usar b. cerrada.  
 beat, VA., pegar.  
 beautiful, hermoso, bello.

beauty, la belleza.  
 beaver, el castor.  
 because, porque; (*for*) pues.  
 become, VN., llegar á ser, \*hacerse (§ 1096).  
 bed, la cama; *to go to* —, \*acostarse (1).  
 bedroom, el cuarto de dormir.  
 bedside, el lado de la cama.  
 bedstead, la cama.  
 bee, la abeja.  
 beefsteak, el biftec; (*S. A.*) el  
 beer, la cerveza. [bisté.  
 befall, VA., VN., \*sobrevenir (§ 1095).  
 before, ADV., antes; *the day* —, el día anterior; *the night* —, la noche anterior.  
 before, PREP., (*with regard to time*) antes de; (*location*) delante de.  
 beggar, el mendigo; (*coll.*) el pobre.  
 begin [*to*], VA., VN., \*empezar (1) [á].  
 behind, ADV., atrás, detrás. —, PREP., detrás de; — *time*, atrasado; *to be three hours — time*, \*tener (§ 1089) tres horas de  
 being, el sér. [atraso.  
 believe [*in*], VA., VN., creer [en].  
 belong, VN., \*pertenecer (IV).  
 below, ADV., abajo, debajo. —, PREP., debajo de.  
 bench, el banco.  
 beneath, ADV., por debajo. —, PREP., debajo de.  
 berry, la baya.  
 beside, PREP., al lado de.  
 besides, ADV., además. —, PREP., además de.  
 besiege, VA., asediar.

besieged, los sitiados (50, 13).  
 best, mejor.  
 bet, VA., VN., \*apostar (1).  
 better, mejor; *it is — that*, más vale que (*followed by subjunct.*).  
 between, PREP., entre.  
 beveled, con borde en bisel.  
 beyond, ADV., más allá. —, PREP., más allá de.  
 bier, el féretro.  
 big, grande (*apocopated to gran before sing. noun beginning with consonant*).  
 billiards, el billar; *to play* —, \*jugar (1) al b.  
 bind, VA., atar; — *up*, \*envolver (1).  
 bindery, la encuadernación.  
 binding, (*of book*) la encuadernación.  
 binding, ADJ., obligatorio.  
 birthday, el día de [mis, sus, etc.] cumpleaños.  
 black, negro.  
 blacksmith, el herrero; (*farrier*) el herrador.  
 bird, el pájaro; — *of paradise*, el ave (*f.*) del paraíso.  
 blind, (*of window*) la persiana; *Venetian* —, la celosía.  
 blind, ADJ., ciego.  
 blind, VA., \*cegar (1).  
 block, la pieza.  
 blockade, el bloqueo.  
 blood, la sangre; *from loss of* —, por el desangre.  
 blue, el azul. —, ADJ., azul.  
 Bluebeard, Barba Azul.  
 bluish, azulado.  
 blunder, el desatino.  
 Board of Directors, la Junta Directiva.

boarder, el (or la) huésped.  
 boast [of], VN., alardear [de].  
 boat, el barco.  
 boatswain, el contramaestre.  
 body, el cuerpo.  
 Boer, el Boero.  
 boiling, hirviente.  
 bolster, el travesero.  
 bony, huesudo.  
 book, el libro.  
 bookcase, el estante para libros;  
 el armario (17, 14).  
 boot, la bota.  
 both, ambos (-as); —...and, y  
 ...y.  
 bottle, la botella; el frasco (26,  
 bottom, el fondo. [11].  
 bough, la rama.  
 bow, VA., inclinar; with —ed head,  
 caída la cabeza (33, 13).  
 box, la caja.  
 boy, el muchacho; (coll.) el  
 chico; little —, el chiquillo.  
 branch, (of a tree) la rama; (of  
 a road) el ramal.  
 brass, el latón.  
 brave, valiente.  
 bravery, el valor.  
 bread, el pan.  
 break, VA., romper (PR. roto). —,  
 VN., romperse.  
 breakfast, el almuerzo.  
 breakfast, VN., \*almorzar (1).  
 breast, el pecho.  
 breath, el aliento; to get out of  
 —, \*perder (1) el a.  
 breeding, la crianza.  
 breeze, la brisa.  
 bridge, el puente.  
 brilliant, brillante.  
 bring, \*traer (§ 1100).  
 bristling, erizado.

British, británico.  
 broad, ancho; —brimmed, de ala  
 brocaded, brochado. [ancha.  
 bronze, el bronce.  
 brook, el arroyo.  
 brother, el hermano.  
 brother-in-law, el cuñado.  
 build, VA., \*construir (v); (a  
 house) edificar; erigir (47, 10).  
 building, el edificio.  
 bull, el toro; —fight, la corrida  
 de toros.  
 bull-nose pepper, el pimiento mo-  
 rón.  
 burn, VA., quemar. —, VN., arder;  
 — low, \*languidecer (IV) (45,  
 burning, abrasador. [3].  
 burst, VN., estallar; — into tears,  
 prorrumper en lágrimas.  
 bush, el arbusto.  
 business, (general term) los ne-  
 gocios; (single enterprise) el  
 negocio; — man, el hombre de  
 negocios.  
 busy [with], ocupado [en]; ata-  
 reado (34, 2).  
 but, CONJ., pero, mas; (after neg.  
 clause) sino (§ 104).  
 butter, la manteca; (S. A.) la  
 mantequilla.  
 butterfly, la mariposa.  
 buy, VA., comprar.  
 buzzard, el buaro.

C

cabin, la choza.  
 cake, el bizcocho.  
 calix, el cáliz.  
 call, VA., llamar.  
 calf's liver, el hígado de ternera.

camp, el campamento.  
 can, VN., \*poder (§ 1093).  
 candy, los dulces (*pl.*).  
 caning, la paliza.  
 cannon, la pieza.  
 capable, capaz.  
 captain, el capitán.  
 captivity, el cautiverio.  
 car, (*steam railroad*) el vagón;  
 (*street-railway*) el tranvía.  
 card, la tarjeta.  
 cardinal, el cardenal.  
 care, el cuidado; el esmero (50, 9); *to take — of*, cuidar; (*provide for*) cuidar de (37, 19).  
 careful, cuidadoso; *to be —*, \*tener (§ 1089) cuidado.  
 caress, VA., acariciar.  
 carpet, la alfombra.  
 carry, VA., llevar.  
 carve, VA., (*meat*) trincar;  
 (*wood*) labrar.  
 cask, la pipa.  
 catacomb, la catacumba.  
 catch, VA., coger.  
 cattle, el ganado (*singular in Spanish*).  
 cause, la causa.  
 cause, VA., ocasionar; obligar (50 R, 10) [*requires á before following infin.*].  
 cavalry, la caballería.  
 cave, la cueva.  
 cease, VA., VN., cesar.  
 celebrated, célebre.  
 cell, la célula.  
 cellar, el sótano; (*wine-cellar*) la cantina (30 R, 8).  
 cement together, VA., enlazar.  
 cemetery, el cementerio.  
 cent, el centavo.  
 century, el siglo.

certain, cierto.  
 certainly, por cierto.  
 chain, la cadena.  
 chair, la silla; *side —*, la s. de recha.  
 change, el cambio.  
 change, VA., cambiar. —, VN., cambiarse; transformarse (47, 15).  
 chapel, el oratorio.  
 chapter, el capítulo.  
 character, el temperamento.  
 characteristic, el rasgo característico.  
 charge, el cargo; *in — of*, encargado de.  
 Charles, Carlos.  
 charm, el primor, el encanto (41, 9).  
 cheek, la mejilla.  
 cheroot, la breva.  
 chicken, el pollo; (*young chick*) el polluelo (24, 5).  
 chief, el jefe; (*Indians*) el cacique.  
 child, el niño, la niña; (*son*) el hijito; (*daughter*) la hijita.  
 children, los niños; (*coll.*) los chiquillos; (*offspring*) los hijos.  
 Chilean, chileno.  
 chilly, fresquillo.  
 chimney, la chimenea.  
 chin, la barbilla.  
 china, la porcelana.  
 chive, la cebolleta.  
 chloroform, el cloroformo.  
 chop, la chuleta.  
 chop, VA., (*wood*) cortar; (*meat, vegetables*) picar.  
 Christopher, Cristóbal.  
 church, la iglesia.



cider, la sidra; — *mill*, el molino  
 cigar, el tabaco, el puro. [de s.  
 cigarette, el cigarillo.  
 circuit, el circuito; *to make the —*  
*of*, circundar.  
 circumference, la circunferencia.  
 circumstance, la circunstancia.  
 cistern, el aljibe.  
 city, la ciudad; — *air*, el ambiente  
 de la c.; — *government*, el ayun-  
 tamiento; — *Hall*, la Casa de  
 Ayuntamiento.  
 civil, cortés.  
 claim, la reclamación.  
 claim, VA., reclamar.  
 class, la clase.  
 classmate, el compañero de cole-  
 gio.  
 classroom, (*school*) la sala de  
 clase; (*university*) el aula (*f.*).  
 clean, limpio.  
 clear, claro; — *to all*, visto de  
 todos (45, 13).  
 clerk, el dependiente.  
 climate, el clima.  
 climbing, ADJ., trepador.  
 cloak, la capa.  
 cloister, el claustro.  
 close, VA., \*cerrar (1). —, VN.,  
 \*cerrarse (1).  
 close by, PREP., junto á.  
 cloth, la tela.  
 clothes, la ropa (*sing.*).  
 clothing, la ropa.  
 cloud, la nube.  
 coal, el carbón.  
 coaling station, la estación car-  
 bonera.  
 coast, la costa; — *line*, la línea  
 costera.  
 coat, el saco.  
 cock, el gallo.

coffee, el café.  
 coin, la moneda.  
 cold, el frío.  
 cold, ADJ., frío; helado (39, 13).  
 collar, el cuello; (*of animal*) el  
 collar.  
 collection, (*of donations*) la cues-  
 ta; *to take up the —*, \*hacer (§  
 1096) la c.  
 collector, el recaudador.  
 college, el colegio.  
 colonel, el coronel.  
 colored, de color.  
 colorless, incoloro.  
 Columbus, Colón.  
 comb, el peine.  
 come, VN., \*venir (§ 1095); (*to*  
*arrive*) llegar; — *back*, \*volver  
 (1), regresar; — *in*, entrar; —  
*out*, \*salir (§ 1110); — *up-*  
*stairs*, subir.  
 comfortable, cómodo.  
 coming, (*future*) venidero.  
 commence [*to*], VA., VN., \*empezar  
 (1) [á], \*comenzar (1) [á].  
 commencement, el principio; —  
*of hostilities*, el rompimiento de  
 hostilidades.  
 commercial traveler, el agente via-  
 jero.  
 committee, la comisión.  
 common, común; vulgar (38, 16).  
 commonly, comúnmente, ordina-  
 riamente.  
 community, la comunidad.  
 companion, el compañero.  
 complain [*of*], VN., quejarse [de];  
 protestar [de] (41, 4).  
 complete, completo.  
 complete, VA., terminar.  
 compose, VA., \*componer (§ 1094);  
 \*constituir (v) (25, 7).

compositor, el cajista.  
 compress, VA., comprimir.  
 comprise, VA., comprender.  
 comrade, el compañero; (*mil.*) el camarada.  
 concerning, PREP., respecto de.  
 conclusion, el término.  
 condition, el estado.  
 conduct, la conducta.  
 conduct, VA., \*conducir (§ 1101).  
 confederacy, la confederación.  
 confide, VA., confiar.  
 confidence, la confianza.  
 confront, VA., \*tropezar (I) con (27, 12).  
 congeniality, la avenencia.  
 congratulate, VA., felicitar.  
 Congress, el Congreso (*requires the article*).  
 conscience, la conciencia.  
 consequently, por consiguiente; por lo tanto (48, 1).  
 consist [*of*], VN., consistir [*en*].  
 constitute, VA., \*constituir (V).  
 consume, VA., consumir.  
 contain, VA., \*contener (§ 1089); guardar (37, 1).  
 contagion, el contagio.  
 content [*to*], ADJ., contento [*de*].  
 contented [*with*], contento [*de*].  
 continually, de continuo.  
 continue, VA., VN., \*seguir (III).  
 contract, el contrato.  
 convenience, la comodidad.  
 convert, VA., \*convertir (II).  
 convince, VA., convencer.  
 cook, el cocinero, la cocinera.  
 cook, VA., \*cocer (I).  
 cool, fresco; (*weather*) *it is* —, cool, VA., refrescar. [hace f.  
 copy, (*hand-made*) la copia; (*of a publication*) el ejemplar.

corn, el maíz; — *bread*, el pan de m.  
 corner, (*reëntrant angle*) el rincón; (*salient angle*) la esquina.  
 cost, el costo.  
 cost, VA., \*costar (I).  
 couch, el canapé.  
 count, VA., \*contar (I).  
 country, el país, el campo, la patria (*for distinction, see* § 112); la campiña (18, 9); — *life*, la vida campestre; — *store*, la tienda rural.  
 countryman, el campesino.  
 course, la carrera; *of* —, por supuesto.  
 court, (*enclosure*) el patio; (*law*) el tribunal; (*royal*) la corte.  
 courtesy, la urbanidad.  
 cousin, el primo, la prima; *first* —, el p. hermano.  
 cover [*with*], VA., cubrir (PP. cubierto) [*de*]; (*an open vessel*) tapar (46, 15); (*distance*) recorrer (44, 20).  
 cow, la vaca.  
 cradle, la cuna.  
 craft, el oficio.  
 creature, el sér; *living* —, el s. viviente.  
 crest, la cresta.  
 crop, la cosecha.  
 cross, la cruz.  
 cross, VA., \*atravesar (I); — *one's self* (*make the sign of the cross*) santiguarse.  
 crouching, acurrucado.  
 crowd, el gentío.  
 crowded, apiñado.  
 cry, el grito.  
 cube, el cubo; — *root*, la raíz cúbica.

cup, la taza.  
 Cupid, Cupido.  
 curtain, la cortina.  
 cushion, el cojín; (*of sofa, couch*)  
 la almohadilla.  
 cut, VA., cortar; — *off*, (*fig.*) im-  
 posibilitar (27, 8).  
 cut-glass, el vidrio tallado.  
 cuttlefish, la jibia.

D

daily, ADV., diariamente; á dia-  
 rio (34, 2).  
 daily paper, el diario.  
 damage, VA., deteriorar.  
 danger, el peligro.  
 daring, atrevido.  
 dark, oscuro; *to get* —, \*oscure-  
 cer (IV).  
 date, la fecha.  
 date, VA., fechar.  
 daughter, la hija.  
 dawn, VN., \*amanecer (IV).  
 day, el día; *the* — *after to-mor-  
 row*, pasado mañana.  
 dead, muerto.  
 deadly, (*fig.*) encarnizado.  
 deal: *a good (or great)* —, mucho.  
 dearly, de corazón (45, 20).  
 decide, VA., VN., decidir; \*resolver  
 (I) (44, 12).  
 decipher, VA., descifrar.  
 decision, el fallo.  
 deck, VA., engalanar.  
 decompose, VA., \*descomponer (§  
 1094). —, VN., \*descomponer-  
 se.  
 decomposition, la descomposición.  
 decorate, VA., adornar.  
 decree, VN., decretar.

deed, la acción.  
 deep, profundo; ...*feet* —, ...  
 pies de profundidad.  
 defeat, la derrota.  
 defeat, VA., derrotar.  
 definite, terminante; — *news*, no-  
 ticias ciertas.  
 degree, el grado.  
 delegate, el delegado.  
 deliberately, con premeditación.  
 delicacy, el bocado de príncipe  
 (*or de cardenal*).  
 delicate, delicado.  
 delight, el arrobamiento.  
 delight, VA., deleitar; *to be* —*ed*  
 deleitarse.  
 delightful, delicioso.  
 deliver, VA., entregar; — *an ad-  
 dress*, pronunciar un discurso.  
 democrat, el demócrata.  
 departure, la partida.  
 deposit, el depósito.  
 describe, VA., describir (FP. des-  
 crito).  
 desert, el desierto.  
 deserted, abandonado; desierto  
 (46, 6).  
 design, el dibujo.  
 desire, el deseo.  
 desire, VA., desear.  
 despondency, la murria.  
 destination, el destino.  
 destruction, la destrucción.  
 detachment, el destacamento.  
 detail, el detalle, el pormenor; *in*  
 —, en d., con pormenores.  
 develop, VA., desarrollar. —, VN.,  
 desarrollarse.  
 development, el desarrollo.  
 devil, el diablo.  
 dew, el rocío.  
 die, VN., morir (FP. muerto).

difficult, difícil.  
 difficulty, la dificultad.  
 dim, lánguido.  
 dine, VN., comer.  
 dinner, la comida; — *time*, la hora de la c.  
 diphthong, el diptongo.  
 direct, ADJ., derecho; directo (28, direct, VA., dirigir. [15].  
 director, *see* board.  
 dirty, sucio.  
 disadvantage, la desventaja.  
 disagreeable, desagradable.  
 disappear, VN., \*desaparecer (IV).  
 disappointment, el chasco.  
 disciple, el discípulo.  
 disclose, VA., divulgar.  
 discouragement, el desaliento.  
 discover, VA., descubrir (PP. descubierta).  
 discovery, el descubrimiento.  
 discredit, VA., desacreditar.  
 disdain, el desdén.  
 disguise, el disfraz.  
 dishonor, desdorar.  
 display, el espectáculo.  
 dissimulation, el disimulo.  
 distance, (*in a picture*) el fondo; *in the* —, en el f.  
 distant, lejano; *to be* —, distar, VN.  
 distil, VA., destilar.  
 do, VA., \*hacer (§ 1096); *to* — *without*, pasarse sin.  
 doctor, (*holder of any doctorate degree*) el doctor; (*physician*) el médico.  
 dog, el perro; — *biscuit*, la galleta de p.  
 dollar, (*Spain*) el duro; (*S. A.*) el peso.  
 dominion, la dominación.

door, la puerta; *side* —, la p. de al lado; — *keeper*, el portero.  
 doubt, la duda.  
 doubt, VA., dudar.  
 dozen, la docena.  
 drag, VA., arrastrar.  
 draped, envuelto.  
 drapery, la colgadura.  
 drawing, el dibujo.  
 drawing-room, el salón.  
 dream, el sueño.  
 dream [*of*], VN., \*soñar (I) [CON].  
 dress, el traje.  
 dress, VA., \*vestir (III). —, VN., \*vestirse.  
 dressing-case, el tocador.  
 dressmaker, la costurera.  
 drink, VA., beber.  
 drop, la gota.  
 drought, la sequía.  
 drunken, borracho.  
 dry, seco.  
 dry, VA., secar.  
 due, debido.  
 duke, el duque.  
 dull, muerto (40, 18).  
 during, PREP., durante.  
 dusk, el crepúsculo; *at* —, al anochecer.  
 dust, el polvo; *a* —, una polvoreda (50, 4).  
 duty, el deber; (*import or export*) el derecho; *duties*, los quehaceres.  
 dwell, VN., vivir.

## E

each, cada; (*not followed by noun*) c. uno, c. cual; — *other*, uno á otro.



early, temprano; — *in the morning*, por la mañana t.  
 earn, VA., ganar.  
 earth, la tierra.  
 earthquake, el terremoto.  
 ease, la facilidad; la paz (23, 1).  
 East, el Oriente.  
 eastern, oriental.  
 eastward, hacia el Oriente.  
 easy, fácil.  
 easy chair, la poltrona.  
 eat, VA., comer; tomar (19, 20).  
 ecstasy, el éxtasis; *in* —, exta-  
 edible, comestible. [siado.  
 editor, el redactor.  
 egg, el huevo.  
 eight, ocho.  
 eighty, ochenta.  
 either, uno ú otro; —...*or*, ó...  
 ó; (*with neg.*) ni...ni.  
 elder, ADJ., mayor.  
 elect, VA., \*elegir (III); nombrar  
 (45, 5).  
 elementary, elemental.  
 eleven, once.  
 else, otro; *nothing* —, no...otra  
 COSA.  
 embark, VA., embarcar. —, VN.,  
 embarcarse; (*fig.*) lanzarse.  
 ember, la brasa.  
 embrace, VA., abrazar.  
 emperor, el emperador.  
 empire, el imperio.  
 employ, VA., emplear.  
 employee, el empleado.  
 empty, vacío.  
 empty, VA., vaciar.  
 enable, VA., permitir.  
 enameled, esmaltado.  
 enchanting, encantador.  
 end, el fin; el cabo (19, 6); la  
 extremidad (38, 15).

end, VN., acabar.  
 endeavor, VN., procurar.  
 ending, el final.  
 endow [*with*], VA., dotar [de].  
 enduring, duradero.  
 enemy, el enemigo, la enemiga.  
 energetic, enérgico.  
 engineer, el ingeniero.  
 engineering, la ingeniería.  
 England, Inglaterra (*f.*).  
 English, inglés.  
 Englishman, el inglés.  
 enjoy, VA., gozar de.  
 enjoyment, el goce.  
 enormous, enorme.  
 enough, bastante; *I have more  
 than* — *time*, me sobra tiempo.  
 enter, VA., entrar en.  
 enterprise, la empresa.  
 enthusiasm, el entusiasmo.  
 entire, entero.  
 entirely, por completo.  
 entrance, la entrada; (*of actor*)  
 envelope, el sobre. [la salida.  
 environment, la circunstancia.  
 episode, el episodio.  
 equal, igual.  
 equal, VA., igualar á.  
 equator, el ecuador.  
 equipment, el equipo.  
 erection, la construcción.  
 escape [*from*], VN., escaparse [á].  
 especially, sobre todo.  
 establish, VA., \*establecer (IV);  
 \*constituir (V) (27, 1).  
 establishment, el establecimiento.  
 Europe, Europa (*f.*).  
 European, europeo.  
 even, aun; hasta (41, II).  
 evening, la tarde.  
 every, todo; — *time that*, cada  
 vez que.

everybody, todo el mundo.  
 evil, el mal.  
 evil, ADJ., malo (*apocopated to mal before masc. sing. noun*).  
 exceed, VA., pasar de.  
 excellent, excelente.  
 excess, el exceso.  
 exclaim, VN., exclamar.  
 exercise, el ejercicio.  
 exhaust, VA., agotar; extinguir (48, 10).  
 exhibit, VA., \*demostrar (1).  
 exist, VN., existir.  
 exit, la salida; (*of actor*) la expect, VA., esperar. [trada.  
 expensive, costoso.  
 experience, VA., experimentar.  
 expert, perito.  
 explain, explicar.  
 explorer, el explorador.  
 express, VA., expresar.  
 extensive, extenso.  
 extol, VA., ensalzar.  
 extra, extraordinario.  
 extract, VA., \*extraer (§ 1100).  
 extreme, extremado, extremo.  
 eye, el ojo; (*eyesight*) la vista.  
 eyebrow, la ceja.

## F

face, la cara; el semblante (44, 16).  
 fact, el hecho; *in* —, en efecto; efectivamente (43, 9).  
 fail [*to*], VN., dejar [*de*].  
 failure, (*in business*) la quiebra.  
 fall, VN., \*caer (§ 1106); (*thermometer, etc.*) bajar; *to* — *sick*, \*caer enfermo; *the night* — *s*, anochece.

family, la familia.  
 famous, famoso.  
 fan, el abanico.  
 fan, VA., abanicar; \*aventar (1).  
 far, ADV., lejos; — *from*, l. de; *as* — *as*, hasta; *how* —, hasta dónde; *how* — *is it?* ¿cuánto hay?  
 farm, la hacienda.  
 farmer, el colono; el labrador (41, 2, 3, etc.).  
 farming, la labranza.  
 fascinating, fascinador.  
 fashion, la moda.  
 fast, ADV., aprisa.  
 father, el padre.  
 fatigue, el cansancio.  
 fault, la culpa.  
 fear, el temor.  
 fear, VA., VN., temer; recelar (39, [5]).  
 feasible, practicable.  
 feature, la facción.  
 feel, VA., \*sentir (11).  
 feeling, el sentimiento.  
 fern, el helecho.  
 ferry-boat, la barca.  
 fever, la fiebre.  
 few, pocos (-as), algunos (-as); *a* —, unos (-as) pocos (-as).  
 fiancée, la prometida.  
 field, el campo; — *hospital*, la ambulance, quince. [bulancia.  
 fifty, cincuenta.  
 fight, VN., pelear.  
 fill [*with*], VA., llenar [*de*].  
 finally, al fin; por último (46, 14).  
 find, VA., hallar, \*encontrar (1); — *out*, averiguar.  
 fine, (*fig.*) hermoso; lindo (16, 4); precioso (31, 15).  
 finger, el dedo.  
 finish, VA., acabar, terminar; completar (30, 2, 2).

**fir**, el abeto.  
**fire**, la lumbre; la candela (38, 7);  
 (*camp* —) la hoguera; *on* —,  
 ardiendo; *to set* — *to*, incen-  
 diar; — *screen*, el biombo.  
**fireplace**, el hogar; la chimenea  
 (26, 6).  
**fire**, VA., VN., disparar.  
**firm**, la firma.  
**first**, primero (*apocopated to pri-*  
*mer before masc. sing. noun*);  
 — *cousin*, el primo hermano.  
**fish** (*in the water*) el pez; (*as an*  
*article of food*) el pescado.  
**fish**, VN., pescar.  
**fishng-rod**, la caña de pescar.  
**five**, cinco.  
**fixed**, fijo.  
**flag**, la bandera; — *of truce*, la b.  
 de parlamento.  
**flame**, la llama.  
**flavor**, el sabor.  
**fleecy**, borregoso.  
**fleet**, la escuadra.  
**fling**, VA., arrojar.  
**flit**, VN., revolotear.  
**float**, VN., flotar; cimbrear (34,  
 12).  
**flock**, (*sheep*) el rebaño; (*birds*)  
 la bandada.  
**floor**, el suelo.  
**flour**, la harina.  
**flower**, la flor; — *bed*, el arriate;  
 — *garden*, el jardín de flores.  
**fluid**, el flúido; el licor (38, 14).  
**fly**, la mosca.  
**fly**, VA., \*volar (1).  
**fodder**, el pienso.  
**fold**, VA., doblar; — *one's arms*,  
 cruzar los brazos.  
**follow**, VA., VN., \*seguir (III); *as*  
 — *s*, como sigue; *to* — *in the*

*footsteps of*, \*seguir las huellas  
 de.  
**following**, siguiente.  
**fond**, cariñoso, *to be* — *of*, gustar  
 (*with inversion of subject*; cf.  
 § 793). [20; 37, 2).  
**food**, el alimento; la comida (19,  
 fooliah, tonto.  
**foot**, el pie; *at the* — *of*, al p. de.  
**footstep**, la huella; *to follow in*  
*the* — *s of*, \*seguir (III) las hue-  
 llas de.  
**for**, PREP., para, por (§§ 352-76).  
**for**, CONJ., pues; (*since, inasmuch*  
*as*) puesto que.  
**ford**, el vado.  
**foreground**, el primer plano.  
**foreign**, extranjero.  
**foreigner**, el extranjero.  
**foresee**, VA., prever (PP. previsto).  
**forest**, (*woods*) el bosque; (*of*  
*vast extent*) la selva.  
**forget**, VA., olvidar.  
**fork**, VN., bifurcarse.  
**form**, la forma.  
**former**, antiguo; *the* — ... *the lat-*  
*ter*, aquel... este (§ 579).  
**formerly**, antiguamente.  
**fortunate**, afortunado.  
**fortune**, el caudal.  
**forthwith**, inmediatamente.  
**forty**, cuarenta.  
**found**, VA., fundar.  
**foundation**, la fundación.  
**fountain**, la fuente; — *pen*, la  
 pluma tintero.  
**four**, cuatro.  
**fourteen**, catorce.  
**fox**, la zorra.  
**fragance**, el perfume.  
**fragrant**, oloroso; fragante (40,  
**free**, libre. [3).

freely, libremente; confiadamente (31, 16).

Freemason, el francmasón.

freeze, VA., VN., \*helar (1).

French, francés.

frequently, con frecuencia.

fresh, fresco; — *water*, el agua dulce; *to get the — air*, tomar el fresco.

fried, frito.

friend, el amigo, la amiga.

from, de, desde.

front, (*of a house*) la fachada; *in —*, ADV., delante; *in — of*, delante de; (*facing*) enfrente de.

fruit, la fruta; (*fig.*) el fruto; — *tree*, el árbol frutal.

fry, VA., freír (PF. frito).

fuel, el combustible.

fulfil, VA., cumplir.

full, lleno; cargado (41, 6); repleto (50 R, 5); — *beard*, la barba cerrada.

fully, plenamente.

fun, la diversión; *to make — of*, burlarse de.

fur, la piel.

furnish, VA., (*provide*) suministrar; (*a house*) amueblar.

furniture, (*collective*) los muebles; *piece of —*, el mueble.

## G

gallery, la galería; *art —*, la g. de arte.

gallop, el galope; *at a —*, á galope.

game, (*amusement*) el juego; (*hunting*) la caza; — *cock*, el gallo de riña.

garden, el jardín; *flower—*, el j.

de flores; *vegetable—*, el huerto de hortalizas.

garment, (*fig.*) el manto.

gather, VA., recoger.

gaudy, pintado.

gay, vistoso.

gaze at or upon, VA., mirar; contemplar (50 R, 11).

gentleman, el caballero; *old —*, el German, alemán. [anciano.

Germany, Alemania (*f.*).

gesture, el ademán.

get, VN., (*to arrive*) llegar; — *back*, \*volver (1); — *the fresh air*, tomar el fresco; — *to be*, llegar á ser; — *out of breath*, \*perder (1) el aliento.

ghost, el fantasma.

girl, la niña, la joven.

give, VA., \*dar (§ 1102); prestar (27, 3); (*make a present of*) regalar.

glad, alegre; *to be — that*, alegrarse de que.

glance [*at*], VN., echar una mirada [á].

glass, (*material*) el vidrio; (*for drinking*) el vaso.

gleam, VN., brillar.

globe, el globo.

gloomy, lúgubre.

glory, la gloria.

glove, el guante.

glowing, reluciente.

go, VN., \*ir (§ 1104); — *back*, \*volver (1); — *down*, bajar; — *out*, \*salir (§ 1110); (*a fire*) apagarse; — *over*, (*to review*) repasar; — *shopping*, \*ir á las tiendas; — *through*, cruzar; — *to bed*, \*acostarse (1); — *up*, subir.



goatskin, la piel de cabra.  
 gold, el oro.  
 good, bueno (*apocopated to buen before masc. sing. noun*).  
 goods, los géneros; (*cloth*) el género.  
 government, el gobierno; *city* —, el ayuntamiento.  
 governor, el gobernador.  
 grab, *VA.*, agarrar.  
 graduate, el graduado.  
 grammar, la gramática.  
 granddaughter, la nieta; *little* —, la nietecita.  
 grandeur, la grandeza.  
 grandfather, el abuelo.  
 grandson, el nieto.  
 grant, *VA.*, otorgar.  
 grass, la yerba; (*sward*) la grama.  
 grave, la sepultura.  
 great, grande (*apocopated to gran before masc. sing. noun*); *the —er part*, la mayor parte.  
 green, el verde. —, *ADJ.*, verde.  
 greenhouse, el invernadero.  
 greenish, verdoso.  
 grey, gris.  
 grieve, *VA.*, pesar.  
 grimace, la mueca.  
 grind, *VA.*, triturar.  
 groom, el palafrenero; (*fam.*) el mozo [de cuadra].  
 ground, el suelo; *to fall to the —*, \*caer (§ 1107) á tierra; —*plan*,  
 grounds, el terreno. [el cuadro.  
 grow, *VN.*, \*crecer (IV).  
 growing, creciente.  
 Guayra, La, La Guaira.  
 guest, el huésped.  
 guilty, culpable.  
 gull, la gaviota.  
 gun, la escopeta.

H

habit, la costumbre.  
 hail, el granizo.  
 hair, el pelo; (*horse-hair*) el crin.  
 half, la mitad.  
 half, *ADJ.*, medio; — *an hour*, media hora.  
 hall, la sala; (*connecting passage*) el corredor; (*reception hall*) el salón; *City* —, la Casa de Ayuntamiento.  
 halo, la aureola (*or* auréola).  
 halt! ¡alto!  
 ham, el jamón.  
 hammer, el martillo.  
 hammer, *VA.*, martillar.  
 hand, la mano.  
 handkerchief, el pañuelo.  
 handwriting, la letra.  
 hang, *VA.*, (*a person*) ahorcar; (*pictures, etc.*) \*colgar (I).  
 hanging [on], colgado [de].  
 happen, *VN.*, suceder; pasar (45,  
 happiness, la felicidad. [25].  
 happy, feliz; alegre (42, 7).  
 harbor, el puerto; la rada (42,  
 11).  
 hard, duro; *these — times*, estos malos tiempos.  
 hardship, la penalidad.  
 harlequin, el arlequín.  
 hat, el sombrero.  
 hatch, *VA.*, empollar.  
 hate, *VA.*, odiar.  
 have, *VA.*, \*tener (§ 1089). —, *VN.*, (*auxiliary*) \*haber (§ 1087).  
 havoc, el estrago.  
 hawk, el gavilán.  
 hay, el heno; —*loft*, el henil.  
 hazardous, arriesgado.  
 he, él.

- head**, la cabeza; *with bowed —*, caída la c.  
**headlong**, Adv., de cabeza.  
**health**, la salud.  
**healthful**, saludable.  
**healthy**, sano.  
**heap**, el montón.  
**heap**, VA., amontonar.  
**hear**, VA., (*perceive a sound*) \*oír (§ 1108); (*hear understandingly*) \*entender (I).  
**heart**, el corazón; las entrañas (50 R, 10).  
**hearth**, el hogar.  
**heat**, el calor.  
**heaven**, el cielo; *I wish to —!* ¡pluguiera á Dios!  
**heavy**, pesado; (*clouds*) denso; (*dew, rain*) fuerte.  
**heir**, la heredera.  
**help**, la ayuda.  
**help**, VA., ayudar; *not — doing something*, no \*poder (§ 1093) menos de hacer algo (*cf.* § 1031).  
**hen**, la gallina.  
**her**, (*acc.*) la; (*dat.*) le; (*possess.*) su (*pl. sus*).  
**here**, aquí; *around —*, por a.  
**hesitate**, VN., vacilar.  
**hide**, la piel.  
**hide**, VA., esconder.  
**hiding-place**, el lugar de retiro.  
**high**, alto; *two feet —*, dos pies de alto (*or* de altura).  
**hill**, la colina; el cerro (30 R, 1).  
**him**, le.  
**his**, su (*pl. sus*).  
**history**, la historia.  
**hitherto**, hasta aquí.  
**hive**, la colmena.  
**hobby**, la manía.  
**hold**, VA., \*tener (§ 1089); poseer (40 R, 8); \*caber (§ 1091) (*cf.* § 789).  
**home**, el hogar; *news from —*, noticias de casa.  
**homeless**, sin hogar.  
**hook**, el gancho.  
**hope**, la esperanza.  
**hope**, VA., VN., esperar; *it is to be —d that*, es de esperarse que.  
**hops**, el lúpulo.  
**horizon**, el horizonte.  
**horn**, el cuerno.  
**horse**, el caballo.  
**hospital**, el hospital; *field —*, la ambulancia.  
**host**, la multitud.  
**hostler**, el mozo [de cuadro].  
**hot**, caliente; candente (33, 5): — *springs*, las termas (*or* aguas calientes); *to be —*, (*person*) \*tener (§ 1089) calor, (*thing*) \*estar (§ 1090) caliente; *it is —*, hace calor; *it is —ter*, hace más calor.  
**hothouse**, el invernadero.  
**hour**, la hora; *half an —*, media h.  
**house**, la casa; *play—*, la casita de recreo.  
**how?** ¿cómo? (*in exclamations*) qué, cuán, qué tan (*cf.* §§ 552-3); — *far?* ¿hasta dónde? — *much?* ¿cuánto?  
**however**, sin embargo; — *much*, por más que (+ *subjunct.*).  
**hue**, el matiz.  
**Humbert**, Humberto.  
**hundred**, ciento, cien (§§ 379-81); (*collective numeral*) el centenar.  
**hungry**, hambriento; *to be [very] —*, \*tener (§ 1089) [mucho] hambre.

**hunt**, *VA.*, cazar.  
**hunting**, la caza; — *trip*, la partida de caza; *to have good* —, \*hacer (§ 1096) buena cacería.  
**hurricane**, el huracán.  
**hurriedly**, á toda prisa.  
**hurry**, la prisa; *in a* —, de p.  
**hurry**, *VA.*, apresurar. —, *VN.*, apresurarse.  
**husband**, el marido; el esposo (50).  
**hydrofluoric**, fluorhídrico. [5].

I

**ice**, el hielo.  
**Island**, Islandia (*f.*).  
**idiot**, el imbécil.  
**if**, si.  
**ignorant**, ignorante; *to be* — *of*, ignorar.  
**ill**, enfermo.  
**illegible**, ilegible.  
**illumine**, *VA.*, iluminar.  
**image**, la imagen.  
**imbued** [*with*], penetrado [*de*].  
**immediate**, inmediato.  
**immensely**, sobremanera.  
**impassable**, intransitable.  
**impel**, *VA.*, impulsar.  
**impenetrable**, (*fig.*) inescrutable.  
**important**: *it is* — *that*, importa que (+ *subjunct.*).  
**imposing**, imponente.  
**improve**, *VA.*, mejorar.  
**in**, en; — *among*, entre; — *front*, enfrente; — *order to*, para, á fin de.  
**incapable**, incapaz.  
**incessantly**, sin cesar.  
**inclined** [*to*], dispuesto [á].  
**income**, la renta.

**inconspicuous**, poco llamativo.  
**increase**, *VA.*, aumentar.  
**incredible**, increíble.  
**indeed**, en efecto; (*emphatic or exclamatory*) de veras; *yes* —! ¡ya lo creo!  
**indented**, entrecortado.  
**independent**, independiente.  
**India ink**, la tinta de China.  
**Indian**, *ADJ.*, indio.  
**indicate**, *VA.*, denotar.  
**indigenous**, indígena.  
**individual**, el individuo; el sujeto (44, 14).  
**industrious**, laborioso.  
**infallible**, infalible.  
**inform**, *VA.*, avisar; \*manifestar (1) (44, 10).  
**infra-red**, infra-colorado.  
**ingenious**, ingenuo.  
**inhabit**, *VA.*, habitar.  
**inhabitant**, el habitante.  
**ink**, la tinta; *India* —, la t. de China.  
**inkstand**, el tintero.  
**inlaid** [*with*], incrustado [*de*].  
**inner**, interior.  
**inquiry**, la indagación.  
**inquisitive**, curioso.  
**insect**, el bicho; *coral* —, el b. del coral.  
**insist** [*on*], *VN.*, insistir [*en*].  
**insolently**, con insolencia.  
**instance**: *for* —, por ejemplo.  
**instant**, (*in dates*) del corriente, del mes actual.  
**instead of**, en vez de.  
**instill**, *VA.*, \*imbuir (*v*).  
**instinct**, el instinto.  
**instruct**, *VA.*, encargar.  
**instrument**: *see* *transit.*  
**insurgent**, el insurrecto.

intelligence, la inteligencia.  
 intend [to], VN., \*tener (§ 1089)  
   la intención de.  
 interest, el interés.  
 interest, VA., interesar.  
 interesting, interesante.  
 interfere, VN., (*horse*) empatarse.  
 interrupt, VA., interrumpir.  
 intersect, VA., entrecortar.  
 intimate, ADJ., íntimo.  
 into, en.  
 introduce, VA., presentar.  
 intrust, VA., encargar.  
 invite, VA., convidar.  
 iron, el hierro.  
 island, la isla.  
 it, (*nom.*) él, ella, ello; (*acc.*) lo,  
 Italy, Italia (*f.*). [la.  
 its, su (*pl. sus*).  
 itself, sí, se; (*intensive*) mismo.  
 ivory, el marfil.

## J

Jana, Juana.  
 janitor, el conserje; el portero.  
 jest, la burla.  
 jewel, la alhaja.  
 Joe, Pepe.  
 John, Juan.  
 Johnnie, Juanito.  
 Josephine, Josefa.  
 judge, el juez.  
 juice, el zumo.  
 jump, VN., saltar.  
 junior, más joven.  
 just, justo; *to be* — ... *years old*,  
   \*tener (§ 1089) ... años cumpli-  
   dos; *to have* — [+ *pp.*], acabar  
   de [+ *infin.*]; *I have* — *seen*,  
   acabo de ver.

## K

keep, VA., guardar; conservar (33,  
   8); — *on*, VN., continuar.  
 keg, el cuñete.  
 kerosene, el petróleo.  
 key, la llave.  
 Key West, Cayo Hueso.  
 kill, VA., matar (PP. muerto *and*  
   matado; *cf.* § 1132).  
 kind, la especie; la clase (43, 6);  
   *nothing of the* —, nada de la  
   suerte.  
 kind, bondadoso; magnánimo (52,  
 kindle, VA., \*encender (1). [4].  
 king, el rey.  
 kingdom, el reino.  
 kitchen, la cocina.  
 knee, la rodilla.  
 know, VA., (*facts that have been*  
   *learned, knowledge that has been*  
   *acquired*) \*saber (§ 1092); (*to*  
   *be acquainted with*) \*conocer  
 knowledge, el conocimiento. [(iv).

## L

labor, el trabajo.  
 labor, VN., trabajar.  
 laborer, el peón.  
 lace, el encaje.  
 lack, la falta.  
 lack, VA., faltar, \*hacer (§ 1096)  
   falta (*with change of subject*;  
   *cf.* § 792); \*carecer (iv) de (41,  
   11); *to be* —ing, faltar.  
 lady, la señora.  
 lake, el lago.  
 lamp, la lámpara.  
 land, la tierra; (*used adjectively*)  
   terrestre.



landscape, el paisaje; la campifia (24, 2).  
 language, el idioma; la lengua (34, 11).  
 lantern, la linterna.  
 large, grande (*shortened in sing. to gran before consonants*); (*river*) caudaloso.  
 last, último; *at* —, al fin; — *night*, anoche; — *spring*, la primavera pasada; — *year*, el año pasado.  
 last, VN., durar.  
 late, tarde.  
 Latin, el latín.  
 laughter, la risa.  
 lawn, el prado.  
 lawsuit, el pleito.  
 lawyer, el abogado.  
 lay, VA., \*poner (§ 1094).  
 layer, la capa.  
 lead, el plomo.  
 lead, VA., \*conducir (§ 1101); guiar (31, 9); — *any one to* (+ *in fin.*), \*inducir (§ 1101) á —, VN., dirigirse.  
 leaden, de plomo.  
 league, la legua.  
 learn, VA., aprender. — [*how to*], VN., aprender [á].  
 lease, \*arrendar (1).  
 leave, la despedida; *take* — *of*, \*despedirse (III) de.  
 leave, VA., dejar. —, VN., partir; \*salir (§ 1110).  
 left, izquierdo; *to the* —, á la izquierda; — *hand side*, la izquierda.  
 legend, la leyenda.  
 lend, VA., prestar.  
 length, la longitud, la largura; *in* —, de largo, de largura.  
 lengthen, VA., alargar.

less, ADJ., menor.  
 less, ADV., menos; *none the* —, no obstante.  
 lesson, la lección.  
 let, VA., (*allow*) dejar.  
 letter, la carta.  
 levity, la liviandad.  
 library, la biblioteca.  
 lie, la mentira.  
 lie, VN., (*tell a lie*) \*mentir (II).  
 lieutenant, el teniente.  
 life, la vida; *country* —, la v. campestre.  
 lift, VA., levantar.  
 light, la luz.  
 light, VA., \*encender (1); (*illuminate*) alumbrar.  
 lighten, VN., relampaguear.  
 lighthouse, el faro; — *keeper*, el vigia.  
 like, VA., gustar (*with change of subject*; *cf.* § 793).  
 likely, probable; *to be* — *to*, deber.  
 limit, el limite. [(52, 3).  
 limp, VN., cojear.  
 limpid, cristalino.  
 line, la línea.  
 line [*with*], VA., forrar [de].  
 lion, el león.  
 lip, el labio.  
 liquid, el líquido.  
 list, la lista.  
 listen, VN., escuchar; — *to*, escuchar, VA.  
 little, pequeño; (*coll.*) chico; — *boy*, el chiquillo; — *by* —, poco á poco.  
 live, VN., vivir; subsistir (27, 11).  
 liver, el hígado.  
 living, viviente.  
 load, el cargo; la carretada (23, lobby, el zaguán. [7).

London, Londres.  
 lonesome, solitario.  
 long, largo; *for a — time*, por mucho tiempo.  
 long to, VN., ansiar (+ *inf.*).  
 longer, ADV., por más largo tiempo; *no —*, ya no.  
 look, VN., mirar; — *at*, mirar; — *for*, buscar; — *like*, \*parecer (IV); — *up*, buscar, VA.  
 lose, VA., \*perder (I).  
 loss, la pérdida; *from — of blood*, por el desangre.  
 lot, (*fate*) la suerte; *a — of*, una Louis, Luis. [porción de.  
 love, el amor; *in — [with]*, enamorado [de].  
 love, VA., \*querer (§ 1097).  
 lovely, precioso.  
 low, bajo; *to burn —*, \*languidecer (IV).  
 lower, inferior; (*in geogr. proper names*) bajo.  
 lower, VA., bajar.  
 luxuriance, la lozanía.  
 luxuriant, lozano.  
 lying, echado; — *on one's back*, tendido de espaldas.

## M

madam, señora.  
 Magellan, Magallanes.  
 magnificent, magnífico.  
 mahogany, la caoba.  
 majestic, majestuoso.  
 make, VA., \*hacer (§ 1096); (*money*) ganar; — *up*, inventar.  
 maker, el hacedor.  
 malign, VA., difamar.  
 malt, la malta.

man, el hombre; *business —*, el h. de negocios.  
 mandolin, la mandolina.  
 maniac, el loco.  
 manifest, VA., \*manifestar (I).  
 manner, el modo.  
 mantelpiece, la repisa de chimenea.  
 manufacturer, el manufacturero.  
 manuscript, el manuscrito; el códice (44, 3).  
 many, muchos (-as).  
 map, el mapa; *to prepare a —*, levantar un m.  
 marble, el mármol.  
 Margaret, Margarita.  
 marked, PP., marcado; (*noteworthy*) notable.  
 market, el mercado.  
 marriage, el casamiento.  
 married, casado; *to get —*, casarse; *to get — again*, casarse en segundas nupcias.  
 marry, VA., casar; casarse con (*cf.* § 790).  
 martyr, el (or la) mártir.  
 marvel, la maravilla.  
 masquerading, el disfraz.  
 mass, la masa.  
 match, el fósforo.  
 matter, el asunto.  
 matting, el esterado.  
 mattress, el colchón.  
 mayor, el alcalde.  
 me, me; (*after prep.*) mí; *with —*, conmigo.  
 meadow, el prado.  
 meaning, el significado; *what is the — of...?* ¿qué significa...?  
 means, los medios; *by no —*, de ningún modo; *no...en modo alguno* (48, 11).

meanwhile, entretanto.  
 measure, la medida.  
 measure, VA., \*medir (III).  
 meat, la carne.  
 meet, VA., \*encontrar (I); \*encontrarse (I) con (52, 2). —, VN., (*assemble*) reunirse.  
 melancholy, melancólico.  
 melt, VA., fundir. —, VN., fundirse; \*derretirse (III) (50, 10).  
 member, el miembro; el socio (32, 2).  
 menagerie, la casa de fieras.  
 mention, VA., mencionar; citar (50 R, 6).  
 Messrs., Señores.  
 Mexican, mejicano.  
 Mexico, Méjico (M.). [9].  
 middle, el centro; la mitad (45, 2).  
 midnight, la medianoche.  
 midst, el medio; *in the — of*, en m. de.  
 mile, la milla (= 1.6 kilómetros).  
 milk, la leche; —*wagon*, el carrretón de lechero.  
 milk, VA., ordeñar.  
 mill, el molino.  
 mind, el entendimiento; la mente (50 R, 3); *to bear in —*, \*tener (§ 1089) presente.  
 mine, la mina; — *owner*, el dueño de minas.  
 miner, el minero.  
 minute, el minuto.  
 mirror, el espejo.  
 mirth, la risa.  
 miss, VA., echar [de] menos; *I —ed the train*, se me escapó el tren.  
 mistake, el error.  
 mistress, el ama (f.); la dueña (40 R, 10).

mixture, la mezcla.  
 moan, el gemido.  
 mode, el medio.  
 modern, moderno.  
 mollusk, el molusco.  
 monarch, la monarca.  
 money, el dinero; *to make —*, ganar d.  
 monk, el monje.  
 monkey, el mono.  
 Montezuma, Motezuma.  
 month, el mes.  
 mood, el modo.  
 moon, la luna.  
 Moor, el morisco.  
 more, más.  
 morning, la mañana; *early in the —*, por la m. temprano; *good —*, (*salutation*) ¡buenos días! *to-morrow —*, mañana por la  
 mosquito, el mosquito. [m.  
 most, más; — *of*, la mayor parte de, los (or las) más de.  
 mother, la madre.  
 mount, VN., montar.  
 mountain, la montaña.  
 mouth, la boca; (*of river*) la embocadura.  
 move, VA., \*mover (I). —, VN., \*moverse (I).  
 mud, el fango.  
 muddy, fangoso.  
 muff, el manguito.  
 muffin, el mollete.  
 mule, la mula.  
 multimillionaire, el multimillonario.  
 murderer, el asesino. [nario.  
 mushroom, la seta.  
 mustache, el bigote.  
 muster-roll, el registro.  
 mute, mudo.  
 mutton, el carnero.

mutual, mutuo.  
 muzzle, el hocico.  
 my, mi (*pl. mis*).

## N

name, el nombre.  
 namely, á saber.  
 Naples, Nápoles.  
 narrow, estrecho.  
 nasturtium, la capuchina.  
 native, ADJ., natal.  
 nature, la naturaleza.  
 near, ADV., cerca. —, PREP., cerca  
 nearly, casi. [de.  
 necessary, preciso.  
 neck, el cuello.  
 necktie, la corbata.  
 need, la necesidad.  
 need, VA., necesitar.  
 needle, la aguja.  
 neighbor, el vecino.  
 nephew, el sobrino.  
 nervous, nervioso.  
 nest, el nido.  
 nevertheless, sin embargo.  
 new, nuevo.  
 Newfoundland, Terranova (*f.*).  
 newly-elected, recién elegido.  
 news, (*in general*) las noticias;  
 (*single item*) la noticia.  
 newspaper, el periódico; (*daily*)  
 el diario.  
 New Zealand, Nueva Zelandia  
 (*f.*).  
 next, próximo; que viene (30,  
 17); — *to*, junto á.  
 nice, lindo.  
 night, la noche; *at* —, de n.; por  
 la n. (45, 16); *the* — *before*  
*last*, anteanoche.

nightfall: *at* —, al anochecer.  
 nightingale, el ruiseñor.  
 Nile, el Nilo.  
 nine, nueve.  
 no, no; ninguno (-a, -os, -as),  
 (*shortened to* ningún *before*  
*masc. sing. noun*); — *one*,  
 —body, nadie.  
 noble, (*fig.*) soberbio (48, 9).  
 noise, el ruido; (*confusion, bustle*)  
 el barullo.  
 none, ninguno (-a, -os, -as),  
 (*shortened to* ningún *before*  
*masc. sing. noun*); — *the less*,  
 no obstante.  
 nonsense, la tontería.  
 nor, tampoco; *neither* ... —, ni...  
 ni.  
 north, norte; *North America*, la  
 América del Norte, la América  
 Septentrional.  
 northern, septentrional; del norte  
 (27, 3).  
 nose, la nariz.  
 not, no; — *at all*, de ningún modo;  
 (+ *adjective*) nada.  
 note, la nota; — *book*, el libro de  
 apuntes; *bank* —, el billete de  
 banco.  
 nothing, nada; — *else*, no...  
 otra cosa.  
 notice: *to take* —, distinguir.  
 notice, VA., notar.  
 notwithstanding, no obstante.  
 novel, la novela.  
 now, ahora, ya; — *and then*, de  
 vez en cuando.  
 nowhere, en ninguna parte.  
 nugget, la pepita [de oro].  
 number, el número.  
 numismatics, la numismática.  
 nurse, (*for the sick*) la enfermera.



O

**oak**, el roble; la encina (18, 21).  
**object**, el objeto.  
**objection**, el inconveniente.  
**oblige**, VA., obligar.  
**obtain**, VA., \*obtener (§ 1089);  
 allegar (43, 13).  
**obstinate**, testarudo.  
**occasion**, la ocasión; *on this* —,  
**occur**, VN., ocurrir. [esta vez.  
**occurrence**, el suceso.  
**ocean**, el océano.  
**o'clock**: *expressed by fem. definite article + numeral; cf. § 414.*  
**October**, octubre.  
**odor**, el olor.  
**odorless**, inodoro.  
**of**, de.  
**offer**, VA., \*ofrecer (IV).  
**office**, (*commercial*) el despacho;  
 (*governmental*) la oficina.  
**officer**, el oficial.  
**often**, á menudo.  
**oil**, el aceite.  
**old**, viejo (*applied to persons*, anciano *is more courteous*); (*of long standing*) antiguo; — *gentleman*, el anciano. [tunado.  
**olive**, la aceituna; — *green*, aceitón, en, sobre; — *time*, á tiempo.  
**once**, una vez; *at* —, en seguida; al instante (44, 15).  
**only**, solamente, sólo.  
**open**, abierto; — *hostilities*, las hostilidades á las claras.  
**open**, VA., abrir (PP. abierto).  
**opinion**, el juicio.  
**opponent**, el contrincante.  
**opposite**, contrario; *in the* — *direction*, en dirección opuesta.  
 —, PREP., enfrente de.

**optician**, el óptico.  
**or**, ó (ú *before o- or ho-*).  
**orange**, la naranja; (*color*) el naranjado. —, ADJ., naranjado.  
**orbit**, la órbita.  
**orchard**, la huerta; el verjel (37,  
**orchid**, la orquídea. [8].  
**order**, el orden; *in* — *to*, á fin de.  
**order**, VA., \*pedir (III); (*command*) mandar.  
**ostrich**, el avestruz.  
**other**, otro (-a, -os, -as); *meaning "the remaining"*) demás; *the* — *s*, los (or las) demás; *on the* — *side*, al otro lado.  
**our**, nuestro (-a, -os, -as).  
**out**, fuera.  
**out-and-out**, hecho y derecho.  
**outcome**, el resultado; el desenlace (52, 6).  
**outdoor**, fuera de casa.  
**outer**, exterior.  
**outline**, el perfil.  
**outside**, el exterior.  
**outside**, ADV., fuera. — *of*, PREP., fuera de.  
**over**, sobre, encima de; *to be* —, pasar (51, 1).  
**overcoat**, el abrigo.  
**overcome**, VA., derrotar.  
**overflow**, la crecida.  
**overgrown** [*with*], poblado [de]; invahido [por] (46, 6).  
**overhanging**, desplomado.  
**overreach**, VN., (*horse*) pisarse.  
**owl**, el buho.  
**owe**, VA., deber.  
**own**, propio (-a, -os, -as).  
**owner**, el dueño; *mine* —, el d. de minas.  
**ox**, el buey.  
**oyster**, la ostra; (*S. A.*) el ostión.

## P

pain, el dolor.  
 pain, VN., \*doler (1).  
 painful, doloroso.  
 paint, la pintura.  
 paint, VA., pintar.  
 painting, el cuadro.  
 pair, el par.  
 pale, pálido; (*color*) claro.  
 palm, la palmera.  
 pane of glass, el cristal.  
 panic, el pánico.  
 paper, el papel; (*newspaper*) el periódico; *daily* —, el diario.  
 parents, los padres.  
 parlor, el salón.  
 parrot, el loro.  
 parsley, el perejil.  
 part, la parte; (*theatrical rôle*) el papel; *to play a* —, \*hacer (§ 1096) un papel; representar un papel (42, 5).  
 particular, escrupuloso.  
 partition, VA., partir.  
 partner, el socio.  
 pass, VA., VN., pasar; — *the night*, p. la noche.  
 past, pasado.  
 pasture, VN., pastar.  
 patient, el enfermo, la enferma.  
 pattern, el diseño.  
 Paul, Pablo.  
 pay, VA., pagar; — *attention* [to], prestar atención [á]; — *out*, desembolsar.  
 peacock, el pavo real.  
 pear, la pera.  
 peasant, el lugareño, la lugareña; — *woman*, la lugareña.  
 peculiar, particular.  
 pen, la pluma.

pencil, el lápiz.  
 penetrating, penetrante.  
 penny, el penique.  
 people, la gente (*requires verb in sing. number*); (*collective or national*) el pueblo; (*after a numeral*) personas.  
 pepper, el pimiento; *bull-nose* —, el p. morón.  
 perceive, VA., percibir.  
 perilous, peligroso.  
 permission, el permiso.  
 persistency, la tenacidad.  
 person, la persona.  
 pessimist, el (or la) pesimista.  
 pessimistic, pesimista.  
 pheasant, el faisán.  
 phenomenon, el fenómeno.  
 Philip, Felipe.  
 photograph, la fotografía; *to take a* —, sacar una f.  
 physician, el médico; el facultativo (21, 4).  
 physics, la física.  
 piece, el pedazo; la pieza (43, 19); — *of furniture*, el mueble.  
 piercing, penetrante.  
 pick, VA., (*teeth*) mondar.  
 picture, el cuadro.  
 picturesque, pintoresco.  
 pigment, el color.  
 pile, VA., amontonar.  
 pillow, la almohada.  
 pine, el pino; — *grove*, el pinar.  
 pink, ADJ., rosado.  
 pipe, la pipa.  
 pitch, VN., desplomarse.  
 pitched battle, la batalla campal.  
 place, el sitio.  
 plan, el plan; (*scheme*) el proyecto.  
 plant, la planta.  
 plate-glass, el vidrio cilindrado.

play, el drama.  
 play, *VA.*, \*jugar (I); (*a musical instrument*) tocar; — *billiards*, j. al billar; — *a part*, \*hacer (§ 1096) un papel (50, 5); re-presentar un papel (42, 5).  
 play-house, la casita de recreo.  
 player, el comediante.  
 pleasure, el gusto; *to take — in*, \*tener (§ 1089) g. en.  
 plight, la condición.  
 plume, la pluma.  
 pocket, el bolsillo.  
 poet, el poeta.  
 point, el sitio (45, 14).  
 poisonous, venenoso.  
 pole, la varilla (26, 13).  
 police, la policía.  
 politics, la política; *to talk —*, hablar de la p.  
 polyp, el pólipio.  
 polypary, la polípera.  
 pomegranate, la granada.  
 pond, el estanque.  
 pony, el (or la) jaca.  
 poor, pobre; mezquino (41, 12).  
 poorly, mal.  
 port, el puerto.  
 portion, la parte.  
 portrait, el retrato.  
 position, (*commercial*) la colocación; (*governmental*) el destino; el puesto (31, 17).  
 possess, *VA.*, poseer.  
 postman, el cartero.  
 postmark, el timbre postal.  
 postpone, *VA.*, \*diferir (II); aplazar (31, 5).  
 potato, la patata; (*S. A.*) la papa; *sweet —*, la batata; (*S. A.*) el boniato, el buniato.  
 pour, *VA.*, echar.

poverty, la pobreza.  
 power, el poder; la facultad (22, 9).  
 powerful, poderoso.  
 practical, efectivo.  
 practice, la práctica.  
 praise, la alabanza.  
 praise, *VA.*, alabar.  
 prefer, *VA.*, \*preferir (II).  
 preferable, preferible.  
 prejudice, la preocupación.  
 preliminary, preliminar.  
 preparation, el preparativo.  
 prepare, *VA.*, (*food*) aderezar; (*a map*) levantar.  
 present, (*time*) actual; *at —*, actualmente.  
 preserve, *VA.*, \*conservar (I).  
 press, la prensa.  
 pretty, bonito; (*coll.*) guapo.  
 prevent, *VA.*, \*impedir (III); \*prevenir (§ 1095) (48, 9).  
 previous, anterior.  
 price, el precio.  
 prick, *VA.*, picar.  
 priest, el sacerdote; (*coll.*) el cura.  
 prime, primer.  
 print, *VA.*, imprimir (PP. *impre-*  
 prism, el prisma. [so].  
 prisoner, (*civil*) el preso; (*mil.*) el prisionero.  
 private, *ADJ.*, particular.  
 process, el procedimiento.  
 procure, *VA.*, \*obtener (§ 1089).  
 produce, *VA.*, \*producir (§ 1101).  
 profession, la profesión.  
 professional, de profesión.  
 professor, el catedrático.  
 progress, el progreso.  
 promise, la promesa.  
 promise, *VA.*, prometer.

promptly, de pronto.  
 proper, propio; natural (41, 9).  
 properly, debidamente.  
 property, la propiedad; la hacienda (48, 15).  
 prospect, la perspectiva.  
 prosperous, próspero.  
 protect, *VA.*, resguardar; guardar (34, 16).  
 provided, *CONJ.*, con tal de que.  
 provisions, los víveres.  
 provoke, *VA.*, provocar.  
 Psyche, Psiquis.  
 public, el público.  
 publish, *VA.*, publicar.  
 pure, (*style*) castizo.  
 purple, la púrpura.  
 put, *VA.*, \*poner (§ 1094); meter (17, 2); echar (17, 4); — *in* (*or into*), meter en; — *off*, aplazar; — *up with*, aguantar.

## Q

qualification, la aptitud.  
 quantity, la cantidad.  
 quarter, el cuarto.  
 quartered, jaspeado (26, 1).  
 Quentin, Quintín.  
 question, la pregunta; *to ask a* —, \*hacer (§ 1096) una p.  
 quickly, rápidamente.  
 quiet, silencioso.  
 quite, *ADV.*, bastante; enteramente (19, 8).

## R

rabbit, el conejo.  
 race, la raza.  
 railroad, railway, el ferrocarril.

rain, la lluvia.  
 rain, *VN.*, \*llover (1).  
 rainbow, el arco-iris.  
 raise, *VA.*, levantar.  
 rapidity, la rapidez.  
 rare, raro.  
 rarely, raras veces.  
 rascal, el bribón.  
 rather, (*somewhat*) algo; —... *than*, más bien...que; antes que (50, 16).  
 rattle, (*toy*) el sonajero.  
 ravine, la cañada.  
 ray, el rayo.  
 reach, *VA.*, llegar á; alcanzar (45, 10).  
 read, *VA.*, *VN.*, leer.  
 reader, el lector.  
 readily, prontamente.  
 ready, listo; —*made*, hecho.  
 realize, *VA.*, \*hacerse (§ 1096) cargo de.  
 really, efectivamente.  
 realm, el imperio.  
 reason, la razón.  
 receive, *VA.*, recibir.  
 recent, reciente; *in* — *years*, en los últimos años.  
 recently, recientemente; (+ *past participle*) recién; poco antes (44, 14).  
 recipe, la receta.  
 reclining, reclinado.  
 recognize, *VA.*, \*reconocer (14).  
 recommend, *VA.*, \*recomendar (1); (*to praise*) \*encomendar (1).  
 recreation, el recreo.  
 red, el colorado. —, *ADJ.*, colorado.  
 reflect, *VA.*, reflejar. —, *VN.*, (*mental*) reflexionar.  
 refresh, *VA.*, refrescar.



**refuse**, VA., VN., rehusar.  
**regain**, VA., \*volver (1) á.  
**regard**: *with* — *to*, con respecto á; respecto de (37, 14).  
**regarding**, acerca de; respecto á (43, 9).  
**regimental**, del regimiento.  
**reject**, VA., rechazar.  
**relation**, relative, el (or la) pariente.  
**reliable**, seguro, fehaciente.  
**relic**, el resto; (*religious*) la reliquia.  
**relief**, el beneficio.  
**remain**, VN., \*permanecer (IV); quedar (28, 3); quedarse (48, 17).  
**remains**, los restos.  
**remark**, la observación.  
**remarkable**, notable.  
**remarkably**, notablemente; — *well*, admirablemente (44, 1).  
**remember**, VA., \*recordar (1).  
**rent**, el alquiler.  
**rent**, VA., alquilar.  
**reply**, la respuesta.  
**report**, el informe.  
**report**, VN., dictaminar.  
**reporter**, el corresponsal.  
**requiem**, el réquiem.  
**requisite**, el requisito.  
**resemble**, VA., \*parecer (IV).  
**resolute**, resuelto.  
**resource**, el recurso; — *ful*, lleno de recursos.  
**respect**, VA., respetar.  
**rest**, el descanso; (*remainder*) *the* —, los (or las) demás.  
**rest** VA., apoyar. —, VN., descansar.  
**result**, el resultado.  
**retrieve**, VA., (*game*) recoger.

**return**, la vuelta.  
**return**, VA., (*give back*) \*devolver (1). —, VN., (*come or go back*) \*volver (1); (*after a considerable absence*) regresar.  
**reward**, VA., \*recompensar (1).  
**rich**, rico.  
**ridiculous**, ridículo.  
**right**, el derecho; *to have a* — *to* [+ *infin.*], \*tener (§ 1089) d. de.  
**right**, derecho; *to be* — [*in*], \*tener (§ 1089) razón [*en*]; *all* —! ¡corriente! — *away*, inmediatamente.  
**rigorous**, riguroso.  
**ring**, el anillo; (*for finger*) la sortija.  
**rise**, VN., levantarse; \*descollar (1) (30 R, 4).  
**river**, el río.  
**road**, el camino; (*highway*) la carretera.  
**roadside**, la ribera del camino.  
**roar**, el rugido.  
**robber**, el ladrón; (*brigand*) el bandolero.  
**robe**, el ropaje.  
**Robert**, Roberto.  
**rock**, la roca; la peña (31, 8).  
**rocking-chair**, la mecedora.  
**roll**, el lío.  
**roll**, VA., \*rodar (1); — *up*, doblar; — *up* (*sleeves*), arremangar.  
**Romance**, romance.  
**Rome**, Roma (*f.*).  
**room**, el cuarto; (*individual or personal*) la habitación; la pieza (43, 16).  
**roomy**, espacioso.  
**root**, la raíz.  
**rose**, la rosa; (*rosebush*) el rosal.

rosebud, el capullo de rosa.  
 rough, áspero.  
 round, redondo; *in — numbers*,  
     en números redondos.  
 row, la hilera.  
 royal, regio.  
 rude, rudo.  
 rug, el tapete.  
 rugged, escabroso.  
 ruin, la ruina.  
 run, VA., (*a blockade*) burlar. —,  
     VN., correr; — *into*, tropezar  
     con; — *over*, atropellar.  
 running, ADJ., corriente.  
 rush, VN., arrojarse.  
 Russian, ruso.

## S

sad, triste.  
 saddle, la silla.  
 saddle, VA., ensillar.  
 safe, ADV., en salvo.  
 sail, la vela.  
 sailor, el marinero.  
 Saint Paul, San Pablo.  
 sale, la venta; *on —*, de v.  
 salt, la sal.  
 sand, la arena; — *stone*, la piedra  
     arenisca.  
 satin, el raso.  
 satisfied [*with*], contento [de];  
     satisfecho [con]; contento [con]  
     (40 R, 9).  
 Saturday, el sábado.  
 say, VA., \*decir (§ 1098).  
 scar, la cicatriz.  
 scarcely, apenas.  
 scatter, VA., desparramar.  
 scene, scenery, el paisaje.  
 scent, la perfumería.

school, la escuela.  
 science, la ciencia.  
 scoundrel, bribón.  
 screen, la mampara; el biombo  
     (52, 8).  
 sea, el mar; — *coast*, la costa del  
 seal, la foca. [m].  
 seamstress, la costurera.  
 search, la busca; *in — of*, en b. de.  
 search, VA., registrar.  
 seashore, la orilla del mar; (*pleas-  
     ure resort*) los baños de mar.  
 season, la estación.  
 seat, VA., \*sentar (1).  
 secessionist, el separatista.  
 second, el segundo. —, ADJ., se-  
     gundo.  
 secondary, secundario.  
 secret, el secreto.  
 Secretary, (*U. S. cabinet officer*)  
     el ministro.  
 secrete, VA., (*exude*) segregar.  
 see, VA., VN., \*ver (§ 1105).  
 seek, seek for, VA., buscar.  
 seem, VN., \*parecer (IV); \*parecer  
     (IV) ser (22, 10).  
 send, VA., mandar, enviar.  
 sense, el sentido.  
 sentence, la oración.  
 separate, separado; separatista  
     (27, 1).  
 serious, serio; (*wound*) grave.  
 seriously, gravemente.  
 set, VA., \*poner (§ 1094); colocar  
     (26, 9); — *fire to*, incendiar:  
     — *off*, partir, VN.  
 seven, siete.  
 seventeenth, décimoséptimo.  
 seventy, setenta.  
 several, varios (-as); — *times*, va-  
     rias veces.  
 sexton, el sacristán.

**shade**, la sombra; — *tree*, el árbol de s.

**shadow**, la sombra.

**shady**, sombrío; *it is* —, hay sombra.

**shave**, **shave off**, *VA.*, afeitar.

**shed**, *VA.*, derramar.

**sheep**, el carnero.

**shell**, la concha.

**shelter**, el albergue; el hospedaje (43, 13); — *under — from*, al abrigo de.

**shepherd-boy**, el zagal.

**sheriff**, el alguacil.

**shine**, *VN.*, brillar.

**ship**, el buque.

**shirt**, la camisa.

**shoe**, el zapato.

**shoot**, *VA.*, disparar; (*game*) matar.

**shooting-star**, la estrella volante.

**shopping**: *to go* —, \*ir (§ 1104) á las tiendas.

**short**, corto; *to get* —, acortarse; *to get —er*, \*irse (§ 1104) acortando.

**shorten**, *VA.*, acortar.

**short-cut**, el atajo.

**shoulder**, el hombro.

**shout**, *VN.*, gritar.

**show**, *VA.*, \*mostrar (1); \*demostrar (1) (34, 5); enseñar (50, 11).

**showy**, vistoso.

**shrink**, *VN.*, encogerse.

**Sicily**, Sicilia (*f.*).

**sick**, enfermo.

**side**, el lado; el borde (16, 17); la parte (41, 13); *on the left-hand* —, á la izquierda; *on the other* —, al otro lado; — *chair*, la silla derecha; — *door*, la puer-

ta de al lado; — *wall*, la pared lateral.

**sight**, la vista; *in — of*, á la v. de.

**sign**, el barrunto.

**signal**, la señal; — *shot*, el disparo de s.

**silent**, silencioso; *to be* —, callar.

**silk**, la seda.

**silly**, necio.

**silver**, la plata; (*silverware*) la vajilla de p.

**since**, desde, después de; desde que (45, 5); (*for*) pues; (*because*) puesto que.

**sing**, *VA.*, *VN.*, cantar.

**single**, solo.

**sink**, *VA.*, sumergir. —, *VN.*, sumergirse.

**sir**, señor.

**sister**, la hermana; — *in-law*, la cuñada.

**sit**, *VN.*, \*sentarse (1); *to be —ting*, \*estar (§ 1090) sentado.

**sitting**, sentado.

**situation**, el sitio.

**six**, seis.

**sixteen**, dieciséis.

**sixty**, sesenta.

**size**, el tamaño.

**skipper**, el patrón.

**skirt**, la saya.

**skirt**, *VA.*, recorrer.

**slave**, el esclavo; — *State*, el Estado esclavista.

**slavery**, la esclavitud.

**sleep**, el sueño; *to get to* —, conciliar el s.

**sleep**, *VN.*, \*dormir (11).

**sleeve**, la manga.

**slice**, la rodaja.

**slight**, ligero.

**slip**, *VN.*, resbalar.

**slope**, la ladera.  
**slow**, lento.  
**small**, pequeño; (*coll.*) chico.  
**small-pox**, las viruelas.  
**smile**, VN., \*sonreír (III); \*sonreírse (III) (50 R, 4).  
**smoke**, el humo.  
**smoke**, VA., VN., (*tobacco*) fumar.  
 —, VN., (*emit smoke or vapor*) humear.  
**snail**, el caracol.  
**snow**, la nieve; —*capped*, coronado de n.; —*covered*, nevado.  
**snow**, VN., \*nevar (I).  
**Smyrna**, Esmirna (*f.*).  
**so**, (*in this manner*) así; tanto (*shortened to tan before adj. or adv.*); — *that*, — *much that*, tanto que; — *that* (*expressing result*) de modo que; — *long* (*time*) tanto tiempo; — *many people*, tantos hombres; — *on successively*, así sucesivamente.  
**sofa**, el sofá.  
**soft**, suave.  
**soldier**, el soldado.  
**sole**, ADJ., solo.  
**some**, alguno (-a, -os, -as) *shortened to algún before masc. sing. noun*); — *body*, — *one*, alguien; — *thing*, algo; alguna cosa (50, R, 7); — *times*, á veces; algunas veces (42, 3).  
**son**, el hijo.  
**song**, la canción; — *bird*, el ave (*f.*) cantor; (*poet.*) el ave canora.  
**soon**, pronto; *as — as*, en cuanto.  
**sorrel**, ADJ., alazán.  
**sorry**: *to be —*, pesar (*with inversion of subject*; cf. § 795).  
**sort**, la especie.

**sound**, el sonido.  
**sound**, VN., \*sonar (I).  
**sour**, agrio.  
**source**, la fuente, el manantial.  
**south**, el sur; el mediodía (30 R, 4). —, ADJ., meridional.  
**southern**, meridional; del sur (27, 5, 8).  
**southerner**, el (*or* la) sudista.  
**Spain**, España (*f.*).  
**Spaniard**, el español, la española.  
**Spanish**, español; (*language*) castellano; — *American*, hispanoamericano.  
**spark**, el destello.  
**speak**, VA., VN., hablar.  
**species**, la especie.  
**spectator**, el espectador.  
**speech**, el discurso; *to make a —*, pronunciar un d.  
**spend**, VA., (*money*) gastar; (*time*) pasar.  
**splendor**, el esplendor.  
**split**, VA., \*hender (I); (*kindling-wood*) astillar.  
**spoon**, la cuchara; — *ful*, la cucharada.  
**spot**, la tacha; (*locality*) el sitio; el lugar (16, 15).  
**spout**, el cuello.  
**sprain**, VA., \*torcer (I).  
**spray**, los vapores (*pl.*).  
**spring**, el muelle; (*season*) la primavera; (*water-source*) la fuente, el manantial; *hot —s*, las termas, las aguas calientes.  
**spring up**, VN., alzarse.  
**sprinkle**, rociar.  
**squander**, derrochar.  
**square**, (*math.*) el cuadrado. —, ADJ., cuadrado; *two feet —*, dos pies en cuadro.



squeeze, VA., estrujar.  
 stage, (*of a theater*) el escenario.  
 stair, staircase, la escalera.  
 stand, VN., \*estar (§ 1090) de pie; \*encontrarse (I) (47, 9).  
 star, la estrella; *shooting*—, la e. volante.  
 start [*for*], VN., \*salir (§ 1110) [para].  
 starving, hambriento.  
 state, el estado.  
 station, VA., apostar.  
 statue, la estatua.  
 stay, VN., \*permanecer (IV); quedarse (48, 1).  
 steady, fijo.  
 steam, el vapor; —*engine*, la máquina de v.  
 steamer, el vapor.  
 steep, empinado.  
 stenographer, el taquígrafo, la taquígrafa.  
 step, el paso; *to take* —s [*to*], tomar medidas [para].  
 stepfather, el padrastro.  
 stew, el guisado; —*pan*, la cacerola.  
 stick, el palo; (*walking-stick*) el bastón.  
 still, todavía, aun; — *more*, aun más.  
 stir, VA., menear.  
 stock-broker, el agiotista.  
 stone, la piedra; *to throw* —s at, apedrear, VA.,  
 store, la tienda; *country* —, la t. rural.  
 storm, la tempestad; el temporal (39, 5).  
 story, el cuento; la historia (42, 3); (*of a building*) el piso.

stout, grueso.  
 straight, recto.  
 strait, el estrecho.  
 stranger, el desconocido, la desconocida.  
 stratum, la capa.  
 straw, la paja.  
 stream, la corriente.  
 street, la calle.  
 strength, las fuerzas (*pl.*).  
 stretch, VA., \*tender (I).  
 stride forward, VN., atrancar.  
 strike, VA., \*herir (II); (*clock*) \*dar (§ 1102).  
 string, VA., ensartar.  
 strip, la tira.  
 strong, fuerte.  
 structure, el edificio; el monumento (30 R, 4); la fábrica (30 R, 6).  
 student, el alumno.  
 study, el estudio.  
 study, VA., VN., estudiar.  
 stupid, estúpido, imbécil.  
 style, el estilo.  
 subdivide, VA., subdividir.  
 subject, la materia.  
 subjunctive, el subjuntivo.  
 substance, la materia.  
 succeed, VN., \*tener (§ 1089) buen éxito; *to* — *in doing something*, lograr hacer algo.  
 success, el buen éxito.  
 successful, ganancioso.  
 successive, sucesivo; *so on* —ly, así sucesivamente.  
 succumb, VN., sucumbir.  
 such, tal, semejante; — *a*, semejante.  
 suck, VA., libar.  
 suddenly, de repente.  
 suffer, VA., VN., sufrir.

suffice, VN., bastar.  
 sufficient, bastante; *to be* —, bastar.  
 sugar, el azúcar.  
 suggest, VA., \*sugerir (II).  
 suggestion, la sugestión.  
 suit, VA., \*convenir (§ 1095); *gustar* (50, 7).  
 suitable, propio.  
 sulphur, el azufre.  
 summer, el verano.  
 sumptuous, suntuoso.  
 sun, el sol; — *beam*, el rayo del s., el rayo solar.  
 Sunday, el domingo.  
 supper, la cena; — *time*, la hora de la c.  
 supply, la provisión.  
 supply, VA., \*proveer (§ 1105).  
 support, el apoyo.  
 support, VA., apoyar.  
 suppose, VA., \*suponer (§ 1094).  
 sure, seguro; *I am — that*, estoy s. de que.  
 surely, de seguro.  
 surgeon, el cirujano; el físico (21, 5).  
 surgery, la cirugía.  
 surround [*with*], VA., rodear [de].  
 suspicion, la sospecha.  
 sway, VA., dominar.  
 sweep away, VA., barrer.  
 sweet, dulce.  
 swell, VN., \*crecer (IV).  
 swiftness, la velocidad.  
 swim, VN., nadar.  
 swimming, la natación; *to go* —, \*ir (§ 1104) á nadar.  
 Swiss, suizo.  
 symbol, el símbolo.  
 symmetrical, simétrico.  
 system, el sistema.

## T

table, la mesa.  
 tailor, el sastre.  
 take, VA., tomar; (*carry*) llevar; — [*something*] *away from* [*somebody*], quitar [algo] á [alguien]; — *care of*, cuidar; cuidar de (37, 19); — *down*, (*a speech*) apuntar; — *notice*, distinguir; — *off*, quitar; — *out*, sacar; — *a photograph*, sacar una fotografía; — *pleasure in*, \*tener (§ 1089) gusto en; — *steps to*, tomar medidas para.  
 tale, el cuento; — *of woe*, la queja.  
 talk, VN., hablar; — *politics*, h. de la política.  
 tall, alto.  
 taper, el hacha (*f.*).  
 tariff, el arancel.  
 task, la faena; la tarea (48, 18).  
 taste, VA., \*probar (I).  
 tasteless, insípido.  
 tea, el té; — *kettle*, la tetera.  
 teach, enseñar.  
 teacher, el maestro, la maestra; el profesor, la profesora.  
 tear, la lágrima.  
 tear, VA., desgarrar.  
 tell, VA., \*contar (I); \*referir (II) (42, 3). —, VN., \*decir (§ 1098).  
 temple, el templo.  
 temporarily, momentáneamente.  
 ten, diez.  
 tend [*to*], VN., \*tender (I) [á].  
 tender, tierno.  
 tense, el tiempo.  
 term, el término.  
 terrapin, la jicotea.  
 terrific, horrendo.

terrifying, aterrador.

than, que.

thank, VA., \*agradecer (IV); — you, gracias.

that, CONJ., que; (*relative*) que; (*demonstrative*) ese (-a, -os, -as); (*neuter*) eso; (*remote time or place*) aquel (-lla, -llos, -llas); (*neuter*) aquello.

thaw, VA., \*deshelar (I).

the, el (f. la; pl. los, las).

their, su (pl. sus).

them, (acc.) los, las; (dat.) les; (*after prep.*) ellos, ellas.

then, (*at that time*) entonces; (*next in order*) luego.

theory, la teoría.

there, ahí, allí; — *is*, — *are*, hay; — *was*, — *were*, había; — *will be*, habrá; — *it is!* ¡hélo ahí!

they, ellos, ellas.

thick, espeso; denso (33, 2); *two feet* —, dos pies de espesor.

thin, delgado; enjuto de carnes (33, 15).

thing, la cosa.

think [of], VN., \*pensar (I) [en]; (*to believe, hold an opinion*) creer.

third, tercero.

thirteen, trece.

thirty, treinta.

this, este (-a, -os, -as); (*neuter*) esto.

Thomas, Tomás.

thoroughly, á fondo; por completo (46, 9).

thought, el pensamiento.

thousand, mil; (*collective*) el millar.

three, tres.

thrive, VN., prosperar.

through, por; á través de; — *out, the city*, por toda la ciudad.

thrust, VA., meter.

throw, VA., echar; (*coll.*) botar; arrojar (45, 22); — *aside*, echar á un lado; — *stones at*, apedrear; — *to the winds*, echar á los vientos.

thunder, el trueno.

thunder, VN., \*tronar (I).

tide, la marea.

tight, firme.

time, el tiempo; *at —s*, á veces; *dinner —*, la hora de la comida; *supper —*, la hora de la cena; *from — to —*, de vez en cuando; *in his —*, á su vez; *this —*, esta vez; *these hard —s*, estos malos tiempos.

tint, el matiz.

tire, VA., cansar; (*fig.*) fatigar (40, 2).

to, á; (*up to, as far as*) hasta; (*in order to*) para.

tobacco, el tabaco; — *box*, la tabaquera.

to-day, hoy; — *'s*, de hoy.

together, juntos (-as); — *with*, junto con.

toilet, (*in compound nouns*) el tocador; — *set*, el juego de t.

to-morrow, mañana; — *morning*, m. por la mañana.

tone, tono; el sentimiento (24, 12).

tongs, las tenazas.

tongue, la lengua.

to-night, esta noche.

too, (*also*) también; (*excessively*) demasiado; — *many*, demasiados (-as); — *much*, demasiado (-a).

tooth, el diente.

tortoise-shell, el carey.  
 touch, VA., tocar.  
 tourist, el turista.  
 towards, hacia.  
 tower, la torre.  
 town, la población; (*city*) la ciudad.  
 trader, el traficante.  
 train, el tren.  
 train, VA., adiestrar; (*guns*) dirigir (43, 11).  
 transit instrument, el telescopio de meridiano.  
 translate, VA., \*traducir (§ 1101).  
 translation, la traducción.  
 transportation, el transporte.  
 trap, la trampa.  
 traveler, el viajero; *commercial* —, el agente viajero.  
 traverse, \*atravesar (1); recorrer (29, 12); transitar por (40 R, [15]).  
 treasure, el tesoro.  
 treat, VA., convidar.  
 treatise, el tratado.  
 treaty, el convenio.  
 tree, el árbol; *shade* —, el á. de sombra.  
 trim, VA., preparar.  
 trimming, la guarnición.  
 trip, el viaje; *hunting* —, la partida de caza.  
 triumph, el triunfo.  
 tropical, tropical.  
 trouble, el pesar.  
 trouble, VA., molestar.  
 trough, la artesa.  
 truce, la tregua; *flag of* —, la bandera de parlamento.  
 trunk, (*of tree*) el tronco; (*for traveling*) el baúl.  
 try, VA., \*probar (1). — [*to*], VN., tratar [de].

tub, la cuba.  
 Turkish, turco.  
 turn, VA., \*volver (1). —, VN., \*volverse (1); — *back*, retroceder.  
 tusk, el colmillo.  
 tutor, el preceptor.  
 twelve, doce.  
 twenty, veinte.  
 twice, dos veces.  
 two, dos; — *hundred*, doscientos (-as).  
 typewriter, la máquina de escribir, el maquinógrafo.  
 typhoid, tifoideo.

## U

ultimo, (*in dates*) del último, del mes próximo pasado.  
 ultra-violet, ultra-violado.  
 unbearable, inaguantable.  
 umbrella, el paraguas.  
 unaware: *to be* — *of*, ignorar, VA.  
 unbounded, ilimitado.  
 uncertainty, la incertidumbre.  
 uncle, el tío.  
 unconscious, sin sentido.  
 unconsciousness, la insensibilidad.  
 under, underneath, ADV., debajo. —, PREP., debajo de.  
 undergo, VA., sufrir.  
 understand, VA., VN., comprender: (*hear intelligently*) \*entender (1).  
 undertake, VA., emprender; prestarse á (48, 18).  
 undoubted, indudable.  
 unfortunate, desgraciado.  
 unhappy, infeliz.  
 unknown, ignoto.



**unless**, á menos que, á no ser que (+ *subjunct.*).  
**unlimited**, sin límites.  
**unpleasant**, desagradable.  
**unsuccessfully**, sin éxito.  
**until**, hasta (+ *infin.*); hasta que (+ *indic. or subjunct.*).  
**upheaval**, el levantamiento.  
**upholster**, **VA.**, forrar.  
**upon**, **en**, sobre, encima de (*cf.* § 212).  
**upside down**, al revés.  
**us**, **nos**; (*after prep.*) nosotros (-as).  
**use**, el empleo; el uso (22, 18).  
**use**, **VA.**, emplear; usar (36, 13).  
**useless**, inútil.  
**usual**, de costumbre; ordinario (47, 8); *as* —, como de costumbre; *more than* —, más que de costumbre, más que de ordinario.  
**utter**, **VA.**, \*proferir (11). [rio.

V

**vacancy**, la vacante.  
**vaccinate**, **VA.**, vacunar.  
**valet**, el lacayo.  
**valley**, el valle.  
**valuable**, precioso.  
**value**, el valor.  
**vary**, **VN.**, variar.  
**vast**, dilatado.  
**vegetable**, la legumbre; — *garden*, el huerto de hortalizas.  
**vegetable**, **ADJ.**, vegetal.  
**velours**, el velludo.  
**venerable**, venerando.  
**Venetian blind**, la celosía.  
**Venezuelan**, venezolano.  
**Venice**, Venecia (*f.*).

**veranda**, la varanda.  
**verdure**, el verdor.  
**very**, muy (*often expressed by termination -ísimo*); — *much*, muchísimo.  
**vest**, el chaleco.  
**victim**, el (*or la*) víctima.  
**victory**, la victoria.  
**village**, la aldea.  
**Vincent**, Vicente.  
**violent**, recio.  
**violently**, con violencia.  
**violet**, la violeta; (*color*) el violado.  
**visitor**, el (*or la*) visita.  
**voice**, la voz.  
**volcano**, el volcán.  
**volume**, el volumen; (*book*) el tomo; (*of rivers*) el caudal.  
**vow**, el voto.  
**vowel**, la vocal.  
**voyager**, el navegante.

W

**wade**, **wade through**, **VA.**, vadear.  
**wages**, el salario.  
**wagon**, la carreta; el carretón (46, 5).  
**wait**, **VN.**, aguardar; — *for*, esperar, **VA.**  
**waiter**, el mozo.  
**wake**, **VA.**, \*despertar (1).  
**walk**, el paseo.  
**walk**, **VN.**, \*andar (§ 1088); caminar (52, 2).  
**walking-stick**, el bastón.  
**wall**, la tapia; (*of a town*) la muralla; (*inner wall of house*) la pared; *side* —, la pared lateral; — *paper*, el papel de entapizar.

walrus, la morsa.  
 wander, VN., vagar.  
 want, VA., \*querer (§ 1097).  
 war, la guerra.  
 ward, el pupilo, la pupila.  
 warm, caluroso.  
 warn, VA., \*advertir (II); avisar (24, 5).  
 wash, VA., lavar.  
 waste, la devastación; (*expanse*) la inmensidad; — *basket*, el cesto de desperdicios.  
 watch, VA., contemplar; mirar (38, 7).  
 water, el agua (f.); *fresh* —, el a. dulce; — *color*, la acuarela; a — *color portrait*, un retrato en acuarela.  
 water, VA., (*plants*) \*regar (I); (*cattle*) abreviar.  
 waterfall, el salto de agua.  
 watering-pot, la regadera.  
 watermelon, la sandía.  
 waterproof, el impermeable. —, ADJ., impermeable.  
 way, el camino; (*manner*) el modo.  
 we, nosotros (-as). [modo.  
 wealth, el caudal. } 2  
 wealthy, acaudalado.  
 wear, VA., llevar; usar (33, II); gastar (50, 5).  
 wedding, la boda.  
 Wednesday, el miércoles.  
 weed, la mala yerba.  
 week, la semana; a — *from to-day*, de hoy en ocho días.  
 weigh, VA., pesar.  
 welcome, la bienvenida. —, ADJ., bienvenido.  
 well, el pozo.  
 well, ADV., bien; as — as, lo mismo que.

west, el oeste; el poniente (30 2, 4); — *wind*, el viento del oeste.  
 western, occidental.  
 wet, mojado.  
 what, (*interrogative*) qué, qué cosa; (*which of a number*) cuál (-es); (*relative*) lo que.  
 whatever, cualquier cosa, lo que; — *may be*, sea(n) cual fuere(n).  
 wheat, el trigo.  
 when, cuando; (*as soon as*) en cuanto.  
 where, donde.  
 whereabouts, el paradero.  
 whereas, mientras que.  
 wherefore, por lo cual; *the why and the* —, el cómo y el por qué.  
 which, (*interrogative*) cuál(es); (*relative*) que, el cual.  
 whiff, la bocanada de humo.  
 while, mientras, mientras que.  
 white, el blanco. —, ADJ., blanco; (*hair*) encanecido (33, 17).  
 who, (*interrogative*) quién; (*relative*) que, quien.  
 wholly, enteramente.  
 whom, que, á quien.  
 whose, cuyo (-a, -os, -as).  
 why, por qué; *the — and the wherefore*, el cómo y el por qué.  
 wick, la mecha.  
 wicker, el mimbre.  
 widower, el viudo.  
 wife, la esposa; (*informal style*) la mujer.  
 wild, salvaje; (*plants*) silvestre; (*scenery*) agreste; (*enthusiasm*) frenético; (*frightful*) espantoso.  
 will, el albedrío; at —, á su a.

**William**, Guillermo.  
**win**, VA., ganar.  
**wind**, el viento.  
**window**, la ventana.  
**wine**, el vino.  
**wing**, el ala (*f.*).  
**winter**, el invierno.  
**wire**, el alambre.  
**wise**, sabio; cuerdo (41, 8).  
**wish**, VA., \*querer (§ 1097); de-  
 sear (32, 16); *I* —, quisiera;  
*I — to Heaven*, ojalá que, plu-  
 guiera á Dios que.  
**with**, con; — *me*, conmigo.  
**within**, ADV., dentro. —, PREP.,  
 dentro de.  
**without**, PREP., sin. —, ADV., (*out-  
 doors*) afuera.  
**witness**, el (*or* la) testigo.  
**witness**, VA., presenciar.  
**woman**, la mujer.  
**wood**, (*material*) la madera; (*fuel*)  
 la leña.  
**woodman**, el leñador.  
**woods**, el bosque.  
**woodwork**, el maderaje.  
**wool**, la lana.  
**woolen**, de lana.  
**word**, la palabra; (*in a dictionary*)  
 el vocablo.  
**work**, el trabajo; la obra (30, 2,  
 7); el labor (43, 6).  
**work**, VN., trabajar.  
**world**, el mundo.  
**worn-out**, raído.

**worth**: *to be* —, \*valer (§ 1110).  
**would-be**, supuesto.  
**wound**, la herida.  
**wound**, VA., \*herir (11).  
**wounded**, herido; — *man*, el he-  
 woven, tejido. [rido.  
**wrap**, **wrap up**, VA., \*envolver (1),  
 (PP. envuelto).  
**wretched**, miserable.  
**write**, VA., VN., escribir (PP. escri-  
 to).  
**writer**, el escritor; (*author of a  
 book*) el autor (49, 26).  
**writing-table**, la mesa de escribir.  
**wrought**, labrado.

Y, Z

**yard**, (*lit.*) la yarda; (*roughly*)  
 el metro.  
**year**, el año.  
**yellow**, el amarillo. —, ADJ., ama-  
 rillo.  
**yes**, sí; — *indeed!* ¡ya lo creo!  
**yesterday**, ayer; — *afternoon*, a.  
 por la tarde.  
**yet**, (*nevertheless*) sin embargo;  
 (*with neg.*) aun, todavía.  
**yoke**, VA., uncir.  
**you**, usted, ustedes (*cf.* §§ 453-9).  
**young**, joven; — *girl*, la joven;  
 — *man*, el joven.  
**your**, de usted, de ustedes.  
**zone**, la zona.





## INDEX.

 *References are to sections, unless otherwise specified.*

- Á**, used to distinguish the accusative, 117, 300-12.  
 absolute superlative, 653-9.  
 absolute use of adjectives, 574; of pronouns, 539, 574-84.  
**acá, allá**, 229.  
**acabar con**, 255, Rem.; **acabar de**, 255.  
 accent, 42-58; diacritic, 51 b.  
 accusative, **á** used to distinguish (personal accusative), 117, 300-12; accusative of substitution, 448-9.  
 accusative case of personal pronouns, 222.  
 address, forms of, 258-72.  
 adjective expressions, composite, 334-7.  
 adjective pronouns, 660-736; used absolutely, 574.  
 adjectives, 133-50; agreement of, 106-9, 133, 172; apocopation of, 141-6; comparison of, 608-49; employed as adverbs, 1148; gender of, 134-5; intensified by the prefix **re-** (or **re-**), 659; location of, 138, 140, 147-9, 167; of nationality to denote language, 186; plural of, 134; superlative of, 639-49; 653-5; used absolutely, 574.  
 adjectives, compound, 338; participial, or verbal, 488, 509-10.  
 adverbial expressions of time, 406; adverbial phrases, p. 94.  
 adverbs, 1148-8; adjectives used as, 1148; comparison of, 624, 633-5, 650-9; derivative (in **-mente**), 189-200; employed as prepositions, 201; interrogative, 551-7; location of, 199; numeral adverbs, 401-2; superlative of, 650-2, 656-9.  
**age**, how expressed, 434-6.  
 agreement of adjectives, 106-9, 133, 172; of articles, 69; of nouns, 326; of past participles, 183; of possessive pronouns, 98; of relative pronouns, 602-6; of **usted**, 172, 459; of verbs, 113-9.  
**ajeno**, 722-3.  
**algo, alguien, alguno**, 512-23, 527-9; **alguno que otro**, 700.  
 alphabet, 1-2.  
 alternative expressions with subjunctive, 940-4.  
**ambos**, 709.  
**ante and delante de**, contrasted, 202.  
**antes and después**, contrasted, 202.  
 aorist tense, 339, 344-51; aorist pluperfect, 778-80.  
 apocopation of adjectives, 141-6; of **alguno and ninguno**, 527; of numerals, 378-9, 388; of possessive pronouns, 472-4.  
**aquí, ahí, allí**, 229-30.  
 article, definite, 69-72; agreement of, 69; applied to parts of the body, 475-84; neuter form, 296-9; omission of, 288-95; plural of, 74; used before titles, 270.  
 article, indefinite, 69, 278-9, 288; applied to parts of the body, 481-3; omission of, 288, 290-4; plural of, 279.  
 augmentatives, 1162-87.  
**aun, aún**, 233.  
 auxiliary **deber**, 1003-24; **haber**, 182-6, 774-82; **poder**, 1025-31; **tener**, 187, Rem., 188, 242, Rem.  
**bajar**, 249-50, 252-3.  
**bajo and debajo de**, contrasted, 208, 207.  
 baptismal names, 269, p. 110.  
**bastante**, 693.

- become*, how to translate, 879-82.  
*birthday*, 485.  
*buen, bueno*, 141-2, 160.  
*but*, Spanish equivalents for, 104.  
*caballero*, 260-1.  
*caber*, 789.  
*cada*, 677-9.  
*can, could*, 1025-81.  
 capital letters, 60-2.  
 cardinal numerals, 877-86.  
*casa*, idiomatic use of, 168.  
*casar, casarse*, 790.  
 cases of personal pronouns, 213-4.  
*cierto*, 724-5.  
 cognate object, 815, Rem.  
 collective numerals, 891-3, 405.  
*como*, 234, 617-23, 628.  
 comparison of adjectives, 608-49; of adverbs, 624, 683-5, 650-9; comparison of equality, 617-87; of inequality, 611-6; superlative of comparison, 639-52.  
 composite adjective expressions, 884-7.  
 compound adjectives, 888; comp. gerund, 491, 503; comp. nouns, 882-3; comp. prepositions, 201; comp. tenses, 774.  
 conditional future, 945-69; future perfect, 851, 862-3.  
 conditions with implied negation ("contrary to fact"), 952-70; use of infinitive in protasis, 970.  
 conjugation of irregular verbs, 1046-1110; of regular verbs, 1082-45; orthographic changes, 1039-45.  
 conjunctions, 1149-52.  
*conmigo, contigo, consigo*, 440.  
 consonantal sounds before the several vowels, 87.  
 consonants, 16-37.  
 correlatives, 579, 601.  
 correspondence of tenses, 971-85.  
*cosa* as a pronoun, 786.  
*cuál*, interrogative, 591-5.  
*qual*, relative, 547-8, 556, 782.  
*cualquiera*, 899-900.  
*cuan, cuanto*, 549, 551-5, 600.  
*cumpleaños, birthday*, 435.  
*cuyo*, possessive relative, 596-9; interrogative use, 550.  
*dar*, 124, 130.  
 dates, how expressed, 407-18.  
 dative case of personal pronouns, 216-21; dative of advantage, 219; dative reflexive, 805-6.  
 day, divisions of, 410.  
 days of the month, 407-9; of the week, 406, 412.  
*de*, denoting agency with passive, 179, 821.  
*deber*, 1008-24.  
*desir*, 125, 181.  
 defective verbs, 1111-25; alphabetical index of, 1136.  
 definite article: see article, definite.  
*delante* and *detrás*, contrasted, 202.  
*demás*, 713.  
*demandado*, 691-3.  
 demonstrative pronouns, 558-64; used absolutely, 578-80.  
 dependence of tenses, 971-85.  
 derivative adverbs (in *-mente*), 189-200; substitutes for, 197.  
 descriptive passive (with *estar*), 822.  
*después* and *detrás*, contrasted, 202.  
*devolver*, 256, Rem.  
 diacritic accent, 51 b.  
 dimensions, how expressed, 428-31.  
 diminutives, 1168-80.  
 diphthongization of stem vowel in verbs, 247-8.  
 diphthongs, 4-15.  
 direct object: see accusative case.  
 disjunctive pronouns, 441-3.  
 distinction between subject and object ("distinctive &"), 800-12.  
 division of syllables, 59.  
*doler*, 791.  
*Don, Doña*, 266-7.  
*donde*, 227-8.  
 double letters, 88-41.  
 double negatives, 741-3.  
*e* expanded to *ie*, 14.  
*el cual* and *el que*, relatives, 591-5.  
 enclitic personal pronouns, 220-3, 466-71, 842, 917-9.  
*entero*, 676.  
*entrambos*, 710.  
*entrar*, 249-51.  
*entre*, governing two personal pronouns, 465.  
 epicene gender, 825.  
 epistolary usages, 1198-1200.  
*época*, 426.  
*espacio*, 425.  
*estar*, Lesson XI; before a past participle, 180-1; used impersonally,

- 161, 851; used in forming the descriptive passive, 822.  
 expansion of stem vowel in verbs, 247-8.  
*falta, faltar*, 792.  
 family names, 269.  
 feminine of nouns, 324-6; of adjectives, 184-5.  
 forms of address, 258-72.  
 fractional numerals, 394-8.  
*Fulano*, 272.  
 future conditional, 945-69.  
 future indicative, 238-46; used for present tense to express conjecture, 243-4.  
 future-perfect tense, 242, 781.  
 future subjunctive, 726-30.  
 gender, 71; of adjectives, 184-5; of compound nouns, 833; of nouns, 71, 318-26; of personal pronouns, 224-6; epicene gender, 825; neuter gender, 296-9.  
 gerund, 489-511; compound or perfect, 782.  
*gran, grande*, 143-4.  
*gustar*, 798.  
*h* prefixed to *us*, 15.  
*haber*, as auxiliary in perfect tense, 182-8; in other compound tenses, 774-82; used impersonally, 855-66.  
*haber de*, 864-5; *haber que*, 862-3.  
*hacer*, 125, 182, Rem. *b*; impersonal use of, 867-78; applied to time, 868-75; applied to weather, 876-8.  
*hacer falta*, 792.  
*hacia*, 235.  
*hasta*, 235-6.  
*hay, there is*: see *haber*, used impersonally.  
*hé aquí, hé, ahí, hé allí*, 856.  
*home*, Spanish equivalent of, 168.  
 hour of the day, 414-7.  
*i* changed to *y*, 9-10.  
 idiomatic verbs, 249-57, 789-95.  
 idioms with *para* and *por*, 376.  
 imperative mood, 783-8; compound, or perfect, 788.  
 imperfect tense, 339-43, 347-51.  
 impersonal passive, 826-8, 834-6.  
 impersonal use of *estar*, 161; of *haber*, 855-66; of *ser*, 161.  
 impersonal verbs, 846-78.  
 inceptive verbs, 879-84.  
 indefinite article: see *article*, *indefinite*.  
 indefinite numeral expressions, 403-5.  
 indefinite pronouns, 512-26.  
 index of irregular and defective verbs, 1186.  
 indicative contrasted with subjunctive, 994-1002.  
 indirect object: see *dative case*.  
 infinitive, 106, 506-7; as a verbal noun, 210, 508; compound, or perfect, 782; contrasted with subjunctive, 787-93; in protasis of conditions, 970.  
 inflectional endings of verbs, table of, 1033.  
 inflectional forms of personal pronouns, 214.  
 interjections, 1153-61.  
 interrogative pronouns and adverbs, 548-57.  
 interrogative sentences, 88-91.  
 intransitive verbs, 812-20; made reflexive, 819-20; used transitively, 816.  
 inverted order of sentence, 120; after a relative, 604-6.  
*ir, to go*, 124-9, 883.  
 irregular past participles, 1126-34.  
 irregular verbs, conjugation of, 1046-1110; alphabetical index of, 1186.  
*jamás*, 748-9.  
 letter-writing, 1198-1200.  
 location of adjectives, 138, 140, 147-9, 167; of adverbs, 199; of gerund, 493; of negatives, 737-40, 750; of past participles, 186; of personal pronouns, 215, 460-5; of possessive pronouns, 581; of prepositions, 211; of relative pronouns, 602-7.  
 logical pronoun, *el, la, lo*, etc., 565-78.  
*llevar*, expressing time, 875.  
*mal, malo*, 141-2, 160.  
*mandar*, idiomatic use of, with *infinitive*, 132.  
*mas, pero, and sino*, contrasted, 104.  
*más and menos*, comparison by means of, 611-4; applied to nouns, 636; *más* as adjective pronoun, 649.  
*más bien, rather*, 610, footnote.



- material of which anything is made, 137.
- may, might*, 1025-30.
- medio*, 897-8.
- menester*, 854.
- Mengano*, 272.
- menos*, comparison by means of: see *más*.
- mente* (adverbial termination), 189-95; substitutions for, 196-7.
- mismo*, 714-9, 809; intensifying personal pronouns, 447-9.
- modal auxiliaries *deber* and *poder*, 1008-81.
- model verbs, present indic. of, 106-7; complete inflection of, 1033-5.
- months, names of, 406.
- mucho*, 680-5.
- muerto* (pp. of *matar* and *morir*), 1132.
- multiple numerals, 399-400.
- must*, expressed by *deber*, 1003-24; by *haber que*, 862.
- muy*, 682-6.
- nacer*, 794.
- nada*, *naíde*, 518-26, 529, 746-9.
- names, family and baptismal, 269, p. 110.
- negatives, 520-5, 737-78; location of, 737-40, 750; apparent duplication of, 741-2; series of, 772; negative sentences, 93-4.
- neuter gender, 296-9, 452, 584.
- ni, neither, nor*, 768-72; *ni siquiera*, 770-1.
- ninguno*, 512, 520-3, 527-9.
- no*, 93-5; emphasized by certain words, 742-4; redundant, 753; *¡no es verdad!* 166; *no más que*, *no sino*, 756; *no poder menos de*, 1081; *no sólo*, 758-9.
- nonada*, 747, Rem.
- nouns, agreement of, 326; compound nouns, 832-3; feminine form of, 824-6; gender of, 71, 813-26; plurals of, 74, 323.
- numeral adverbs, 401-2.
- numeral expressions, indefinite, 403-5.
- numerals, Lesson XXIX; apocopation of, 878-9, 388; cardinal, 377-86; collective, 391-3, 405; multiple, 399-400; ordinal, 387-90; partitive, or fractional, 394-8.
- o* expanded to *ue*, 14.
- ó, or*, changed to *u*, 97.
- object, *á* to distinguish, 117, 300-12; cognate, 815, Rem.; reflexive pronominal, 437-9, 798-802.
- objective personal pronouns, 213-28, 437-77.
- ojalá*, followed by subjunctive, 938.
- ordinal numbers, 387-90.
- orthographic peculiarities of Spanish, 65-6.
- otro*, 696-700.
- ought*, 1005, 1030.
- para*, preposition, 367-76; *para con*, 1142; *para* and *por* contrasted, 352-76.
- participial adjective, 488, 509-10.
- participle, past, 178-88, 511; agreement of, 188; formation of, 173-6; irregular forms, 174-6, 1126-84; location of, 186.
- participle, present, 488.
- partir*, 349.
- partitive numerals, 394-8.
- parts of the body and clothing, 475-87.
- passive voice, 178-9, 821-3; reflexive substitute for, 111, 824-45; perfect tense of, 184; passive of action (with *ser*), 178, 821; passive of description (with *estar*), 822.
- past-definite tense: see *orist*.
- past-indefinite tense: see *perfect*.
- past (or perfect) infinitive and gerund, 782.
- past participle: see *participle*, *past*.
- perfect gerund, 782; perfect indicative, 183; perfect infinitive, 782; perfect of imperative, 788; perfect subjunctive, 913.
- perfect tense, 183-4, 345-6, 776.
- pero, mas, and sino*, contrasted, 104.
- personal accusative, 117, 300-12.
- personal pronoun as subject, 76-86; followed by a noun in apposition, 472-4.
- personal pronouns, objective forms, 213-26, 437-77; gender of, 224-6; enclitic use, 222, 466-71, 842, 917-9; intensified by *mismo*, 447-9; location of, 215, 460-5; neuter, 452; prepositional case, 213-23; redundant construction, 444-6; reflexive, 437-40; table of inflec-



- tional forms, 214; terminal forms, 441-3.
- plazo*, 428.
- pluperfect tense, 777-80; aorist pluperfect, 778-80; old form from Latin *-aram*, *-eram*, 944.
- plural of adjectives, 184; of nouns, 74, 828.
- poco*, 687-90.
- poder*, 1025-81.
- per*, contrasted with *para*, 352-76; used to denote agent of passive, 179.
- porción*, *una porción de*, 712.
- possessive pronoun of the third person, substitute for, 102-8.
- possessive pronouns, 98-103, 475, 478-80, 530-42; location of, 531; omitted before nouns denoting parts of the body, 475; used absolutely, 539.
- prepositional *á* to denote accusative, 800-12.
- prepositional case of personal pronouns, 441-3.
- prepositional phrases, p. 85.
- prepositions, 1187-42; compound, 201-2; derived from adverbs, 201; location of, 211.
- prepositions, retained with subjunctive, 914-5.
- present indicative, 169.
- present participle, 488.
- preterit tense, 183; preterit definite, 339, 344-51.
- present tense used as future, 241.
- pronouns, adjective, 660-736; used absolutely, 539, 574-84; demonstrative, 558-64; indefinite, 512-26; interrogative, 543-50; logical, 565-78; personal, see personal pronouns; possessive, see possessive pronouns; reflexive, 437-40; relative, 585-607.
- pronouns, objective: see personal pronouns.
- pronunciation, 3-36.
- propio*, 542, Rem., 720-1, 809.
- punctuation, 68.
- qué*, interrogative, 545, 551-6; *qué cosa*, 546.
- que*, relative, see relative pronouns; *que no que*, 754.
- querer*, 116-7; in expressing a wish, 964-6.
- questions, order of words in, 88-91.
- quién*, interrogative, 544.
- quien*, relative, 586-90; *quien . . .* *quien*, as correlatives, 601.
- quisiera*, expressing a wish, 964-6.
- rato*, 424.
- re-*, *rete-*, used to intensify adjectives, 659.
- recién*, *recientemente*, 200.
- reciprocal verbs, 808-11.
- redundant construction of personal pronouns, 444-6.
- reflexive pronouns, 437-40.
- reflexive substitute for intransitive, 817; for passive, 111, 824-45.
- reflexive verbs, 797-807; made from intransitives, 819-20.
- regular verbs, conjugation of, 1032-45; orthographic changes in, 1039-45.
- relative pronouns, 585-607; agreement and location of, 602-7.
- saint's-day, 435.
- salir*, 249.
- salutations, 411.
- San*, *santo*, 144-5.
- se*, reflexive pronoun, 438-9; used to form intransitive, 817; to form passive, 111, 824-45.
- seasons of the year, 406.
- sendos*, 734.
- señor*, *señora*, etc., 258-71.
- ser*, contrasted with *estar*, 151-60; before a past participle, 180-1; used in forming the passive voice, 178-9, 821; used impersonally, 161-5, 851.
- should*, 1005.
- sin*, omission of article after, 237.
- sino*, 773; contrasted with *mas* and *pero*, 104.
- siquiera*, 762, 770-1.
- so*, *under*: see *bajo*.
- So-and-so*, *Mr.*, 272.
- sobre*, 203, 208-9.
- social and epistolary forms, 1188-1200.
- solo*, *solamente* 694-5.
- stem vowel, expansion (diphthongization) of, in verbs, 247-8.
- subir*, 249-53.
- subject and object, distinctions between, 800-12.
- subjunctive mood, 885-944, 954-67,

- 975-1002; after conjunctive expressions, 904-12; after expressions of denial or doubt, 895; after expressions of emotion, 891; after impersonal expressions, 892-4; after indefinite expressions formed with *-quiera*, 896-900; after a relative, 896-908; after verbs of causing, 890; contrasted with indicative, 987-8, 994-1002; contrasted with infinitive, 987-998; expressing purpose, 905; expressing result, 906; in alternative expressions, 940-2; used as imperative, 932-6; subjunctive of concession, 910; of denial, 911; of exception, 909; of proviso, 908; of supposition, 907; of wishing, 987-9; with indefinite expressions of time, 912.
- subjunctive, tenses of: aorist, 918-20, imperfect, 918-20; future, 926-30; future-perfect, 981; perfect, 913; pluperfect, 921-2.
- substantive combinations, 827-21.
- superlative, absolute, of adjectives, 653-5; of adverbs, 656-9; substitutes for, 658-9.
- superlative of comparison, 689-52.
- syllables, division of, 59.
- tal, 726-32.
- tampoco, 749 *c*, 759-61.
- tan, tanto, 617-88.
- tener, contrasted with *haber* as auxiliary, 187, 242, Rem.; idioms with, 105, 115.
- tense, aorist, 889, 344-51; aorist pluperfect, 778-80; future, 228-46; future-perfect, 242, 781; imperfect, 339-48, 847-51; perfect, 188-8, 776; pluperfect, 777-80.
- tense equivalents, 986.
- tenses, compound, 774; correspondence of tenses, 971-85.
- terminal dative and accusative, 441-3.
- tiempo, 422.
- time, adverbial expressions of, 406; divisions of, 406; expressed by *hacer*, 868-75; measures of, 406-21; Spanish equivalents for, 422-7.
- time of day, how expressed, 414-7.
- titles, 258-72.
- todavía, 233.
- todo, 660-75, 695, Rem.
- transitive verbs, 796; made reflexive, 797-807; used intransitively, 817.
- tras, contrasted with *detrás de*, 203, 206.
- triphthongs, 7-9.
- un, uno, as adjective pronoun, 701-3; as indefinite article, see article, indefinite; as numeral, 378; used absolutely, 577; *uno que otro*, 700, Rem.; *uno . . . otro*, 705; *uno é otro*, 707; *uno y otro*, 706; *unos cuantos*, 704.
- único, 695.
- usted, 80, 453-9; pronominal substitutes for, 453-6.
- varios, 711.
- venir, 123, 127-8.
- ver, 126.
- verbal adjective, 486, 509.
- verbal noun, 506.
- verb, diagram of tenses, 775.
- verbs, defective, 1111-25; idiomatic, 249-57; impersonal, 846-78; inceptive, 879-84; intransitive, 812-20; reciprocal, 808-11; reflexive, 797-820; transitive, 796.
- verbs, government and agreement of, 113-9.
- verbs, irregular, conjugation of, 1046-1110; alphabetical index of, 1136.
- verbs, regular, conjugation of, 1033-45; orthographic changes in, 1069-45.
- vez, 401, 427.
- volver, 256; *volver á*, 257.
- vowels, 8-15.
- weather, how expressed, 846-7, 876-8.
- weight, how expressed, 432-3.
- wishes, retrospective, 966.
- words common to Spanish and English, 64-8.
- y, initial in diphthongs, 10, 15.
- y, *and*, changed to *é*, 97.
- ya, 232.
- you, Spanish equivalents for, 453-9.
- Zutane, 272.

## ITALIAN AND SPANISH.

### Edgren's Italian and English Dictionary.

By HJALMAR EDGREN Professor in the University of Nebraska, assisted by GIUSEPPE BICO, D.C.L. (University of Rome), and JOHN L. GERIG, Instructor in the University of Nebraska. viii + 1028 pp. 8vo. \$3.00.

A student's working dictionary, uncommonly full both in its word-lists and in its range of meaning. The type is remarkably clear for so compact a volume, and the pronunciation is carefully indicated.

J. D. M. Ford, *Professor in Harvard University*:—It marks an advance over all other Italian-English dictionaries, especially in its method of indicating the qualities of accented *e* and *o* and the voiced and voiceless values of *s* and *z*. I shall recommend it to my classes.

C. L. Speranza, *Professor in Columbia University*:—To say that it is by far the best of the kind would hardly be adequate praise, for its new features give it a place apart. I shall be very glad indeed to recommend it to my students.

Dr. Kenneth McKenzie, *Yale University*:—It is in every respect superior to the Italian-English dictionaries already existing.

George M. Harper, *Professor in Princeton University*:—It is so well done and was so sadly needed that I feel impelled to congratulate you, and through you Dr. Edgren himself, for performing what seems to me a great service to students of Italian. At last we have an Italian-English dictionary which does not copy the old mistakes of its predecessors, and which, moreover is printed in large legible type.

### Ford's Classic Italian Poetry.

Selections from the masterworks of Pulci, Boiardo, Ariosto, and Tasso With introduction and notes by J. D. M. FORD, Assistant Professor in Harvard University, and Mary A. FORD, Instructor in Modern Languages in the High School at Danbury, Conn [In preparation]

The selections will be made with a view to laying before the reader the most admired portions of the *Morgante Maggiore*, the *Orlando Innamorato*, the *Orlando Furioso*, and the *Jerusalemme Liberata*. In so far as it is feasible they will be continuous in their arrangement and will present a comprehensive idea of the contents of these works.



**¿Habla vd. Español?**

Or, Do You Speak Spanish? A pocket manual of Spanish and English conversation. With hints on pronunciation and the irregular verbs. 96 pp. 18mo. Boards. 40 cents.

**¿Habla v. Inglés?**

Or, Do You Speak English? Manual para facilitar la conversacion en inglés a los viajeros y principiantes. 83 pp. 18mo. Boards. 40 cents.

**Manning's Practical Spanish Grammar.**

By EUGENE W. MANNING, Professor in Delaware College. vi + 242 pp. 16mo. \$1.00.

The first dozen lessons form an introduction, and the succeeding lessons a companion, to a course in reading Spanish. The most necessary grammatical facts are given, in the easiest order for the learner, and enforced by example and exercise.

O. B. Super, *Professor in Dickinson College*.—I have found it a thoroughly satisfactory book, and shall use it.

E. S. Joynes, *Professor in South Carolina College*.—I have for years felt the need of such a book in teaching Spanish—a book brief, simple, and yet sufficient. I shall use it hereafter thankfully.

**Parlate Italiano?**

Or, Do You Speak Italian? A pocket manual of Italian and English conversation, with hints on pronunciation and the irregular verbs. 122 pp. 18mo. Boards. 40 cents.

**Ramsey's Elementary Spanish Reader.**

By M. M. RAMSEY, Professor in the Leland Stanford Junior University. With original illustrations and a vocabulary. x + 240 pp. 16mo. \$1.00.

A very easy and carefully graded reading-book meant to accompany the early stages of study.

Dr. Kenneth McKenzie, *Yale University*.—Certainly the best book I have ever seen for its purpose. Since students ought to begin reading as soon as possible in the study of a language, they should have something very easy at first, but growing gradually more difficult, until they are able to read the language with ease. Other Spanish reading books which I have seen are too difficult for absolute beginners, and do not furnish sufficient aid in overcoming the difficulties; Ramsey's can be used almost at the first lesson, yet increases in difficulty to the end, so as to insure substantial progress.

Hugo Rennert, *Professor in the University of Pennsylvania*.—An excellent book. His grammar is the best Spanish grammar in English with which I am acquainted, and the notes to this reader are most accurate and useful, as well as the vocabulary.



**Ramsey's Spanish Grammar. WITH EXERCISES.**

By M. M. RAMSEY, Professor in the Leland Stanford Junior University. 610 pp. 12mo. \$1.50.

Less exhaustive than the author's *Text-book of Modern Spanish*, but sufficiently thorough to furnish a complete survey of Spanish forms and syntactical difficulties. The book is provided with abundant exercises, both Spanish and English. So far as practicable, both sets of exercises have been given the form of a connected description, narration, or conversation.

**Hugo A. Rennert**, *Professor in the University of Pennsylvania*.—It is not only, within its compass, the best Spanish grammar that I have seen, but it is also one of the best practical grammars that I know of any modern language.

**W. H. Chenery**, *University of Michigan*.—The exercises for translation are incomparably better than those of any other Spanish grammar on the market.

**W. H. Bishop**, *Yale University*.—I always refer to Ramsey as the ultimate and best accessible authority.

**C. Fontaine**, *De Witt Clinton High School, New York City*.—There is no doubt in my mind that it is the best Spanish grammar now in the market.

**Ramsey's Text-book of Modern Spanish.**

By M. M. RAMSEY, Professor in the Leland Stanford Junior University. xi+653 pp. 12mo. \$1.80.

Part I contains the principles of orthography and pronunciation. Part II is divided into twenty lessons of moderate length, with English exercises, and is designed for the beginner. Part III is devoted to a thorough discussion of intricacies of form and usage. This part is divided into chapters of varying length, with exercises at intervals, and is intended to be studied as needed rather than consecutively.

**The Nation**.—Although as a rule we do not notice grammars, we mention *A Text-book of Modern Spanish* because of the very great advance it shows over all existing Spanish grammars in English. This applies to almost every detail of the work. To begin with, the present use of the graphic accent in Spanish is, for the first time in an English book, clearly and accurately described as well as rigidly applied. This, it hardly need be said, will prove an immense relief to teachers who

have had to struggle with the confusions and inconsistencies in this matter which abound in previous text-books. Passing to things of a more fundamental kind, we are struck by the fullness, clearness, and precision of statement everywhere shown; and, what is still more gratifying, we find this best exhibited where the difficulties of the subject most require it, e.g., in the treatment of the uses and correspondence of tenses, of the passive voice, of the subjunctive mood, of the rules of agreement.

### **Ramsey and Lewis's Spanish Prose Composition.**

By M. M. RAMSEY and ANITA J. LEWIS. Notes with each exercise and a vocabulary. viii+144 pp. 16mo. 75 cents.

The first part consists of sentences, more or less detached, dealing with the several parts of speech and various idiomatic difficulties; the second comprises connected discourse, designed to afford a review of the entire grammatical structure of the language.

F. De Haan, *Professor in Bryn Mawr College, Pa.*:—My first impression of the book is very favorable, and I think it may do me very good service.

William Fred Fleming, *Principal of High School, Denison, Tex.*:—Even a superficial examination shows it to be all that is indicated by its preface, and I doubt not that it will worthily supplement the author's large grammar.

### **Sales's Spanish Hive.**

Select pieces from Spanish authors. With a vocabulary, and notes in English at the bottom of each piece, and a general index; the whole accentuated with the greatest care, for the use of beginners. By S. SALES, late Instructor in Harvard University. 216 pp. 16mo. \$1.00.

### **Schilling's Spanish Grammar.**

Translated and edited by FREDERICK ZAGEL. 340 pp. 12mo. \$1.10.

A. Rambeau, *Professor in the Massachusetts Institute of Technology*:—It seems to me a very good idea to offer an English version of this highly esteemed book to the American public.

C. L. Speranza, *Professor in Columbia University*:—I am happy to say that you have done more than a mere translation of the German work; you have made a most felicitous adaptation of it to the use of the American students. The thought of doing something of the kind had more than once crossed my mind, for I knew Schilling's Grammar, and I thought it ought to be translated; but I lacked time and courage. I trust your work will be brought to the notice of a large number of students of Spanish, for I feel sure they will gladly and thankfully use it as soon as they know it; for my part I will consider it my pleasant duty to do all in my power to call upon it the attention of all such friends and acquaintances of mine as are interested in the study of Spanish.

**Young's Italian Grammar.**

With verb-tables, exercises, and vocabularies, by MARY VANCE YOUNG, Professor in Mt. Holyoke College. [*In preparation.*]

All the essential points of Italian grammar are presented as briefly as is consistent with thoroughness. At the same time more detail is given than in the other Italian grammars now in use in America. Each chapter is accompanied by two or more exercises, which are grouped at the end of the book. These exercises consist of connected narrative. The vocabulary employed in them has been restricted as much as possible, the idea being to illustrate and impress the grammatical constructions without distracting the pupil's attention by giving him daily a large mass of new word-material.

**Italian Texts****Amicis: Cuore.**

Abridged, and edited with notes, by OSCAR KUHN, Professor of Romance Languages in Wesleyan University. vi+217 pp. 16mo. \$1.00.

**Nota: La Fiera.**

Comedy in five acts. With notes. 86 pp. 12mo. Paper. 60 cents.

**Ongaro: Rosa dell' Alpi.**

A novel. With notes. 95 pp. 12mo. Paper. 60 cents.

**Pellico: Francesca da Rimini.**

Romantic tragedy in five acts and in verse. 62 pp. 12mo. Paper. 60 cents.

**Spanish Texts****Caballero: La Familia de Alvareda.**

New edition from new plates, with introduction and notes by PERCY B. BURNETT, Professor in Butler College. 200 pp. 16mo. 75 cents.

**Calderon: Il Magico Prodigioso.**

Edited with introduction and notes by A. F. KUERSTEINER, Professor in the University of Indiana. [*In preparation.*]

One of Calderon's masterpieces and one of the greatest plays of Spanish literature. It is one of the many manifestations of the Theophilus-Faust legend which crop out in various parts of Europe.

**Lope de Vega y Calderon de la Barca: Obras Maestras.**

Con indice y observaciones esenciales al uso de los collegios y de las universidades. *New and cheaper edition.* With portrait of Lope de Vega. xii+292 pp. 12mo. Burnished buckram. \$1.00.

**Tirso de Molina: Don Gil de las Calzas Verdes.**

With introduction, notes, and vocabulary by BENJAMIN P. BOURLAND, Professor in Western Reserve University. xxvii + 198 pp. 16mo. 75 cents.

A farcical intrigue of *Don Gil de las Calzas Verdes* (Don Gil of the Green Breeches), where the changes of Juana to Elvira or to Don Gil are such examples of subtle, gay ingenuity as delight and bewilder the reader. This edition is designed for the use of college students in their third or fourth semester of Spanish study. The introduction contains a biographical note of Tirso, with bibliographical references. The vocabulary is prepared with special reference to the Spanish of the classical period.

**Professor F. De Haan** in MODERN LANGUAGE NOTES:—The introduction and notes are far and away the best that have yet accompanied a Spanish text published in this country.

**School Review:**—The play is not a difficult one for readers who have gotten a fair start in the language, while it is a good specimen of the classic style and of the manifold kinds of dramatic verse structure.

**Hugo A. Rennert**, *Professor in the University of Pennsylvania*:—It is an excellent piece of work, which I am glad to have and shall use here at the first opportunity that offers. It was a good idea—in the absence of a good handy Spanish dictionary—to add a vocabulary, as Prof. Bourland has done.

















CPSIA information can be obtained at [www.ICGtesting.com](http://www.ICGtesting.com)

Printed in the USA

LVOW03s1839260714

395716LV00019B/65/P









9 781145 304109